



Executive

Date: Friday, 22 July 2022

Time: 2.30 pm

Venue: Council Antechamber, Level 2, Town Hall Extension

Everyone is welcome to attend this Executive meeting.

This is a **combined agenda pack** for information only

Access to the Public Gallery

Public access to the Council Antechamber is on Level 2 of the Town Hall Extension, using the lift or stairs in the lobby of the Mount Street entrance to the Extension. **There is no public access from any other entrance.**

Filming and broadcast of the meeting

Meetings of the Executive are 'webcast'. These meetings are filmed and broadcast live on the Internet. If you attend this meeting you should be aware that you might be filmed and included in that transmission.

Membership of the Executive

Councillors

Craig (Chair), Akbar, Bridges, Hacking, Igbon, Midgley, Rahman, Rawlins, T Robinson and White

Membership of the Consultative Panel

Councillors

Ahmed Ali, Butt, Collins, Douglas, Foley, Johnson, Leech, Lynch and Stanton

The Consultative Panel has a standing invitation to attend meetings of the Executive. The Members of the Panel may speak at these meetings but cannot vote on the decisions taken at the meetings.

Agenda

1. Appeals

To consider any appeals from the public against refusal to allow inspection of background documents and/or the inclusion of items in the confidential part of the agenda.

2. Interests

To allow Members an opportunity to [a] declare any personal, prejudicial or disclosable pecuniary interests they might have in any items which appear on this agenda; and [b] record any items from which they are precluded from voting as a result of Council Tax/Council rent arrears; [c] the existence and nature of party whipping arrangements in respect of any item to be considered at this meeting. Members with a personal interest should declare that at the start of the item under consideration. If Members also have a prejudicial or disclosable pecuniary interest they must withdraw from the meeting during the consideration of the item.

3. Minutes

To approve as a correct record the minutes of the meeting held on 29 June 2022.

5 - 14

4. Our Manchester Progress Update

Report of the Chief Executive attached

All Wards

15 - 22

5. Revenue Budget Monitoring

Report of the Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer attached

All Wards

23 - 46

6. Capital Update Report

Report of the Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer attached

All Wards

47 - 64

7. GM Clean Air Plan review

Report of the Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer and City Solicitor attached

All Wards

65 - 392

8. Manchester Housing Strategy 2022-32

Report of the Interim Director of Housing & Residential Growth attached

All Wards

393 - 476

9. HS2 Update and Petition

Report of the Strategic Director (Growth and Development) attached

All Wards

477 - 500

10. Community Development in Manchester

Report of the Director of Public Health attached

All Wards

501 - 512

11. Disposal of Land at Greenwood Road and Gladeside Road, Woodhouse Park

Report of the Strategic Director (Growth and Development) attached

Woodhouse Park

513 - 522

- | | | |
|-----|--|----------------------------------|
| 12. | Review of Home to School Travel support including draft policies and developing a new approach to improve service delivery
Report of the Director of Education and Head of Access and Sufficiency attached | All Wards
523 - 578 |
| 13. | Manchester Accommodation Business Improvement District (BID)
Report to follow | Deansgate;
Piccadilly |

Information about the Executive

The Executive is made up of 10 Councillors: the Leader and two Deputy Leaders of the Council and 7 Executive Members with responsibility for: Early Years, Children and Young People; Health Manchester and Adult Social Care; Finance and Resources; Environment and Transport; Vibrant Neighbourhoods; Housing and Development; and Skills, Employment and Leisure. The Leader of the Council chairs the meetings of the Executive

The Executive has full authority for implementing the Council's Budgetary and Policy Framework, and this means that most of its decisions do not need approval by Council, although they may still be subject to detailed review through the Council's overview and scrutiny procedures.

It is the Council's policy to consult people as fully as possible before making decisions that affect them. Members of the public do not have a right to speak at meetings but may do so if invited by the Chair.

The Council is concerned to ensure that its meetings are as open as possible and confidential business is kept to a strict minimum. When confidential items are involved these are considered at the end of the meeting at which point members of the public and the press are asked to leave.

Joanne Roney OBE
Chief Executive
Level 3, Town Hall Extension,
Albert Square,
Manchester, M60 2LA

Further Information

For help, advice and information about this meeting please contact the Committee Officer:

Michael Williamson
Tel: 0161 2343071
Email: michael.williamson@manchester.gov.uk

Executive

Minutes of the meeting held on Wednesday, 29 June 2022

Present: Councillor Craig (Chair)

Councillors: Akbar, Bridges, Hacking, Midgley, Rahman, Rawlins and White

Also present as Members of the Standing Consultative Panel:

Councillors: Ahmed Ali, Butt, Douglas, Foley, Lynch and Stanton

Apologies: Councillor Igbon, T Robinson, Collins, Johnson and Leech

Exe/22/48 Minutes

Decision

The Executive approved as a correct record the minutes of the meeting on 1 June 2022.

Exe/22/49 Our Manchester Progress update

The Executive considered a report of the Chief Executive which provided an update on key areas of progress against the Our Manchester Strategy – Forward to 2025 which reset Manchester's priorities for the next five years to ensure the Council could still achieve the city's ambition set out in the Our Manchester Strategy 2016 – 2025.

The Leader made reference to the second reading of the HS2 Bill in Parliament. It was noted that the Council had concerns about the plans as they currently stood, including the proposed new six-platform overground station next to the existing Manchester Piccadilly Station to accommodate HS2 and improved northern links. She reported that the Council would be formally petitioning government, urging the to reconsider there approach and ambition for Manchester. Manchester's response would be shared with Members and discussed at a future meeting of the Executive.

The Leader also made reference to the Clean Air Plan Review of Greater Manchester. Transport for Greater Manchester, on behalf of the 10 GM local authorities, were preparing a response to Government setting out the case for a new GM Clean Air Plan which would be submitted to Government by 1 July 2022. Due to the tight timeframes to complete the review, the draft plan was being submitted to government on 1 July in order to meet the government deadline. Local Authorities would then have an opportunity to consider it before a final plan was submitted. There would also be a much wider participation and engagement process for a new clean air plan.

The Leader reported that Manchester had made a strong showing in an annual report rating the liveability of 172 prominent world cities, once again coming out as the highest ranked UK city. The city had risen 26 places to 28th position continuing to be placed above London, Barcelona, Los Angeles, Auckland, Madrid and Adelaide.

The Deputy Leader (Statutory) reported that plans for a new visitor experience in Manchester Town Hall telling the story of the iconic building and showcasing some of its civic treasures had taken a big step forward with the appointment of leading exhibition designers Mather & Co. The ground floor exhibition space, would have no admission charge and there would also be a chance to explore some of the Town Hall's hidden spaces which had rarely if ever been open to the public, such as the Victorian police cells, courtyard area and clock tower, on guided tours.

The Executive Member for Housing and Development reported on the launch of the Manchester Living Rent, which would be a rent level that people on housing benefit could access, meaning new housing – regardless of where it was built – would be affordable to anyone in the city. He advised that this would be part of the Council's strategy to deliver 10,000 new homes over the next 10 years. In terms of the Council's Selective Licensing Scheme, he reported that in addition to the existing seven schemes, a further eight schemes would be brought forward following an analysis of the Crumpsall scheme, which had now come to an end and had demonstrated a positive impact on improving private rental standards.

The Executive Member for Early Years, Children and Young People commented on the success of Manchester Day, with over 1,300 participants from across the city. In keeping with the Our Year campaign to promote opportunities for those growing up in our city, young people played a key role in the day which included programming the day's activities in Piccadilly Gardens. In addition, it was noted that this year's parade was the most sustainable yet.

The Executive Member for Environment and Transport reported that Keep Manchester Tidy – a partnership between Manchester City Council and Keep Britain Tidy – had delivered 70 community clean-ups across the city to mark the Queen's Platinum Jubilee, with Schools, community groups and local businesses amongst those participating. In keeping with the spirit of the Our Year campaign as well as taking part, young people had their say in which areas were cleaned up, and there had been a particular focus on parks and play areas to ensure they had a clean place to socialise.

Decision

The Executive note the report.

Exe/22/50 Capital Outturn Report

The Executive considered a report of the Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer, which outlined the capital outturn position for 2020/21 including total expenditure and funding, confirmed that funding sources had been managed to best utilise resources available to fund the capital programme; and presented a revised capital programme for the 2022/23 financial year after taking into account the final outturn position as reported.

The main changes to the programme since the report to Executive in June 2021 were as follows:-

- £29m Highways – The Active Travel Fund and Northern Quarter Cycling scheme have reprofiled £5.1m and £3m respectively into futures years. In addition, inclement weather and capacity issues with third parties had delayed the Highways Maintenance Programme with £4.5m slipping into 2022/23;
- £16m Neighbourhoods – This included Beswick Hub Rugby Football League £2.6m reprofiling and £2.2m relating to Indoor Leisure - Abraham Moss. The Manchester Aquatic Centre would reprofile £4.5m into future years to reflect the fact the main contract was signed in April 2022, which had had an impact on the progress on site;
- £51m Growth and Development – £7.1m of the Housing Infrastructure Fund (HIF) funding for enabling works in Victoria North would move into 2022/23. There was also £9.3m reprofiling required for Hammerstone Road Depot, and £8.9m Carbon Reduction Programme/Public Sector Decarbonisation Fund With other major variances of £4.1m for House of Sport and £4.4m for Campfield Development;
- £21m Our Town Hall – This would now be spent in 2022/23 in line with the current programme of works which was agreed and revised after the budget was set;
- £17m Children's Services - £11.6m of this related to the revised start on site date for the Co-op Academy in Belle Vue;
- Expenditure was almost £36m lower than that forecast in the report to Executive in February 2022. The largest change related to the £8.2m reprofiling across the Public Sector Decarbonisation Scheme and the Carbon Reduction programme which had seen delays in designs and contract approvals linked to the supply chains.

Overall, the spend against the approved in year programme of £458.3m was £165m lower

It was reported that the programme had delivered over £293m of capital investment during the 2021/22 and whilst the outturn position was higher than the average spend over the past three years, it represented the continued significant investment in Manchester with over 220 live projects progressing during the year, a major achievement given the impact of the pandemic.

It was noted that there was no sign of inflationary pressures abating, with companies continuing to issue warnings on future cost increases. As such, in addition to a proportion of the contingent budgets for each major capital project earmarked for inflationary pressures, a further £28m had been profiled over a number of financial years to reflect the expected timing of any contract increases over the life of the programme.

Unlike the Revenue Budget the Capital Budget was subject to change as new schemes and /or external funding was received. The budget was prepared in February each year on the best estimate of the start date and spend profile for each scheme and was refreshed in June for the Outturn Position. Most capital schemes covered multiple years and as schemes developed the spending profile across financial years changed to reflect the agreed start on site date and delivery of the work packages. Based on the monitoring information, it was proposed that the capital programme budget was re-phased to reflect the planned delivery of projects in

2022/23 to 2025/26 which would be reviewed throughout 2022/23 to reflect changes to the proposed profile of spend.

In addition it was reported that there were schemes that had been developed or have received external funding that were now ready for inclusion in the Capital Programme. The proposals which required Council approval were those which were funded by the use of reserves above a cumulative total of £2million, where the use of borrowing was required or a virement exceeds £0.500m. These included the following proposed changes:-

- Public Sector Housing – Northwards Housing Capital Programme 2022/23. . A capital budget increase of £2.475m in 2022/23, £21.047m in 2023/24 and £7.599m in 2024/25 is requested, funded by an RCCO from the HRA to deliver essential health and safety work, security improvements and environmental improvements across the Council's Housing estate.
- Corporate Programme - Elizabeth Tower GP surgery. A capital budget increase of £2.6m in 2022/23, funded by RCCO from Integration Reserve to support the fit out of the GP surgery and ancillary facilities to service the city centre's growing residential population.

The report then went on to detail the proposals that did not require Council approval which were funded by the use of external resources, use of capital receipts, use of reserves below £2million, where the proposal could be funded from existing revenue budgets or where the use of borrowing on a spend to save basis was required. These included:-

- Neighbourhoods – Off Street Car Parks. A capital budget increase of £0.369m in 2022/23 requested, funded by Parking Reserve to carry out works to one of the Council's multi storey car parks, identified as part of the Fire Risk Assessment. This included internal fire doors and a new fire alarm. Electric works were also required to Bloom Street Car Park for a new power supply for lighting.
- Northwards ICT Work. A capital budget increase of £2.491m in 2022/23 and £1.599m in 2023/24 requested, funded from a revenue contribution from the HRA to finance a multi-disciplinary migration team as well as the required hardware, software and supplier fees to conduct the migration of Northwards ICT infrastructure in the City Council infrastructure in a fashion that protects live services to tenants.
- Private Sector Housing – Disabled Facilities Grant (DFG). A capital budget increase of £0.855m in 2022/23 and £7.628m in 2023/24 requested, funded by Government Grant for home adaptations for people with disabilities.

It was noted that the forecast budget for 2022/23 was ambitious compared to previous annual expenditure with a number of large scale projects due to begin in 2022/23 and that the budget would change as new schemes were added throughout the year, and specific projects funded through the contingent budgets were brought forward through the Council's capital approval process. Current funding assumptions

for the Capital Programme based on the current forecast were detailed and these would continue to be reviewed to ensure that optimum value for money was achieved. The current modelling forecasted that the programme remained affordable within the revenue budget available. The model was based on a number of assumptions however, including the timing of future borrowing and forecast future interest rates. As these assumptions changed, the capital financing model including use of capital financing reserves would be updated and reported back

Decisions

The Executive:-

- (1) Recommend that the Council approve the virements over £0.5m between capital schemes to maximise use of funding resources available to the City Council set out in Appendix C.
- (2) Note the outturn of capital expenditure 2021/22 is £293.2m.
- (3) Note the changes to the outturn attributable to movement in the programme that occurred after the previous monitoring report to Executive in February 2022,
- (4) Approve virements under £0.5m within the capital programme as outlined in Appendix B, including those related to inflation.
- (5) Recommends that the Council approve the following changes to Manchester City Council's capital programme:-
 - Public Sector Housing – Northwards Housing Capital Programme 2022/23. A capital budget increase of £2.475m in 2022/23, £21.047m in 2023/24 and £7.599m in 2024/25 funded by an RCCO from the HRA
 - Corporate Programme - Elizabeth Tower GP surgery. A capital budget increase of £2.6m in 2022/23, funded by RCCO from Integration Reserve
- (6) Approves the following changes to the City Council's capital programme:-
 - Neighbourhoods – Off Street Car Parks. A capital budget increase of £0.369m in 2022/23 funded by Parking Reserve
 - Northwards ICT Work. A capital budget increase of £2.491m in 2022/23 and £1.599m in 2023/24, funded from a revenue contribution from the HRA
 - Private Sector Housing – Disabled Facilities Grant (DFG). A capital budget increase of £0.855m in 2022/23 and £7.628m in 2023/24, funded by Government Grant.
- (7) Note the decisions of the Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer regarding the funding of capital expenditure in 2021/22 including the use of £99.6m Grants and Contributions, £12.3m Capital receipts, £28.3m Revenue funding and £153.0m Borrowing.
- (8) Note the revised capital programme for 2022/23 shown in Section 9 and Appendix F.

Exe/22/51 Integrated Care System and Place-Based Lead for Manchester

The Executive considered a report of the Chief Executive, which informed Members of the Government's reforms to health and social care to establish Integrated Care Systems, including at the level of Greater Manchester

It was reported that Integrated Care Systems were being established nationally as part of the next phase of health and social care integration. This includes the establishment of Greater Manchester Integrated Care (NHS GM) and locality arrangements for Manchester.

These upcoming system reforms were an opportunity to accelerate the delivery of Manchester's ambitions to improve health outcomes and tackle health inequalities through further integration of health and social care.

The Manchester Partnership Board would lead the development of Manchester's future operating model for health and social care integration. Joanne Roney OBE, in addition to being Chief Executive of Manchester City Council had been appointed as the Place-Based Lead for Manchester.

Decision

The Executive note the report and endorse the appointment of Joanne Roney as Place-Based Lead for Manchester.

Exe/22/52 Manchester Work and Skills Strategy 2022-27

The Executive considered a report of the Director of Inclusive Economy, which sought approval of the adoption of Manchester's new Work and Skills Strategy 2022-27.

It was reported that Manchester's Work and Skills Strategy 2016-21 had reached the end of its life and work had been underway since last year to revise and update the Strategy to respond to the significant changes and challenges the city has experienced over the last five years.

In developing the new Strategy, the linkages and dependencies with and between other Manchester strategies had been mapped out, to ensure clear interfaces and avoid duplication. The new strategy used the Our Manchester Strategy themes as a structural framework, making it clear how the Strategy's priorities, outcomes and indicators would contribute to the delivery of the Our Manchester Strategy. The Strategy also responded to the recommendations made in the Marmot report 'Build Back Fairer in Greater Manchester', which made clear connections between work and health outcomes

The report provided additional background and context to the refresh as well as detailed overview of the consultation and engagement process that had taken place to support the Strategy's development.

As a strategy for the city, it was the responsibility of the Council and its partners to ensure it was delivered. The Strategy would be overseen by the Work and Skills Board, which included a range of partners involved in learning and employment, and progress against priorities tracked by the Council's Economy Scrutiny Committee.

Decision

The Executive agrees to adopt the new Work and Skills Strategy 2022-27

Exe/22/53 LTE Group - Estates Strategy Delivery Update

The Executive considered a report of the Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer and the Chief Executive, LTE Group, which set out progress to date against the LTE Group estates strategy programme to create new facilities for the Manchester college and align the location of facilities to the future needs of the city.

The estates strategy sought to reduce reliance on old, inefficient and listed buildings where the educational experience is significantly lower than the LTE Group would want to provide or is now being demanded by curriculum or qualifications evolving as part of the skills white paper. Despite the challenges of the pandemic and Brexit, the new construction and upgrade of facilities remained on target and on budget. A new £25m new extension to the Openshaw campus opened on time in December 2021 to very positive feedback from students, communities and stakeholders. The new City Campus Manchester was scheduled to open on time in September 2022. The upgrades to Harpurhey and Wythenshawe were also on track and the ambition to significantly reduce the carbon footprint of the college estate was also on track to be delivered, with the new City Campus Manchester comfortably achieving BREEAM excellent standard.

The project relied on some sites being disposed of so that the proceeds could be reinvested in the new facilities. Where possible LTE Group has sought to create a win-win with other strategies across the city such as affordable housing or helping support a better sense of place in a community. One such site that was now key to dispose of was the Fielden Campus (Didsbury West Ward). The majority of the site was held as a freehold by the College. The Council had a small property interest within the site that would be made available for disposal for market value to support the development.

The marketing period for the site had resulted in over a dozen initial bids which were analysed in detail by appointed property advisors.. Through a professional process of iteration, the bids were narrowed down to a final three bidders, with the preferred bid being from a Manchester based education provider to consolidate their existing educational provision at locations in Chorlton and Withington on to one site at Fielden, with the potential to provide new homes across the sites vacated in Withington and Chorlton or disposing of land for alternative uses such as new public healthcare facilities.

Decision

The Executive note the report and progress to date in relation to the delivery of the LTE estates strategy

(Councillor Hacking declared a Disclosable Pecuniary Interest in this item as he is a Board Member of the LTE Group. He left the meeting during consideration of this item).

Exe/22/54 Request for Hackney Carriage Fuel Surcharge

The Executive considered a report of the Strategic Director (Growth and Development), which sought approval for a temporary fuel surcharge of 80p to be applied to the Hackney Carriage Fares.

It was reported that representatives from the Hackney Trade have requested consideration of a fuel surcharge to be approved for the Hackney Fares as an urgent measure in response to the significant increases in fuel over the last 6 months. This was requested ahead of the wider Fare Review, given that that piece of work would not be reported to the Licensing and Appeal Committee, and in turn the Executive, until later this Summer.

Any surcharge permitted at this time, will therefore be temporary in nature as these costs would be addressed properly alongside all wider information used within the full Fare Review formula.

The Council's Licensing and Appeals Committee, in its advisory capacity to the Executive, had considered a report with regard to this request and had recommended that a temporary fuel surcharge of 80p was approved to be applied to the Hackney Carriage Fares until the outcome of the wider Hackney Fare Review, or the October 2022 meeting of the Executive, whichever is sooner.

Decision

The Executive approve a temporary fuel surcharge of 80p to be applied to the Hackney Carriage Fares and that this charge be permitted until the outcome of the wider Hackney Fare Review, or the October 2022 meeting of the Executive, whichever is sooner.

Exe/22/55 Acquisition of St Modwen's interest at Wythenshawe Civic Centre, Wythenshawe, Manchester (Part A)

The Executive considered a report of the Strategic Director (Growth and Development), which set out the rationale for the proposed acquisition of St Modwen's interest in Wythenshawe Town/Civic Centre by the Council.

Wythenshawe town centre has been subject to several masterplans, Strategic Regeneration Frameworks and policy documents in recent years which had not been delivered. The main obstacle to redevelopment had been that the existing shopping centre and adjacent Etrop Court were owned by St Modwen on a long leasehold (part

freehold) basis. The Council had attempted to acquire St Modwen's interests previously on several occasions however, at the time the metrics for the deal were unsustainable. This position had now changed with terms agreed for a disposal at a level which worked for the Council and could be supported on a red book valuation basis

The Executive was advised that time was critical as St Modwen had given the Council an exclusivity period to work through due diligence and complete the acquisition prior to them taking the asset to market.

It was explained that the acquisition would provide the Council with significant control of Wythenshawe Town Centre, together with a substantial rent roll. Furthermore, the acquisition would act as a catalyst for the wider regeneration programme for the centre and provide the Council with the ability to restructure the current legal arrangements which could then support the delivery of a programme of physical and place-making interventions linked to a Levelling Up Fund (LUF) bid which would provide opportunity to accelerate delivering on the long term ambition of regenerating the centre and catalysing a sustainable modern Town Centre that met the needs of its residents

It was also noted that was the Council to be unsuccessful in their LUF bid, contingency plans were in place and it was emphasised that, even if unsuccessful, the acquisition made commercial sense and unlocked wider opportunities.

In addition to the freehold of the shopping centre, the Council owned significant adjacent land that would benefit from the regeneration proposals. Through the acquisition and regeneration of the centre, it was considered that the value of these land parcels would improve and that they would be developed as part of the regeneration strategy.

The direct revenue and capital implications of the acquisition were set out in the report of the same title under Part B of the agenda

Decision

The Executive note the contents of the report and progress made in relation to the wider regeneration proposals for Wythenshawe Town Centre.

Exe/22/56 Exclusion of the Public

Decision

The Executive agrees to exclude the public during consideration of the following item which involved consideration of exempt information relating to the financial or business affairs of particular persons and public interest in maintaining the exemption outweighs the public interest in disclosing the information.

Exe/22/57 Acquisition of St Modwen's interest at Wythenshawe Civic Centre, Wythenshawe, Manchester (Part B)

Further to Minute Exe/22/55, the Executive considered a report of the Strategic Director (Growth and Development), which set out the financial implications of the proposed acquisition of the St Modwen interest in Wythenshawe Shopping Centre.

Decision

The Executive:-

- (1) Approve the acquisition of St Modwen interests in Wythenshawe Town Centre together with all necessary ancillary arrangements to ensure the ongoing operation of the centre.
- (2) Approve the proposal to fund the acquisition, rebranding of the centre and ancillary costs, as detailed in the report, to be funded from existing capital budgets.
- (3) Delegate authority to the Deputy Chief Executive and the City Treasurer in consultation with the Executive Member for Finance and Resources, to negotiate and finalise the details and terms of the acquisition together with the property and commercial arrangements and any other such ancillary agreements (including TUPE) to ensure the ongoing management and operation of the centre.
- (4) Delegate authority to the Deputy Chief Executive and the City Treasurer in consultation with the Leader and Executive Member for Finance and Resources to approve the capital expenditure in respect of the acquisition, rebranding of the centre and ancillary costs.
- (5) Delegate authority to the City Solicitor to enter into and complete all documents or agreements necessary to give effect to the recommendations in this report

Manchester City Council Report for Information

Report to: Executive – 22 July 2022

Subject: Our Manchester Progress Update

Report of: Chief Executive

Summary

The report provides an update on key areas of progress against the Our Manchester Strategy – Forward to 2025 which resets Manchester's priorities for the next five years to ensure we can still achieve the city's ambition set out in the Our Manchester Strategy 2016 – 2025

Recommendations

The Executive is requested to note the update provided in the report.

Wards Affected - All

Environmental Impact Assessment - the impact of the decisions proposed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city	
Our Manchester Strategy outcomes	Contribution to the strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	The work to reset the Our Manchester Strategy considered all five of the Strategy's existing themes to ensure the city achieves its aims. The themes are retained within the final reset Strategy, Forward to 2025.
A highly skilled city: world class and home grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	
A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities	
A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit, work	

A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth	
---	--

Full details are in the body of the report, along with any implications for

- Equal Opportunities Policy
- Risk Management
- Legal Considerations

Financial Consequences – Revenue

None

Financial Consequences – Capital

None

Contact Officers:

Name: Joanne Roney OBE, Chief Executive
 Position: Chief Executive
 Telephone: 0161 2343006
 E-mail: Joanne.Roney@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Alun Ireland
 Position: Head of Strategic Communications
 Telephone: 0161 2343006
 E-mail: Alun.Ireland@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection):

The following documents disclose important facts on which the report is based and have been relied upon in preparing the report. Copies of the background documents are available up to 4 years after the date of the meeting. If you would like a copy please contact one of the contact officers above.

Executive Report – 17th February 2021 - Our Manchester Strategy – Forward to 2025

1.0 Introduction

- 1.1 This is the latest in an ongoing series of reports highlighting examples of areas where strong progress is being made against key strategic themes identified in the Our Manchester Strategy.

2.0 GM Integrated Care Partnership – Manchester

- 2.1 NHS Greater Manchester Integrated Care Partnership was formally established on 1 July 2022, further cementing Greater Manchester's health and social care devolution arrangements.
- 2.2 It brings together the city region's 10 pre-existing Clinical Commissioning Groups, Greater Manchester Health and Social Care Partnership and Greater Manchester Shared Services, as well as community and voluntary sector and other relevant partners.
- 2.3 The chief executive of Manchester City Council, Joanne Roney OBE, has been appointed as Place Lead for the Manchester Integrated Care Partnership. Place Leads are responsible for driving the further integration of health and social care services and connecting to wider public services to address the social determinants of health.
- 2.4 There is now a much greater emphasis for the NHS on tackling health inequalities in Manchester, in line with the city's local response to the Greater Manchester Building Back Fairer report led by Professor Sir Michael Marmott which was endorsed at the Health and Wellbeing Board earlier this month.
- 2.5 The partnership plan sets out how Manchester will tackle health inequalities over the next five years to narrow the health gap within the city, and between the city and the rest of the country.
- 2.6 This plan, with the chief executive as Place Lead, will give the city a strong platform for improvements.

Related Our Manchester Strategy themes:

- *Progressive and Equitable City*
- *Liveable and Low Carbon City*

3.0 Smoke Free Spaces pilot

- 3.1 Manchester's Health and Wellbeing board has given its support to a Greater Manchester Integrated Care Partnership project on smoke free outdoor spaces.

- 3.2 The partnership will begin public consultation later this month and as part of this consideration will be given to a number of potential pilot sites in the city centre including the new Mayfield Park, which opens later this year, St Peter's Square and Piccadilly Gardens. Other potential locations may also be considered.
- 3.3 The pilot project is intended to complement work currently being undertaken on Manchester's Outdoor Spaces Strategy and wider health campaigns to encourage people to stop smoking.
- 3.4 Smoke free spaces model healthy behaviours for children and young people and provide a supportive environment for the majority of smokers who want to quit. They also discourage people from gathering to smoke illegal substances.
- 3.5 There is also an environmental benefit as discarded cigarettes contribute to litter and environmental damage.
- 3.6 Any final decision on the pilot site, or sites, will be brought to Executive for consideration.

Related Our Manchester Strategy themes:

- *Progressive and Equitable City*
- *Liveable and Low Carbon City*

4.0 New high school for Wythenshawe

- 4.1 A brand new high school, to be run by Dixons Academies Trust and serving the community in and around Newall Green and Wythenshawe, is set to open in September 2023.
- 4.2 The new co-educational free school – to be known as Dixons Newall Green – will open to pupils in Year 7 from next September.
- 4.3 The school will open initially for 140 Year 7 pupils and will grow year by year until it has students aged 11 to 16 by 2027.
- 4.4 It will open on the site of the former Newall Green High School which closed its door to pupils last year, following a decision to do by the Trust that ran it at the time with the agreement of the Department for Education. The Council had opposed the closure, pointing out that the school places were needed for the area.
- 4.5 The existing school sites will now undergo extensive building works to ensure the provision of a state-of-the-art space for learning for its pupils.

- 4.6 This will be the second Dixons Academies Trust school in the Wythenshawe area, alongside Dixons Brooklands Academy. All of Dixons' free schools have been graded outstanding.

Related Our Manchester Strategy themes:

- *Thriving and Sustainable City*
- *Progressive and Equitable City*
- *Liveable and Low Carbon City*
- *Highly Skilled City*

5.0 Bee Green summit

- 5.1 A summit for school and college leaders who want to cut carbon emissions in their institutions attracted more than 100 delegates representing 80 educational settings.
- 5.2 The Bee Green summit, organised by the Council in partnership with Connell College in East Manchester where it was held on 30 June, saw leaders, business managers and governors from across the sector attend workshops to help them understand the opportunities and the support available to them.
- 5.3 Topics covered included reducing energy consumption, promoting active travel, green procurement, working with the wider school community and embedding climate change within the curriculum.
- 5.4 More than 100 delegates representing 80 educational settings attended a summit organised by the Council, in partnership with Connell College in East Manchester. 95 per cent of delegates who fed back described the event as either 'excellent' or 'good' and there is real enthusiasm to put carbon reduction ideas into practice.
- 5.5 In parallel with the summit, 66 students from 10 different schools across the city attended the Green Bee Assembly in which they learnt more about climate change before coming together to share carbon reduction ideas with each other and their teachers.

Related Our Manchester Strategy themes:

- *Liveable and Low Carbon City*
- *Thriving and Sustainable City*

6.0 Baby Week

- 6.1 A programme of events took place 11-16 July to celebrate and promote the importance of a child's early life.

- 6.2 Free activities and events took place in cultural and leisure venues across the city, as well as Sure Start centres, for 0-2 year olds and their families with information and advice provided. The Week ties in with the Start Well Strategy designed to give every child in the city a positive start to life and extend support to families who may struggle, as well as building a network of supportive parents.
- 6.3 Baby Week is part of the Council-led Our Year campaign which is promoting opportunities, activities and a positive legacy for Manchester's young people following the disruption of the pandemic.
- 6.4 It is estimated that as of 2021 there were 22,000 0-2 year olds living in Manchester.

Related Our Manchester Strategy themes:

- *Progressive and Equitable City*
- *Thriving and Sustainable City*

7.0 Deansgate

- 7.1 Proposals have been put forward which will keep in place measures to reduce the amount of traffic on Deansgate.
- 7.2 Since the road was first temporarily restricted during the early months of the Covid pandemic, support has remained strong among the public for a more pedestrian and cyclist-friendly Deansgate. A further consultation has also found broad public support for the measures in place, and the Council is keen to build on this.
- 7.3 As part of the wider City Centre Transport Strategy, which aims for 90% of all peak morning journeys to be via walking, cycling or public transport by 2040, the Council is working to encourage people to use more active methods of travel, as well as public transport.
- 7.4 The proposals for Deansgate aim to maintain a balance between the space already given over to cyclist and pedestrians and the infrastructure still required for public transport and taxis.
- 7.5 As the situation in Deansgate moves from a temporary scheme to an interim one, its main features will be:
- Bus gate and Deansgate one-way southbound between Blackfriars and King Street – buses and taxis only. Segregated cycle facilities included.
 - Traffic one way southbound between King Street west and Quay Street.

- Bridge Street westbound bus gate, located west of Gartside Street (eastbound traffic unaffected).
- Existing access will remain across Deansgate at St Ann Street, King Street and Bridge Street.
- Right-turn ban from Bridge Street onto Deansgate will be removed.
- Northbound contraflow cycle provision between Bridge Street and Blackfriars.
- Two-way cycle lane between Quay Street and Bridge Street.

7.6 Other changes have also been proposed including improvements to the barriers, cones and signs which have until now separated vehicles on the road. More attractive bollards, signs and road markings will be put in place.

7.7 The temporary 'wands' which separated cycle lanes from vehicles will be replaced with more substantial segregation which will be bolted to the carriageway.

Related Our Manchester Strategy themes:

- *Connected City*
- *Liveable and Low Carbon City*
- *Thriving and Sustainable City*

8.0 UEFA Women's EURO 2022

8.1 Manchester has been hosting a festival of football this month as one of nine host cities of EURO 2022, the biggest women's sport event ever held in Europe.

8.2 From 6 July to 31 July, Piccadilly Gardens is hosting a fan festival, welcoming fans from competing nations, showing games on a big screen, offering food and drink and a range of events and activities including football taster sessions.

8.3 The fan zone has welcomed fans from Austria, Belgium, Iceland, Italy, the Netherlands, Portugal, Sweden and Switzerland – all of whom have played group games in Greater Manchester with the Academy Stadium in the Etihad Campus among the venues.

Related to Our Manchester Strategy themes:

- Thriving and Sustainable City
- Progressive and Equitable City

9.0 Contributing to a Zero-Carbon City

9.1 Achieving Manchester's zero carbon target has been reflected throughout the work on the Our Manchester Strategy reset, with sustainability being a key

horizontal theme throughout. Forward to 2025 restates Manchester's commitment to achieving our zero carbon ambition by 2038 at the latest.

10.0 Contributing to the Our Manchester Strategy

- 10.1 The reset of the Our Manchester Strategy will ensure that the city achieves its vision. The five themes have been retained in the reset Strategy, with the new priorities streamlined under the themes.

11.0 Key Policies and Considerations

- 11.1 There are no particular equal opportunities issues, risk management issues, or legal issues that arise from the recommendations in this report.

12.0 Recommendations

- 12.1 The Executive is requested to note the update provided in the report.

Manchester City Council Report for Resolution

Report to: Executive – 22 July 2022

Subject: Revenue Monitoring to the end of May 2022

Report of: Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer

Purpose of the Report

The report outlines the projected outturn position for 2022/23, based on expenditure and income activity as at the end of May 2022 and future projections.

Recommendations

The Executive is requested to:

- (1) Note the global revenue monitoring report and forecast outturn position which is showing a £4.523m overspend.
 - (2) Approve budget virements to be reflected in the budget (para. 2.5)
 - (3) Approve additional COVID-19 grants to be reflected in the budget (para. 2.6).
 - (4) Approve the use of unbudgeted external grant funding (non COVID-19) (para. 2.7).
 - (5) Approve the use of budgets to be allocated, (para. 2.8).
 - (6) Approve the use of reserves (para 2.9)
-

Wards Affected: All

Environmental Impact Assessment - the impact of the issues addressed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city

The budget reflects the fact that the Council has declared a climate emergency by making carbon reduction a key consideration in the Council's planning and budget proposals.

Our Manchester Strategy Outcomes	Summary of the contribution to the strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities.	The effective use of resources underpins the Council's activities in support of its strategic priorities.
A highly skilled city: world class and home grown talent sustaining the city's economic success.	

A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities.	
A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit and work.	
A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth.	

Implications for:

- **Equal Opportunities Policy** – there are no specific Equal Opportunities implications contained within this report.
- **Risk Management** – as detailed in the report.
- **Legal Considerations** – there are no specific legal considerations contained within the report.

Financial Consequences – Revenue

The report identifies a forecast overspend of £4.523m for 2022/23, based on activity to date and projected trends in income and expenditure, and includes the financial implications of COVID-19, government funding confirmed to date and other changes.

This report focuses on 2022/23, however it is anticipated the implications of COVID-19 will have a significant impact on the Council's finances for a number of years. With the scale of funding pressures and future resource constraints, it is important that the Council holds a robust position on reserves and maintains the ability to deal with issues that arise during the financial year.

Financial Consequences – Capital

There are no capital consequences arising specifically from this report.

Contact Officers:

Name: Carol Culley
Position: Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer
Tel: 0161 234 3406
E-mail: carol.culley@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Tom Wilkinson
Position: Deputy City Treasurer
Tel: 0161 234 1017
E-mail: tom.wilkinson@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Samantha McArdle
Position: Corporate Finance Lead
Telephone: 0161 234 3472
E-mail: samantha.mcardle@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection):

The following documents disclose important facts on which the report is based and have been relied upon in preparing the report. Copies of the background documents are available up to 4 years after the date of the meeting. If you would like a copy please contact one of the contact officers above.

Revenue Budget Report - Executive Meeting February 2022

1 Introduction

- 1.1. This report provides an overview of the Council's current financial position for 2022/23. The forecast overall position for 2022/23 is an overspend of £4.523m.
- 1.2. There remains a significant budget shortfall for 2023/24 plus will be brought back to the Executive in the Autumn to consider the longer-term position and proposed mitigations.

2. Financial position 2022/23

- 2.1. The current budget monitoring forecast is an overspend of £4.523m. There are considerable risks to the position with the impact of rising inflation, especially that caused by increases to utility costs, and loss of income particularly within Neighbourhood Services.
- 2.2. The overspend predominately relates to a corporate £1.6m pressure on inflation requirements, a £3.7m shortfall in income in the Neighbourhoods directorate, driven by Income shortfalls in off street parking and Christmas market revenue, offset by a £0.744m underspend in Children's Services and full details can be found in the appendix.
- 2.3. In relation to the delivery of the £7.837m of savings identified as part of the budget process, £3.390m are on track for delivery and £4.447m of these are risk rated amber in terms of the likelihood of delivery. Officers are working to address these to ensure all savings are achieved or mitigated.
- 2.4. Full details about the key budget forecasts and variances by Directorate are provided at Appendix 1. The forecast position includes the recommended budget increases for additional funding and the allocation of inflation funding set out below for the consideration and approval of Executive.

Virements

- 2.5. The following virements are proposed:
 - £2.6m budget for the Children's Legal Service is being transferred from Children Services to Corporate Core to reflect the ongoing restructure of Children's legal service and its alignment to the Council's Legal Services.
 - Within Adult Social Care, long term care budgets have been reset aligned to clients in receipt of care as at 31st March. At the same time, income budgets have also been updated to reflect the level of income being received.

Grants

- 2.6. The COVID Local Support Grant, £6.453m has been notified and added to the budget since the budget was set. The grant is to provide support to households who would otherwise struggle to meet essential living or housing costs in exceptional cases of genuine emergency.

2.7. Since the 2022 budget was approved there have been additional non COVID-19 grant notifications which are now reflected in the revised budget as follows:

- Local authority domestic abuse duty - £1.657m. To provide vital support services to victims of domestic abuse, funding healthcare, social workers and benefits, interpreters, immigration advice and other specialist services.
- Council Tax Energy Rebate Core scheme - £32.488m. In March 2022 the Government announced a £150 grant would be paid households in Council Tax Bands A-D to assist with the increase in energy bills from April 2022. To 14 July £17.619m has been paid to 117,459 households via BACs to residents who pay their council tax by direct debits and a further 75,846 vouchers have been redeemed worth £11.378m, resulting in a total award of £28.997m, or 89.4% of the allocation. 19,231 vouchers worth £2.885m are still to be redeemed by households and the Council is sending a reminder mail shot shortly. Government will fund any allocations in excess of this amount with any unallocated funding returned. The local authority allocation was based on an estimated number of eligible households.
- Council Tax Energy Rebate Discretionary scheme - £1.626m. Alongside the core scheme, Government allocated £144m to authorities to design a discretionary scheme to provide additional support to our most vulnerable households. The scheme opened in June and the first payments were made on 20 June 2022. To 14 July £1.120m worth of voucher have been redeemed by 7,464 households, 68.9% of the allocation. 1,437 vouchers worth £216k are still to be redeemed by households. This scheme will remain open until 30 November 2022 and the Council will not receive any additional funding and will return any unallocated when the scheme closes.
- Council Tax Energy Rebate New Burdens initial payment - £295k. This funding is to cover the initial administration costs, including software and staffing, for the early stages of delivering the Council Tax Rebate schemes. Additional New Burdens funding is expected following further Government assessment.
- TfGM Active Travel Complimentary Measures Revenue Fund (School streets) - £50k. The funding will be used to implement the Traffic Regulation Orders and provide road signs, barriers and moveable planters to support its operation. The spend aims to reduce traffic and parking pressures outside the schools, whilst encouraging more sustainable and active forms of travel to schools.
- Establishing Welcome Points for Ukrainian Refugees - £140k. This is to set up Welcome Points at Manchester Airport.
- Rough Sleeper initiative £2.963m. Manchester has successfully bid for £7.8m from 2022-2025. This funding will continue to support a range of existing accommodation and support services as well as expand provision for young people and women with complex needs. It will also increase access to the private rented sector for people who are ready for their own tenancy with resettlement support.
- Homes for Ukraine - £1.743m. The main purpose of the sponsor thank you grant is to support local authorities to make monthly thank you payments of £350 direct to sponsoring households within the scheme for 12 months. These payments are optional for the sponsoring household. The grant will

be paid in arrears based on the number of legitimate payments made by local authorities. It will be made every quarter for one year.

- The DLUHC are supporting councils to work with Afghan families who are in bridging hotels to identify essential and longer-term needs, engaging with Voluntary sector to meet those needs. Ensuring the specific needs of women and girls are factored into the design and delivery of services to ensure participation/access. In addition to this there is additional funding to develop individual move on plans for families to find and secure accommodation in the private sector. This is to help increase the pace of settling Afghan families into homes and manage the risk of unplanned homelessness approaches to councils. Funding is claimed retrospectively so the level of funding is unclear until there are move on plans for all those in Bridging Hotels.

2.8. Inflation budgets for pay and non pay costs are being held corporately. The 2021/22 pay award was agreed and paid right at the end of the financial year and after the budget for 2022/23 was set. The £4.549m cost, which includes the National Insurance increase, has been allocated to Directorate budgets.

2.9. Funding requests have also been received for non-pay inflation. Those received to date are currently being considered but the funding will not be allocated until the Autumn when there has been a chance to more fully assess the impact of inflation on the revenue budget.

Reserves

2.10. The following requests are for use of reserves

- Development of burial land (Bereavement Services) - £58k. This is for the feasibility studies required to access and survey burial land at Gorton and Blackley Cemeteries for potential development.
- Review of City Centre Controlled Parking Zone and on street tariffs (Parking Reserve) - £100k. This is for a feasibility study to review the current city centre controlled parking zones and on-street tariffs to ensure that they are properly aligned with MCC transport strategies, and for consultation, advertising/signage and reconfiguration of equipment.
- Domestic Abuse New Burdens 'safe accommodation' funding underspend - £0.866m. Due to the timescales to implementation of the New Burdens the full allocation could not be spent and resulted in an underspend for 2021/22 of approximately £0.866m which was carried forward in a reserve and will be drawn down in 2022/23. This is a one-off occurrence, as the contracts will be aligned to the financing in the future. This will be spent on activities for child victims of DA, a victim/survivor liaison role, respite rooms expansion, IDVA maternity cover, personal budget for refuge moves and safe accommodation grant scheme.

3. Conclusion

3.1. Taking into account the inflationary pressures affecting fuel and utility costs, confirmed and anticipated government funding and any other known budget

changes the budget forecast is an overspend of £4.523m for 2022/23. It is very early in the financial year and vigilance is needed given there are significant uncertainties and risks to the position as cost of living pressures could increase.

This page is intentionally left blank

Executive 22 July 2022

Appendix 1 – Financial position 2022/23 P2

Integrated Monitoring and Corporate Plan Report: 2022/23 Period 2

Financial Executive Summary

- The Council is forecasting to overspend against its budget for 2022/23 by £4.523m, which is predominantly due to an anticipated £1.6m pressure on inflation requirements, a £3.7m shortfall in income in the Neighbourhoods directorate offset by a £0.744m underspend in Children's Services.
- Income shortfalls in off street parking and Christmas market revenue are the main drivers of the Neighbourhoods overspend projection.
- Approved Directorate savings in 2022/23 total £7.837m. Of these £4.447m (57%) are medium risk and £3.390m (43%) are low risk in that they are on track to be achieved. Work is ongoing to find alternative savings where original plans may not be achieved.

Overall MCC Financial Position

Integrated Monitoring report Period 2 total variance

	Original Budget	Revised Budget *	Forecast Outturn	Variance
	£000	£000	£000	£000
Total Available Resources	(690,599)	(698,678)	(698,744)	(66)
Total Corporate Budgets	140,652	137,894	139,459	1,565
Children's Services	129,020	128,234	127,491	(744)
Adult Social Care and Population Health	227,094	228,115	228,116	0
Neighbourhoods Directorate	91,704	92,388	96,154	3,766
Homelessness	27,346	27,545	27,545	0
Growth and Development	(9,752)	(9,518)	(9,518)	0
Corporate Core	84,535	94,020	94,020	0
Total Directorate Budgets	549,947	560,784	563,808	3,022
Total Use of Resources	690,599	698,679	703,267	4,589
Total forecast over / (under) spend	0	0	4,523	4,523

• Corporate Budgets

Corporate Budgets £1.565m overspend

	Annual Budget £000	Outturn £000	Variance £000
Other Corporate Items	66,149	66,149	0
Contingency	1,060	1,060	0
Inflationary budgets and Budgets to be Allocated	22,425	24,037	1,612
Apprentice Levy	1,029	1,029	0
Levies	37,915	37,912	(3)
Historic Pension Costs	7,316	7,272	(44)
Transfer to Budget Smoothing Reserve	2,000	2,000	0
Total Corporate Budgets	137,894	137,847	1,565

Corporate Budgets - Financial Headlines

- Following an initial analysis of utility costs and budgets, it is expected that the Inflationary Budgets will be over-allocated by £1.612m due to pressures caused by the ongoing increases in utility costs. The Consumer Prices Index (CPI) rose by 9.1% in the 12 months to May 2022, up from 9.0% in April.
- Historic pension costs have underspent by £44k (0.6%) due to a reducing number of recipients.
- £2m has been transferred to the Budget Smoothing Reserve from Children's relating to early achievement of savings for financial year 2023/24.

Corporate Resources £66k over-achievement

	Annual Budget £000	Outturn £000	Variance £000
Retained Business Rates	(158,337)	(158,337)	0
Council Tax	(208,965)	(208,965)	0
Other Specific Grants	(112,683)	(112,704)	(66)
Business Rates Grants	(77,216)	(77,216)	0
Use of Reserves	(141,522)	(141,522)	0
Total Corporate Resources	(698,678)	(698,744)	(66)

Corporate Resources - Financial Headlines

- Business Rates Collection as at the end of May is 24.9% which compares to 13.3% by this point in 21/22, 13.7% in 20/21 and 21.8% in 19/20.
- Council Tax Collection at the end of May is 17.3% which compares to 17.9% by this point in 21/22, 16.6% in 20/21 and 18.1% in 19/20.
- Other specific grants - Council Tax Subsidy was £63k higher than budgeted and £3k was under-accrued in 2021/22 for the Covid Welcome Back Fund.
- £110k of the Use of Reserves budget reflects the timing of the Business Rates S31 grants for Extended Retail Relief which was received in 2021/22 but is applied to offset the 2022/23 Collection Fund Deficit.
- Invoices paid within 30 days is 73% compared to a target of 95%.
- £4.7m (17.3%) of pursuable debt is over a year old and still to be recovered by the Council. Progress is being made in resolving outstanding disputes which are preventing payment.

Children's Services

3a. Children's and Education Services - £0.744m underspend

	Annual Budget £000	Actuals to P2 £000	Outturn £000	Variance £000
LAC Placements	45,646	2,689	43,419	(2,227)
LAC Placement Services	6,901	724	6,776	(125)
Permanence & Leaving Care	13,153	2581	13,506	354
Safeguarding Service Areas	35,955	6,600	36,185	230
Children's Safeguarding	101,655	12,594	99,887	(1,769)
Education Services	6,868	1,875	7,228	360
Home to School Transport	10,520	194	11,035	516
Targeted Youth Support Service	841	1	841	0
Education	18,228	2,070	19,105	876
Strategic Mgmt. & Business Support	5,752	605	5,900	148
Children's & Education Services	125,635	15,269	124,981	(744)

Children's and Education Services - Financial Headlines

The overall position as at Period 2 is forecasting a year end underspend of £0.744m, which is made up of:

- £2.227m Looked After Children (LAC) placement underspend – demand remains relatively stable and placements are 71 below the budgeted figure resulting in a gross underspend of £3.627m. This is reflected in a lower than budgeted recharge to Dedicated Schools Grant (£1.4m) and an underspend against Childrens budget (£2.277m).
- £125k LAC placement services underspend -the Regional Adoption Agency have reviewed their formula for allocating costs across partners which has reduced the contribution to the Agency.
- £354k Permanence and Leaving Care overspends mainly due to SGO placements being 11 higher than budget offset by smaller underspends in Child Arrangement Orders, Adoption Allowances and Supported Accommodation.
- £230k Children Safeguarding overspends based on staff and agency cover within Permanence offset by vacancies in EDS and Children's Commissioning.
- £0.876m Education services pressures mainly relates to pressures in Home to Schools Transport and short breaks.
- £148k overspend in Strategic Management and Business support
- Children's Social Care - Whilst demand for Children's Services has increased post lockdown this has not resulted in an increase in LAC placements due to the effective intervention and support being provided from first point of contact by the service. Increasingly effective commissioning activity with improved processes through liquid logic/Controcc and work with providers also underpins the current position. Despite a 28% increase in the City's child population since 2011 the number of looked after children has not increased at the same rate. There has been a successful reduction in the rate per ten thousand from 131 to 112. In terms of national comparisons between 2008 and 2020 Manchester saw a reduction of 2% in numbers of children and young people in care compared to a 35% increase nationally over same period. Based on current placement numbers remaining stable it is anticipated that the current in-year forecasted growth of £2m can be transferred to the Budget Smoothing Reserve from Children's to support early achievement of savings for financial year 2023/24. £1m of this transfer will be held to mitigate in-year Legal Services pressures.

Education Services - Home to School Transport has pressures of £0.617m and is based on the full-year effect of 2021/22 academic year routes, price increases, and the expectation that the number of routes and children accessing the service will increase in the Autumn term. This is a volatile service area, with difficulties with operator availability and pricing.

Home to School Transport has recently undertaken a service review. This work will help to shape and inform service transformation. It is expected that the review's recommendations will enable the service to manage down the current overspend in this area.

Outstanding Controcc debt (External residential and External Fostering) totals £1.483m at the end of May and is included in the forecast. There is a project team including Contracts, Financial Management, Procurement and an IT contractor to drive down the Aged Debt which meet weekly.

Children's Services – Dedicated Schools Grant

3b. Dedicated School Grant (DSG) - £4.652m forecast overspend

	Annual Budget £000	Actual to Date £000	Projected Outturn £000	Variance £000
Schools Block	197,772	34,142	197,772	0
Central Services Block	3,796	3,796	3,796	0
High Needs Block	101,365	14,244	103,315	1,950
Early Years Block	38,808	0	38,808	0
Recovery Plan	1,350	0	1,350	0
Total in-year	343,092	55,560	345,042	1,950
Deficit b/fwd.				2,702
Overall DSG position	343,092	55,650	345,042	4,652

Dedicated Schools Grant (DSG) in 2022/23 totals £632m, of which £289m is top sliced by the Department for Education (DfE) to pay for academy budgets. This includes additional supplementary grant funding for 2022/23 provided for the high needs block of £4.034m.

The DSG overall in year position is projecting to overspend by £1.950m in-year, primarily due to exponential levels of growth in the Education Health and Care Plans and special schools placements within the High Needs Block. The service is working on a detailed recovery plan for the high needs block, which focuses on managing demand and finding efficiencies that help to combat these pressures.

The early years block is funded to the local authorities on estimated pupil numbers and an adjustment is made to reflect any increases/decreases between January censuses (January 2022 and 2023). The final 2021/22 early years block allocation will be confirmed in July 2022, based on an adjustment for January 2022 census which was estimated in the 2021/22 outturn. For this financial year, an adjustment is expected in July 2022 to reflect the January 2022 census, whilst final early years allocations will be adjusted on the basis of Jan 22 and Jan 23 censuses in July 2023.

The deficit brought forward from previous years is £2.702m and has mainly been driven by overspends against the high needs block, and will need to be recovered in future years as part of the recovery plan.

Adult Social Care / Manchester Local Care Organisation

Adult Social Care and Population Health – Balanced budget

	Annual Budget £000	Outturn £000	Variance £000
Provider Services	29,466	30,221	755
Hospital Teams, Front door and TEC	3,374	3,322	(52)
Integrated Neighbourhood teams	44,057	45,654	1,597

Complex Services (LD, MH, Transition)	87,109	86,815	(294)
Commissioning MLCO	4,571	4,203	(368)
Back office, citywide support & growth	13,153	12,138	(1,015)
Total ASC Aligned Budget MLCO	181,729	182,352	623
MCC – Out of scope Population Health	43,752	43,200	(552)
MCC – Out of scope other	2,634	2,563	(71)
Total ASC and Population Health	228,115	228,115	0

Adult Social Care and Population Health - Financial Headlines

Overview of main variances – Balanced budget

The forecast is a balanced position. The key assumption is that clients in receipt of care at the end of May will remain in care until the end of the financial year. A rebase of the long-term care budgets and income budgets has taken place to reflect 2021/22 outturn activity, inclusive of the progress with Better Outcomes Better Lives (BOBL), with £3.2m offsetting against the £4m BOBL savings target. Financial planning within the BOBL programme is progressing with key practice and commissioning opportunities now identified within Learning Disability and Older People care blocks and work in development on Mental Health and Physical Disability. The forecast assumes an additional £0.7m of savings through the BOBL programme will be delivered by year-end. Recruitment into key staffing roles remains challenging and delivery of the savings opportunities is impacted. It is assumed all current vacancies currently out to recruitment will be filled by end of August, unless stated otherwise; there is full deployment of £12m funding for the annual uplift to the costs of care and this includes Real Living Wage (RLW) increases and that demographics will be spent in full, although no deployment is factored in for the care costs at Period 2. The Adults position continues to carry a significant amount of risk. Given the cost of high-end care packages, demographics funding can be easily eroded. In addition, there is a significant level of reserves built in to support the base budget until BOBL savings are delivered (£5.5m) and other non-recurrent funding, including approx. £2m supporting new care models. A memorandum of understanding is being finalised to ensure financial risk is minimised on health funding from the change from Manchester CCG into the GM ICS arrangements.

The main variances are summarised below:

Provider Services - £0.755m overspend

The pressure on Provider Services is driven in the main by an overspend on In-house Supported Accommodation of £1.558m, offset by underspends on Reablement and the Short-Term intervention team of £500k, Day Centres £205k and Equipment and Adaptations of £43k.

A review of internal Provider Services is underway, which will be informed by a wider commissioning review of supported accommodation and other LD services. The review will determine the number of places and type of accommodation which will be needed in the future. As at period 2, the service is supporting 172 clients across the internal provision with 16 void places available for future clients. Recruitment difficulties continue due to labour shortages in relation to lower graded support worker roles in the In-house Supported Accommodation service. 11 new starters have joined the service since March 2022 but the availability of vacancies across the wider jobs market is a challenge. The number of agency hours recorded is higher than the same period last year, with one less bank holiday as at end of May. An allowance for expected increased agency spend for the jubilee bank holiday has been built into the forecast for period 3. Once the long-standing fire safety remedial works are undertaken there should be some reduction to the overspend but it likely at least £1m will be a budget pressure still to be addressed and is reflective of additional capacity. Issues have been identified with the quality of the fire safety inspections carried out in 2021/22 with delays in supporting the service to progress this. Further assessments regarding the works required are now underway,

The forecast underspend on Reablement and the Short-Term Intervention Team is due to recruitment challenges. Where candidates have been offered roles, a three month start date has built into the forecast. Where posts are only just going out to recruitment, a six month timeframe has been allowed for. Recruitment into these roles will be important to support the BOBL savings. The underspend on day centres is again due to challenges regarding recruitment. Recruitment assumptions are that it will six months before the service will be fully staffed. The Equipment and Adaptations Service is also underspending due to ongoing recruitment challenges. Where possible agency staff have been brought in to cover mainstream vacancies whilst recruitment continues. Managers across all service areas are being supported by dedicated additional HR support. There is further support from Work and Skills and MAES, working with colleges and further

education providers to attract potential candidates to vacant roles, particularly grade 4 and grade 2 roles. £1m of the £5.5m planned use of reserves is set aside for further expansion in Reablement and MEAP.

Hospital Teams £52k underspend

There is a projected underspend on Hospital Social Worker budgets of £167k to year end. This reflects the ongoing difficulties in the recruitment and retention of qualified social workers. The reported position assumes posts will be filled by the end of August. This is offset by pressures on the Community Alarm budget due to increased overtime costs in their control room where staff are covering essential shifts due to a combination of unexpected absence and vacancies.

Integrated Neighbourhood Teams £1.597m overspend

The forecast year end overspend is driven by an overspend on residential and nursing budgets of £1.743m, homecare of £244k, direct payments of £187k, offset by underspends on other care budgets of £240k, and staffing of £337k. This reported position is following the re-alignment of income and expenditure budgets and reflects all known activity as at end of May. The reported position allows for £4.5m reserves drawdown in line with the 2022/23 financial plan.

The number of clients supported in residential and nursing provision is 911, which is an increase of 27 from outturn. There are a further 53 clients who remain on the CCG Broadcare system who are yet to undergo a Care Act assessment and could therefore transfer into social care. Costs of £0.582m have been included in the forecast for these clients as there is no further Hospital Discharge Programme (HDP) funding from the CCG to support. The increase in numbers and the removal of HDP funding results in a pressure of £1.743m.

As reported at outturn, client numbers across residential and nursing provision have been on an upward trajectory for the last twelve months, with a net increase of 121 since period 2 2021/22 to the present number of 911. Although the number of clients in residential and nursing provision remains lower than pre-COVID levels (998 at March 2020), numbers coming into the service are not slowing. Further work is underway to understand the drivers for this as community admission into residential and nursing provision is seen by the service as remaining low. Additional bed capacity is now in place across the city which will utilise a D2A (Discharge to Assess) model. The D2A model allows for timely discharge out of hospital into a care setting where a full care assessment regarding the clients' needs can take place. £1.534m of funding (representing 50% of the cost, with Manchester CCG also funding 50%) is fully committed in the projected spend position.

The number of homecare hours commissioned at period 2 is 29,367 which is almost a thousand hours a week higher than the position at the end of March of 28,389 and is the highest level since September 2021. The actual number of clients supported at period 2 is 1,915, which again is the highest level since September. Further work is underway to understand the changes in demand in 2021/22 as well as the current position. The projected outturn for 2022/23 is now therefore higher than the 2021/22 outturn, resulting in a pressure of £244k.

Some pressures remain within the homecare market. It should be noted however, that at the end of May, there was a significant push from hospitals to find appropriate packages for clients being discharged before the jubilee bank holiday weekend and most providers picked up packages quickly and safely resulting in only a limited number of individuals having to wait for a package of care. All the main homecare framework providers have now confirmed to the council they offer pay rates to their staff commensurate with the RLW. This will ensure all payments made to providers and backdated to 1st April, will be processed in line with a RLW equivalent increase. Any packages not picked up by the framework providers continue to be picked up by the safety net providers.

The direct payments budgets have been re-aligned as part of the budget exercise referenced above. A pressure of £187k remains on these budgets at this time. Individuals wishing to move from a homecare package to direct payments has dropped considerably, most likely due to homecare providers now on a more stable footing in certain areas of the city. Client numbers peaked at 422 towards the end of 2021/22 for Older Peoples and Physical Disability client numbers but have dropped back to 411 as at period 2. This compares with 400, 12 months ago.

There is a projected underspend on external day care and supported accommodation of £240k as the numbers attending the provision remain lower than before the pandemic. (120 clients at March 2020 and 105 as at May 2022). The position at period 2 is an increase of 16 clients from outturn and demonstrates that clients now have confidence to return to the service. The review of day care services will conclude in the Autumn having reviewed services provided both In-house and externally commissioned. The review will determine what type of service is needed for clients in the future.

There is a projected underspend on the main social worker budgets of £483k offset by pressures on specialist safeguarding roles of £146k. Both areas are struggling to recruit suitably qualified staff, with the main social worker budget

only expecting to be fully staffed for the second half of the year and the safeguarding team continuing to use external assessors, until permanent recruitment takes place.

Complex Services

- There is a forecast underspend of £294k across the complex services budgets, which breaks down as
 - an overspend of £152k on external learning disability packages,
 - an underspend of £107k on specialist learning disability social workers,
 - an underspend of £338k on mental health and other complex services.
- The reported position on the Learning Disability externally commissioned packages reflects the budget re-alignment exercise undertaken and referenced above. Planning for savings is progressing and this will need the service to be fully staffed to undertake the necessary reviews of care, working alongside commissioners to agree the best outcomes for clients and their families.
- There has been a net increase of 2 clients since outturn 2021/22, with the number of clients supported now totalling 1,158, which is 37 higher than May 2021. No demographic funding has been allocated to cover this increase in clients at this time.
- The pressure on learning disability care packages is off-set by an underspend of £338k on mental health packages. As reported throughout the previous year, client numbers across mental health services continue to fluctuate and this is on-going into the current year. Numbers have reduced by 15 since outturn across the main care provision of residential, nursing and supported accommodation. These numbers are now 684, compared to 699 at outturn. The figures have been verified by the service from panel funding decisions.

Commissioning

- The commissioning of Extra Care provision has a projected year end underspend of £368k. This is based on occupancy levels for the first few months of the year, with an assumption that all units will be at full occupancy from 1st July, and income levels will be equivalent to 2021/22 levels. Further work will take place to assess income levels as certainty around occupancy levels grows. There is an expectation that the new Extra care units which opened towards the end on the previous financial year will result in reduced numbers of individuals moving into residential care.

Back Office

- Back-office budgets have a projected year end underspend of £1.014m. This reflects:
 - £348k of BOBL investment not yet deployed in 2022/23, as investment plans are under development.
 - £419k of additional Reablement funding,
 - Staffing underspends on Business Support of £193k due to challenges across the recruitment market,
 - Commissioning and back office of £54k on staffing (recruitment delays) and support budgets.

The most significant budget within Back Office is the support for the implementation of the 2022/23 fee uplift to care providers including NLW and RLW. All providers across all sectors have been asked to support the desired outcome of being a RLW employer. Funding agreements to confirm their support are being received with commissioners actively chasing those who have not yet responded. The total funding set aside to support the sector is £12m. The £12m is modelled to cover providers to pay the NLW (£6m), the NI increase of 1.25% (£1m), 5% towards inflation costs (£1.9m) and then an additional amount to meet RLW pay rates. As at the end of May only £67k of funding has been directly applied to payments made for Apr-Jun, as providers are only now invoicing at their required rate and will be backdating.

Demographic funding of £1.880m is held within the budget but has not been utilised as at period 2. It is projected to be spent in the coming months as new clients enter the service.

Population Health

- Population Health have a projected underspend of £0.552m at year end. There are underspends on the staffing budgets of £148k due to vacant posts, external activity-based contracts (sexual health and drugs and alcohol) of £103k due to slightly less activity than defined by the contract and £300k for new schemes not yet started. A re-prioritisation of preventative schemes across Population Health is underway as the service start to transition away from a focus on Covid-19 and starts to implement the required changes to support the Marmot objectives.
- The other out of scope services have a projected underspend of £71k and reflect an underspend on the voluntary sector contracts management and Asylum budgets due to slippage on recruitment plans.

Neighbourhoods

5a. Neighbourhoods overall - £3.766m overspend

	Annual Budget £000	Outturn £000	Variance £000
Neighbourhood Management & Support	1,116	1,116	0
Operations and Commissioning	41,498	45,493	3,995
Parks, Leisure, Events and Youth	7,658	7,903	245
Compliance and Community Safety	11,182	10,816	(366)
Libraries, Galleries and Culture	9,349	9,241	(108)
Neighbourhood Area Teams	3,504	3,504	0
Other Neighbourhood Services	310	310	0
SUB TOTAL	74,617	78,383	3,766
Highways	17,771	17,771	0
SUMMARY TOTAL	92,388	96,154	3,766

Neighbourhoods Financial Headlines

Neighbourhood Services - £3.766m forecast overspend and the main variances are set out below:

Operations and Commissioning - £3.995m overspend – largely due to income shortfalls in off street-car parking and Christmas markets.

- £3.025m reduced off street car parking income due to a continued reduction in car park users following the pandemic, current pay on the day usage is around 72% of Pre pandemic levels, whilst season ticket sales are significantly down due to the change to increased hybrid working. Whilst the usage of car parks will be retained under review, there are restrictions on actions that can be taken to increase usage due to the competing priorities of income generation against the Carbon reduction priority.

Off street parking was brought in house in January 2020, c3 months before lockdowns started, the gross income was c.£14.7m, and costs were c£6.9m to provide an annual budgeted surplus of c£7.8m. This was put together based on car park performance during the joint venture arrangements and savings of net £4.1m were approved as part of the 2021/22 budget setting, this did assume that the parking usage would return to pre covid levels. Tariff changes are due to be implemented at the end of July, and these do better reflect the expectations of commuters and the shift away from season tickets sales, this includes revised early bird options, particularly around times that enables commuters more flexibility. Work is underway to review of both on street and off-street parking charges to ensure they are aligned to each other.

- £1.0m shortfall in Christmas Markets revenue due to the ongoing closure of Alberts Square and reduced scale of markets whilst the square undergoes improvements, work has been undertaken to identify alternative sites during the closure of Albert Square and this has led to Piccadilly Gardens usage being extended. It has not been possible to identify other sites to accommodate further markets and mitigate the loss of Albert Square. The losses due to closure are time limited, and should provide opportunities for increased income generation opportunities once the enlarged space is reopened.
- £187k underachievement of income for markets due to reduced income at Longsight £100k as the market struggle to recover to pre-pandemic levels of custom. The Arndale Market is currently

experiencing a c7% vacancy rate and a projected underachievement of £90k with Church Street experiencing a similar situation £30k. Piccadilly Market continues to benefit from permanent stalls and is forecasted to overachieve income by £33k.

- The advertising portfolio is reporting a balanced budget, the £450k approved savings from the proposed screen in Piccadilly Gardens are not able to be achieved due to redevelopment proposals and these are being mitigated in year through a combination of the annual inflationary uplift applied to the existing contracts and reprofiling of the contract amounts.
- Bereavement Services are projecting £200k higher than budget income this is due to the increased use of Manchester facilities and increased income from memorialisation.
- Fleet Services income is anticipated to be £17k above budget due to increased vehicle hires.

Parks, Leisure Events and Youth - £245k income shortfall

- The loss of income is attributed to the closure of facilities whilst undergoing refurbishment at both the Manchester Aquatic Centre (MAC) (£0.788m) and Abraham Moss (£53k) it is expected that the shortfall is time limited and is forecast to recover once the facilities re-open in 2023/24. This is offset by use of one off non utilisation of £0.6m set aside to support Covid recovery in the current financial year.

Compliance and Community Safety - £366k underspend

- This is due to staffing underspends of £366k due to vacant posts, the service is currently undergoing a redesign and it is anticipated that this will support the service in recruiting to all vacant posts later in the year.

Libraries, Galleries and Culture - £108k underspend

- The £108k underspend on Libraries is due to anticipated staffing underspends for the financial year. Galleries are reporting a balanced budget but there is also a risk of £120k should the claim for business rates discretionary be declined.

5 b. Homelessness – Breakeven

Homelessness	Annual Budget £000	Outturn £000	Variance £000
Singles Accommodation	2,140	2,011	(129)
B&B's (Room only)	4,823	5,330	507
Families Specialist Accommodation	323	274	(49)
Accommodation Total	7,286	7,615	329
Floating Support Service	1,867	1,731	(136)
Dispersed & Temporary Accommodation Management Fee	4,880	5,311	431
Dispersed Accommodation Total	6,747	7,042	295
Homeless Management	1,026	996	(30)
Homeless Assessment & Caseworkers	2,405	2,334	(71)
Homelessness PRS & Move On	1,660	1,232	(428)
Rough Sleepers In reach/Outreach	487	487	0
Tenancy Compliance	161	86	(75)
Homelessness Support Total	5,739	5,135	(604)
Commissioned Services	7,773	7,753	(20)
Commissioned Services Total	7,773	7,753	(20)
Total	27,545	27,545	0

Homelessness Financial Headlines

The reported position for Period 2 is a net breakeven position, despite this forecast position, the Homelessness budgets remain a high-risk area with significant demand pressures.

The Council is now embarking on a refreshed transformation programme as a different approach is vital to unlock some of the most intransigent system issues that are adversely impacting our residents. The focus of the projects is to:

- Increase the prevention of homelessness in Manchester
- Enhance the level of support to people who are at risk or find themselves homeless
- Improve the efficiency and effectiveness of sourcing temporary accommodation
- Provide a series of deliverable property options for the medium term to reduce the rising revenue cost of the service and identify more suitable provision
- Identifying Invest to save models
- Identifying and appraising longer term models of intervention
- Providing an independent and respected local government sector voice, which highlights good practice and positions the Council to access future funding opportunities

The assumptions within the breakeven reported forecast include;

- Numbers in Temporary Accommodation at the end of May remain consistent throughout the year and that any natural growth in demand will be offset by work undertaken in the Transformation Programme to increase prevention.
- Staff vacancies at present will not be filled until October unless start dates have been confirmed, where Agency spend is incurred to cover vacancies this has been assumed to continue at a cost of £149k. Workforce budgets in Homelessness are forecast to underspend by £420k.
- Current cost pressures in B&Bs reduce from September 2022 back to the same level as March 2022.

The key variances are;

Overview of main variances:

- Accommodation. Overspend of £329k, driven by the cost pressure in B&B due to the average cost of placements increasing due to increased demand because of the number of events in and around the City and the significant increase in the numbers supported in hotels since budget setting, the current forecast assumes that the average cost of a placement reduces to the same level as that in March 2022 from September to March. If this reduction is not seen and costs remain in line with May the forecast spend in this area will increase by a further £0.975m. In May 2022 the average number of families placed in B&Bs was 114 with a further 30 families in nightly paid accommodation. The number of singles in B&B in May averaged 132. The flow and availability of dispersed temporary accommodation has decreased and is impacting on the number of families in B&B, the numbers of presentations remain high, with over 11,607 presentations in 2021/22, an average of 967 per month, the average presentations for April and May are 898 (in line with presentations in this period last year). The current net cost of B&B provision is £183k (£9.5m per annum). A key feature of the current transformation programme is focussing on developing a better understanding of the B&B issue in Manchester and to introduce more effective strategies to improve the position
- Dispersed Accommodation. Overspend of £295k. It had been anticipated those past increases in weekly rates would stimulate supply of properties in this area to reduce the reliance on B&B accommodation. However, in recent months providers have withdrawn properties from the scheme to let on the open market as rents across Manchester continue to increase. The current housing subsidy loss to the Council is £137k per week (£7.1m p.a.). Placements at the end of May were 1,625. The District Homes Pilot is now fully operational with a further 400 properties transferred to District Homes management, reducing the housing subsidy loss incurred by MCC by £1.1m per annum.
- Homelessness Support. Underspend of £0.604m. The majority of underspend is in the Private Rented Sector Team. The team face the challenge of an extremely buoyant rental market and rents are rising rapidly across the city and Greater Manchester. As a result, market rents greatly exceed the local housing allowance making properties unaffordable for many households. This pressure means the team are having to place households further away from the city in order to ensure the property is affordable. However, based on current properties being allocated and with the team carrying 4 vacancies the service will underspend by £428k.

5c. Housing delivery and HRA –

Housing Revenue Account	Annual Budget	Net Actual Spend	Projected Outturn	Projected Variance from Budget	Movement from P
	£000	£000	£000	£000	£000
Housing Rents	-63,713	(9,796)	(62,497)	1,216	
Heating Income	-681	(19)	(681)	0	
PFI (Private Finance Initiative) Credit	-23,374	0	(23,374)	0	
Other Income	-979	(242)	(979)	0	
Funding From Investment Reserve	0	0	0	0	
Funding from General/MRR Reserves	-14,138	0	(14,138)	0	
Total Income	(102,885)	(10,057)	(101,669)	1,216	
Operational Housing R&M & Management Fee	24,038	60	25,797	1,759	
PFI Contractor Payments	33,041	4,726	33,146	105	
Communal Heating	1,019	-132	1,528	509	
Supervision and Management	6,455	405	6,352	(103)	
Contribution to Bad Debts	640	0	640	0	
Depreciation	18,991	0	18,991	0	
Other Expenditure	1,463	30	1,448	(15)	
Revenue Contribution to Capital Outlay (RCCO)	14,508	0	12,926	(1,582)	
Interest Payable and similar charges	2,730	0	2,730	0	
Total Expenditure	102,885	5,089	103,558	673	
Total HRA	0	(4,968)	1,889	1,889	
Movement in General/MRR Reserves	Opening Balance	Budgeted Adjustment	Forecast Closing Balance	Additional Adjustment	Forecast Closing Balance
	78,052	-14,138	63,914	-1,889	62,025

Housing Revenue Account - Financial Headlines

The HRA budget for 2022/23 included a contribution from reserves of £14.138m in order to balance the 2022/23 HRA budget. The forecast outturn position is that there is an overspend of £1.889m, which is made up as follows:

Overspends of £3.589m:

- A reduction in rental income of £1.216m due to the increased number of void properties and right to buy applications. The number of right to buy applications is higher than originally forecast, the budget assumed that c1.25% of stock would be subject to RTB, whilst currently the actual rate of applications is c£2.2%. Whilst voids are higher than forecast an improvement plan is now in place with the Council's repairs and maintenance contractor in order to reduce the number of voids by Autumn 2022.
- Higher than forecast costs of operational housing of £1.759m. This is mainly due to a combination of delays in delivery of savings that were identified as part the business case for bring housing management back in-house, and legal fees related to disrepair claims. Since bringing Northwards back in house, work has been done to reduce costs, particularly around accommodation costs, and there is work ongoing to review the existing target operating model and once this is concluded it will determine what/if any further savings can be achieved and the timescales for this.

- Increased communal heating charges £0.509m – due to the higher than forecast costs of gas, as part of the budget process heating charges were increased by 20%, and this is not sufficient to cover the actual increased costs of gas. Increased PFI contractor payments £105k – the PFI contracts are increased annually by inflation, the actual increase is higher than what was forecast as part of the budget setting process. Offset by Underspends of £1.7m:
 - Reduced RCCO costs £1.582m – due to slippage in the current years capital programme.
 - Reduced staffing costs £103k
 - Reduced payments to TMOs £15k

As part of the 2022/23 budget process the 30-year business plan was broadly in balance over the life of the plan, there are several issues that could potentially affect this, if mitigating actions are not identified to offset potential increased costs, they include: -

- Current high inflation rates and impact on contract costs
- Additional capital costs for integration of Northwards ICT, Woodward Court and carbon retrofit
- Any delay or reduction in delivery of planned savings.
- Final settlement of commercial details in respect of the repairs and maintenance contract

Given that the HRA is a ringfenced account and cannot be cross subsidised with the General Fund, the implications of the current high inflation rates will have an impact. There are several contracts whereby the contract is uplifted annually in line with inflationary indices, this includes the repairs and maintenance contracts and PFI Contracts. Whilst the 30 year business plan does make assumptions around inflation rates, and the impact on both income and expenditure the assumed rate was not as high as currently forecast. Work is ongoing to model the impact and implications on the business plan of the current high inflation rates. Looking forward there is likely to be additional asks of the HRA in respect of ensuring compliance with the Social Housing Bill and the Social Housing regulator, this will include building safety and decent homes 2. The impact is yet to be determined but it will require increased investment in the social housing stock.

Any surplus/deficit in year must be transferred to/from the HRA reserve. At year end, it is forecast that £16.027m will be transferred from reserves at year end, leaving £62.025m in the HRA General Reserve at the end of the year.

Growth and Development

Growth & Development	Annual Budget £000	Net actuals spend to P2 £000	Projected Outturn £000	Variance from budget £000
Investment Estate	(12,856)	4,093	(12,763)	93
Manchester Creative Digital Assets (MCDA)	0	778	0	0
Growth & Development	160	63	160	0
City Centre Regeneration	1,420	205	1,420	0
Housing & Residential Growth	1,167	(53)	1,074	(93)
Planning, Building Control & Licensing	(1,053)	(746)	(1,053)	0
Work & Skills	1,644	479	1,644	0
Manchester Adult Education Service (MAES)	0	(725)	0	0
Our Town Hall Project	0	289	0	0
Total Growth & Development	(9,518)	4,383	(9,518)	0

Growth and Development - Financial Headlines

Overview of main variances – Breakeven

Growth & Development is forecasting a net breakeven position, and the main variances are as follows: -

- Investment Estate - overspend of £93k**

Whilst the investment estate is only forecasting a small overspend of c£93k, there are some larger variances that make up the deficit and the largest deficit is a loss of income from Manchester Central of £0.764m, this is the rent income from the Convention centre and is forecast to be lower than budget due to event bookings not yet returning to Pre Covid levels.

Other pressures include, lower than forecast income for The Arndale Centre £118k, Wythenshawe Town Centre £154k and Barclays Computer Centre £142k. In addition to these reductions in rent, there is also a forecast increased requirement of c£0.5m for bad debt provision to cover potential non-payment issues across the estate as tenants try to recover from Covid.

The overspending areas are offset by staffing underspends of £108k, and additional income from across the estate (including Industrial sites, let land, Shops and Car Parks) of c£1.5m, this does include c£0.4m to reflect in year rent reviews.

- Housing & Residential Growth – underspend £93k**

A reduction in staffing costs of £73k, and £20k in running costs.

Corporate Core – Breakeven

Chief Executives	Annual Budget £000	Outturn £000	Variance £000	Movement since £000
Coroners and Registrars	2,253	2,149	(104)	0
Elections	1,082	1,082	0	0
Legal Services	9,684	9,414	(270)	0
Communications	3,233	3,213	(20)	0
Executive	955	955	0	0
Legal, Comms, Democratic Statutory Sub Total	17,207	16,813	(394)	0
Policy, Performance and Reform	14,200	14,280	80	0
Corporate Items	1,215	1,245	30	0
Chief Executives Total	32,622	32,338	(284)	0

Corporate Services	Annual Budget £000	Outturn £000	Variance £000	Movement since £000
Finance, Procurement, Commercial Gov.	7,806	7,721	(85)	0
Customer Services and Transactions	20,010	19,980	(30)	0
ICT (Information & Communication Technology)	14,921	15,009	88	0
Human Resources & OD (Organisational Development)	4,212	4,212	0	0
Audit, Risk and Resilience	1,384	1,354	(30)	0
Capital Progs, Operational Property, Facilities	15,665	16,006	341	0
Corporate Services Total	63,998	64,282	284	0
Total Corporate Core	96,620	96,620	0	0

Corporate Core - Financial Headlines

Corporate Core Forecast to Breakeven and the key variances are: -

- Coroners and Registrars £104k underspend due to additional income from civil ceremonies and registration of births and deaths.
- Legal Services £270k underspend due to underspends on employee budgets due to timing of recruitment to vacancies £470k, offset by £200k lower than forecast external income.
- Policy, Performance and Reform £80k overspend due to £283k reduced income on project activity , partially reduced by employee underspends of £153k due to timing and recruitment to vacancies.
- Finance, Procurement and Commercial Governance £85k underspend on employee budgets due to timing and recruitment to vacancies.
- Customer Services and Transactions £30k underspend – due to forecast staffing underspends.
- ICT - £88k overspend due to additional security contracts, in light of the heightened cyber security risks.
- Capital Programmes - £341k overspend due to, part year increased security costs for Wythenshawe Hall £141k, increased rates £54k delayed Operational Property savings £90k, security and other costs across the estate £69k, running costs in Facilities Management £92k partially offset by £55k underspend on employee budgets in Facilities Management and £50k increased income in capital programmes.

Directorate Savings Achievement - £4.447m medium risk

	Savings Target 2022/23			
	Low Risk £000	Medium Risk £000	High Risk £000	Total £000
Children's Services	292	0	0	292
Adult Social Care	560	3,326	0	3,886
Neighbourhoods Directorate	829	0	0	829
Homelessness	117	0	0	117
Growth and Development	59	0	0	59
Corporate Core	1,533	1,121	0	2,654
Total Budget Savings	3,390	4,447	0	7,837

Savings - Headlines

£7.837m approved savings, £4.447m (57%) are considered medium risk as follows:

£4.447m is medium risk as follows:

- Corporate Core - £1.121m. Operational property £0.821m and ICT £300k have both been mitigated this year due to a combination of underspends elsewhere in the service and an approved draw down from reserve for Operational Property. The operational property savings are time limited and 2023/24 is the final year before the savings come out in 204/25 following the reopening of the Town Hall.
- Adults - £3.326m. The detailed BOBL financial plan is being developed and the service are working to deliver the savings and cost reductions. Mitigation has been identified in-year from higher than budgeted income from means tested client contributions to care costs. A total of £0.7m is assumed achieved as part of the BOBL programme in 2022/23 with the remainder of the savings expected later on in the year and into 2023/24 financial years.

This page is intentionally left blank

Manchester City Council Report for Resolution

Report to: Executive – 22 July 2022

Subject: Capital Programme Update

Report of: Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer

Summary

In February each year the Executive receives a report on the capital budget for the forthcoming five financial years and approves a series of recommendations to Council for the approval of the capital programme. Proposals for the capital budget were presented to the Executive on 16th February 2022.

Throughout the year new and emerging projects are brought forward, as well as changes to on-going projects which require investment. The Capital Update Report informs members of these requests to increase the capital programme, seeks approval for those schemes that can be approved under authority delegated to the Executive and asks the Executive to recommend to Council proposals that require specific Council approval.

Recommendations

- (1) To recommend that the Council approve the following changes to Manchester City Council's capital programme:
 - Neighbourhoods – Manchester Aquatic Centre. A capital budget virement of £2.930m is requested, funded by borrowing via the Inflation Budget and a further capital budget increase of £0.070m, funded by borrowing.
 - Neighbourhoods – Indoor Leisure – Abraham Moss. A capital budget virement of £1.4m is requested, funded by borrowing via the Inflation Budget
 - Growth and Development – Hammerstone Road Depot. A capital budget virement of £2.320m is requested, funded by borrowing via the Inflation Budget and a further capital budget increase of £4.280m, funded by borrowing.
- (2) Under powers delegated to the Executive, to approve the following changes to the Council's capital programme:
 - Private Sector Housing – Housing Affordability Fund (HAF). A capital budget increase of £9.111m is requested, funded by £1.997 External Contribution – S106 and £7.114m Capital Receipts.

- Growth and Development - Essential Remediation Works at the City Art Gallery and Queens Park Conservation Studios. A capital budget increase of £4.5m is requested funded by Capital Receipts, also a capital budget virement of £1.950m funded from the Asset Management Programme (AMP) budget.
- ICT - Resident and Business Digital Experience (RBDxP). A capital budget decrease of £0.651m is requested and approval of a corresponding transfer of £0.651m to the revenue budget, funded by Capital Fund.
- ICT – Legal Services Case Management Replacement. A capital budget decrease of £0.450m is requested and approval of a corresponding transfer of £0.450m to the revenue budget, funded by Capital Fund.
- Public Sector Housing – Silk Street. A capital budget increase of £0.500m is requested, funded by HRA Reserve.
- Growth and Development – House of Sport. A capital budget reduction of £1.256m is requested funded by borrowing on an invest to save basis. A funding switch is also requested with £0.183m External contribution, £0.533m Invest to Save (Waterfall Fund) and £1.990m Capital receipts from a virement from Asset Management Programme (AMP) offsetting £2.706m of Borrowing on an invest to save basis.

(3) Executive is also asked to note:

- The virements in the programme of £3.249m as a result of virements from approved budgets
- The assurances the Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer will be required to provide as part of the proposed Levelling Up Fund bid.
- The update on This City, and the use of the existing revenue budget to continue to develop proposals for a second site.
- The change to the applicable mortgage rate, as detailed in section 7.

Wards Affected - Various

Environmental Impact Assessment - the impact of the decisions proposed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city

All capital projects are reviewed throughout the approval process with regard to the contribution they can make to Manchester being a Zero-Carbon City. Projects will not receive approval to incur costs unless the contribution to this target is appropriate.

Our Manchester Strategy outcomes	Contribution to the strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	Contributions to various areas of the economy including investment in ICT services, Housing, and leisure facilities.
A highly skilled city: world class and home-grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	Investment provides opportunities for the construction industry to bid for schemes that could provide employment opportunities at least for the duration of contracts
A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities	Improvements to services delivered to communities and enhanced ICT services.
A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit, work	Investment in cultural and leisure services and housing.
A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth	Through investment in ICT and the City's infrastructure of road networks and other travel routes.

Full details are in the body of the report, along with any implications for

- Equal Opportunities Policy
- Risk Management
- Legal Considerations

Financial Consequences – Revenue

The revenue budget of the City Council will increase by £1.101m, if the recommendations in this report are approved.

Financial Consequences – Capital

The recommendations in this report, if approved, will increase Manchester City Council's capital budget by £14.114m across the financial years as detailed in Appendix 1.

Contact Officers:

Name: Carol Culley
Position: Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer
Telephone: 0161 234 3406
E-mail: c.culley@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Tom Wilkinson
 Position: Deputy City Treasurer
 E-mail: tom.wilkinson@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Tim Seagrave
 Position: Group Finance Lead – Capital and Treasury Management
 Telephone: 0161 234 3445
 E-mail: t.seagrave@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Kirsty Cooper
 Position: Principal Finance Manager – Capital
 Telephone: 0161 234 3456
 E-mail: k.cooper@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection):

The following documents disclose important facts on which the report is based and have been relied upon in preparing the report. Copies of the background documents are available up to 4 years after the date of the meeting. If you would like a copy, please contact one of the contact officers above.

- Report to the Executive 16th February 2022 – Capital Strategy and Budget 2022/23 to 2024/25
- Report to the Executive 16th March 2022 - Capital Programme Update
- Report to the Executive 1st June 2022 – Capital Programme Update
- Report to the Executive 29th June 2022 – Capital Outturn Report

1.0 Introduction

- 1.1 This report outlines the requests for changes to the capital budget from 2022/23.

2.0 Background

- 2.1 In February each year the Executive receives a report on the capital budget for the forthcoming five financial years and approves a series of recommendations to Council for the approval of the five-year capital programme. Proposals for the capital budget were presented to the Executive on 16th February 2022.
- 2.2 The capital programme evolves throughout the financial year, and as new projects are developed, they will be reviewed under the current governance framework and recommendations made regarding whether they should be pursued.
- 2.3 The following requests for a change to the programme have been received since the previous report to the Executive on 29th June 2022. The impact of changes to the Capital Budget from previous reports are detailed in Appendix 2.
- 2.4 The capital programme budget was reset for 2022-23 and future years as part of the Capital 2021-22 Outturn report which came to Executive at the end of June.
- 2.5 Note that where requests are made in the report to switch funding from capital to revenue and to fund the revenue spend from the Capital Fund, this is a funding switch from within the capital programme and will not have a negative impact on the Fund itself.
- 2.6 For the changes requested below, the profile of the increase, decrease or virement is shown in Appendix 1 for each of the projects.

3.0 City Council's Proposals Requiring Specific Council Approval

- 3.1 The proposals which require Council approval are those which are funded by the use of reserves above a cumulative total of £10.0m, where the use of borrowing is required or a virement exceeds £1.0m.
The following proposals require Council approval for changes to the capital programme and are all for major schemes which will require funding from the inflation contingency to complete. As reported to the previous Executive, construction inflation is currently running at c. 20.2% which along with supply chain constraints, is placing considerable pressure on the capital programme. The following schemes have been fully reviewed prior to coming to committee with a request for additional funding.
- 3.2 Neighbourhoods – Manchester Aquatic Centre. Refurbishment works at the centre are currently ongoing. The cost plan has been further developed following detailed design work, the outcomes of surveys and investigation works, and returns from the supply chain for work packages. Costs have increased in the in the MEP (Mechanical / Electrical / Plumbing) package and across internal

finishes including the tiling and render packages. Costs for preliminaries and enabling works have also increased.

Following the successful application to host the World Para Swimming Championships in 2023, the programme has been rephased to enable this to happen, lengthening the programme from 108 weeks to 144 weeks with an associated increase in costs of £0.070m, particularly for preliminaries.

The total increase in costs is £3m. This will bring the total scheme cost to £33.455m. A capital budget virement of £0.996m in 2023/24, £1.934m in 2024/25, funded by borrowing via the Inflation Budget. A capital budget increase of £0.070m in 2025/26 is also requested, funded by Borrowing.

- 3.3 Neighbourhoods – Indoor Leisure – Abraham Moss. The provision of new indoor leisure facilities at Abraham Moss is a £24.7m approved scheme. The discovery of piles under site has created a 17-week delay and exposed the project to further inflation risk. The main contractor is procuring the construction packages in line with the procurement programme but the delay is resulting in additional inflation costs in labour and materials. A capital budget virement of £0.980m in 2022/23 and £0.420m in 2023/24 is requested, funded by borrowing via the Inflation Budget.
- 3.4 Growth and Development – Hammerstone Road Depot. The development of the Hammerstone Road depot is based on the need to consolidate the Council's depot facilities, with other depot sites expected to be released, reduce the maintenance costs associated with the sites, and provide carbon savings. The depot is a site with multiple users.

The Hammerstone Road depot is a key operational site due to its geographic location within the city. It is used to deliver a significant proportion of the waste and street cleansing services and is essential to the effective and efficient delivery of this and other operational services across the city. There are no viable alternative sites for the delivery of these services.

The development of the site also provides scope for expansion of the waste fleet to enable the Council to meet the anticipated requirements and changes within the national waste strategy.

The current depot is in a poor condition with issues arising that potentially compromise the effective day to day delivery of services. The scheme was projected to cost £25m. The cost plan and detailed design has now been progressed and have identified the requirement for some further works to the façade, roof and drainage. The combination of the change in scope, increased works required alongside inflationary pressures means that the budget will need to be increased as follows:

- Scope changes valued at £0.870m to cover improved low carbon / M&E specifications, additional planning requests and office changes
- The investigative works and surveys have identified a further £3.410m for the works to the façade, roof and drainage.
- Inflationary cost pressures of £2.320m.

A capital budget virement of £2.267m in 2023/24 and £0.053m in 2024/25 is requested, funded by borrowing via the Inflation Budget. A capital budget increase of £4.280m in 2024/25 is also requested, funded by Borrowing.

4.0 Proposals Not Requiring Specific Council Approval

- 4.1 The proposals which do not require Council approval and only require Executive approval are those which are funded by the use of external resources, use of capital receipts, use of reserves below £10.0m, where the proposal can be funded from existing revenue budgets or where the use of borrowing on a spend to save basis is required. The following proposals require Executive approval for changes to the City Council's capital programme:
- 4.2 Private Sector Housing – Housing Affordability Fund (HAF). Following the Council's approval of the Housing Affordability Policy Framework in December 2016, in October 2017 the Council's Executive agreed to establish the Housing Affordability Fund (HAF) to bring together in one place a range of funding streams targeted at the provision of affordable homes across a range of tenures. The HAF is to support schemes to enable them to be delivered by providing GAP funding, supplementing any existing grants, and funding already in place to get them off the ground and or deliver more quickly. The funding will be used as a form of 'top-up' for schemes that are still marginal due to low rental and sales values, with a goal to utilising the time limited Housing Receipts the council has received.
- 4.3 To date the fund has supported seven projects, contributing to the delivery of 139 affordable homes across a range of tenures, targeting different households, such as new build homes targeted for affordable home ownership and large properties purchased for families living in temporary accommodation. It is anticipated that this latest increase to the HAF will deliver further homes for families and individuals living in temporary accommodation. The scheme will regularly report back to the Housing Board to ensure the fund delivers maximum impact in terms of return, such as number of units to be delivered. A capital budget increase of £9.111m is requested, funded by £1.997m External Contribution – S106 and £7.114m Capital Receipts.
- 4.4 Growth and Development - Essential Remediation Works at the City Art Gallery and Queens Park Conservation Studios. The Council's Asset Management Plan earmarked £2m in 2022/23 to maintenance costs which were subject to the detailed design and survey works being carried out, including to ensure fit for purpose storage capacity at Queens Park (QP) and City Art Gallery (CAG). The building surveys have now been completed and a more extensive programme of safety and remediation works are required to continue to maintain both buildings as operational assets. The works required will be the most significant carried out since the last major refurbishment in 2000 and include addressing basement damp/water ingress, replacing electrical and mechanical parts (including CAG lifts), critical stone repairs and design (CAG) and roof works (QP).
- 4.5 The works will be critical in continuing to secure Galleries assets and maintaining public safety. Approval is sought to progress the feasibility works and to develop

a composite programme of works. As work progresses a second phase of works will be brought forward to address stone works.

A capital budget increase of £4.5m is requested in 2022-23 funded by Capital Receipts, also a capital budget virement of £1.950m funded from the Asset Management Programme (AMP) budget. 4.6

- 4.6 ICT - Resident and Business Digital Experience (RBDxP). In July 2021 Council approved a project budget of £5.228m to progress the RBDxP project which will transform the way the Council interacts with residents, businesses, and partners whilst improving efficiency. This will enable a more strategic approach to be taken to the replacement the business legacy applications that underpin critical statutory, resident facing services and have reached end of life, including the Customer Relationship Management System (CRM). Following an open tender process, the 'Technology and Implementation Partner,' and the 'Consultancy partner' have been selected. The original figures submitted to have been updated to reflect the actual costs through the procurement exercise. A capital budget decrease of £0.651m is requested and approval of a corresponding transfer of £0.651m to the revenue budget, funded by Capital Fund.
- 4.7 ICT - Legal Services Case Management Replacement. This project was originally approved in 2019 but the procurement process was put on hold whilst corporate consideration was being given to alternative systems (including the move from Google to M365) with which the system would need to integrate. Funding is now being sought, ahead of the renewed procurement exercise to progress the scheme. The Legal Case Management solution is deemed a business-critical system and will provide a resilient and secure system that will improve efficiency. It should be noted that the current system will no longer be supported from Jan 2023. A capital budget decrease of £0.450m is requested and approval of a corresponding transfer of £0.450m to the revenue budget, funded by Capital Fund
- 4.8 Public Sector Housing – Silk Street. The £12.8m project has seen increased cost pressures to labour rates, mechanical and electrical works and superstructure work packages. Although work has been done to mitigate the increased costs, due to the current market the project is still seeing an impact. A capital budget increase of £0.109m in 2022/23, £0.238m in 2023/24 and £0.153m in 2024/25 is requested, funded by HRA Reserve.
- 4.9 Growth and Development – House of Sport. There have been some changes to the scope of this project since the project was first approved at £8.420m. The scope changes were as a consequence of the scheme being reduced in scale in response to the impact of the Covid-19 Pandemic on new ways of working. This has resulted in some of the tenants reducing their office requirements and scaling back their operational needs. Accordingly, some of the office expansion plans have reduced in scale resulting in the overall cost of the scheme reducing to £7.164m.
- 4.10 A capital budget reduction of £1.256m is requested funded by borrowing on an invest to save basis. A funding switch is also requested with £0.183m External

contribution, £0.533m Invest to Save (Waterfall Fund) and £1.990m Capital from a virement from Asset Management Programme (AMP) offsetting £2.706m of Borrowing on an invest to save basis.

5.0 Virements from Approved Budgets

- 5.1 Capital budgets approved for an agreed programme pending allocation can seek approval under delegated powers from the Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer.
- 5.2 Approval has been given for £0.526m to be allocated for SEND Expansions – Birches, Lancs & Rodney House from Unallocated Education Basic Need budget. This project will deliver 44 additional school places across the 3 locations.
- 5.3 An allocation from Education Basic Need funding of £2.4m was approved for Manchester Enterprise Academy – September 2022 Bulge Class. This project will create an additional 60 bulge class places at Manchester Enterprise Academy to meet demand for year 7 pupils in September 2022.
- 5.4 Approval has been given for £0.109m for Urgent Repairs to Heating System at St. John's Primary School funded from grant funding within the Schools Maintenance budget. The heating system to the main building was intermittently breaking down due to evidence of magnesium (sludge) in the heating system. This request is for works to refurbish and fix the boiler and system
- 5.5 £0.214m from the unallocated Schools Maintenance budget has been approved for Urgent Repairs to Hall/Dining Room Roof at Broad Oak Primary School. The request is to replace the roof in the Hall/Dining room. The original flat felt clad roofs at the school are in poor condition resulting in rainwater accessing the school following heavy rain.

6.0 Levelling Up Fund Bid

- 6.1 As noted in a report to June's Executive, the Council is preparing a Levelling Up Fund bid as part of a wider strategic regeneration programme for Wythenshawe Town Centre. The bid is due to be submitted in July, and if successful the grant funding agreement will require the Council, via a declaration signed by the S151 Officer, to confirm that the Council has sufficient budget to deliver the scheme, and that any costs over and above the grant funding will be met by the Council. Any revenue funding requirements associated with the scheme must also be met by the Council. It is expected that the bid will include match funding from the Council to progress the scheme. If the bid is successful, a request for funding will be submitted to the Council's capital approval process and will be reported to members for approval.

7.0 Update on This City

- 7.1 Work is progressing well on the Phase 1 development for This City, Rodney Street in Ancoats & Beswick Ward, with scheme proposals submitted to planning for determination in autumn. In parallel, work has begun on developing proposals

for a second site, Postal Street in Piccadilly Ward, and funding is required to allow design work to progress. It is to be noted that there will be a detailed report being presented to the Executive on This City in September.

- 7.2 The Executive approved the creation of a revenue budget in June 2020, funded from the Housing Investment reserve, to provide working capital to the This City project. With costs incurred for the development of the first site at Postal Street now capitalised, it is intended to allocate some of the working capital funding to continued development of the next site at Postal St, prior to the full reset of the business plan due in September. The Executive are asked to note this funding approach.

8.0 Interest on mortgage

- 8.1 The Council has a number of historic mortgages, provided for specific regeneration schemes in the north of the city, which were equity share arrangements. Some of these mortgages have reached the end of the intended term, and so interest becomes payable on the outstanding amount. The Executive is required to publish the applicable interest rate for such mortgages, set in accordance with legislation.
- 8.2 For the purposes of charging interest on mortgages that the Council has provided, from the 31st March 2022 the applicable interest rate is 3.23%, being the higher of the local average debt rate and the national standard mortgage rate. The local average debt rate is the weighted average rate of the Council's long-term debt at that date.

9.0 Prudential Performance Indicators

- 9.1 If the recommendations in this report are approved the General Fund capital budget will increase by £14.114m across financial years, as detailed in Appendix 1.
- 9.2 This will also result in an increase in the prudential indicator for Capital Expenditure in corresponding years. Monitoring of all prudential indicators is included within the Capital Monitoring Report during the year.

10.0 Contributing to a Zero-Carbon City

- 10.1 All capital projects are reviewed throughout the approval process with regard to the contribution they can make to Manchester being a Zero-Carbon City. Projects will not receive approval to incur costs unless the contribution to this target is appropriate.

11.0 Contributing to the Our Manchester Strategy

(a) A thriving and sustainable city

- 11.1 Contributions to various areas of the economy including investment in ICT services, housing, and leisure facilities.

(b) A highly skilled city

- 11.2 Investment provides opportunities for the construction industry to bid for schemes that could provide employment opportunities at least for the duration of contracts.

(c) A progressive and equitable city

- 11.3 Improvements to services delivered to communities and enhanced ICT services.

(d) A liveable and low carbon city

- 11.4 Investment in cultural and leisure services and housing.

(e) A connected city

- 11.5 Through investment in ICT and the City's infrastructure of road networks and other travel routes.

12.0 Key Policies and Considerations

(a) Equal Opportunities

- 12.1 None.

(b) Risk Management

- 12.2 Risk management forms a key part of the governance process for all capital schemes. Risks will be managed on an ongoing and project-by-project basis, with wider programme risks also considered.

(c) Legal Considerations

- 12.3 The approvals set out in this report are in accordance with the Council's constitution.

13.0 Conclusions

- 13.1 The revenue budget of the City Council will increase by £1.101m, if the recommendations in this report are approved.
- 13.2 The capital budget of the City Council will increase by £14.114m, if the recommendations in this report are approved.

14.0 Recommendations

- 14.1 The recommendations appear at the front of this report.

This page is intentionally left blank

Appendix 1 – Requests for Adjustments to the Capital Budget Provision

Dept	Scheme	Funding	2022/23	2023/24	2024/25	Future	Total
			£'000	£'000	£'000	£'000	£'000
<u>Council Approval Requests</u>							
Neighbourhoods	Manchester Aquatic Centre	Borrowing		996	1,934	70	3,000
Neighbourhoods	Indoor Leisure - Abraham Moss	Borrowing	980	420			1,400
Growth and Development	Hammerstone Road Depot	Borrowing		2,267	4,333		6,600
Corporate Services	Inflation Budget	Borrowing	- 980	- 3,683	- 1,987		- 6,650
<u>Total Council Approval Requests</u>			0	0	4,280	70	4,350
<u>Executive Approval Requests</u>							
Private Sector Housing	Housing Affordability Fund (HAF)	External Contribution	1,997				1,997
Private Sector Housing	Housing Affordability Fund (HAF)	Capital Receipts	7,114				7,114
Growth and Development	Essential Remediation Works at the City	Capital Receipts	6,450				6,450

	Art Gallery and Queens Park Conservation Studios						
Growth and Development	Asset Management Programme	Capital Receipts	-1,950				- 1,950
ICT	Resident and Business Digital Experience	Borrowing reduction, funding switch via Capital Fund	- 651				- 651
ICT	Legal Services Case Management Replacement	Borrowing reduction, funding switch via Capital Fund	- 450				- 450
Public Sector Housing	Silk Street	HRA Reserves	109	238	153		500
Growth and Development	House of Sport	Borrowing on an Invest to Save Basis	- 3,962				- 3,962
Growth and Development	House of Sport	Capital Receipts	1,990				1,990
Growth and Development	House of Sport	Waterfall Fund	533				533
Growth and Development	House of Sport	External Contribution	183				183
Growth and Development	Asset Management Programme	Capital Receipts	-1,990				- 1,990
<u>Total Executive Approval Requests</u>			9,373	238	153	0	9,764

<u>Total Budget Adjustment Approvals</u>					
	9,373	238	4,433	70	14,114

This page is intentionally left blank

Appendix 2 – Capital Programme Budget 2021-25

	Approvals			
	Council	Executive	Delegated	Total
	£'000's			
Capital Outturn 2021/22		969,370		969,370
Capital Update Report 1st June 2022	11,905			11,905
Capital Update Report 22nd July 2022	4,350	17,110		21,460
Total Revised Budget	16,255	986,480	0	1,002,735

This page is intentionally left blank

Manchester City Council Report for Resolution

Report to: Environment and Climate Change Scrutiny Committee – 21 July 2022
Executive – 22 July 2022

Subject: Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan Review

Report of: Deputy Chief Executive & City Treasurer and City Solicitor

Summary

This report updates on progress made on the Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP) policy review and seeks comments from Members to inform finalisation of the review submission to government.

Recommendations

1. The Environment and Climate Change Scrutiny Committee is invited to comment on the report.
 2. The Executive is recommended to:
 - (1) Note the 'Case for a new Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan' document attached as Appendix 1 and associated appendices 2 to 6 has been submitted to the Secretary of State as a draft document subject to any comments from Manchester City Council ahead of the next Air Quality Administration Committee.
 - (2) Note that Cllr Tracey Rawlins as the Manchester City Council appointed representative on the Air Quality Administration Committee will represent Manchester City Council's comments;
 - (3) Note the initial screening undertaken to assess which protected characteristics are likely to be impacted by the new GM Clean Air Plan, and in scope for the Equalities Impact Assessment;
 - (4) Note the updated Do Minimum position for 2023 and 2025 and the forecasted points of exceedance in GM in 2023 and 2025; and
 - (5) Note the participatory policy development approach and the next steps for the GM CAP.
 - (6) Note the new 'ask' from Government to remove out-of-area operation by private hire drivers/vehicles to support the new GM Clean Air Plan;
 - (7) Note feedback from early engagement activity with vehicle owner representative groups;
 - (8) Note the NO₂ monitoring results and the exceedances of the annual mean across sites set up for GM CAP purposes between 2018 and 2021.
-

Wards Affected: All

Environmental Impact Assessment – the impact of the issues addressed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city

The GM CAP is a place-based solution to tackle roadside NO₂ which is expected to have a positive impact on carbon.

Equality, Diversity and Inclusion – the impact of the issues addressed in this report in meeting our Public Sector Equality Duty and broader equality commitments

The Equality Impact Assessment (EqIA) completed for the previous GM CAP concluded that improved air quality resulting from that CAP would have had a disproportionate benefit for many protected characteristic groups namely, pregnancy and maternity; older people, young people and children; those with disability or ill-health; and those from minority ethnic and faith groups who are more likely to live in deprived neighbourhoods. A new EqIA will be undertaken as part of the CAP review and equalities issues will inform the review and proposals developed.

Manchester Strategy outcomes	Summary of how this report aligns to the OMS/Contribution to the Strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	The GM Clean Air Plan aims to improve air quality across Greater Manchester. By doing so the city will become a more attractive place to live, work and visit and this is likely to support a stronger economy.
A highly skilled city: world class and home grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	Improved air quality will improve the city's liveability and increase its appeal to retain and attract talent.
A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities	Ensuring residents can access job opportunities and other facilities in a safe and healthy environment, will enable everyone to contribute to the success of the city.
A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit, work	Reducing congestion and air pollution will improve the attractiveness of the city, as well as supporting reduction in carbon emissions.
A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth	Investing in the city's transport infrastructure will increase competitiveness and productivity, and help drive growth.

Full details are in the body of the report, along with any implications for:

- Equal Opportunities Policy
- Risk Management
- Legal Considerations

Financial Consequences – Revenue

Initial Financial Case set out in Clean Air Plan OBC (March 2019), with all development and delivery costs to be covered by central Government.

Financial Consequences – Capital

Initial Financial Case set out in Clean Air Plan OBC (March 2019), with all development and delivery costs to be covered by central Government

Contact Officers:

Name: Carol Culley
Position: Deputy Chief Executive and City Treasurer
Telephone: 07717545785
E-mail: carol.culley@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Fiona Ledden
Position: City Solicitor
Telephone: 0161 234 3087
E-mail: fiona.ledden@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Phil Havenhand
Position: Head of Infrastructure and Environment
Telephone: 07818046368
E-mail: phil.havenhand@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection):

The following documents disclose important facts on which the report is based and have been relied upon in preparing the report. Copies of the background documents are available up to 4 years after the date of the meeting. If you would like a copy please contact one of the contact officers above.

- 1 July 2022, Report for AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – July 22 Update
- 23 March 2022, Report to the GM Air Quality Administration Committee (AQAC): GM Clean Air Plan-March 22 Update
- 28 February 2022, Report for AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – February 22 Update
- 2 February 2022, report to the GM Clean Air Charging Committee (CACC): GM Clean Air Plan – update to the temporary exemption qualification date for GM-licensed hackney carriages and private hire vehicles
- 20 January 2022, report to AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – A628/A57, Tameside – Trunk Road Charging Scheme update
- 20 January 2022, report to AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – Financial Support Scheme Jan 22 Update
- 20 January 2022, report to AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – Clean Air Zone Discount & Exemptions Applications
- 18 November 2021, report to AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – GM Clean Air Funds assessment mechanism

- 18 November 2021, report to CACC: GM Clean Air Plan – GM Clean Air Plan Policy updates
- 13 October 2021, report to AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – Operational Agreement for the Central Clean Air Service
- 13 October 2021, report to CACC: GM Clean Air Plan – Showmen’s Vehicle Exemption
- 13 October 2021, report to CACC: GM Clean Air Plan – Clean Air Zone daily charge refund policy
- 13 October 2021, report to CACC: GM Clean Air Plan – A628/A57, Tameside – Trunk Road Charging Scheme
- 21 September 2021, report to AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – Clean Air Zone: Camera and Sign Installation
- 21 September 2021, report to AQAC: GM Clean Air Plan – Bus Replacement Funds
- 28 July 2021 GM Clean Air Plan report to Executive and Appendices
- 17 February 2021, report to MCC Executive: GM Clean Air Plan: Consultation
- 31 January 2021, report to GMCA: GM Clean Air Plan: Consultation
- 9 September 2020, report to MCC Executive: Clean Air Plan and Minimum Licensing Standards for Taxis and Private Hire Vehicles
- 31 July 2020, report to GMCA: Clean Air Plan Update
- 3 July 2020 report to MCC Executive: Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan - Tackling Nitrogen Oxide Exceedances at the Roadside - Outline Business Case
- 29 May 2020, report to GMCA: Clean Air Plan Update
- 31 January 2020, report to GMCA: Clean Air Plan Update
- 26 Jul 2019, report to GMCA: Clean Air Plan Update
- 1 March 2019, report to GMCA: Greater Manchester’s Clean Air Plan – Tackling Nitrogen Dioxide Exceedances at the Roadside - Outline Business Case
- 11 January 2019, report to GMCA/AGMA: Clean Air Update
- 14 December 2018, report to GMCA: Clean Air Update
- 30 November 2018, report to GMCA: Clean Air Plan Update
- 26 October 2018, report to GMCA: GM Clean Air Plan Update on Local Air Quality Monitoring
- 15 November 2018, report to HPEOS Committee: Clean Air Update
- 16 August 2018, report to HPEOS Committee: GM Clean Air Plan Update
- UK plan for tackling roadside nitrogen dioxide concentrations, Defra and DfT, July 2017

1 Introduction

- 1.1 This report provides an update on progress made on the Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP) review.

2 Background

- 2.1 The Government has instructed many local authorities across the UK to take quick action to reduce harmful Nitrogen Dioxide (NO₂) levels following the Secretary of State (SoS) issuing a direction under the Environment Act 1995. In Greater Manchester, the 10 local authorities, the Greater Manchester Combined Authority (GMCA) and Transport for Greater Manchester (TfGM) are working together to develop a Clean Air Plan to tackle NO₂ Exceedances at the Roadside, herein known as Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP).
- 2.2 The development of the GM CAP is funded by Government and is overseen by Joint Air Quality Unit (JAQU), the joint DEFRA and DfT unit established to deliver national plans to improve air quality and meet legal limits. The costs related to the business case, implementation and operation of the GM CAP are either directly funded or underwritten by Government acting through JAQU and any net deficit over the life of the GM CAP will be covered by the New Burdens Doctrine, subject to a reasonableness test¹.
- 2.3 The GM CAP is a package of measures to deliver NO₂ reductions to within legal limits within the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest. The GMCA – Clean Air Final Plan report on 25 June 2021² endorsed the GM Final Clean Air Plan and policy following a review of all of the information gathered through the GM CAP consultation and wider data, evidence and modelling work. This included the GM Clean Air Plan Policy, that outlined the boundary, discounts, exemptions, daily charges of the proposed Clean Air Zone (CAZ) as well as the financial support packages offered towards upgrading to a compliant vehicle, including the eligibility criteria to be applied. The aim of the funding is to support an upgrade to a compliant vehicle and to mitigate the negative socio-economic effects of the GM CAZ.
- 2.4 Throughout the development of the GM Clean Air Plan the Authorities have made clear the expectation that the UK Government would support the plans through:
- Clear arrangements and funding to develop workable, local vehicle scrappage / upgrade measures;
 - Short term effective interventions in vehicle and technology manufacturing and distribution, led by national Government;
 - Replacement of non-compliant buses; and

¹ The new burdens doctrine is part of a suite of measures to ensure Council Tax payers do not face excessive increases. [New burdens doctrine: guidance for government departments - GOV.UK \(www.gov.uk\)](https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/new-burdens-doctrine-guidance-for-government-departments)

² Also considered by the GM authorities through their own constitutional decision-making arrangements.

- A clear instruction to Highways England³ to implement measures which deliver compliance with legal limits for NO₂ on the strategic road network, for which they are responsible, in the shortest possible time⁴.
- 2.5 The GMCA Clean Air Update report of 29 May 2020 detailed that in March 2020 the government provided initial funding of £41m for clean vehicle funds to award grants or loans to eligible businesses: £15.4m for bus retrofit, £10.7m for Private Hire Vehicles, £8m for HGVs, £4.6m for coaches and £2.1m for minibuses. These figures include Joint Air Quality Unit (JAQU) estimated delivery costs at 5%.
- 2.6 The GMCA – Clean Air Final Plan report detailed that GM had been awarded £14.11m for Hackney Carriages and £73.5m for Light Goods Vehicles. The Hackney Carriage award comprises £10.61m to support grants and loans to upgrade vehicles. These figures include JAQU estimated delivery costs at 5%.
- 2.7 The 25 June 2021 GMCA report set out that the Air Quality Administration Committee has the authority to establish and distribute the funds set out in the agreed GM Clean Air Plan policy.
- 2.8 On 21 September the Air Quality Administration Committee approved the establishment and distribution of the bus replacement funds.
- 2.9 On 13 October the Air Quality Administration Committee agreed the distribution of Clean Air funds set out in the agreed GM Clean Air Plan policy as follows:
 - From 30 November 2021 applications for funding would open for HGVs.
 - Opened the funds to applications from LGV, Hackney, PHV and Minibus owners who were detrimentally impacted by the decision of the AQAC to defer the wider opening of the Financial Support Scheme.
- 2.10 On 18 November 2021 the Air Quality Administration Committee agreed the assessment mechanism to allow for Clean Air Funds to be adapted, if necessary (including a process for considering whether additional funding is required), if the impacts of the Clean Air Zone prove to be more severe than forecast once opened.
- 2.11 On 20 January 2022 the Air Quality Administration Committee considered the findings of an initial review of conditions within the supply chain of Light Good Vehicles which is impacting the availability of compliant vehicles. The

³ On 19 August 2021 it was announced that Highways England changed its name to 'National Highways' reflecting the new focus the company has on delivering the government's £27bn strategic roads investment programme, while also continuing to set highways standards for the whole UK.

⁴ GM Authorities are directed to take action on the local road network. Those roads managed by National Highways, such as motorways and trunk roads are excluded from the Clean Air Plan.

Committee agreed that a request should be made to the Secretary of State (SoS) for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs to agree to pause the opening of the next phase of Clean Air Funds to enable an urgent and fundamental joint policy review with Government to identify how a revised policy can be agreed to deal with the supply issues and local businesses' ability to comply with the GM CAP.

- 2.12 On 28 February 2022 the Air Quality Administration Committee noted that Government had issued a new direction and that a revised plan is required to be submitted to the SoS by 1st of July. The committee also noted the interim arrangements for the Clean Air Zone in the meantime, including signage, funding and discount/exemption applications.
- 2.13 On 23 March 2022 the Air Quality Administration Committee noted the scope of the review of the Clean Air Plan and the participatory policy development approach, as well as delivery arrangements, including signage and funding.
- 2.14 On 1 July 2022 the Air Quality Administration Committee noted the 'Case for a new Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan' document and associated appendices would be submitted to the Secretary of State on the 1 July as a draft document subject to any comments of Greater Manchester local authorities.

3 Overview

- 3.1 Poor air quality is a significant public health issue, causing certain types of disease and in Greater Manchester contributing to 1,200 deaths a year.
- 3.2 Improving air quality is a key objective for Manchester City Council and forms a fundamental part of several of our major strategies, policies and action plans for the city, including Our Manchester; the Climate Change Action Plan; the City Centre Transport Strategy and Manchester 5-Year Delivery Plan under the GM 2040 Transport Strategy; the GM Air Quality Action Plan (including the range of action outside of the GM Clean Air Plan); and Green & Blue Infrastructure Strategy, amongst others.
- 3.3 Air pollution particularly affects the most vulnerable in society: children, the elderly, and those with existing health conditions. Low-income communities are more affected by air pollution because areas with poor air quality are also often less affluent areas. Conditions caused or exacerbated by air pollution may significantly reduce quality of life and can result in affected people being less able to work, attend education or carry out their normal daily lives. These impacts in turn widen the health inequality gap further.
- 3.4 The report *Build Back Fairer in Greater Manchester: Health Equity and Dignified Lives* (otherwise known as the Marmot report) highlighted several points that align with and demonstrate, in the context of public health, equalities and the particular challenges faced by Manchester, the importance of addressing air quality alongside wider measures to enhance sustainable transport across the city. This includes the following observations:

- Transport poverty relates to the affordability and accessibility of transport. Low-income neighbourhoods served by unreliable public transport causes a significant barrier to employment.
 - Achieving long-term, equitable and sustainable changes in transport requires more than equitable provision of active transport and clean public transport.
 - Increases in both active travel (cycling and walking) and public transport are needed to improve health and reduce health inequalities.
- 3.5 Government has issued directions to local authorities in the UK, including those in Greater Manchester, to take action to address illegal exceedances of Nitrogen Dioxide (NO₂) in the shortest possible time and, initially in the case of GM, by 2024 at the latest.
- 3.6 Greater Manchester authorities kept the original GM Clean Air Plan, agreed in Summer 2021, under constant review; by tracking emerging evidence and listening to GM businesses and residents who said that it would cause them financial hardship. In late 2021 GM authorities commissioned an independent review of emerging global supply chain issues and the impact this could have on the cost and availability of vehicles, particularly vans.
- 3.7 The review illustrated that the previous agreed plan in summer 2021 would cause businesses and residents financial hardship and the Government agreed with Greater Manchester's assessment that the plan was no longer likely to achieve compliance in 2024 due to the impact of the pandemic and the supply chain issues for compliant vehicles.
- 3.8 The Government revoked the direction requiring the implementation of a category C charging Clean Air Zone so as to achieve compliance with legal limits for NO₂ in the shortest possible time and by 2024 at the latest and Greater Manchester is now required by 1st July 2022 to review existing measures, determine if any changes should be made and to submit that review to the Secretary of State.
- 3.9 A new plan must be deliverable and reduce NO₂ concentrations to below legal limits in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest, in a way that recognises the cost-of-living crisis and post pandemic economic conditions. This new plan aims to be both fair to businesses and residents and should not cause financial hardship to people in Greater Manchester.
- 3.10 The new plan will use the £120 million of Clean Air funding that the Government has awarded to Greater Manchester to deliver an investment led approach to invest in vehicle upgrades, rather than imposing daily charges and in particular through the delivery of zero emission buses in the Bee Network (a London-style integrated transport network). The new plan will ensure that the reduction of harmful emissions is at the centre of GM's wider objectives.
- 3.11 The ten GM local authorities have taken a GM-wide approach to producing a Clean Air Plan because air pollution does not respect local authority

boundaries, particularly across densely populated urban areas. This enables a consistent and coordinated approach to maximise air quality benefits for all people living and working in Greater Manchester; whilst minimising the risk of unintended consequences, such as displacing existing, elevated NO₂ concentrations to other locations within Greater Manchester.

4 Why a new plan?

4.1 A number of factors mean the original GM CAP (comprising a blanket measure across the city-region in the form of a charging CAZ C) is no longer the right solution to achieve compliance:

- The NO₂ forecasts show that the number of sites in exceedance reduces over time, moving from a GM-wide problem in 2023 to a localised problem from 2025 focused on the regional centre.
- The cost of living and post-pandemic economic circumstances in GM needs to be considered in developing the right solution.
- Global supply chain issues and the impact this is having on the cost and availability of compliant vehicles.
- GM-led investment in the Bee Network (the GM wide sustainable transport network) from now to 2027 and sustainable clean vehicles including Zero Emission Bus (ZEB).
- Confirmation of bus franchising - From September 2023 at least 50 new zero emission buses will be brought into service with the launch of the regulated bus system in Wigan and Bolton.
- ZEBRA funding awarded – 170 zero emission buses – equal to 10% of the whole bus fleet in the city-region – running from Stockport by 2024.
- City Region Sustainable Transport Settlement (CRSTS) funding, which provides significant benefits from delivering zero emission buses, £115m earmarked for a third of the bus fleet in GM to be zero emission by 2027.

5 Core objectives of the new Clean Air Plan

5.1 The new GM CAP will target investment in vehicle upgrades rather than imposing daily charges, identified as contributing to where NO₂ exceedances have been modelled. The plan's core objectives are:

- To reduce NO₂ concentrations to below the legal limits in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest;
- Achieve compliance in a way that is fair to businesses and residents, and does not damage business or cause financial hardship to people in Greater Manchester; and
- Ensure the reduction of harmful emissions is at the centre of GM's wider objective for delivering the Bee Network.

6 A strong track record of delivering the right solutions for GM

- 6.1 Tackling the issue of poor air quality in GM is not a new phenomenon. GM has a strong history of collaborative working to secure a sustainable transport system that also tackles the issue of poor air quality. The Clean Air Plan will run alongside existing strategies, commitments and investments to achieve sustainable transport, contributing to better air quality:
- Five-Year Transport Delivery Plan (2021-26)⁵ – sets out the practical actions planned to deliver the 2040 Transport Strategy over this five-year period.
 - City Centre Transport Strategy⁶
 - GM 5-Year Environment Plan⁷
 - EV Charging Strategy⁸
- 6.2 Over the past decade, combined Greater Manchester investment in public transport has been second only to London. Using a blend of funding sources, both local and national, GM has delivered a range of key transport infrastructure projects that have helped drive GM's regional and local economies. These include: Metrolink expansion and improvements, bus priority, smart ticketing and information systems, park and ride sites across the conurbation, channelling investment of around £200m each year to radically enhance clean public transport.
- 6.3 This built on the ground-breaking £1.5bn GM Transport Fund, established by the ten GM local authorities, which paid for the massive expansion of the Metrolink network, the Leigh Salford Manchester guided busway, as well as key transport interchanges, supporting town centres and regeneration efforts across the conurbation.
- 6.4 The forthcoming City Region Sustainable Transport Fund, of around £1.2bn will further expand and integrate the network, focusing on improvements to bus routes, funding zero emission fleets and providing further investment in GM's rapidly expanding cycling and walking network.

7 Participatory approach to the development of the new plan

- 7.1 GM leaders have committed to a participatory approach to the development of the new Plan to ensure that GM's proposals are well-grounded in evidence in terms of the circumstances of affected groups and possible impacts of the Plan on them, and therefore the deliverability and effectiveness of that Plan.
- 7.2 As part of the previous GM Clean Air Plan, Greater Manchester secured £120m funding to support those with the most polluting vehicles to upgrade. The Clean Air Funds policy and allocations were designed based on a GM-

⁵ [Our Five Year Transport Delivery Plan | Transport for Greater Manchester \(tfgm.com\)](https://www.tfgm.com/our-five-year-transport-delivery-plan)

⁶ [City Centre Transport Strategy | Transport for Greater Manchester \(tfgm.com\)](https://www.tfgm.com/city-centre-transport-strategy)

⁷ [Five-Year Environment Plan - Greater Manchester Combined Authority \(greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk\)](https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/five-year-environment-plan)

⁸ [Greater Manchester's EV charging strategy | TfGM Electric Travel](https://www.tfgm.com/ev-charging-strategy)

wide Category C Clean Air Zone and including HGV, Taxi, PHV, Coaches and Minibuses and LGVs. The funding package and levels were based on an analysis in 2020 and 2021, prior to the cost-of-living crisis and supply chain issues for certain vehicles.

- 7.3 Government has indicated that this funding will continue to be available to support the new plan and the right funding for the vehicle upgrades needed to secure compliance is a significant component of the investment led approach. Government and Greater Manchester have expressed a desire to release funding to tackle NO₂ emissions as soon as possible. As part of the Policy Development Process, it is critical that the scope of these funds, the levels and application criteria provide the right incentive for those who GM need to upgrade from non-compliant to compliant vehicles to do so. This will require an evidence-based approach developed in consultation with those business and trade representatives who are best placed to understand how the changes required in the new plan can be secured.
- 7.4 The purpose of engagement, following submission of the draft plan in July 2022 is to:
- Seek views on the elements of the GM's proposals addressing economic conditions as well as evidence submissions on vehicle types.
 - Support an early understanding around impacts and any unintended consequences.
 - Inform the ongoing plan for engagement around the plan as detail develops, including consideration of future consultation requirements.

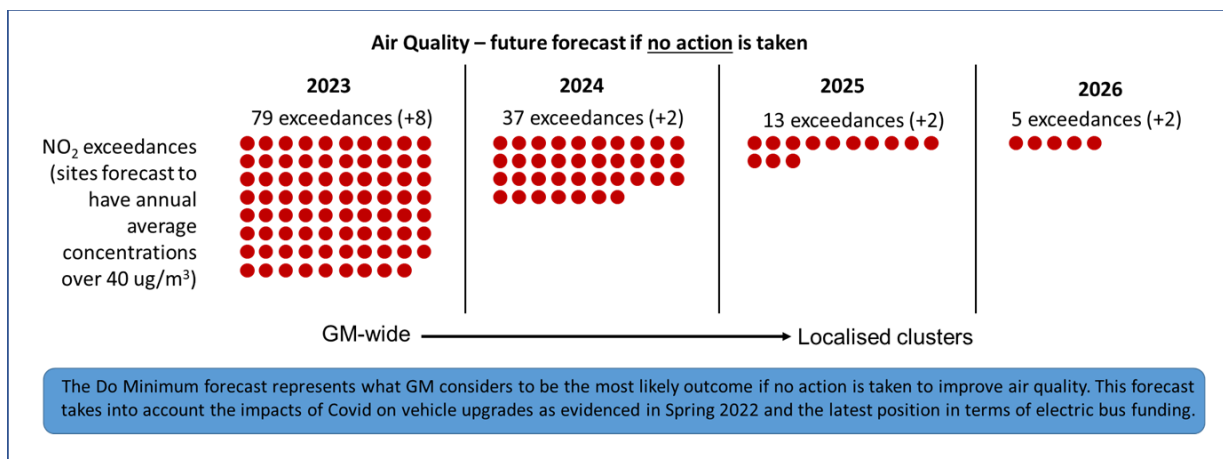
8 The way forward: an investment led non charging Clean Air Plan

- 8.1 The primary focus of the new plan is to achieve compliance in a way that considers the current cost of living crisis and associated economic challenge faced by businesses and residents. An investment-led approach will be combined with all the wider measures that GM is implementing and aims to reduce NO₂ emissions to within legal limits, in the shortest possible time and at the latest by 2026. Unlike the previous charging-led scheme defined by Government guidance, the investment-led scheme seeks to factor in the cost-of-living crisis, it will actively consider the impacts of the pandemic and wider global economic instability on supply chains, will be delivered from 2023, and crucially considers the significant beneficial effects that the delivery of electric bus can have along key routes. In particular:
- The **cost-of-living crisis** means that businesses are less able to afford to invest in vehicle upgrades, whilst households are less able to absorb any costs that may be passed on to them.
 - This is exacerbated by **rising vehicle prices** and – for some vehicle types – lower residual values of non-compliant vehicles. There is evidence that illustrates the demand for new and compliant second-hand vehicles is exceeding supply, leading to longer wait times and rising prices.

- A charging Clean Air Zone could therefore cause **unacceptable financial hardship** and contribute to business failures and the evidence suggests is less likely to succeed due to the changes in vehicle markets outlined.
- In addition, **new opportunities have arisen** – via the approval of bus franchising and new funding for electric buses – this means that GM has the opportunity to tackle emissions in a different way.
- The exceedances become more localised in 2025 and 2026, therefore **action can be targeted** at those locations suffering the worst air quality.
- It is clear that the GM-wide Clean Air Zone category C as approved in summer 2021 could lead to hardship in GM and that implementing a materially revised charging CAZ, for example with a different boundary, vehicles in scope or discounts and exemptions, would take time to design and consult upon and then implement.

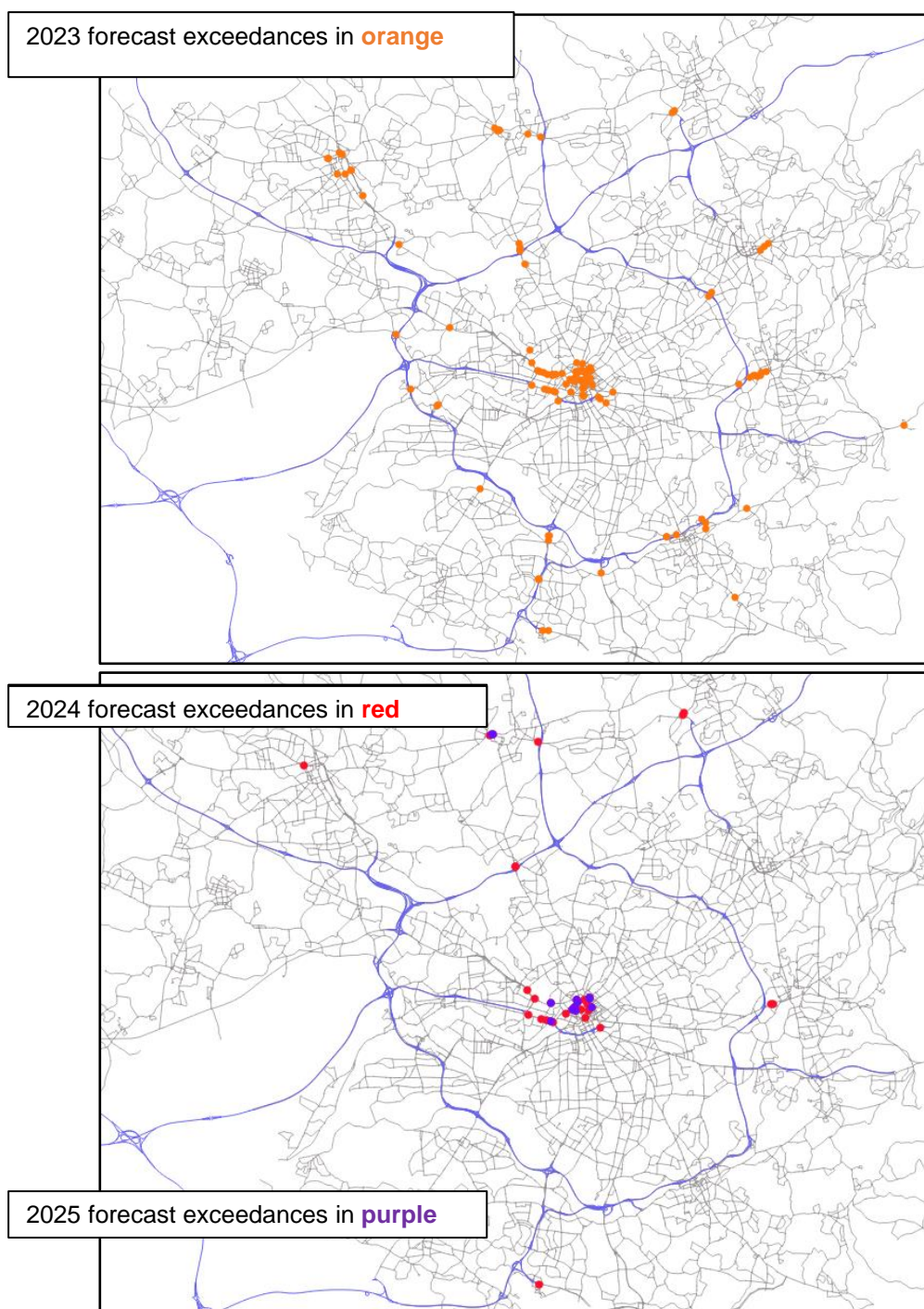
9 NO₂ Exceedances forecast 2023-2026

- 9.1 GM has forecast expected NO₂ exceedances in each future year to 2027, if no further action is taken. The forecasts show that the number of sites in exceedance reduces over time, moving from a GM-wide problem in 2023 to a localised problem from 2025 focussed on the regional centre.
- 9.2 The GM CAP needs to be targeted at reducing NO₂ concentrations at the last remaining locations of non-compliance.



9.3 NO₂ Forecast in 2023:

- 79 exceedances in total.
- Exceedances in 9 out of 10 authorities (all except Wigan).

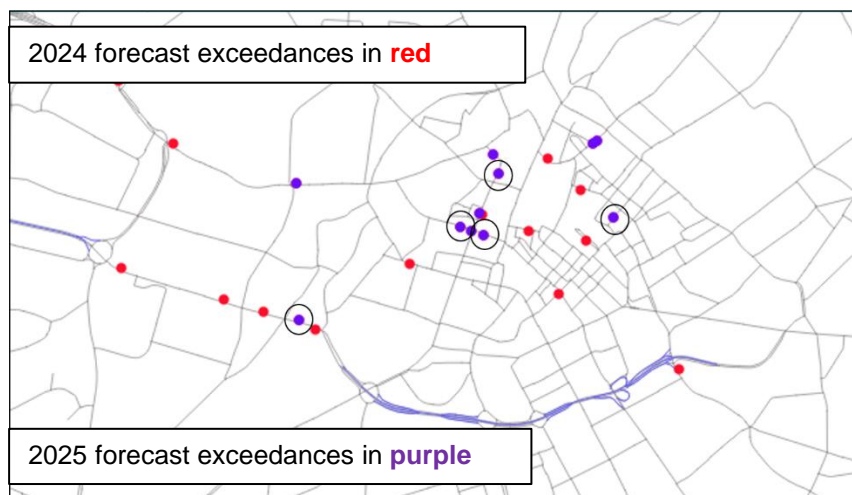


9.4 NO₂ Forecast in 2024 and 2025:

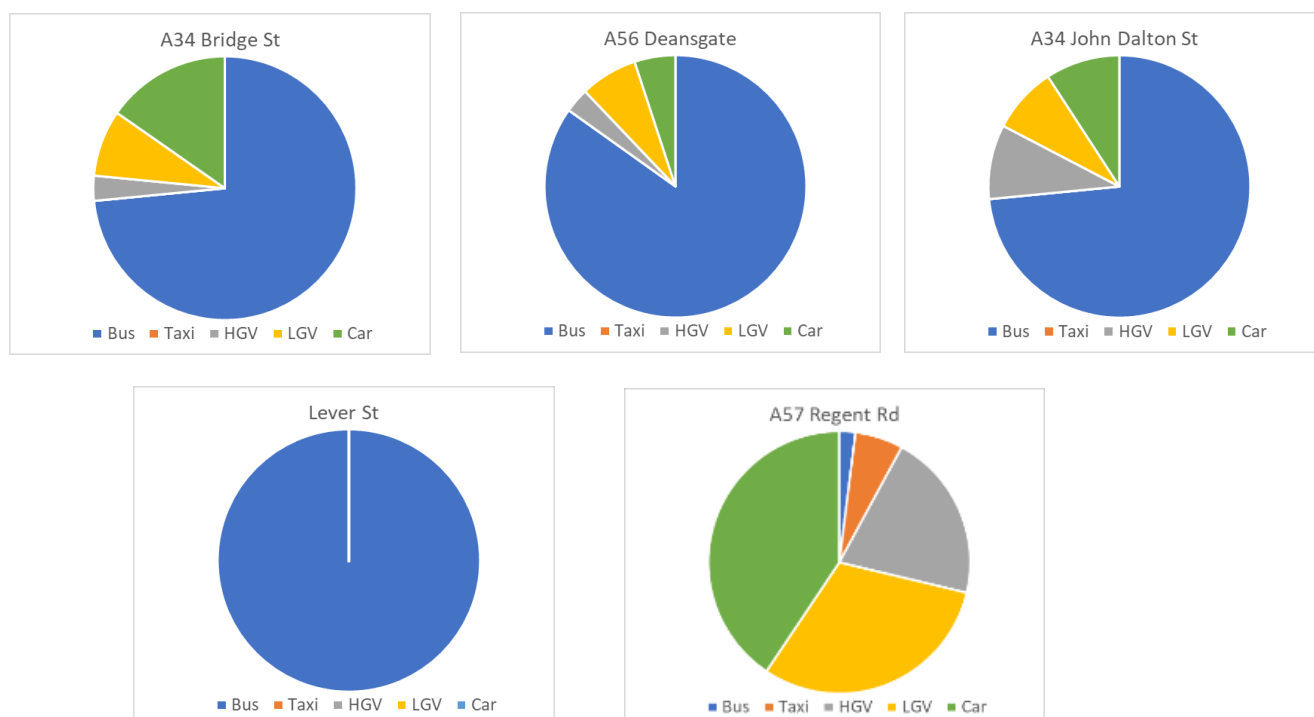
- 37 exceedances in 2024, 13 exceedances by 2025.
- By 2024, Oldham, Stockport, Trafford and Wigan are expected to be compliant.
- By 2025, Bolton, Rochdale and Tameside are also expected to be compliant.
- Exceedances remain in Bury, Manchester and Salford in 2025.

9.5 NO₂ Forecast of last remaining sites in 2026:

- By 2025, exceedances found only in Manchester and Salford and at Bury Bridge.
- By 2026, Bury Bridge is expected to be compliant.
- The last remaining sites in 2026 are at the A57 Regent Rd, A34 John Dalton / Bridge St, A56 Deansgate, and Lever St (circled).
- Natural compliance forecast in 2027.



9.6 City Centre emissions



- At the four city centre sites that are forecast to remain non-compliant in 2025, bus accounts for over 70% of emissions, meaning that electric buses could be very effective in improving air quality.⁹

- In contrast, Regent Road has very few buses running on it and acts as a major strategic route for commercial vehicles – with particularly high volumes of HGVs – and cars heading to the city centre and inner ring road.

9.7 The analysis and evidence set out in sections 8 and 9 support the case for targeted action at exceedance points, through a non-charging investment-led Clean Air Plan, in the context of the current cost of living crisis and issues identified with the previous plan.

10 NO₂ Monitoring Results 2021

10.1 Greater Manchester undertakes NO₂ monitoring to determine compliance with NO₂ legal limit values in accordance with GM CAP and Government direction and the 10 districts also monitor NO₂ in accordance with the requirements of the Environment Act 1995 and associated statutory guidance, also called Local Air Quality Management or 'LAQM'.

10.2 The two monitoring regimes have different siting criteria to assess exposure in different types of locations. The GM CAP monitoring assesses exposure as defined by the Air Quality Standards Regulations (England) 2010 limit values, with roadside being typically worst-case and hence the focus for monitoring. The LAQM monitoring is concerned with exposure at locations of relevant public exposure¹⁰ where the Air Quality Objectives apply, which can include the roadside but only in exceptional circumstances. LAQM monitoring also includes measurements at background¹¹ and industrial locations and is not limited to road traffic sources.

10.3 Additionally, the two regimes have different values by which they determine an exceedance. LAQM determines that the legal limit of 40µg/m³ has been exceeded by any result over 39.9µg/m³¹², whereas for the GM CAP, JAQU (Government's Joint Air Quality Unit,) determine anything over 40.4µg/m³ to be an exceedance¹³. These differences in definition should be taken into

⁹ NOTE: The relative taxi contributions are under-estimated, and car emissions over-estimated inside the Regional Centre Inner Relief Route. Further detailed analysis will be undertaken for a substantial city-centre Electric Taxi policy.

¹⁰ All locations where members of the public might be regularly exposed. Building façades of residential properties, schools, hospitals, care homes etc. Kerbside locations are on the whole excluded, unless members of the public are likely to be exposed for longer than the time used to determine the legal limit for the pollutant concerned. Box 1.1 for TG16 give more detail [LAQM-TG16-April-21-v1.pdf \(defra.gov.uk\)](#)

¹¹ Background sites are used to provide useful information such as long-term trends, general population exposure and an indication of reduction in pollution away from roadside sources, as opposed to measuring exceedances.

¹² An exceedance defines a period of time during which the concentration of a pollutant is greater than, or equal to, the appropriate air quality criteria. For Air Quality Standards, an exceedance is a concentration greater than the Standard value. For Air Pollution Bandings, an exceedance is a concentration greater than, or equal to, the upper band threshold. <https://uk-air.defra.gov.uk/air-pollution/glossary#E>

¹³ The IPR guidance underpinning the Air Quality Standards Regulations 2010 stipulates that compliance should be assessed using data of 'the same numeric accuracy' as the limit value, therefore a value of 40.4ug/m³ is rounded down to 40ug/m³ and is not exceeding. https://ec.europa.eu/environment/air/quality/legislation/pdf/IPR_guidance1.pdf

consideration when comparing the results from individual monitoring locations.

- 10.4 There are two legal limits in relation to NO₂:
- A short-term hourly limit of 200µg/m³ (not to be exceeded more than 18 times a calendar year).
 - The long-term annual average limit of 40µg/m³.
- 10.5 To determine compliance with the NO₂ 1-hour mean Air Quality Limit Values, research undertaken on behalf of Defra and outlined in Technical Guidance Note LAQM.TG (16) (Defra, 2021) identified that road traffic emission related exceedances are unlikely to occur where the annual mean concentration is below 60 µg/m³.
- 10.6 For the purpose of the GM CAP, the government has directed GM (and other areas) under the Environment Act 1995 to address NO₂ exceedances at the roadside in the shortest possible time. In GM this direction specifically focuses on the long-term annual average legal limit (40µg/m³).
- 10.7 The GM local authorities carry out air quality monitoring for NO₂ using a combination of:
- Continuous automatic monitoring sites: There are currently 21 continuous air quality monitoring stations, twelve of which are located at the roadside.
 - Diffusion tubes: 436 sites are set up for local air quality management (LAQM) purposes. In addition, approximately 460 sites are set up for GM Clean Air Plan monitoring and evaluation purposes¹⁴.
- 10.8 Monitoring for NO₂ for GM Clean Air Plan purposes uses diffusion tubes at sites where “target determination”¹⁵ modelling predicted illegally high levels of NO₂ for 2021. Three new continuous automatic air quality monitoring stations are planned to be installed in 2022 at the last key points of exceedance in Greater Manchester.
- 10.9 Table 1 below summarises NO₂ concentrations and exceedances of the annual mean objective (AMO) across sites set up for local air quality management (LAQM) purposes (automatic and non-automatic) across GM in 2021.
- 10.10 Maps showing the location of the LAQM monitoring sites are provided on the [CleanAirGM Data Hub](http://www.cleanairgm.com/datahub). <http://www.cleanairgm.com/datahub>

¹⁴ 22 of these were active for the full 2021 calendar year.

¹⁵ The government’s Joint Air Quality Unit undertook a process called ‘target determination’, which involves comparing the outputs of the local and national modelling, verifying the local modelling methodology and then agreeing the forecast concentration assessment to be compared to the limit value for each exceedance. The outcome of this is an agreement of the NO₂ problem Greater Manchester must resolve (“target determination”) and the basis for the Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan.

Table 1 Summary of LAQM NO₂ monitoring in GM in 2021

Authority	Automatic sites (with valid data capture 2021)	Non-automatic sites	Concentration range (all sites) (µg/m ³)	Exceedances of NO ₂ Annual Mean (non-automatic sites)	
				In AQMA	Outside AQMA
Bolton MBC	1	48	41.5 – 10.9	1	-
Bury MBC	3	20	40.9 – 19.1	1	-
Manchester CC	3	40	44.8 – 14.1	3	-
Oldham MBC	1	27	46.3 – 15.3	2	-
Rochdale MBC	1	27	36.6 – 10.2	-	-
Salford CC	3	47	44.3 – 11.5	2	1
Stockport MBC	2	29	35.8 – 9.7	-	-
Tameside MBC	2	53	42.5 – 9.8	2	-
Trafford MBC	3	20	31.3 – 11.5	-	-
Wigan MBC	2	125	44.6 – 13.8	-	1
Total	21	436	46.3 – 9.7	11	2

- 10.11 In 2021 across sites set up for local air quality management (LAQM) purposes, 13 exceedances of the AMO (Annual Mean Objective) for NO₂ (40 µg/m³) were recorded by diffusion tubes. This is an increase of 11 from 2020, which was a year of a notably low number of exceedances due to the lockdown measures during the COVID-19 pandemic. In 2019, 61 exceedances were recorded out of 359 operational sites, suggesting an overall downward trend in annual mean concentrations.
- 10.12 Two of the exceedances in 2021 were recorded at non-automatic sites located outside of the AQMA, in Salford (SA86 on Bury Old Rd, very close to AQMA boundary) and in Wigan (WI180 – 4 Winwick Lane, Wigan). Exceedances at these sites are acknowledged and mitigation measures are being explored in Wigan, but in the case of any exceedances outside of the AQMA, and in agreement with Defra, the decision to declare an additional AQMA or to expand the current AQMA is being delayed until the outcome of the GM CAP is realised.
- 10.13 The GM CAP will have the most significant impact on air quality in the city-region going forward, in addition to actions taken to meet the 2038 city-region's carbon neutral target and the decarbonisation of transport. The GM Clean Air Plan also monitors NO₂, using diffusion tubes. However, the GM

Clean Air Plan monitors different sites¹⁶ to those that need to be reported in the ASR.

- 10.14 The initial Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan monitoring survey, covering all 10 Greater Manchester authorities, started in January 2018. These locations were based on the roads predicted to be in exceedance in 2021 in the government's "UK Plan for Tackling Roadside Nitrogen Dioxide Concentrations" (Defra, 2017).
- 10.15 Diffusion tubes were placed at roadside locations around Greater Manchester to determine the concentrations of NO₂ across the extent of the GM CAP study area. The diffusion tubes were replaced monthly throughout the survey with supply and analysis by Staffordshire Scientific Services.
- 10.16 As set out in Table 2, in June 2019 and October 2021, the diffusion tube survey was extended, and new diffusion tube monitoring sites were installed along roads predicted to be in exceedance by the GM CAP target determination modelling process. Additional sites were also included in Manchester city centre where street canyons may be leading to elevated air pollution concentrations.

Table 2 Number of GM CAP Monitoring Sites

Authority	Number of monitoring Sites			
	2018	2019	2020	2021
Bolton	5	8	14	14
Bury	5	13	16	16
Manchester	20	72	91	91
Oldham	0	6	9	9
Rochdale	0	7	12	12
Salford	5	16	27	27
Stockport	10	18	19	19
Tameside	5	9	14	14
Trafford	5	11	14	14
Wigan	0	2	6	6
Total	55	162	222	222

- 10.17 Table 3 below summarises NO₂ concentrations and exceedances of the annual mean across sites set up for GM CAP purposes between 2018 and 2021. Maps showing the location of the GM CAP monitoring sites are provided on the [CleanAirGM Data Hub](https://cleanairgm.com/data-hub/). <https://cleanairgm.com/data-hub/>

¹⁶ The GM Clean Air Plan monitor those sites where "target determination" modelling predicted illegally high levels of NO₂ in 2021. See footnote 15 and cleanairgm.com for more detail.

Table 3 Number of GM CAP Exceedances

Authority	Number of Exceedances (>40.4µg/m³)			
	2018	2019	2020	2021
Bolton	1	4	1	2
Bury	2	10	0	2
Manchester	14	65	8	25
Oldham	0	5	0	1
Rochdale	0	4	1	1
Salford	1	16	0	7
Stockport	6	15	2	3
Tameside	4	6	4	4
Trafford	1	3	0	0
Wigan	0	1	0	0
Total	29	129	16	45

10.18 During 2020, overall national road traffic levels were approximately 21% lower than in 2019. This reduction was due to the COVID-19 pandemic and associated social distancing and travel restrictions.¹⁷

10.19 For the year ending September 2021, overall national road traffic levels were approximately 16% lower than pre-pandemic levels.¹⁸

10.20 Therefore 2021 had overall higher road traffic levels than 2020, which is considered to be a factor causing the increase in annual average NO₂ concentrations.

11 Changes in economic context since Summer 2021

11.1 Since the original GM Clean Air Plan, agreed in Summer 2021, external factors associated with the pandemic, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis have the potential to create additional financial hardship for local businesses and families. These include:

- Impacts from war in Ukraine.
- Increased cost of energy.
- Increased cost of fuel for motorists.
- Increased cost of food, and other products.
- Supply chain issues - on-going impact of Covid lockdowns etc.
- How the impact of inflation is distributed across society.
- Changes to Bank of England base rate and forecasts - 0.25% in Jan 22, risen to 1.25% (16th June 22) - moving into a phase of more expensive borrowing.
- Consumer confidence.

¹⁷ Department for Transport, Road Traffic Statistics 2020 Summary, <https://roadtraffic.dft.gov.uk/summary>

¹⁸ Department for Transport, Provisional Road Traffic estimates, Oct 2020 – Sep 2021, <https://www.gov.uk/government/statistics/provisional-road-traffic-estimates-great-britain-october-2020-to-september-2021/provisional-road-traffic-estimates-great-britain-october-2020-to-september-2021>

- GM business composition and outlook from Growth Company Survey.
- GM resident population - wage growth, disposable income, etc.
- UK inflation reached a 40-year high of 9% during April 2022, up from 2% in July 2021.
- Inflation is forecast by the Bank of England to rise to 11% in the autumn of 2022.

Emerging conclusions to changes in economic context

- 11.2 Evidence is already pointing to consumer demand being dampened. GM is particularly vulnerable to high inflation - noting its relatively high volume of small businesses, and a higher than average (vs.UK) proportion of residents who typically have below average disposable household incomes.
- 11.3 The Bank of England has increased the Base Rate to 1.25% (up from 0.1% in July 2021) - signalling that further rate rises are likely. This in turn will increase the cost of borrowing to both businesses and residents who require finance and are not protected by fixed rates. Meanwhile the Bank of England's latest Monetary Policy Report (May 2022) points to an expectation for GDP to fall in Q4 2022 and be 'broadly flat' during 2023.
- 11.4 In summary, any intervention, such as a charging clean air zone, that could see businesses forced to pass costs on to the consumer in the near-term would likely come at a time when trading conditions are particularly challenging.

12 The changed conditions within the vehicle market

- 12.1 The price of new and used commercial vehicles is rising, making upgrade less affordable.
- 12.2 Some sectors potentially in scope for the Clean Air Plan have still not recovered from the impacts of the pandemic.

Vehicle Type	Commentary on changed conditions
HGV Est. 70,900 vehicles serving GM 81% compliant in 2023 ¹⁹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Having remained stable for many years, record-breaking price rises are being reported of around 40% for Euro 6 vehicles, with the price gap between Euro 6 vs 5 vehicles increasing. • Dealers are reporting constraints on availability of new vehicles – due to shortages of materials including semi-conductors – and that this means people are extending leases (so fewer vehicles enter the second-hand market) or trying to buy second-hand, leading to shortages in that market. • Price rises reflect these shortages as well as increases in the cost of materials (for new vehicles).
Vans	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is substantial evidence of significant price increases in the second-hand van market – the scale of those rises has a high

¹⁹ best estimate in a highly changeable economic/vehicle market situation, forecast should be considered subject to review

Vehicle Type	Commentary on changed conditions
<p>Est. 277,400 vehicles serving GM¹⁹ 52% compliant in 2023¹⁹</p>	<p>degree of variability depending on the particular vehicle. The extent of the reported rise varies between 13% and almost 60%.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Overall, the evidence suggests that demand for new and second-hand vans remains strong, and therefore that the loss of supply caused by lockdowns in 2020 and more recently by the semiconductor shortage is leading to price rises in the new and second-hand markets, and to long lead times for new vehicle orders. • A high proportion of non-compliant vans are owned by sole traders and very small businesses which are vulnerable to the impacts of inflation and the cost-of-living crisis.
<p>Coach</p> <p>1,700 vehicles serving GM 59% compliant in 2023¹⁹</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The coach sector was badly affected by the pandemic, with lockdown restrictions meaning that many were forced to stop operating for long periods. • Demand from tourism and major events remained constrained during 2021, and recovery is expected to be slow. • The SMMT states that demand for new buses and coaches dropped further in 2021 and was the weakest year since records began in 1996.
<p>Hackney Cabs</p> <p>2,100 Hackneys licensed in GM 35% compliant in 2023¹⁹</p> <p>PHV</p> <p>12,400 PHVs licensed in GM 68% compliant in 2023¹⁹</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hackneys and PHVs lost a substantial proportion of their trade during the pandemic, as travel for business, leisure and tourism purposes ceased. • The number of vehicles licensed has reduced and drivers report that demand has not returned to pre-pandemic levels. • The number of new vehicles entering the Hackney and PHV licensed fleets was much lower than normal in 2020 and 2021, so that the age of the fleet has increased. • This is assumed to result from market conditions and conditions in the wider economy, as well as continued uncertainty about licensing and clean air requirements for the fleet. • Furthermore, there is anecdotal evidence that the trade-in value of Euro 5 and older Hackney cabs is falling, as more cities bring in tighter licensing standards and/or Clean Air Zones.

13 Development of the new plan

- 13.1 The participatory approach to the development of the new plan will test with vehicle owners that where non-compliant vehicles are identified as contributing to locations where NO₂ exceedances have been modelled, GM Authorities will have funding packages to incentivise upgrades to the cleanest possible vehicle, in order to get the greatest emissions reduction and therefore the swiftest public health benefit from every funded upgrade.
- 13.2 Rather than as part of a formally signed charging CAZ, the ANPR cameras could be used to better understand those vehicles where GM would get the greatest emissions reduction from those non-compliant vehicles travelling regularly through GM's most NO₂ polluted places.

14 New Plan Measures

14.1 Greater Manchester CAP Vehicle and other Investment Measures

Vehicle type	Measure subject to review during participatory policy approach
Bus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Continue with existing funding. • Ensure franchising and other governance/planning processes are established so that electric buses are running on routes containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance - with a focus on the regional centre/city centre as the transport hub of the city-region. • Initial sensitivity testing indicates that delivery of sufficient bus electrification would achieve compliance at modelled exceedance locations except Regent Road by 2025. A delivery plan is under development with the aim of achieving this.
HGV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consider offer including eligibility for funding, in light of needing to ensure the cleanest vehicles are running in areas containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance.
Coach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consider offer including eligibility for funding, in light of needing to ensure the cleanest vehicles are running in areas containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance.
Greater Manchester Hackney Carriage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consider offer including eligibility for funding, in light of needing to ensure the cleanest vehicles are running in areas containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance – most Hackney Carriages are licensed in MCC. • Target GM CAP funding to increase roll out of dedicated taxi and other general electric vehicle charging infrastructure points in/around the city centre, to ensure fleet upgrade to electric vehicles is viable and taxi industry is supported. Consider opportunities for regulatory measures such as licensing standards to complement funding incentives to accelerate fleet upgrades.
Greater Manchester PHV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Consider offer including eligibility for funding, in light of needing to ensure the cleanest vehicles are running in areas containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance. Consider opportunities for regulatory measures such as licensing standards to complement funding incentives to accelerate fleet upgrades.

Vehicle type	Measure subject to review during participatory policy approach
Other clean air investment initiatives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Explore opportunities for EVCI investment to support expansion of Car Club in and around city centre and wider city. • Target GM CAP funding to continue to roll out sustainable transport infrastructure investment and messages particularly in and around the regional centre to reduce emissions in key exceedance areas. This will include a particular focus on city centre in points of persistent exceedance, such as Deansgate and surrounding streets, as well as other active travel and public transport schemes. • Explore opportunities for GM CAP funding to support other infrastructure investment to address air quality issues, such as green infrastructure.

14.2 Greater Manchester CAP Cluster Measures

Exceedance cluster	Measure subject to review during participatory policy approach
City centre	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In the city centre, bus emissions account for at least 70% of total NOx emissions at the majority of locations and therefore electric buses can be very effective. Initial sensitivity testing indicates that delivery of sufficient bus electrification would achieve compliance at these locations by 2025. A delivery plan is under development with the aim of achieving this. • Further work is also underway to develop a proposition for taxi that encourages upgrade to the cleanest vehicles, and to explore how investment in highway and other transport infrastructure under the city centre transport strategy can best support clean air.
Regent Road	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Emissions on Regent Road are principally derived from commercial and logistics traffic, which accounts for c.50%. In addition, the corridor is immediately fed by the M602 motorway and subject to the implications of National Highways signage and traffic management policies. • Salford City Council (SCC) and MCC have commissioned analysis via TfGM to improve understanding of the operation of the road and nature of the traffic on Regent Road to help with the joint working with National Highways (NH) which must include how the deployment of funds can support appropriate solutions to deal with the exceedance at this location. • Note that Electric Towns and Cities Infrastructure initiative (ETCI) – NH initiative being explored for mitigation for sections of the SRN.
Bury Bridge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The electrification of bus services over the bridge should happen with the first 50 new zero emission buses that will be

Exceedance cluster	Measure subject to review during participatory policy approach
	brought into service with the launch of the regulated bus system in Wigan and Bolton. Initial sensitivity testing indicates that delivery of sufficient bus electrification would achieve compliance at this location by 2025. A delivery plan is under development with the aim of achieving this.

15 Equality considerations

- 15.1 Under Section 149 of the Equality Act (2010), public bodies are subject to the Public Sector Equality Duty, which requires GM to give 'due regard' to the 'need to eliminate unlawful discrimination, harassment and victimisation to advance equality of opportunity to foster good relations between people from different groups.' This can be demonstrated via an Equality Impact Assessment (EqIA) and can identify whether people with protected characteristics could be affected by the GM CAP disproportionately or differentially.
- 15.2 An initial screening has been undertaken to assess which protected characteristics are likely to be impacted by the new GM Clean Air Plan, and in scope for the EqIA.
- 15.3 Some groups are more sensitive to changes in air quality and will therefore benefit more quickly from improvements in air quality. The following five protected characteristics are likely to be disproportionately or differentially impacted by changes in air quality and NO₂ levels and will therefore be considered within the EqIA for the new GM CAP:

Protected characteristic	Likely to be disproportionately affected by improved air quality	Likely to be differentially affected by improved air quality
Age		X
Disability (includes all forms of physical and mental disability)		X
Pregnancy and maternity		X
Gender (male drivers)	x	
Race	x	
Low income / socio-economic deprivation	x	

- 15.4 The new plan aims to reduce the health impacts of air pollution as well as reduce NO₂ concentrations to below legal limits, and by 2026 at the latest, whilst minimising any negative socio-economic impacts. The EqIA will consider the impact of this plan on the groups above.

- 15.5 In addition, people in the following protected characteristics could be impacted by the measures adopted within the new GM CAP as owners or drivers of impacted vehicles or users of services impacted. As a result, the following protected characteristics will also be considered in the EqlA:

Protected characteristic	Potential disproportionate impact dependent on option
Age	X
Disability (includes all forms of physical and mental disability)	X
Pregnancy and maternity	X
Race	X
Religion / belief	X
Sex	X
Gender Reassignment	X
Sexual Orientation	X
Low income / socio-economic deprivation	X

- 15.6 In addition to the above, the 'Good Lives for All in Greater Manchester will inform the EqlA. The report, a product of the Greater Manchester Independent Inequalities Commission, highlights the health inequalities experienced across the city-region and recommends that the wellbeing and equality goals sit at the heart of the Greater Manchester Strategy. The findings of the report will inform the planned EqlA for the new CAP.
- 15.7 To inform a full EqlA for the new GM CAP the approach to Participatory Policy Development will include engagement with GM based groups representing the protected characteristic groups potentially impacted by the new GM CAP.

16 Risk Management

- 16.1 Initial risk register set out in Clean Air Plan OBC (March 2019).

17 Legal Considerations

- 17.1 On 8th February 2022 The Environment Act 1995 (Greater Manchester) Air Quality Direction 2022 was issued. The new direction requires that the GM local authorities:
- Review the measures specified in the existing Plan; and
 - Determine whether to propose any changes to the detailed design of those measures, or any additional measures.
- 17.2 The GM authorities must ensure that the Plan with any proposed changes will secure that:
- Compliance with the legal limit value for NO₂ is achieved in the shortest possible time and by no later than 2026; and

- Exposure to levels above the legal limit for NO₂ is reduced as quickly as possible.

17.3 This new direction revoked the direction dated March 2020 which required the ten Greater Manchester Local Authorities to implement a Category C Clean Air Zone to achieve compliance with the legal limit value for NO₂ in the shortest possible time and by 2024 at the latest.

17.4 This report sets out the case for a new Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan.

18 Government asks

18.1 One specific new 'ask' from Government is to support the new GM Clean Air Plan, would be to remove out-of-area operation by private hire drivers/vehicles.

18.2 GM Authorities are keen to work with DfT to consider an appropriate regulatory device. This would require that all private hire journeys within GM must be undertaken by a driver and vehicle which are both licensed by one of the ten GM local authorities.

18.3 As it stands, out-of-area operation enables the evasion of fair, safe and democratically determined local licensing standards. In context of the GM Clean Air Plan, this measure would provide local authorities with stronger regulatory tools to improve the emission standards of all private hire fleets operating in GM.

18.4 Greater Manchester will continue to seek to ensure that the Government takes appropriate action to address exceedances on the A57/A628 a stretch of Strategic Road network, managed by National Highways that cuts through the villages of Hollingworth and Mottram.

19 Targeted engagement to test support for the case for a new GM CAP

19.1 An initial series of discussions has been carried out to review the evidence GM has gathered describing current economic and vehicle market conditions and the challenges facing non-compliant vehicle owners. This early engagement has been undertaken so that groups representing vehicle owners have the opportunity to feed in any further evidence.

19.2 Sessions have been held with the following groups and a summary of their feedback is set out below:

Group	Summary of Feedback
GM Business Representatives – 30 June 2022	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This is a business-friendly approach and is broadly welcomed. • There are many health & economic benefits to Clean Air and GM needs to

Group	Summary of Feedback
	<p>ensure that the Plan is seen as part of its wider strategies</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Look forward to working with GM through the participatory policy approach.
Road Haulage Association – 22 June 2022	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Our members are reporting challenging trading circumstances and an investment supported non-charging Clean Air Plan for Greater Manchester is definitely going in the right direction, the devil will be in the detail. • We would be very happy to work with Greater Manchester to get a revised clean air plan right and we know our members would like to see the funding opened up to those who trade in Greater Manchester rather than just being based in region.
Confederation of Passenger Transport – 21 June 2022	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • While the reasons for clean air initiatives are appreciated, in the coach sector the prospect of upgrading, retrofitting or being faced with charges is difficult to comprehend. A typical Euro 5 vehicle is on average only 5 years old. • If there is indeed no charging zone, we expect our members would be generally supportive of the new investment-led GM Clean Air Plan, provided there are no hidden restrictions, for example on the sites of exceedances.
All GM Hackney and Private Hire Vehicle representatives – 23 June 2022	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An investment-led non charging Clean Air Plan is broadly welcomed as it has listened to the concerns of the trade. • All our members want clean air but want to be able to afford it, funding is key and needs to be in place as soon as possible. • Welcome the suggestion to address out of area licensing - but local authorities could help the trade by reducing the time taken to license in GM. • Look forward to engaging with GM to develop a more detailed policy. • Vehicle availability both new and second hand is of concern.
One Bus Network – 23 June 2022	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Always said charging zone is not the way, an investment led approach is the best forward and so supportive of this approach.

Group	Summary of Feedback
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keen to see low bus speeds in the city centre resolved, as this is contributor to bus emissions.

20 Next steps

- 20.1 Whilst Greater Manchester has put in place governance arrangements to enable the joint discharge of relevant GM local authority and GMCA functions in respect of the Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan via the Air Quality Administration Committee, before the Air Quality Administration Committee confirms the submission as an agreed document there is now an opportunity for the 'Case for a new Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan' document attached as Appendix 1 and associated appendices 2 to 6 to be considered, through the local governance arrangements of the individual authorities.
- 20.2 Subject to any comments of Greater Manchester local authorities the next Air Quality Administration Committee will confirm the final submission and notify the Secretary of State of the change in status.
- 20.3 By applying a Participatory Policy Development process, GM will develop, assess and agree a package of measures forming a proposed new GM CAP. This package of measures will be consulted upon in early 2023.
- 20.4 GM will review the responses to the consultation and make any adaptations to the proposals as necessary. It is anticipated that a decision could be made to proceed with the new GM CAP thereafter.

21 Recommendations

- 21.1 The Environment and Climate Change Scrutiny Committee is invited to comment on the report.
- 21.2 The Executive is recommended to:
- Note the 'Case for a new Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan' document attached as Appendix 1 and associated appendices 2 to 6 has been submitted to the Secretary of State as a draft document subject to any comments from Manchester City Council ahead of the next Air Quality Administration Committee.
 - Note that Cllr Tracey Rawlins as the Manchester City Council appointed representative on the Air Quality Administration Committee will represent Manchester City Council's comments;
 - Note the initial screening undertaken to assess which protected characteristics are likely to be impacted by the new GM Clean Air Plan, and in scope for the Equalities Impact Assessment;
 - Note the updated Do Minimum position for 2023 and 2025 and the forecasted points of exceedance in GM in 2023 and 2025; and

- Note the approach to the participatory policy development approach and the next steps for the GM CAP.
- Note the new 'ask' from Government to remove out-of-area operation by private hire drivers/vehicles to support the new GM Clean Air Plan;
- Note feedback from early engagement activity with vehicle owner representative groups;
- Note the NO2 monitoring results and the exceedances of the annual mean across sites set up for GM CAP purposes between 2018 and 2021.

Appendices

Appendix 1 – Case for a New GM Clean Air Plan – attached as a supplementary paper.

Appendix 2 – Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – HGV Sector
(Appendix 1 document attached as supplementary paper refers to this as Appendix A.)

Appendix 3 – Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – Taxis (Hackney Carriages and Private Hire Vehicles)
(Appendix 1 document attached as supplementary paper refers to this as Appendix B.)

Appendix 4 – Technical Note: Current issues in the Van Sector
(Appendix 1 document attached as supplementary paper refers to this as Appendix C.)

Appendix 5 – Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – Coach and Minibus
(Appendix 1 document attached as supplementary paper refers to this as Appendix D.)

Appendix 6 – Changes in economic context since July 2021
(Appendix 1 document attached as supplementary paper refers to this as Appendix E.)

This page is intentionally left blank

Greater Manchester's Clean Air Plan to tackle Nitrogen Dioxide Exceedances at the Roadside

Case for a New GM Clean Air Plan



Salford City Council



Warning: Printed copies of this document are uncontrolled

Version Status:	DRAFT FOR APPROVAL	Prepared by:	Transport for Greater Manchester on behalf of the 10 Local Authorities of Greater Manchester
Authorised by: Date:	Simon Warburton June 2022		

Contents List

1	Executive Summary	4
2	Introduction	13
3	Why are Greater Manchester and the Government taking action on NO ₂ ?	15
4	What has led to Greater Manchester revising its approach to the GM CAP? .	18
5	What has changed since Summer 2021?.....	23
6	What is Greater Manchester already doing about poor air quality?.....	34
7	What are the current air quality issues in Greater Manchester?.....	40
8	Where are the persistent exceedance areas in Greater Manchester?	52
9	Why Greater Manchester needs a new GM CAP – A Summary	62
10	The way forward: an Investment-led non-charging GM CAP	69
11	How will Greater Manchester deliver the New GM CAP?.....	74
12	How will Greater Manchester ensure a participatory approach to the development of a New CAP?.....	75
13	What are the equalities considerations?.....	77
14	Government asks	80
15	Next steps	82

List of appendices

Appendix A – Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – HGV Sector

Appendix B – Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – Taxis (Hackney Carriages and Private Hire Vehicles)

Appendix C – Technical Note: Current issues in the Van Sector

Appendix D – Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – Coach and Minibus

Appendix E – Changes in economic context since July 2021

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

1 Executive Summary

1.1 Background

- 1.1.1 The Government has instructed many local authorities across the UK to take quick action to reduce harmful roadside levels of Nitrogen Dioxide (NO₂) following the Secretary of State (SoS) for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs issuing a Direction under the Environment Act 1995 in 2017 requiring them to undertake feasibility studies to identify measures for reducing NO₂ concentrations to within legal limit values in the “shortest possible time”. In Greater Manchester, the 10 local authorities, the Greater Manchester Combined Authority (GMCA) and Transport for Greater Manchester (TfGM) are working together to develop a Clean Air Plan to tackle NO₂ exceedances at the roadside, herein known as Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP).
- 1.1.2 In March 2019 the GM Authorities agreed the submission of the Outline Business Case (OBC) that proposed a package of measures that was considered would deliver compliance in Greater Manchester in the shortest possible time, at the lowest cost, least risk and with the least negative impacts. This involved a Charging Clean Air Zone Class C with additional measures.
- 1.1.3 In July 2019 the SoS issued a Direction under section 85 of the Environment Act 1995 requiring the 10 Greater Manchester local authorities to implement the local plan for NO₂ compliance for the areas for which they were responsible, including a Charging Clean Air Zone Class C with additional measures, but with an obligation to provide further options appraisal information to demonstrate the applicable class of Charging Clean Air Zone and other matters to provide assurance that the local plan would deliver compliance in the shortest possible time and by 2024 at the latest.
- 1.1.4 The SoS subsequently issued a Direction to the ten Greater Manchester local authorities in March 2020 that required them to take steps to implement the local plan for NO₂ compliance so that compliance with the legal limit for NO₂ is achieved in the shortest possible time, and by 2024 at the latest, and so that exposure to levels above the legal limit for NO₂ is reduced as quickly as possible.
- 1.1.5 A statutory consultation on the proposals took place in Autumn 2020.

- 1.1.6 The GMCA – Clean Air Final Plan report on 25 June 2021¹ endorsed Greater Manchester's Final CAP and policy following a review of all of the information gathered through the GM CAP consultation and wider data, evidence and modelling work. Throughout the development of the previous Plan, JAQU reviewed and approved all technical and delivery submissions. The Plan was agreed by the ten Greater Manchester local authorities. Within this document, this is referred to as the Previous GM CAP.
- 1.1.7 On 20 January 2022 the Air Quality Administration Committee considered the findings of an initial review of conditions within the supply chain of Light Good Vehicles (LGVs) in particular which were impacting the availability of compliant vehicles. The Committee agreed that a request should be made to the SoS to pause opening of the next phase of Clean Air Funds to enable an urgent and fundamental joint policy review with Government to identify how a revised policy can be agreed to deal with the supply issues and local businesses' ability to comply with the GM CAP.
- 1.1.8 On the 8th February 2022, a new Direction was issued by the SoS² which confirmed that the March 2020 Direction to implement a Class C charging Clean Air Zone (CAZ) had been revoked and required that a new plan be submitted to the SoS by 1st July 2022 which should:³
- review the measures specified in the local plan for NO₂ compliance and associated mitigation measures; and
 - determine whether to propose any changes to the detailed design of those measures, or any additional measures.
- 1.1.9 The Direction also states that compliance with the legal limit value for nitrogen dioxide is achieved in the shortest possible time and no later than 2026 and exposure to levels above the legal limit for nitrogen dioxide is reduced as quickly as possible.
- 1.1.10 Within this document, this new plan, and any subsequent further development of the new plan, is referred to as the New GM CAP.

1.2 Overview

- 1.2.1 Breathing in polluted air contributes to the equivalent of 1,200 premature deaths a year in Greater Manchester⁴. Both long- and short-term exposure to air pollution are known to adversely affect health. Some of the most vulnerable in society are hit hardest – children, older people and those already in poor health. Greater Manchester has a particular imperative to improve health, as the region has one of the lowest life expectancies at birth in England and significant health inequalities between areas.

¹ Also considered by the Greater Manchester authorities through their own constitutional decision-making arrangements.

²

https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/1054931/Environment_Act_1995_Greater_Manchester_Air_Quality_Direction_2022.pdf

³ In addition to recommendations about interim arrangements for changes to delivery arrangements for the CAZ in the meantime, including signage, funding and discount/exemption applications.

⁴ Public Health England – Air Quality in Greater Manchester – from a Public Health Perspective (September 2018)

1.3 Why a New Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan?

1.3.1 it is proposed that the Previous GM CAP developed pre-pandemic and agreed in Summer 2021 (comprising a blanket measure across the city-region in the form of a Class C charging CAZ) is no longer the right solution to achieve compliance with Legal Limits for NO₂ on the local road network in Greater Manchester. The most significant reasons in summary are:

- The **cost-of-living crisis** means that businesses are less able to afford to invest in vehicle upgrades, whilst households are less able to absorb any costs that may be passed on to them.
- This is exacerbated by **rising vehicle prices** and – for some vehicle types – lower residual values of non-compliant vehicles. There is evidence that illustrates the demand for new and compliant second-hand vehicles is exceeding supply; leading to longer wait times and rising prices.
- A charging CAZ could therefore cause **unacceptable financial hardship** and potentially contribute to business failures.
- In addition, **new opportunities have arisen** – via the approval of bus franchising and new funding for electric buses – that mean that Greater Manchester has the opportunity to directly tackle a major source of emissions in a different, more targeted way.
- The exceedances become more localised from 2025 onwards, therefore **action can be targeted** at those locations suffering the worst air quality.

1.3.2 It is clear that the GM-wide Class C charging CAZ as approved in Summer 2021 could lead to hardship in Greater Manchester and that to develop and deliver a revised charging CAZ would take time to design, consult upon and implement.

1.3.3 Unlike the previous charging-led scheme, the New GM CAP will attend to the emerging cost-of-living crisis and other factors set out in this section. It will actively consider the impacts of Covid-19 and wider global economic instability on supply chains, aims to be delivered in 2023, and crucially takes into account the significant benefits that the delivery of electric buses can have along key routes with persistent exceedances.

1.4 Core objectives

1.4.1 The core objectives of the New GM CAP are as follows:

- To reduce NO₂ concentrations to below the legal limits in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest;
- Achieve compliance in a way that is fair to businesses and residents, and does not damage business or cause financial hardship to people in Greater Manchester; and

- Ensure the reduction of harmful emissions is at the centre of Greater Manchester 's wider objective for delivering the Bee Network's core objectives.

1.4.2 An investment-led non-charging GM CAP will aim to encourage upgrade to cleaner vehicles, leading to better air quality, by providing funding packages to those most polluting vehicles travelling in locations experiencing NO₂ exceedances.

1.5 Why is Greater Manchester not proposing a revised charging Plan?

1.5.1 The primary focus of the new GM CAP is to achieve compliance in a way that considers the current cost of living crisis and associated economic challenge faced by businesses and residents. Through an investment-led approach, that together with all the wider measures that Greater Manchester is implementing as part of its efforts to create a safe, integrated, clean and sustainable transport network, aims to reduce NO₂ emissions in the shortest time possible, and at the latest by 2026. Unlike the previous charging-led scheme defined by Government guidance, the investment-led non-charging GM CAP also seeks to attend to the cost-of-living crisis – through avoiding the use of charging.

1.5.2 In particular, it will actively consider the impacts of the pandemic (particularly given the shape of the remaining NO₂ problem over time) on the regional centre, where GM needs to support its ongoing recovery as a result of changes in economic activity and wider global economic instability on supply chains. The investment-led non-charging GM CAP can be delivered from 2023.

1.5.3 The updated modelling summarises the existing areas of exceedance that are likely to remain unless action is taken through the New GM CAP during the period from now until 2026. Targeting these areas of exceedance will form the basis of the New GM CAP and Greater Manchester's local authorities are now making the case to Government that this should take the form of an investment-led non-charging GM CAP, which aims to achieve compliance in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest but without creating additional financial hardship for local businesses and families.

- 1.5.4 Without the need to mitigate a Greater Manchester-wide charging CAZ, a new investment-led non-charging GM CAP can target resources more effectively at the most persistent exceedances. For example, at the city centre locations sites that are forecast to remain non-compliant in 2025, buses account for over 70% of emissions, meaning that electric buses could be very effective in improving air quality. In contrast, Regent Road has very few buses running on it and acts as a major strategic route for commercial vehicles – with particularly high volumes of HGVs – and cars heading to the city centre and inner relief road. With supported funding through the City Region Sustainable Transport Settlement (CRSTS), targeted investment in electric bus could feasibly enable Greater Manchester to reduce the number of last exceedances. Regent Road is still expected to remain in exceedance without other action by 2026.
- 1.5.5 Importantly, this plan is not just a request of Government funds. Greater Manchester will also review local policy changes, such as local servicing plans, alongside regulatory measures such as licensing standards to accelerate fleet upgrades.

1.6 Nitrogen Dioxide (NO₂) exceedances forecast

- 1.6.1 The results of the updated modelling demonstrate there are more points of exceedance (71 to 79 in 2023) from the 'Approved GM CAP' model Do Minimum with exceedances in all districts in 2023 with the exception of Wigan. By 2025, exceedances are only predicted in Manchester, Salford, and Bury, which is consistent with the Consultation and 'Approved GM CAP' modelling scenarios. The majority of the last points of exceedance are located within the regional centre and within or near the Inner Relief Route (IRR). By 2025, there are 13 exceedances in the core scenario and 5 exceedances in the Clean Bus Fund (CBF) test which reduces to 5 sites in the core scenario and 1 site in the CBF test in 2026.

1.7 Changes to the economic context

- 1.7.1 The economic context in the UK has changed dramatically in the period since July 2021. A range of factors associated with the pandemic, impact from war in Ukraine, increased costs of energy and fuel, changes to Bank of England base rates and forecasts, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis have combined to create a context of increased financial hardship for businesses and families. UK inflation reached a 40-year high of 9% during April 2022, up from 2% in July 2021. It is widely accepted that inflation will increase to higher levels still during the remainder of 2022, with evidence already pointing to consumer demand being dampened.

- 1.7.2 Greater Manchester is not insulated from the impacts of high inflation and higher interest rates, in fact in some respects it is particularly vulnerable - noting its relatively high volume of small businesses, and a higher than average (vs.UK) proportion of residents who typically have below average disposable household incomes. Any intervention that could see businesses forced to pay additional charges and potentially pass costs on to the consumer, could have severe consequences for those groups who are already struggling to cope with the cost of living crisis. A charging CAZ could therefore cause unacceptable financial hardship and potentially contribute to business failures.

1.8 Changed conditions within the vehicle market

- 1.8.1 Research was commissioned in late 2021 to analyse and report on the market conditions. It found evidence that the used van market had materially changed, with evidence suggesting that second-hand van prices had increased by between 13% and c.60% since the modelling for the Previous GM CAP had been undertaken.
- 1.8.2 Advisors concluded that at that level, fewer van owners would choose to (or be able to) upgrade in response to the charging CAZ and that this price inflation devalues the funding offer for vans, with the Previous GM CAP being particularly sensitive to van prices given their number in Greater Manchester.
- 1.8.3 For Heavy Goods Vehicles (HGVs), the evidence illustrated that record-breaking price rises are being reported of around 40% for Euro 6 vehicles, with the price gap between Euro 6 vs 5 vehicles increasing. The price rises reflect these shortages as well as increases in the cost of materials (for new vehicles).
- 1.8.4 The evidence also illustrates that the coach sector was badly affected by the pandemic, many were forced to stop operating for long periods. Additionally, demand from tourism and events remained constrained during 2021, and the recovery is expected to be slow.
- 1.8.5 For taxis, both Hackneys and Private Hire Vehicles (PHVs), the evidence indicates that they lost a substantial proportion of their trade during the pandemic. The number of vehicles licensed has reduced and drivers report that demand has not returned to pre-pandemic levels. The number of new vehicles entering the Hackney and PHV licensed fleets was much lower than normal in 2020 and 2021, so that the age of the fleet has increased.

- 1.8.6 The air quality Do Minimum (without scheme) modelling forecast has been updated because the evidence presented to the Government in February 2022 showed that business as usual (BAU) car sales were lower than expected in 2021, meaning that the fleet was older than forecast, and that this was likely to delay compliance with legal limits of NO₂ with the scheme as planned. Additionally, a sensitivity test has been conducted to forecast the impact on bus emissions of bus retrofits and upgrades already funded and approved via the Clean Bus Fund (CBF).

1.9 Equality considerations

- 1.9.1 Under Section 149 of the Equality Act (2010), public bodies are subject to the Public Sector Equality Duty, which requires that they give due regard to the need to eliminate unlawful discrimination, harassment and victimisation, advance equality of opportunity and foster good relations between people from different groups. In terms of the New GM CAP, this will be evidenced through the development of an Equality Impact Assessment (EqIA) to identify whether people with protected characteristics could be affected by the New GM CAP disproportionately or differentially.
- 1.9.2 An initial screening has been undertaken to assess which protected characteristics are likely to be impacted by the New GM CAP, and in scope for the EqIA.
- 1.9.3 Some groups are more sensitive to changes in air quality and will therefore benefit more quickly from improvements in air quality. The five protected characteristics, identified in **Table 1** are likely to be disproportionately or differentially impacted by changes in air quality and NO₂ levels and will therefore be considered within the EqIA for the New GM CAP:

Table 1 Equality Considerations - Protected Characteristics

Protected characteristic	Likely to be disproportionately affected by improved air quality	Likely to be differentially affected by improved air quality
Age		x
Disability (includes all forms of physical and mental disability)		x
Pregnancy and maternity		x
Gender (male drivers)	x	
Race	x	
Low income / socio-economic deprivation	x	

- 1.9.4 The New GM CAP aims to reduce the health impacts of air pollution as well as reduce NO₂ concentrations to below legal limits in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest whilst minimising any negative socio-economic impacts. The EqIA will consider the impact of this New GM CAP on the groups above.

1.10 Government asks

- 1.10.1 The New GM CAP includes one new specific 'ask' from Government – to remove out-of-area operation by private hire drivers/vehicles. Greater Manchester Authorities are keen to work with the Department for Transport to consider an appropriate regulatory device that would require that all private hire journeys within Greater Manchester to be undertaken by a driver and vehicle which are both licensed by one of the ten Greater Manchester local authorities. In context of the GM CAP, this measure would provide local authorities with stronger regulatory tools to improve the emission standards of all private hire fleets operating in Greater Manchester.
- 1.10.2 Greater Manchester will continue to seek to ensure that the Government takes appropriate action to address exceedances on the A57/A628 a stretch of Strategic Road network, managed by National Highways that cuts through the villages of Hollingworth and Mottram.
- 1.10.3 Under an investment-led non-charging GM CAP the ANPR cameras installed for the Class C charging CAZ could be used to inform and support the development of investment-led solutions. GM also wants to work with Government to agree the use of the GM CAP ANPR cameras to support identification of vehicles that could be upgraded, and also for potential law enforcement activity related to the detection of crime.

1.11 Participatory Policy Development

- 1.11.1 The approach to Participatory Policy Development will include engagement with GM based groups representing the protected characteristic groups potentially impacted by the New GM CAP.
- 1.11.2 Any plan should be developed in conjunction with the residents and businesses in Greater Manchester. The ten Greater Manchester authorities are currently working to develop the New GM CAP, in conjunction with a range of stakeholders. Further participatory approach will ensure that the New GM CAP works for the residents and businesses of Greater Manchester. Greater Manchester will test with vehicle owners their plan that where non-compliant vehicles are identified as contributing to locations where NO₂ exceedances have been modelled, Greater Manchester Authorities will have funding packages to incentivise upgrades to the cleanest possible vehicle, in order to get the greatest emissions reduction.

1.12 Next steps

- 1.12.1 Before the Air Quality Administration Committee can confirm the submission as an agreed document there needs to be an opportunity for the 'Case for a New Greater Manchester CAP' document and associated appendices attached as **Appendix A-E** to be considered, as required, through the local governance arrangements of the individual authorities. This will take place in the next month and before the next Air Quality Administration Committee who can then formally confirm the submission as final.
- 1.12.2 Following the Participatory Policy Development process, Greater Manchester will develop, assess and agree a package of measures forming a proposed New GM CAP. This package of measures will be consulted upon in early 2023.
- 1.12.3 Greater Manchester will review the responses to the consultation and make any adaptations to the proposals as necessary. It is anticipated that a decision could be made to proceed with the New GM CAP in July 2023.

2 Introduction

- 2.1.1 The Government has instructed many local authorities across the UK to take quick action to reduce harmful roadside levels of Nitrogen Dioxide (NO₂) following the Secretary of State (SoS) issuing a Direction under the Environment Act 1995. In Greater Manchester, the 10 local authorities, the Greater Manchester Combined Authority (GMCA) and Transport for Greater Manchester (TfGM) are working together to develop a Clean Air Plan to tackle NO₂ exceedances at the Roadside, herein known as Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP).
- 2.1.2 The GMCA – Clean Air Final Plan report on 25 June 2021⁵ endorsed Greater Manchester's Final CAP and policy following a review of all of the information gathered through the GM CAP consultation and wider data, evidence and modelling work. Throughout the development of the previous Plan, JAQU reviewed and approved all technical and delivery submissions. The Plan was agreed by the ten Greater Manchester local authorities. Within this document, this is referred to as the Previous GM CAP.
- 2.1.3 On the 8th February 2022, a new Direction was issued by the SoS⁶ which confirmed that the March 2020 Direction to implement a Class C charging Clean Air Zone (CAZ) had been revoked and required that a new plan be submitted to the SoS by 1st July 2022 which should:⁷
- review the measures specified in the local plan for NO₂ compliance and associated mitigation measures; and
 - determine whether to propose any changes to the detailed design of those measures, or any additional measures.
- 2.1.4 The Direction also states that the local plan for NO₂ compliance must ensure the achievement of NO₂ compliance in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest. It should also ensure that human exposure to concentrations of NO₂ above the legal limit is reduced as quickly as possible.
- 2.1.5 Within this document, this new Plan, and any subsequent further development of the new Plan, is referred to as the New GM CAP.

⁵ Also considered by the Greater Manchester authorities through their own constitutional decision-making arrangements.

⁶

https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/1054931/Environment_Act_1995_Greater_Manchester_Air_Quality_Direction_2022.pdf

⁷ In addition to recommendations about interim arrangements for changes to delivery arrangements for the CAZ in the meantime, including signage, funding and discount/exemption applications.

- 2.1.6 The development of the GM CAP is funded by Government and overseen by the Joint Air Quality Unit (JAQU), a joint DEFRA and DfT unit established to deliver national plans to improve air quality and meet legal limits of NO₂ concentrations. The costs related to the business case, implementation and operation of the GM CAP are either directly funded or underwritten by Government acting through JAQU and any net deficit over the life of the GM CAP will be covered by the New Burdens Doctrine, subject to a reasonableness test.⁸

2.2 What does this document set out?

- 2.2.1 This document sets out the case for Greater Manchester's proposal for a New GM CAP. It sets out why the ten local authorities of Greater Manchester believe that an investment-led non-charging GM CAP is the best solution to address the region's NO₂ problem, highlighting:

- A summary of the background to the GM CAP to date;
- What the Greater Manchester authorities are already doing to improve air quality through the work undertaken to date on the GM CAP and via other strategies and investments;
- How economic conditions have changed over the last year, both globally and locally, and how this has impacted Greater Manchester's residents and businesses;
- The current position and the way forward, to include a further submission to Government later in the year;
- Equality impact considerations; and
- Next steps.

- 2.2.2 This document does not provide the detailed design of a New GM CAP. In conjunction with a range of stakeholders, as detailed within **Section 15**, the ten Greater Manchester authorities are currently working to develop that detail collaboratively and will submit this to Government in due course. The collaborative approach is referred to in this document as the 'participatory policy development' approach.

⁸ The new burdens doctrine is part of a suite of measures to ensure Council Taxpayers do not face excessive increases.

3 Why are Greater Manchester and the Government taking action on NO₂?

- 3.1.1 Poor air quality has a real and significant effect on people's health. Air pollution is the largest environmental risk linked to deaths every year. Pollutants such as NO_x, principally NO₂, and PM (PM_{2.5} and PM₁₀) that are not visible to the naked eye are found at harmful levels in many urban areas across the UK and particularly on busy roads.
- 3.1.2 Breathing in polluted air contributes to the equivalent of 1,200 premature deaths a year in Greater Manchester.⁹ Both long- and short-term exposure to air pollution are known to adversely affect health. It affects people's lungs in the short and long term, worsening respiratory issues such as asthma or bronchitis, as well as cardiovascular problems, and reduces life expectancy¹⁰. Health damage caused by air pollution can begin as early as a baby's first few weeks in the womb and exposure over a long time can lead to heart and lung disease. Some of the most vulnerable in society are hit hardest – children, older people and those already in poor health.
- 3.1.3 There has been analysis conducted by the Office for National Statistics (ONS) to understand whether exposure to air pollution increases the risk of dying from Covid-19. Although there is caution expressed regarding the link between air pollution and Covid-19 and consideration of other factors, early evidence from the pandemic showed that Covid-19 deaths were more common in highly polluted areas. In total, it is estimated that the health and social care costs of air pollution in England could reach £5.3bn by 2035 unless action is taken.¹¹
- 3.1.4 Greater Manchester has a particular imperative to improve health, as the region has one of the lowest life expectancies at birth in England and significant health inequalities between areas. For example, there is an 18-year gap for men and a 13-year gap for women in healthy life expectancy across Greater Manchester when comparing those areas of highest healthy life expectancy with the lowest.¹² Low-income communities are more affected by air pollution. Achieving a major improvement in air quality across Greater Manchester will not only be important for improving human health but will also help to make Greater Manchester a more attractive place to live, visit and invest. Alongside this, there is a growing body of evidence that relates poor air quality with a secondary set of health impacts arising from spending less time outside, which can lead to more sedentary lifestyles and negative psychological effects on our mental health.¹³

⁹ Public Health England – Air Quality in Greater Manchester – from a Public Health Perspective (September 2018)

¹⁰ <https://www.local.gov.uk/air-quality-briefing-directors-public-health>

¹¹ <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/nitrogen-dioxide-effects-on-mortality>

¹² <https://blog.policy.manchester.ac.uk/posts/2016/10/life-on-the-line-life-expectancy-and-where-we-live/>

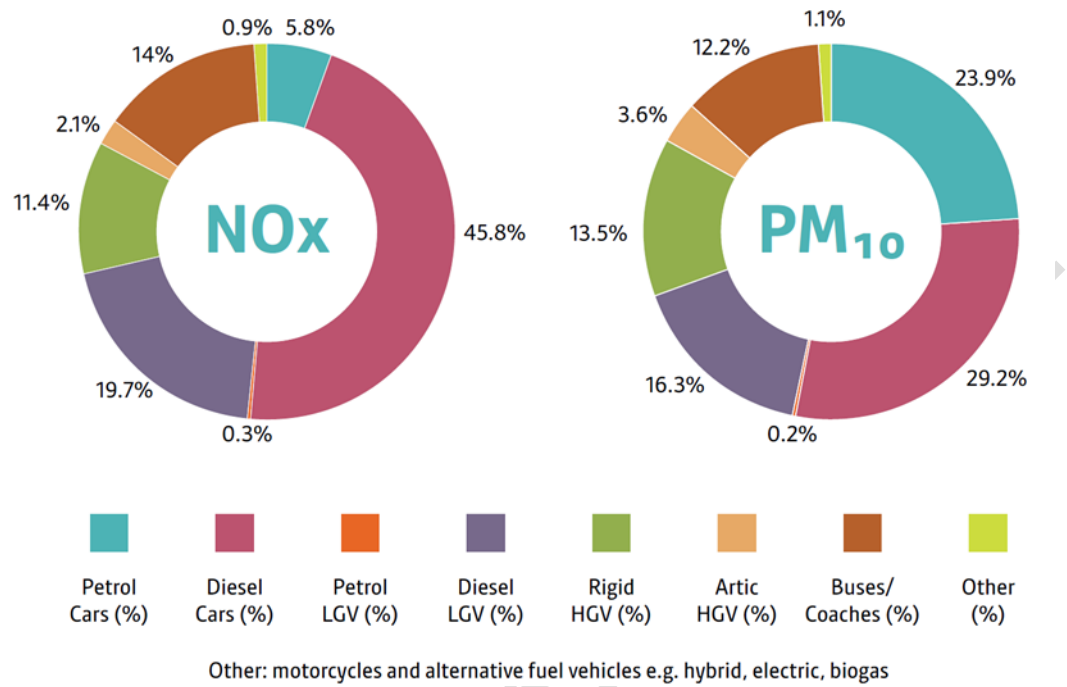
¹³ https://paa.confex.com/paa/2017/mediafile/ExtendedAbstract/Paper13493/IndividualPsychologicalDistress_April7.pdf

- 3.1.5 The people living in places with the dirtiest air are often those least likely to drive, and some of Greater Manchester's most deprived communities suffer the worst air pollution, living close to busy roads. A Public Health England review in 2019 described air pollution as the largest environmental risk to the public's health, reporting strong evidence of the association between air pollution and cardiovascular and respiratory disease and emerging evidence of other possible health effects such as dementia, low birth rates and diabetes. Around 7% of Greater Manchester's population, nearly 200,000 people, live in areas with roads that are close to or in exceedance of the Limit Value for NO₂ and many more people regularly spend time visiting these areas and travelling on these roads.
- 3.1.6 In our society, the youngest, oldest, those living in more deprived places, and those with existing heart or lung problems are at the greatest risk of developing symptoms due to exposure to air pollution.^{14,15} Greater Manchester contains some of the most deprived communities in the country, often living in urban areas with high levels of traffic. Conditions caused or exacerbated by air pollution may significantly reduce quality of life and can result in affected people being less able to work, attend education or carry out their normal daily lives. These impacts in turn widen the health inequality gap further. Further discussion of these equalities considerations is provided in **Section 13** and it is planned that a full Equalities Impact Assessment (EqIA) will be published based on the New GM CAP.
- 3.1.7 Diesel vehicles are the main source of road-based NO_x emissions in Greater Manchester, as shown in **Figure 1**, and older vehicles are typically more polluting than newer vehicles.

¹⁴ Air Quality – A Briefing for Directors of Public Health (2017), <https://www.local.gov.uk/air-quality-briefing-directors-public-health>

¹⁵ RCP and RCPCH London, Every breath we take lifelong impact of air pollution (2016), <https://www.rcplondon.ac.uk/projects/outputs/every-breath-we-take-lifelong-impact-air-pollution>

Figure 1 Vehicles responsible for emissions damaging to health in Greater Manchester¹⁶



¹⁶ <https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/media/1276/low-emission-strategy-dec-2016.pdf>

4 What has led to Greater Manchester revising its approach to the GM CAP?

- 4.1.1 Since 2010, the UK has been in breach of the legal limits for concentrations of NO₂ in major urban areas. The Air Quality Standards Regulations 2010 implemented the Ambient Air Quality Directive (2008/50/EC), which sets legally binding limits for concentrations of major air pollutants that affect human health, including NO₂ and particulates, into English law, and requires the SoS to draw up and implement a national air quality plan to achieve the relevant limit within the 'shortest possible time'.
- 4.1.2 In 2015 compliance with the legal limits of NO₂ had still not been achieved. In response, the UK Government was held to be in breach of its legal obligations and was required to take action by the UK Supreme Court.
- 4.1.3 In July 2017 the UK Government published its Air Quality Plan requiring local authorities with persistent exceedances to undertake local action to consider the best option to meet the legal NO₂ Limit Value in the shortest possible time. In the same month, the SoS issued a Direction under the Environment Act 1995 requiring seven Greater Manchester local authorities to produce a feasibility study to identify the option which will deliver compliance with the requirement to meet legal limits of NO₂ in the shortest possible time¹⁷.
- 4.1.4 Oldham Metropolitan Borough Council (MBC) was not directed along with the other Greater Manchester local authorities (alongside Rochdale MBC and Wigan MBC) in 2017, however following a court ruling in 2018¹⁸ the UK Government was ordered to produce supplements to the UK 2017 Air Quality Plan.
- 4.1.5 Consequently, Oldham MBC was directed to conduct a feasibility study and provide the SoS with a document setting out the measure(s) that would achieve compliance with the Legal Limits in the shortest possible time.
- 4.1.6 In October 2018 the UK Government produced a supplemental plan,¹⁹ which acknowledged that, as Oldham MBC is part of the Greater Manchester Plan, the Oldham exceedances were being considered as part of the GM CAP. Local modelling in the Target Determination exercise also identified exceedances in Rochdale and Wigan.

¹⁷ Environment Act 1995 (Feasibility Study for Nitrogen Dioxide Compliance) Air Quality Direction 2017. Source: https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/746095/air-quality-no2-plan-directions-2017.pdf

¹⁸ Client Earth (No3) v (1) Secretary of State for the Environment, Food & Rural Affairs; (2) The Secretary of State for Transport and (3) Welsh Ministers [2018] EWHC 315.

¹⁹ Supplement to the UK plan for tackling roadside nitrogen dioxide concentrations October 2018.

- 4.1.7 The Greater Manchester authorities have collaborated on the preparation of the GM CAP since 2017, with the clear intention of securing a Plan in agreement with Government that best reflects both the impact of NO₂ roadside emissions at a city-region level and the wider strategies for social, economic and environmental improvement in Greater Manchester.
- 4.1.8 Throughout the development of the GM CAP the local authorities have made clear the expectation that the Government would support the plans through:
- Clear arrangements and funding to develop workable, local vehicle scrappage / upgrade measures;
 - Short term effective interventions in vehicle and technology manufacturing and distribution, led by national Government;
 - Replacement of non-compliant buses; and
 - A clear instruction to Highways England²⁰ to implement measures which deliver compliance with legal limits for NO₂ on the strategic road network, for which they are responsible, in the shortest possible time.²¹
- 4.1.9 In March 2019, all ten Greater Manchester local authorities collaboratively submitted an Outline Business Case (OBC) for the GM CAP to JAQU outlining a package of measures (including a Class C charging CAZ) to deliver regional compliance with the Limit Value for NO₂ concentrations. The OBC and associated documentation are available to view on the Clean Air Greater Manchester website.²²
- 4.1.10 Ministerial feedback was received in July 2019 along with a further Direction under the Environment Act 1995 requiring all ten of the Greater Manchester local authorities to implement a Class C²³ charging CAZ across the region.
- 4.1.11 This was superseded by a further Direction issued in March 2020 which required the ten Greater Manchester authorities to implement the GM CAP so that:
- (a) compliance with the legal Limit Value for NO₂ is achieved in the shortest possible time and by 2024 at the latest; and
 - (b) exposure to levels above the legal limit for NO₂ are reduced as quickly as possible.

²⁰ On 19 August 2021 it was announced that Highways England changed its name to 'National Highways' reflecting the new focus the company has on delivering the government's £27bn strategic roads investment programme, while also continuing to set highways standards for the whole UK.

²¹ Greater Manchester Authorities are directed to take action on the local road network. Those roads managed by National Highways, such as motorways and trunk roads are excluded from the CAP.

²² Accessible at: <https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/>

²³ The following vehicle types would be charged under a charging CAZ Class C: Buses, coaches, taxis, private hire vehicles, heavy goods vehicles, vans, minibuses. Source: <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/driving-in-a-clean-air-zone>

- 4.1.12 Throughout 2020/2021, progress was made by Greater Manchester in preparing to implement a Class C charging CAZ across the region with Government, including the procurement of operational services, operational readiness and implementation of infrastructure to support a Class C charging CAZ to be operational from 30 May 2022.
- 4.1.13 The GMCA – Clean Air Final Plan report on 25 June 2021²⁴ endorsed Greater Manchester’s Final CAP and policy following a review of all of the information gathered through the GM CAP consultation and wider data, evidence and modelling work. Throughout the development of the Previous GM CAP, JAQU reviewed and approved all technical and delivery submissions. The Previous GM CAP was agreed by the ten Greater Manchester local authorities. This included the GM CAP Policy, that outlined the boundary, discounts, exemptions, daily charges of the Class C charging CAZ as well as the financial support packages offered towards upgrading to a compliant vehicle, including the eligibility criteria to be applied with an agreement to keep funding arrangements under review. The aim of the funding was to support an upgrade to a compliant vehicle and to mitigate the negative socio-economic effects of a Class C charging CAZ.
- 4.1.14 Concurrently, Greater Manchester has already begun to implement measures to improve air quality across the city-region, launching the Clean Bus Fund and Clean Heavy Goods Vehicle (HGV) Fund in December 2020 and November 2021 respectively as well as expanding the network of Electric Vehicle chargers across Greater Manchester. Since May 2021, over 1,000 buses have been awarded funding to upgrade their vehicles by either retrofit or replacement. Additionally, over 300 HGVs have been awarded funding through the Clean HGV Fund. Greater Manchester is also implementing a number of additional schemes that will have a positive impact upon air quality across the region and further detail on this is set out in **Section 6**.
- 4.1.15 In Summer 2021 when the Previous GM CAP was agreed by the Greater Manchester Authorities, there was only evidence of a temporary disruption in vehicle supply due to the pandemic in 2020, which was assumed to be addressed by the market, with the Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders (SMMT) predicting some level of ‘catch up’.²⁵ Greater Manchester sought a number of measures to address this, including negotiating improved vehicle replacement funding with Government in early 2021 to reflect our understanding of the impact of the pandemic at that stage.

²⁴ Also considered by the Greater Manchester authorities through their own constitutional decision-making arrangements.

²⁵ https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbv1k6h2/2ZMJ3DJXiv7p3xOeZu4CYQ/247196ef60e33ac89f7f8938e1e16418/Appendix_6D_GM_proposed_approach_to_representing_the_impact_of_Covid-19_in_core_modelling_scenarios.pdf

- 4.1.16 Consultants Arup and AECOM were commissioned in late 2021²⁶ to analyse and report on the market conditions within the LGV sector in particular. The investigation found evidence that the used van market had materially changed, with evidence suggesting that second-hand van prices had increased by between 13% and c.60% since the modelling for the Previous GM CAP had been undertaken.
- 4.1.17 GM concluded that at that level, fewer van owners would choose to (or be able to) upgrade in response to the Class C charging CAZ, devaluing the funding offer for vans, with the Previous GM CAP being particularly sensitive to van prices given their number in Greater Manchester.
- 4.1.18 At the same time, in early 2022, analysis carried out as part of GM's ongoing commitment to review vehicle sales trends also found that sales of new private cars had been lower than expected in 2021, reducing the natural rate of fleet upgrade, indicating that the impacts of an older fleet of private cars based on recorded sales would be expected to lead to a delay in the predicted year of compliance for the Previous GM CAP, irrespective of any other changes to the assumptions.
- 4.1.19 GM concluded that independently either factor could be sufficient to delay compliance beyond 2024 and that this risk would be amplified if both factors are occurring simultaneously. In light of the above, the Greater Manchester Air Quality Committee requested that the SoS agreed to pause opening of the next phase of the Clean Air Funds at the end of January to enable an urgent and fundamental joint policy review with Government to identify how a revised policy can be agreed to deal with the supply issues and local businesses' ability to comply with the GM CAP.
- 4.1.20 Following this, the Greater Manchester Mayor met the SoS for Environment to relay the issues set out above and the formal request for suspension. It was agreed that further evidence would be shared between officials and a report was prepared by Greater Manchester, *Issues Leading to Delayed Compliance Based on the Approved GM CAP Assumptions*.²⁷
- 4.1.21 This report was shared with JAQU on 2 February 2022. It concluded that the Previous GM CAP could no longer be expected to achieve compliance in 2024.
- 4.1.22 On 4 February 2022 Jo Churchill, Parliamentary Under-SoS at the Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs, Andy Burnham, Mayor of Greater Manchester and Cllr Andrew Western, GMCA portfolio lead for clean air met to find a solution. Subsequently, a new Direction was issued to Greater Manchester, requiring a review of the GM CAP with any revised proposals to achieve compliance in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest.²⁸

²⁶ [https://democracy.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/documents/s18685/ARUP Technical Note.pdf](https://democracy.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/documents/s18685/ARUP%20Technical%20Note.pdf)

²⁷ [https://democracy.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/documents/s19330/Appendix 3 Issues leading to delayed compliance report.pdf](https://democracy.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/documents/s19330/Appendix%203%20Issues%20leading%20to%20delayed%20compliance%20report.pdf)
(greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk)

²⁸ The Environment Act 1995 (Greater Manchester) Air Quality Direction 2022 (publishing.service.gov.uk)

- 4.1.23 This new (2022) Direction revoked the Direction dated March 2020 which required the ten Greater Manchester local authorities to implement a Class C charging CAZ so as to achieve compliance with the legal Limit Value for NO₂ in the shortest possible time and by 2024 at the latest.²⁹

²⁹ [Appendix 2 - 200316 Greater Manchester NO2 Plan Direction.pdf \(greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk\)](#)

5 What has changed since Summer 2021?

- 5.1.1 The Previous GM CAP was developed based upon the best evidence available at the time and following prescribed Government guidance. After the initial OBC submission, a series of technical notes were published setting out the results of analysis and research carried out to better understand the vehicles in scope for the scheme. This evidence formed the basis of the development of the Option for Consultation.
- 5.1.2 From March 2020, it became clear that the pandemic would affect the GM CAP; a programme of work was carried out in 2020/2021 to better understand the possible impacts of the Covid-19 pandemic on the Plan, published as the *Impacts of Covid Report* in June 2021.³⁰ This evidence, alongside feedback from the Consultation, was used to inform the GM CAP following consultation as approved by the ten Greater Manchester local authorities in June/July 2021.
- 5.1.3 At that time, Greater Manchester identified a number of possible risks to the GM CAP, which included concerns about the risk of vehicle price increases and the impact of any further lockdowns in the UK or countries in the supply chain. To evaluate the case for a New GM CAP, analysis into the changed economic environment has been conducted to determine whether the Previous GM CAP remains fit for purpose (**Appendix E**). Additionally, a series of vehicle evidence papers have been developed, as set out in **Appendix A to D**, to evaluate the ability of affected vehicle owners to upgrade their vehicles following the impacts on the global supply chain and the cost-of-living crisis.

5.2 Economic context

- 5.2.1 The economic context in the UK has changed dramatically in the period since July 2021. A range of factors associated with the pandemic, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis have combined to create a context of increased financial hardship for businesses and families. As a result of these changed conditions since Summer 2021 and the Previous GM CAP, Greater Manchester has undertaken research to understand the size and scale of the impacts. It should be noted that these factors continue to evolve, and the economic forecast is currently extremely difficult to predict. These levels of uncertainty only exacerbate the negative impact on businesses and households.
- 5.2.2 A summary of the outcomes of this research are set out as follows:
- National / international drivers;
 - Regional (North West) drivers; and
 - Factors specific to Greater Manchester.

³⁰ Accessible at: <https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/>

(1) National / international drivers

War in Ukraine (commenced late February and on-going)

5.2.3 Global inflationary pressures have intensified sharply following Russia's invasion of Ukraine. This has led to a material deterioration in the economic outlook for world and UK growth.³¹ In addition, Consumer Price Index inflation is expected to rise further over the remainder of the year, to just over 9% in 2022 Quarter 2 and averaging slightly over 10% at its peak in 2022 Quarter 4.³²

5.2.4 The war in Ukraine is also influencing the cost of energy and food as summarised below:

- Russia is a prominent exporter of energy, producing 17% of the world's natural gas supply and 12% of its oil³³. 8% of UK oil demand is directly imported from Russia, this is to be phased out by end of 2022, a move which could serve to place extra stress on prices; and
- Russia and Ukraine are major agricultural exporters in grain, impacting food community prices with a 30% increase in the price of wheat and c.20% in the price of maize/corn since the war started.^{34,35}

Increases in the cost of energy

5.2.5 The energy price cap calculated by Ofgem increased by 12% in October 2021 to £1,277. Additionally, an increase to the price cap in April 2022 resulted in approximately 17 million households seeing their annual bill raise by 54% to £1,971, equating to a £693 increase (difference due to rounding). A further increase to the price cap is expected in October 2022 of c.£700-£850.³⁶

5.2.6 Unlike residential households, businesses on commercial energy tariffs are not protected by any price cap and tariff prices have been rising in reaction to the spike in wholesale energy prices around the world. Small businesses have a greater tendency to operate on tighter margins and have cashflow restrictions and are therefore more susceptible to increases in running costs. Furthermore, they are more likely to be forced to pass on their running cost increases to consumers through price hikes, just in order to survive. This has potential to put them at a competitive disadvantage.

³¹ <https://www.bankofengland.co.uk/-/media/boe/files/monetary-policy-summary-and-minutes/2022/monetary-policy-summary-and-minutes-may-2022.pdf>

³² <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/inflationandpriceindices/bulletins/consumerpriceinflation/april2022>

³³ <https://www.bp.com/en/global/corporate/energy-economics/statistical-review-of-world-energy/country-and-regional-insights/russia.html>

³⁴ <https://www.fao.org/3/cb9236en/cb9236en.pdf>

³⁵ <https://tradingeconomics.com/commodities>

³⁶ https://obr.uk/docs/dlm_uploads/CCS0222366764-001_OBR-EFO-March-2022_Web-Accessible-2.pdf

Increases in the cost of fuel for motorists

- 5.2.7 Fuel prices have risen by 42% for petrol and 44% for diesel vehicles between July 2021 and June 2022, costing consumers an additional £0.55 for petrol and £0.59 for diesel per litre³⁷. Fuel price increases will particularly affect vehicle-operating businesses with high mileage such as the logistics and delivery sectors, with press reports that the annual cost to fuel an HGV has risen up to £20,000 per year.³⁸

Increasing cost of food and other products

- 5.2.8 Inflationary pressures have pushed up grocery prices by an additional £271 (5.9%) for each household per year.³⁹ This is likely to have a disproportionate impact on the poorest in society with their ability to absorb any additional costs comparatively diminished.

Ongoing global impacts of Covid-19

- 5.2.9 Shanghai, which is home to the world's largest container port, has been the subject of city-wide lockdown during April 2022 related to the Omicron variant. Global supply chains that were already stretched are being hampered further⁴⁰.
- 5.2.10 The global semi-conductor shortage is still impacting consumer products with retailers expected to increase costs.⁴¹ Intelligence from the Bank of England's Agency network suggests that shortages of semi-conductors have been exacerbated by recent lockdowns in China. Contacts also reported difficulties in obtaining components and other inputs owing to the war in Ukraine, and were seeking alternative suppliers or running down existing stockpiles to support output.⁴²

How the impact of inflation is distributed across society

- 5.2.1 Evidence from an independent think tank, the Resolution Foundation, has stated that the poorest tenth of households (by income) spend three times as much as a share of expenditure on gas and electricity bills as the richest tenth. This means the lowest income tenth of people are facing an inflation rate at least 1.5 percentage points higher than the richest tenth. The Bank of England has warned the UK could see double-digit inflation later this year.⁴³

³⁷ <https://www.rac.co.uk/drive/advice/fuel-watch/>

³⁸ <https://www.bbc.co.uk/news/business-61716039>

³⁹ <https://www.kantar.com/inspiration/fmcg/2022-wp--uk-shoppers-look-out-value-as-grocery-inflation-hits-11-year-high>

⁴⁰ <https://www.controlrisks.com/our-thinking/insights/china-lockdowns-prompt-domestic-shortages>

⁴¹ <https://www.popsci.com/technology/global-chip-shortage/>

⁴² <https://www.bankofengland.co.uk/-/media/boe/files/monetary-policy-report/2022/may/monetary-policy-report-may-2022.pdf>

⁴³ <https://www.resolutionfoundation.org/publications/cap-off/>

Interest Rate Changes

- 5.2.2 In response to rising inflation, the Bank of England has increased interest rates from 0.25% in January 2022 to 1.25% in June 2022. This has had a direct impact on the cost of borrowing with rates on lending to small and medium-sized enterprises rising by around 110 basis points between January and March this year and are now slightly above their 2019 levels. While larger firms' ability to access credit is broadly unchanged, credit conditions have tightened slightly for smaller firms since January 2022.⁴⁴

Removal of Government Covid-support schemes

- 5.2.1 The UK Government has withdrawn funding for Covid-19 support schemes such as the job retention (furlough) scheme, enhanced sick pay, business rates pauses, and the Universal Credit uplift across end of 2021 and Q1 of 2022.^{45,46}

Revised Projections for UK GDP Growth

- 5.2.2 The Bank of England estimates that quarterly UK Gross Domestic Product (GDP) growth was 0.9% in 2022 Q1. Growth slowed sharply over the first half of the year, reflecting the significant adverse impact of higher global commodity and tradable goods prices on UK demand. GDP is projected to fall in 2022 Q4, driven largely by the decline in households' real incomes, including that stemming from the projected rise of around 40% in retail gas and electricity prices when the Ofgem price caps are next reset in October. Calendar year GDP growth is forecast to be broadly flat in 2023. Q4 GDP growth picks up to around 0.75% by the end of 2023 as the pressures on household incomes ease somewhat, although this is still below pre-pandemic rates.⁴⁷

(2) Regional (North West) drivers

- 5.2.3 Regionally, the biggest driver in terms of the economic factors that influence the GM CAP, is the labour market, which shows a mixed picture as the economy recovers from the Covid-19 pandemic.
- 5.2.4 Whilst labour market data released by the ONS showed that the employment rate in the North West continued to fall, with the gap between the North West and the UK at its widest in two years in the Jan-March 2022 data (a gap of 2%). Nationally, the employment rate for the UK was 75.7% - up from 75.5% in the three months to February. The North West therefore seems to be on a different trajectory from wider UK patterns.⁴⁸

⁴⁴ <https://www.bankofengland.co.uk/-/media/boe/files/monetary-policy-report/2022/may/monetary-policy-report-may-2022.pdf>

⁴⁵ <https://commonslibrary.parliament.uk/examining-the-end-of-the-furlough-scheme/>

⁴⁶ <https://www.gov.uk/guidance/claim-back-statutory-sick-pay-paid-to-employees-due-to-coronavirus-covid-19>

⁴⁷ <https://www.bankofengland.co.uk/-/media/boe/files/monetary-policy-report/2022/may/monetary-policy-report-may-2022.pdf>

⁴⁸ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/regionallabourmarket/latest>

- 5.2.5 An increase in working age economic inactivity has attracted national attention. In the North West of England, the Covid-driven rise is more marked than the national average. As well as the inactivity rate returning to a pandemic high of 23.5% in the most recent data, the gap with the UK has widened once more (2.1ppts).⁴⁹

(3) Factors specific to Greater Manchester

Greater Manchester business composition

- 5.2.6 Based on 2021 data, Greater Manchester has more small businesses (+c.15,000) compared to other areas of comparable total and working age populations such as the West Midlands.⁵⁰

Outlook for Greater Manchester businesses

- 5.2.7 A report by the Growth Company in May 2022 collated 246 surveys with businesses (almost all who responded were based in Greater Manchester) undertaken during April 2022.⁵¹ The report stated that a growing concern was the proportion of businesses facing business finance challenges (43% vs 33% March 2022) and increasingly impacted by the rising costs of raw materials - April 2022 reported a value of 28% vs. 16% for July 2021.
- 5.2.8 Recruitment has been a key challenge for businesses, with total vacancies across all sectors having been at high levels over 2021/2022 – resulting in some businesses facing significant challenges in staffing their operations - Manchester Airport being a key example. Transport operators such as bus, coach and taxi operators have faced driver shortages as the economy emerges out of the pandemic. This has in part been driven by an increase in economic inactivity brought about by the pandemic with the size of the workforce available to Greater Manchester businesses likely having shrunk (in the North West during Jan-March 2022 the working age inactivity rate (the number of people who are not in work and not looking for a job) was 23.5% vs. a national inactivity rate of 21.4% - this is higher than it was at the beginning of 2020).⁵²

Wages in Greater Manchester

- 5.2.9 Median pay in Greater Manchester is over £100 a month below the UK median based upon ONS 'experimental' data (note: this data is unadjusted for inflation and indicates the trend only).⁵³ The wage gap was at its widest in January of 2022 (£127 a month).

⁴⁹

<https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/regionallabourmarket/latest>

⁵⁰ <https://www.nomisweb.co.uk/sources/ukbc>

⁵¹ <https://www.businessgrowthhub.com/coronavirus/business-survey>

⁵²

<https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/uklabourmarket/may2022>

⁵³

<https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/earningsandworkinghours/datasets/realtimeinformationstatisticsreferencetableseasonallyadjusted>

Understanding the Greater Manchester residential population

- 5.2.10 53% of Greater Manchester's residential population is classified as either 'Financially Stretched'⁵⁴ or 'Urban Adversity'⁵⁵ based on the Acorn segmentation tool categories, whereas across the UK this figure stands at just 40%. This disparity demonstrates the comparative economic vulnerability of the Greater Manchester population to inflation associated with non-discretionary spend.⁵⁶
- 5.2.11 For 'Financially Stretched' and 'Urban Adversity' households, disposable income is typically well below average, and often below £10,000. This means that those with limited disposable income are likely to be even more vulnerable to any costs that may be passed onto them. It also serves as a reminder that Greater Manchester businesses that predominately serve local markets could be particularly vulnerable to weakening consumer demand.
- 5.2.12 Launched in October 2020 during the Covid-19 pandemic, the Greater Manchester Independent Inequalities Commission undertook a six-month analysis of inequalities across the city region, resulting in the *Good Lives for All in Greater Manchester report*.⁵⁷ Amongst the findings, the report highlights the health inequalities experienced across the city region and recommended that wellbeing and equality goals sit at the heart of the Greater Manchester Strategy, and that universal basic services are accessible to the most disadvantaged groups. The findings of the report will inform the planned EqIA for the New GM CAP.

Economic conditions summary

- 5.2.13 UK inflation reached a 40-year high of 9% during April 2022, up from 2% in July 2021. It is widely accepted that inflation will increase to higher levels still during the remainder of 2022, with evidence already pointing to consumer demand being dampened. Inflationary pressures are already having a significant impact on household bills with the average annual grocery bill on course to rise by £380 according to research conducted by Kantar.⁵⁸
- 5.2.14 Greater Manchester is not insulated from the impacts of high inflation, in fact in some respects it is particularly vulnerable - noting its relatively high volume of small businesses, and a higher than average (compared to the UK) proportion of residents who typically have below average disposable household incomes.

⁵⁴ This category contains a mix of traditional areas of Britain. Incomes tend to be well below average. Although some have reasonably well paid jobs more people are in lower paid administrative, clerical, semi-skilled and manual jobs. Apprenticeships and O levels are more likely educational qualifications. Unemployment is above average as are the proportions of people claiming other benefits.

⁵⁵ This category contains the most deprived areas of large and small towns and cities across the UK. Household incomes are low, nearly always below the national average. The level of people having difficulties with debt or having been refused credit approaches double the national average. The numbers claiming Jobseeker's Allowance and other benefits is well above the national average. Levels of qualifications are low and those in work are likely to be employed in semi-skilled or unskilled occupations.

⁵⁶ Source: Acorn 2021. CACI Limited. The applicable copyright notices can be found at <http://www.caci.co.uk/copyrightnotices.pdf>

⁵⁷ <https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/media/4605/the-next-level-good-lives-for-all-in-greater-manchester.pdf>

⁵⁸ <https://www.kantar.com/uki/inspiration/fmcg/2022-wp-uk-grocery-bills-to-rise-by-380-per-year-but-inflation-fails-to-dampen-jubilee-joy>

- 5.2.15 The Bank of England has already responded by increasing the base rate to 1.25% (up from 0.1% in July 2021) - signalling that further rate rises are likely. This in turn will increase the cost of borrowing to both businesses and residents who require finance and are not protected by fixed rates. Meanwhile the Bank of England's Monetary Policy Report (May 2022) points to an expectation that GDP will fall in Q4 2022 and may be 'broadly flat' during 2023.
- 5.2.16 In summary, any intervention, such as a charging CAZ, that could see businesses forced to pay additional charges and potentially pass costs on to the consumer, could have severe consequences for those groups who are already struggling to cope with the cost of living crisis.

5.3 Vehicle sector impacts

- 5.3.1 Greater Manchester has undertaken research to understand the changed conditions within the vehicle market and subsequent impacts from the economic factors, as discussed in **Section 5.2**, and lasting impacts from the Covid-19 pandemic. The research has been structured into a set of vehicle evidence papers which are provided within **Appendix A – D** and include total vehicle numbers, vehicle type apportionment and non-compliant proportions. The findings are summarised below:

LGV

- 5.3.2 A summary of the LGV sector impacts has been provided below:
- Pre-pandemic, there was significant growth in LGV mileage and LGV stock over a number of years and the expectation was that both growth trends would continue.
 - However, whilst the early phases of the pandemic and subsequent lockdowns and restrictions in 2020 constrained demand, it appears that this effect was temporary and has been offset by growth in demand from some LGV-owning sectors.
 - The pandemic had a major impact on the number of new LGVs sold in the UK, initially due to the halting of production lines and local lockdowns around the world.
 - Whilst new LGV sales recovered to some extent in 2021, they are still not back to 2019 levels and so there is a substantial 'lost supply' that has not been recovered equating to 80,000 vehicles on a conservative assumption that 2019 levels had been maintained.
 - The global semiconductor (an element of electronic circuits) shortage has also impacted the automotive industry and its effects are ongoing.
 - The industry is reporting significant supply issues with extended lead times for new orders.

- It is anticipated that the introduction of CAZs at particular locations in the UK will introduce some regional disparity in terms of the availability of certain vehicles and place additional demand pressure on the market in general.
- Reliable data on the variation in the price of new LGVs as a consequence is not available as it is commercially sensitive.
- There is substantial evidence of significant price increases in the second-hand LGV market – the scale of those rises has a high degree of variability depending on the particular vehicle. The extent of the reported rise varies between 13% and almost 60%.
- Overall, the evidence suggests that demand for new and second-hand LGVs remains strong, and therefore that the loss of supply caused by lockdowns in 2020 and more recently by the semi-conductor shortage is leading to price rises in the new and second-hand markets, and to long lead times for new vehicle orders.

HGV

5.3.3 A summary of the HGV sector impacts has been provided below:

- Whilst HGV traffic was significantly reduced in the early lockdown of spring 2020, the overall volume and usage of HGVs recovered quicker than other modes and has generally returned to pre-pandemic levels.
- HGV purchasing patterns were atypical in 2019 and 2020 as a result in a change in regulation, which meant that 2019 saw much higher than normal HGV sales as vehicle owners brought forward sales to avoid the impact of new vehicle regulations. Therefore, sales in 2020 were expected to be lower than normal and it is difficult to disaggregate this impact from that of the pandemic. Overall, between 2019 and 2020, sales were similar on average to sales in previous years.
- The HGV sector is experiencing significant issues in relation to demand and supply of new vehicles. HGV production has been hampered by the shortages in components, particularly semi-conductors. This shortage has impacted on the ability of manufacturers to meet the increased demand as demand from some sectors grows and the requirement to 'catch up' with lower production in Q2 2020. The issue is so significant that some major manufacturers are not taking new orders for this year.
- Significant price increases have been observed, particularly in the second-hand compliant market. For new vehicles, the more significant issue is availability and lead times as noted above.

- Whilst the situation is fluid, responses from vehicle manufacturers and dealerships suggest that the issue will not be resolved until 2023. This means that higher prices for new and used vehicles and a lack of availability of HGVs are likely to continue throughout 2022.

Taxi (Hackney Carriage and Private Hire Vehicle (PHV))

5.3.4 A summary of taxi sector impacts has been provided below:

- Industries served by the taxi industry have suffered heavily through Covid-19. Leisure trips comprised of over half of all taxi journeys in 2019 with Government restrictions having a significant impact on the leisure market, particularly bars, pubs, restaurants and nightclubs. Equally, other important taxi markets have been constrained during the pandemic, stemming from Government restrictions on commuting, shopping and tourism. Emerging from the pandemic, taxis are older and more non-compliant than previously assumed and there are fewer taxis and taxi drivers operating in Greater Manchester compared to pre-pandemic levels.
- The number of new Greater Manchester-licensed Hackney Carriages and PHVs was significantly lower during the pandemic compared to pre-pandemic levels. The number of Greater Manchester licensed taxis decreased from 2019 to 2022 by 5.4% for PHVs and 7.7.% for Hackney Carriages.
- The average age of Hackney Carriages and PHVs has grown older in 2020 and 2022 compared to pre-pandemic levels (2019) with taxi fleets estimated to be one year older than pre-pandemic.
- There has been no significant shift in fuel types for Hackney Carriage with 89% still fuelled by diesel. However, there has been a shift from diesel to hybrid-electric for PHVs, rising from 14% in 2019 to 29% in 2022. The EV uptake remains very low at less than 1% for both Hackney Carriages and PHVs.
- Hackney Carriages, in particular, are likely to have faced a more significant impact from the Covid-19 pandemic, compared to PHVs, due to their dependency on Manchester City Centre where sectors have been hit the hardest. Both Hackney Carriage and PHV owners are likely to have lower cash reserves to upgrade their vehicles than prior to the pandemic.
- Hackney Carriages are older, more non-compliant and are being upgraded at a slower rate compared to PHVs.

- The ability for Hackney Carriage owners to upgrade their vehicles is likely to be more constrained compared to PHV owners due to the higher cost of replacement vehicles and the likelihood of more substantive Covid-19-related impacts. However, there is some evidence to suggest that whilst Hackney Carriage vehicle prices are stable, and even falling for certain vehicle types (although this is based on very limited evidence), the vehicle prices for new and second-hand compliant PHVs are increasing in-line with rising wider car market vehicle prices. For example, Toyota models increased in price by 21% in 2022 compared to 2019 prices and Skoda Octavia prices increased by 14% in 2022 compared to 2019 prices.

Coach/Minibus

5.3.5 A summary of the coach and minibus sector impacts has been provided below:

- The first UK national lockdown in March 2020 had a significant impact on the coach and minibus market, with many coach and minibus operators either having to stop their services altogether or only operate at a significantly reduced capacity.
- Coach operators can be categorised as offering three types of services:
 - Special regular services (e.g. school travel provision);
 - Regular services; and
 - Occasional services, for example for tourism, leisure and events.
- Other than school services, which are largely back to normal, the ongoing impact on the coach market is dependent on how soon tourism and general travel returns to 'normal' levels. At the present time, that remains uncertain though there has been a general increase in leisure travel in recent months.
- Low margin or not-for-profit minibus operators, such as charity transport providers, rely on customers in order to operate and are likely to have reduced demand during the pandemic due the customers they serve being older and government restrictions, reducing already limited cash reserves to upgrade their vehicles.
- The impact of the pandemic has generally reduced prices for both new and second-hand coaches due to the reduced demand in the sector.
- Conversely the price of new and second-hand minibuses has increased other than for second-hand non-compliant vehicles.

- There is a wider range of organisations / businesses that use minibuses. Local authority, community transport and education related are all likely to be relatively unaffected as they are less demand dependant. But local bus and coach operators and leasing companies will be subject to the same travel demand uncertainties associated with the bus and coach sector.

Conclusion

- 5.3.6 Current economic conditions present new challenges, requiring changes to the GM CAP necessary to mitigate against additional costs to Greater Manchester residents and businesses. Since the Previous GM CAP, agreed in Summer 2021, external factors associated with the pandemic, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis are resulting in additional financial challenges for local residents and businesses.
- 5.3.7 In particular, rising inflation, falling consumer confidence, lack of GDP growth and rising cost of borrowing mean that Greater Manchester's businesses and households are more vulnerable to the impact of increased costs and less able to invest in vehicle upgrades than in July 2021. This has been exacerbated by rising vehicle prices and constraints on the supply of new vehicles, with demand for compliant second-hand vehicles outstripping supply in many sectors.
- 5.3.8 For some sectors, the pandemic is still affecting their businesses with demand not having returned to pre-pandemic levels.
- 5.3.9 Overall, it is clear that current economic conditions mean that imposing a charging CAZ would be an additional cost for local residents and businesses at a time of existing financial challenges, and could potentially lead to job losses and business closures.

6 What is Greater Manchester already doing about poor air quality?

6.1.1 This section sets out:

- What the GM CAP has already delivered to improve air quality; and
- Other ways Greater Manchester is investing in schemes and action to deliver air quality improvements.

6.1.2 Some, but not all, of these developments have occurred since the Previous GM CAP was originally approved in Summer 2021. Therefore, this wider action needs to be taken into account when considering an appropriate New GM CAP for the region.

6.2 What has the GM CAP delivered already?

6.2.1 The GM CAP has already taken steps to improve air quality across the city-region, launching the Clean Bus Fund and Clean HGV Fund in December 2020 and November 2021 respectively. As of May 2022, over 1,000 buses have been awarded funding to upgrade their vehicles. Additionally, over 300 HGVs have been awarded funding through the Clean HGV Fund. This has been supplemented by £3.5m of GM CAP funding to deliver a 30 rapid charging points to encourage the transition to Zero Emission Capable vehicles with installation due to commence in late 2022 and continue throughout 2023.

6.2.2 Greater Manchester has secured £3m of early measures funding in advance of submitting the GM CAP. These funds are being used to promote electric vehicles (EVs) and cleaner choices – this includes:

- **The installation of EV charging points:** These funds are being used for the installation of 24 dual-headed rapid EV charging points. The project is nearing completion with 22 charging points having been installed since 2019 up to May 2022, including the first dedicated taxi charging point. The remaining charging points are scheduled to be complete in 2022. The Greater Manchester Electric Vehicle network, comprising approximately 140 charging points, has transitioned to the Be.EV network, an electric vehicle charging infrastructure provider appointed by TfGM. A taxi membership scheme and EV tariff was introduced in October 2021;
- **Promotion of EVs:** Early measures funding has also been used to promote the use of EVs, EV charging and Greater Manchester's expanded publicly owned network; and
- **Communications campaign:** A communications campaign was delivered to support the wider GM CAP by raising awareness of the need to clean up our air and promote alternative travel options.

6.3 What else is Greater Manchester doing to tackle poor air quality?

- 6.3.1 Over the past decade, investment by Greater Manchester in public transport has been second only to London. Using a blend of funding sources, both local and national, Greater Manchester has delivered a range of key transport infrastructure projects that have helped drive Greater Manchester's regional and local economies. These include Metrolink expansion and improvements, bus priority, smart ticketing and information systems, park and ride sites across the conurbation, channelling investment of around £200m each year to radically enhance clean public transport.
- 6.3.2 This built on the ground-breaking £1.5bn Greater Manchester Transport Fund, which paid for the significant expansion of the zero-emission Metrolink network, the Leigh-Salford-Manchester guided busway, as well as key transport interchanges, supporting town centres and regeneration efforts across the conurbation.
- 6.3.3 Greater Manchester have been awarded around £1.2bn through the CRSTS, which will further expand and integrate the network, focusing on improvements to bus routes, funding zero emission fleets and providing further investment in Greater Manchester's rapidly expanding cycling and walking network.
- 6.3.4 Investment in upgrading buses to zero emission standard has been secured through the Zero Emission Buses Regional Area (ZEBRA) Scheme. £35.8m of funding has been awarded after a joint bid to the DfT submitted by GMCA, TfGM, Stockport Council and Stagecoach Group PLC. The ZEBRA funding will be matched by £37.8m of funds from Stagecoach and topped up with £12.5m from GMCA and will support the introduction of 170 zero emission buses running from Stockport by 2024. This equates to 10 per cent of the whole bus fleet in Greater Manchester.
- 6.3.5 Greater Manchester will be bringing buses back under local control for the first time in the City Region since de-regulation in 1986.⁵⁹ The GMCA will introduce a fully franchised system across three phases starting in 2023. From the two rounds of consultation, 86% of responses to the first consultation period supported the franchising scheme with 82% for the second consultation period from more than 12,500 responses.
- 6.3.6 The ability for Greater Manchester to operate a franchised bus system will allow the GMCA / TfGM to directly control bus emission standards for the first time, for example, enabling the transport authority to direct the exclusive use of zero emission buses along particular corridors or within defined geographical areas where there may be specific air quality issues that need addressing.

⁵⁹ <https://www.gmconsult.org/strategy-team/greater-manchester-bus-consultation/>

6.3.7 From September 2023, Greater Manchester is also planning to introduce 50 new zero emission buses into service with the launch of the Area 1 Bus Franchise in Wigan and Bolton.

6.3.8 Greater Manchester has consistently used its available transport funding to improve public transport and active travel options, thereby encouraging people to travel more sustainably. Greater Manchester works to maximise all opportunities to access funding for the region to make it easier and more appealing to travel by transport choices with lower emissions per person including public transport, bike or on foot. In particular:

- **Transforming Cities Fund 1:** Delivering £160m of major walking and cycling improvements across Greater Manchester, supported by an additional £40m Cycle City Ambition Grant, as well as £83m towards 27 new Metrolink trams and supporting infrastructure, which started to come into service in 2021.
- **Transforming Cities Fund 2:** In the 2018 Autumn budget, Greater Manchester was granted an additional £69.5m (to be spent by 2023). The intention is to prioritise this funding to deliver on improving public transport provision for both existing communities, and housing and employment growth areas identified in the Places for Everyone (formally Greater Manchester Spatial Framework) . In January 2021, GMCA announced the scheme prioritisation for investment including £15m for a new rail station at Golborne, £10m for Quality Bus Transit schemes, £10m contribution to the Greek Street Bridge project in Stockport and £2m for a travel hub (including Park & Ride provision) at Tyldesley. This fund has been incorporated into the City Region Sustainable Transport Settlement Fund.
- **Active Travel Fund:** Greater Manchester has been awarded £15.97m, as part of the £2bn Government fund, to deliver 24 miles of cycling and walking routes and dozens of new neighbourhood interventions. The Fund has been used to sustain the unprecedented levels of walking and cycling, attributed to the impacts of the Covid-19 pandemic, delivering measures across Greater Manchester. The schemes include:
 - 'School Streets', where streets around schools are closed to motorists at school times
 - Active neighbourhoods, where residential side streets are closed to through traffic to stop rat-running
 - Segregated cycle lanes
 - Pedestrian improvements

- **Growth Deal:** Delivering over £400m of improvements through schemes such as Stockport Town Centre Accessibility Improvements, Salford Bolton Network Improvements and Ashton-under-Lyne Interchange. Delivery of the Ashton-under-Lyne Interchange has been completed alongside a number of key centre transport improvements. Going beyond the levels agreed with Government, Growth Deal investment in Greater Manchester is expected to deliver 7,000 jobs and £364m in private sector investment in the next few years.
- **City Region Sustainable Transport Settlement:** On 20 July 2021, DfT issued the guidance for the renamed Intra-City Funding Settlement, now City Region Sustainable Transport Fund (CRSTF) and Settlement (CRSTS) process, which will combine certain elements of existing capital funding (including the Integrated Transport Block, Maintenance Funding, and future years Transforming Cities Funding) in addition to the new £4.2 billion. On 10th September, GMCA approved the submission of the Prospectus based upon the upper bound guideline of £1.19bn for government consideration as part of the 2021 Spending Review process. On 22 November 2021, the Secretary of State wrote to the Greater Manchester Mayor to say that GMCA had been allocated an indicative £1.07 billion of capital funding conditional on the submission of a programme business case by the end of January 2022, noting that initially the Secretary of State letter requested submissions by January, which were submitted to government on 31st January 2022. On 1st April 2022, the Secretary of State wrote to the Greater Manchester Mayor to confirm that Greater Manchester would receive the full amount of the indicative allocation of £1.07bn, subject to agreeing to a series of conditions and the final scheme list.⁶⁰
- **Clean Bus Technology Fund:** Greater Manchester also secured c.£6m from the Clean Bus Technology Fund (CBTF) to upgrade the local bus fleet, targeted at air quality hotspots. The CBTF provides support to operators to retrofit their vehicles as follows:
 - 280 buses have been awarded retrofit funding at a total cost of £4.26m; and
 - The remaining £1.73m of funding is currently planned to be distributed through the GM CAP as part of proposals to support bus operators.

6.3.9 Greater Manchester has recently been successful in securing further funding to support the delivery of a low emission bus and taxi fleet:

⁶⁰ https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/1066118/crstf-funding-settlement-letter-for-greater-manchester-1-april-2022.pdf

- **Office for Zero Emission Vehicles (OZEV):** £1.8m of funding has been secured to deliver 30 dual-headed rapid charging devices installed across Greater Manchester for primary use by Hackney Carriages and private hire vehicles (PHVs). This will be supported by local match-funding of circa £600k. This has been combined with £3.5m of GM CAP funding to deliver a further 30 rapid charging points. A total of 60 dual-headed charging points will be delivered through the project, across the 10 Local Authorities. Feasibility studies have been completed and work on detailed design has commenced. Installation is due to commence in late 2022 and continue throughout 2023.
- **Zero Emission Buses Regional Area (ZEBRA) Scheme:** GMCA was awarded £35.7m in March 2022 for the replacement of 170 diesel buses that operate from Stockport Bus Depot to Zero Emission technology, by Spring 2024.
- **City Region Sustainable Transport Settlement for Zero Emission Buses:** £115m of funding has been secured and TfGM is currently developing detailed plans for the deployment of these funds. Greater Manchester expects to have sufficient funds to deploy 400 to 500 zero emission buses by 2027. In combination with the ZEBRA Stockport 170 buses and the Stagecoach ULEB 32 Zero Emission Buses that run on routes 43 and 111, this represents approximately one third of the fleet. The deployment plan is being heavily influenced by Clean Air considerations. Analytical work is underway to ensure the buses are deployed onto streets in Greater Manchester with the worst air quality, thereby helping to deliver the greatest strategic impacts for the CRSTS funds invested.
- **Bus Service Improvement Plan (BSIP):** On 5th April 2022, it was confirmed that Greater Manchester would receive an indicative allocation of £94.8m of BSIP funding from the government's Bus Back Better strategy.⁶¹ The BSIP will work towards achieving the interim-year 2030 "Right Mix" target for bus travel and removing enable Greater Manchester to remove up to 450,000 tonnes of carbon tailpipe emissions over the period to 2030. This includes reductions associated with the conversion of the bus fleets to fully electric as proposed within this BSIP.

6.3.10 Greater Manchester uses its local transport levy and the Mayoral Precept to fund a range of public transport services. This includes concessions, supported bus services (which make up 20% of the network) and Ring & Ride Services, which provides door-to-door, demand responsive transport to restricted local residents.

⁶¹ https://assets.ctfassets.net/nv7y93idf4ig/1Cu66Ouc9StC7JIRPiuSVI/95b9734bb0096523ec1328dd7c582035/BSIP-PM-PUB-0005_GM_Bus_Service_Improvement_Plan_October_2021.pdf

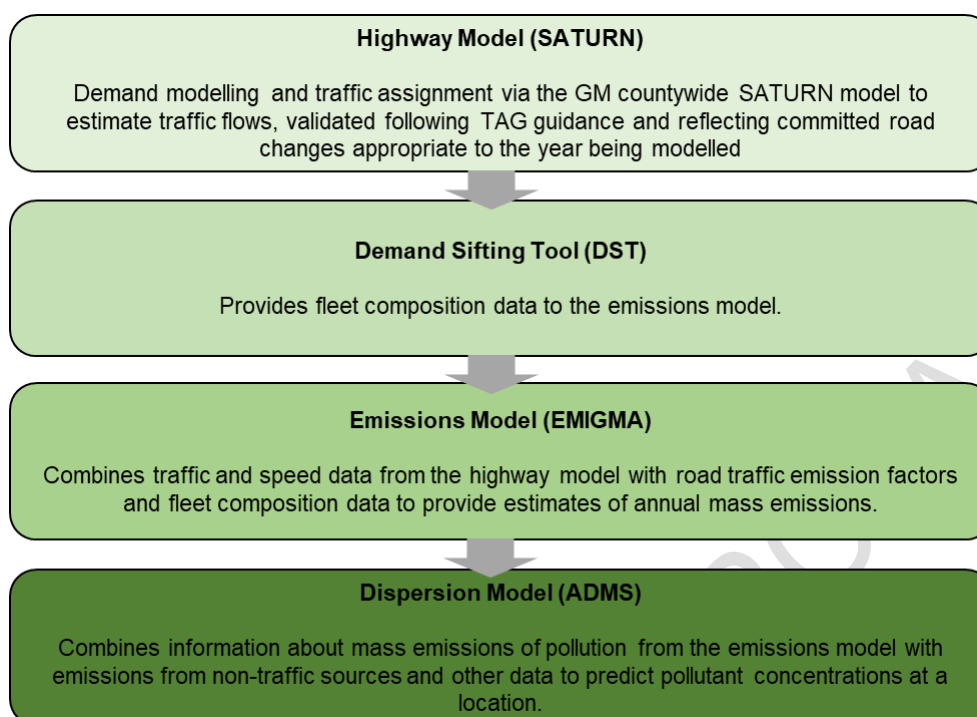
6.3.11 Local authorities in Greater Manchester are seeking new sources of funding to deliver cleaner air and improve sustainable travel options in the city region:

- **Future High Streets Fund:** Six towns in Greater Manchester have been granted full funding, totalling an estimated £90m, to improve transport links, build new homes and transform underused spaces in a key milestone for the government's levelling up agenda. Stretford (£17.6m), Rochdale (£17.1m), Wigan (£16.6m), Stockport (£14.5m), Farnworth (£13.3m) and Oldham (£10.8m) have all received a share of the fund.
- **Towns Fund:** Announced in 2019, 100 places were invited to develop investment priorities and proposals as part of a £3.6bn Towns Fund. The investment includes planning and land use and development of local transport schemes that complement regional and national networks. The 2020 budget announced 45 areas of England have been successful in their funding bids including three areas in Greater Manchester: Bolton (£22.9m), Cheadle (£13.9m) and Rochdale (£23.6m).
- **National Highways (formerly Highways England):** In addition to major committed schemes, National Highways has discretion to fund a range of smaller projects through its Designated Funds, of which £936m has been allocated in the next five years. Greater Manchester will work with National Highways to identify opportunities where use of Designated Funds may be appropriate to deliver infrastructure. The funds cover a range of projects including safety and congestion; users and communities; environment and well-being; and innovation and modernisation. Greater Manchester will also work closely with National Highways on their Route Strategy process which will inform the determination of funding needs and priorities for the next Road Investment Strategy (RIS) which will commence in 2025.

7 What are the current air quality issues in Greater Manchester?

7.1 Methodology

- 7.1.1 Air quality in Greater Manchester has been modelled as part of the GM CAP, and areas of exceedance of the Limit Values identified. This modelling has been updated at relevant stages throughout the development of the plan for a number of reasons, for example to reflect changes to the key phasing dates, to revise underpinning assumptions such as vehicle fleet age (due to Covid-19), or as a response to policy refinements as a result of the public 'conversation' or consultations.
- 7.1.2 Air quality is expected to gradually improve over time as a result of the ongoing cycle of newly purchased vehicles replacing older more polluting equivalents. The Government has required that the GM CAP delivers compliant air quality, using modelling to forecast future concentrations and showing how potential measures might reduce concentrations.
- 7.1.3 The air quality problem for Greater Manchester is assessed by reference to the "Do Minimum" scenario modelling, which sets out air quality as forecast if no action is taken by the GM CAP. The forecast does take into account other investment/interventions that are planned, funded and committed, where they have an impact on travel, traffic or the road network. The forecast appraisal years were developed as the original planned scheme commencement date for the GM CAP (2021 – not updated), the current expected scheme commencement date (2023) and a further year to inform the trajectory of improvement to compliance with the Limit Values (2025).
- 7.1.4 The GM CAP is underpinned by an evidence base derived from data collection, research, analysis and modelling. Throughout the technical development process from 2017 to date, Greater Manchester has used best practice methodology and assumptions and worked closely with Government, including for example by delivering updates to incorporate the impacts of Covid-19 to the GM CAP in accordance with national guidance.
- 7.1.5 The modelling approach has been updated to reflect the impacts of Covid-19 in line with JAQU guidance and changes to the GM CAP Policy following public consultation and now in respect to changing market conditions and further Covid-19 related impacts.
- 7.1.6 The purpose of the modelling process is to quantify the impact of traffic by vehicle type on emissions and consequently on concentrations of NO₂ at the roadside in Greater Manchester. A brief summary of the Do Minimum modelling input steps feeding into the appraisal is presented in **Figure 2**, which shows each of the modelling components and their linkages within the modelling suite.

Figure 2 Overview of the Do Minimum Modelling Process

- 7.1.7 The Do Minimum forecast has been updated because the evidence presented to the Government in February 2022 showed that business as usual (BAU) car sales were lower than expected in 2021, meaning that the fleet was older than forecast, and that this was likely to delay compliance with legal limits of NO₂ with the scheme as planned. Therefore, in order to update the Do Minimum forecast, the underpinning assumptions have been reviewed to ensure they remain up-to-date. These changes are set out in **Table 2** below. In addition to those set out in the table, work is ongoing to carry out a sensitivity test representing the impact of key schemes affecting the road network in Manchester and Salford, as part of the City Centre Transport Strategy (CCTS).

Table 2 Do Minimum Modelling Assumptions – Changes since February 2022

Vehicle Type	Criteria	Changes
HGV	Fleet age	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No changes made in 2021 version as evidence did not suggest HGV purchases had been affected by the pandemic in 2020 (given impact of regulatory change in 2019 which had distorted purchase patterns such that lower than normal purchases were expected in 2020 anyway). No changes made in latest forecast.

Vehicle Type	Criteria	Changes
LGV	Fleet age	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delay applied in 2021 version. Evidence suggests sales in 2021 were similar to Greater Manchester's forecast and therefore no additional changes are proposed.
Car	Fleet age	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delay applied in 2021 version to reflect loss of sales in 2020 and SMMT forecast of gradual Covid recovery. New evidence suggests that car purchases were lower than expected in 2021 and therefore this additional delay has been reflected in this forecast version, with a delay of one year applied.
Taxi	Fleet age	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Evidence in 2021 suggested that upgrades had been delayed but could not quantify impact, therefore a delay of one year was applied as a cautious estimate in that version. No changes made in latest forecast.
Bus	Funding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Electric bus funding was represented in the model as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Removal of ULEB funding from Vantage and Free Bus routes Addition of ZEBRA funding for Stockport CRSTS funding not yet assigned so cannot be represented in Do Minimum scenario.

7.2 Updated modelling results

7.2.1 Modelling has been undertaken for the following scenarios:

- Do Minimum (i.e. No GM CAP)**, which represents what would be forecast to happen in the absence of all GM CAP proposals. In reality this is overly pessimistic because funds for buses and HGVs have been available and successfully applied since these aspects of the GM CAP opened in 2021. This scenario is used to enable appraisal of the full impact of the GM CAP itself; and

- **Do Minimum plus CBF grants test** – a sensitivity test scenario, which represents what is forecast to happen with incorporation of approved GM CAP Clean Bus Fund (CBF) grants. The test is based upon the number of buses in each Greater Manchester operator's fleet where grants have been approved as of March 2022 (around 1,000 buses have been approved for retrofit or replacement funding, with 500 already on the road), with adjustments made to each specific operator's fleet mix to represent a newer set of buses running their service routes, reducing forecast emissions. It is not certain that all operators would now utilise an approved grant in the absence of a CAZ charge to penalise use of their non-compliant buses. Therefore, this scenario is being treated as a sensitivity test at this stage. However, it is expected that investment in bus fleets and the transition to bus franchising in Greater Manchester consider this test to become a most likely scenario.

- 7.2.2 Note that the Stockport depot ZEBRA funded buses are not expected to be fully deployed until 2024. To enable the interpolation of modelled concentrations for 2024, using the available 2023 and 2025 forecast models, the Stockport ZEBRA electric buses have been applied in the 2023 model as well as the 2025 model. This means that the emissions and concentration predictions along these bus routes, which are predominantly on the corridors from central Stockport towards the Manchester regional centre, will be under-predicted in 2023 because many buses would still be diesel variants at that time.
- 7.2.3 Note that this does not include representation of the City Centre Transport Strategy (CCTS) schemes which are expected to have been opened by 2025. Further sensitivity testing of the Do Minimum scenario is underway to better reflect the possible impact of these schemes.

Emission results

- 7.2.4 Summary results from the EMIGMA modelling for the tests are presented below in **Table 3**, which shows modelled mass NO_x emission totals for 2023 and 2025 for Greater Manchester as a whole, disaggregated by vehicle type.
- 7.2.5 It should be noted that overall emissions in this Do Minimum version are approximately 2% greater in 2025 than in the Do Minimum scenario used for the Previous GM CAP. This is mainly a result of the increased age of the private car fleet due to the latest understanding of Covid-19 impacts leading to reduced new cleaner vehicle sales, with private car fleet emissions increasing by 5% in 2025. This total mass emissions value also includes a reduction in emissions associated with new electric buses, but these emission improvements are confined to specific bus route corridors, whereas the private car fleet delay leads to a more geographically even spread of increased vehicle emissions.

- 7.2.6 **Table 3** show that across Greater Manchester as a whole, emissions from road traffic are released from a wide range of vehicle types, with private cars releasing most, followed by commercial freight vehicles (HGVs, LGVs) and then buses and taxis. However, the nature of road traffic varies widely across road types, and further detailed site-specific breakdowns of the sources at the most persistent exceedances are provided in the next section. It can also be seen that forecast emissions are reducing into the future with a reduction from 6,345T to 5,281T predicted from 2023 to 2025 as a result of the natural cycle of vehicle replacement and renewal with cleaner newer models.
- 7.2.7 As a result of the CBF grants, bus emissions are forecast to reduce by 60% in 2023 (if the upgrades have been fully delivered by then) and 44% in 2025 compared to the Do Minimum forecasts for those years, delivering localised improvements along bus routes. This equates to potential reductions in total road vehicle NO_x emissions over Greater Manchester of approximately 4% relative to the Do Minimum in 2023 and 3% in 2025.

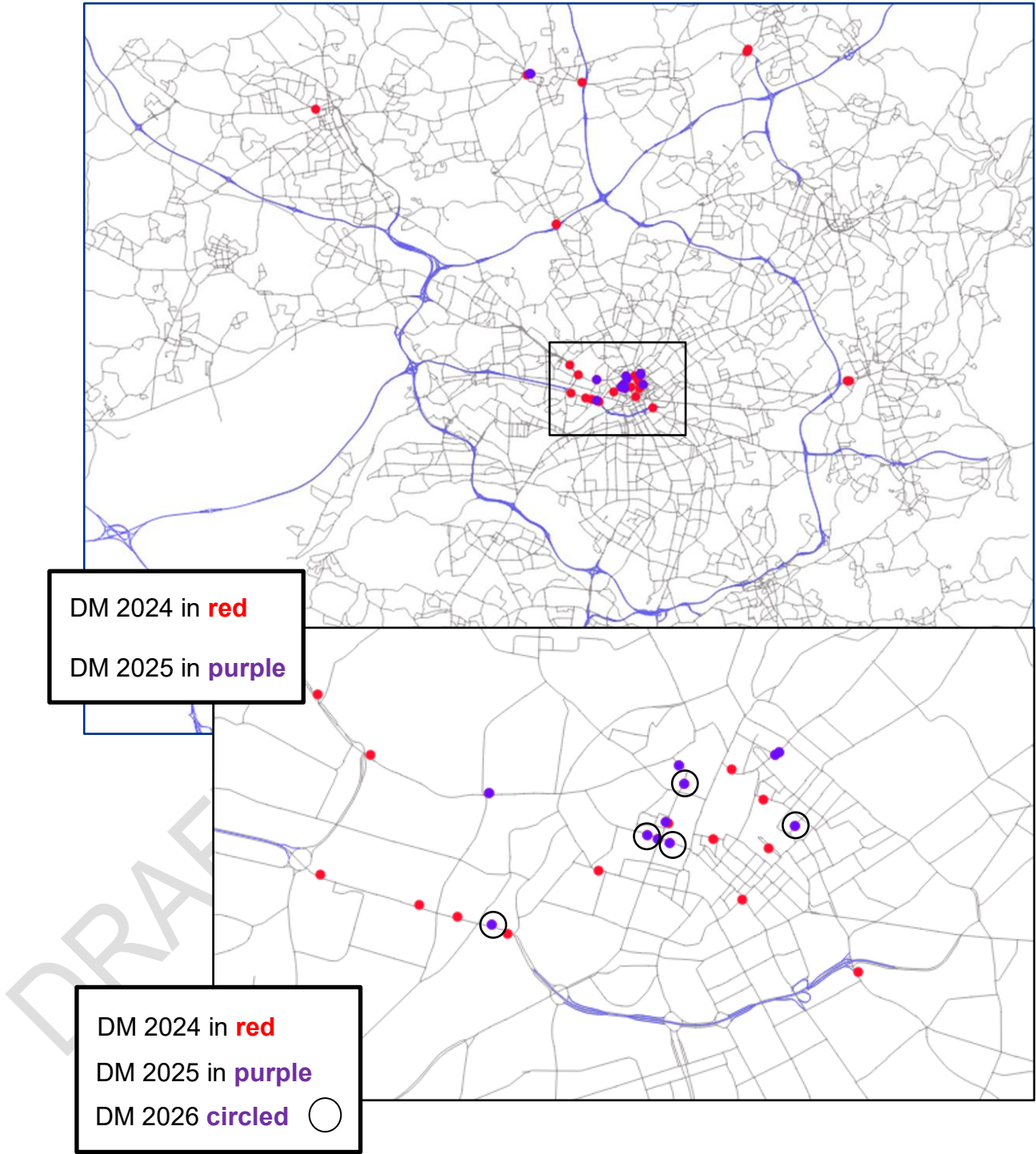
Table 3 Mass NO_x Emission Totals from EMIGMA Modelling (Greater Manchester, Tonnes per Year (T), with Percentage Changes Relative to the Do Minimum)

2023						
Scenario	Car	LGV	HGV	Taxi	Bus	Total
Do-Minimum	2,938	1,888	796	357	449	6,435
Do Min with CBF	2,938	1,888	796	357	179	6,165
% Change (DM)	0%	0%	0%	0%	-60%	-4%
2025						
Scenario	Car	LGV	HGV	Taxi	Bus	Total
Do-Minimum	2,526	1,610	523	294	320	5,281
Do Min with CBF	2,526	1,610	523	294	179	5,140
% Change (DM)	0%	0%	0%	0%	-44%	-3%
Notes: <i>Taxis comprise Private Hire Vehicles and Hackney Carriages combined</i> <i>% Changes for the Do Min with CBF are relative to the Do Minimum</i> <i>Totals may not sum due to rounding</i>						

Air quality results

- 7.2.8 **Table 4** and **Table 5** summarise the updated Do Minimum scenario modelling results and the Do Minimum with CBF Test, both of which incorporate the current understanding of the impacts of Covid-19 on vehicle fleets, for the Do Minimum years of 2023 and 2025. These results are then reported as the number of exceedances by each district in **Table 6**.
- 7.2.9 The location of the predicted exceedances in 2024 and 2025 are shown in **Figure 3**, with the spatial pattern continuing to resemble that in the 'Option for Consultation' and 'Previous GM CAP' modelling iterations.

Figure 3 Greater Manchester Do-Minimum Exceedance Points in 2024, 2025 and 2026



Air quality in the Do Minimum scenario

- 7.2.10 As shown in **Table 4**, there is an increase in the number of points of exceedance in 2023 from the Previous GM CAP model Do Minimum as modelled in spring/summer 2021 (from 71 to 79). This is primarily associated with the wider road network outside of the regional centre where private car emissions have increased due to an older fleet profile due to Covid-19, leading to increases in NO₂ concentrations of typically 0.5 µg/m³ up to 1.0 µg/m³. However, on the route corridors where the new electric buses will operate there are improvements, with a reduction in exceedances inside the Inner Relief Route (IRR) on these routes. Conversely, on the Vantage and FreeBus routes where the ULEB funding will no longer be available it is assumed that diesel variants would still be operating, with associated increases in NO₂ concentrations.
- 7.2.11 By 2025, the number of exceedances reduces due to the natural upgrade of the vehicle fleet, which is expected to continue despite the depressive effect of Covid-19 on some markets, and which has been accounted for where relevant. Compared with the Previous GM CAP Do Minimum scenario, there has been an increase in the overall number of exceedances (from 11 to 13).
- 7.2.12 There are predicted to be exceedances in all districts with the exception of Wigan in the Do Minimum scenario for 2023.⁶² By 2025, exceedances are only predicted in Manchester, Salford, and Bury, which is consistent with the Consultation and Previous GM CAP modelling scenarios.
- 7.2.13 The updated modelling shows results consistent with the methodological modelling alterations described previously. The locations where car flows are greatest have an increased number of exceedances, typically sites classed as 'Other Locations'. The last points of exceedance (13 in total) in 2025 still remain at:
- Inside the IRR, including the A34 Bridge St /John Dalton St, Lever St and the A56 Deansgate;
 - A57 Regent Rd, Salford;
 - A6 Chapel St, Salford; and
 - A58 Bolton Road, Bury.
- 7.2.14 The modelling indicates that exceedances would remain in 2026 at 5 sites: 4 inside the IRR and on the A57 Regent Road. However, the A6 Chapel Street and the A58 Bolton Road would by this point have become compliant. All sites are predicted to be compliant by 2027 in the Do Minimum scenario.

⁶² Note that analysis carried out based upon the Do Minimum modelling as at consultation suggested that all local authorities would remain non-compliant in 2022. Updated analysis for 2022 has not yet been completed.

7.2.15 Note that this does not include representation of the CCTS schemes which are expected to have been opened by 2025. A further sensitivity test of the Do Minimum modelling is underway to incorporate the CCTS schemes which are expected to be in place in the relevant forecast years.

Table 4 Predicted annual mean NO₂ concentrations at points on the Greater Manchester road network – 2023 to 2026 without action ('Do Minimum')

Road classification ⁶³	Compliant sites		Non-compliant sites			
	Very compliant (below 35 µg/m ³)	Compliant but marginal (35 to 40 µg/m ³)	Non-compliant (>40 to 45 µg/m ³)	Very non-compliant (>45 to 50 µg/m ³)	Extremely non-compliant (>50 µg/m ³)	Total non-compliant (>40 µg/m ³)
2023						
Inside Manchester-Salford Inner Relief Route (IRR)	211	33	23	8	0	31
Urban centres	209	24	4	0	0	4
Other locations	1829	157	38	6	0	44
Total	2249	214	65	14	0	79
2024 (Interpolated)						
Inside IRR	227	32	11	5	0	16
Urban centres	223	12	2	0	0	2
Other locations	1936	75	18	1	0	19
Total	2386	119	31	6	0	37
2025						
Inside IRR	243	23	9	0	0	9
Urban centres	233	4	0	0	0	0
Other locations	1984	42	4	0	0	4
Total	2460	69	13	0	0	13

⁶³ "Inside Inner Relief Route" is the area encircled by the Inner Relief Route. "Urban centres" are areas that met a definition used for the purposes of air quality modelling for OBC Option testing. "Other locations" are roads outside of Urban centres and the Inner Relief Route.

Road classification ⁶³	Compliant sites		Non-compliant sites			
	Very compliant (below 35 µg/m ³)	Compliant but marginal (35 to 40 µg/m ³)	Non-compliant (>40 to 45 µg/m ³)	Very non-compliant (>45 to 50 µg/m ³)	Extremely non-compliant (>50 µg/m ³)	Total non-compliant (>40 µg/m ³)
2026 (Extrapolated)						
Inside IRR	257	14	4	0	0	4
Urban centres	235	2	0	0	0	0
Other locations	2008	21	1	0	0	1
Total	2500	37	5	0	0	<u>5</u>

Air quality in the Do Minimum plus CBF Grants scenario

- 7.2.16 The assumption is that when the CBF grants have been utilised by the relevant operators to upgrade non-compliant buses to Euro VI diesel, this will lead to an improvement in air quality across bus corridors, and a reduction in the number of predicted exceedances. Note that Greater Manchester is assuming that all CBF grants will be utilised as planned.
- 7.2.17 As shown in **Table 5**, under this scenario, there is a predicted decrease in the number of points of exceedance in 2023 from the Do Minimum from 79 to 44. This is primarily associated with the regional centre inside the IRR, where bus emissions comprise a greater proportion of total emissions, alongside the arterial routes that lead into the IRR on wider road network outside of the regional centre.
- 7.2.18 There are predicted to be exceedances in all districts with the exception of Wigan, Trafford and Oldham in the Do Minimum plus CBF scenario for 2023.
- 7.2.19 By 2025, the number of exceedances reduces due to the natural upgrade of the vehicle fleet. Compared with the Do Minimum scenario, there would be a decrease in the overall number of exceedances from 13 to 5 as a result of the CBF.
- 7.2.20 By 2025, whilst there are fewer exceedances predicted, the key locations remain as per the Do Minimum scenario at:
- Inside the IRR, including the A34 Bridge St /John Dalton St;
 - A57 Regent Rd, Salford; and
 - A58 Bolton Road, Bury.
- 7.2.21 The modelling indicates that exceedances would remain in 2026 at one site, on the A57 Regent Road. All sites are predicted to be compliant by 2027 in the Do Minimum plus CBF Grants scenario.

Table 5 Predicted annual mean NO₂ concentrations at points on the Greater Manchester road network – 2023 to 2026 without further action (Do Minimum with CBF Grants)

Road classification ³	Compliant sites		Non-compliant sites			
	Very compliant (below 35 µg/m ³)	Compliant but marginal (35 to 40 µg/m ³)	Non-compliant (>40 to 45 µg/m ³)	Very non-compliant (>45 to 50 µg/m ³)	Extremely non-compliant (>50 µg/m ³)	Total non-compliant (>40 µg/m ³)
2023						
Inside Manchester-Salford Inner Relief Route (IRR)	241	26	8	0	0	8
Urban centres	219	14	4	0	0	4
Other locations	1881	117	30	2	0	32
Total	2341	157	42	2	0	<u>44</u>
2024 (Interpolated)						
Inside IRR	250	19	6	0	0	6
Urban centres	228	8	1	0	0	1
Other locations	1952	66	12	0	0	12
Total	2430	93	19	0	0	<u>19</u>
2025						
Inside IRR	259	13	3	0	0	3
Urban centres	233	4	0	0	0	0
Other locations	1995	33	2	0	0	2
Total	2487	50	5	0	0	<u>5</u>
2026 (Extrapolated)						
Inside IRR	265	10	0	0	0	0
Urban centres	237	0	0	0	0	0
Other locations	2011	18	1	0	0	1
Total	2513	28	1	0	0	<u>1</u>

Air Quality results by local authority**Table 6 Number of sites remaining in exceedance of legal limits for NO₂ concentrations by year, Greater Manchester, by local authority for the Do Minimum and Do Minimum with CBF Grants Test Scenario**

District	2023		2024 (interpolated)		2025		2026 (extrapolated)	
	Do Min.	Do Min with CBF Test	Do Min.	Do Min. with CBF Test	Do Min.	Do Min with CBF Test	Do Min.	Do Min. with CBF Test
Bolton	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	0
Bury	11	7	6	4	2	1	0	0
Manchester	40	16	18	7	9	3	4	0
Oldham	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Rochdale	2	2	2	2	0	0	0	0
Salford	14	10	8	5	2	1	1	1
Stockport	3	3	0	0	0	0	0	0
Tameside	4	4	2	1	0	0	0	0
Trafford	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Wigan	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
GM Total	79	44	37	19	13	5	5	1

Note: Calculation of 2024 and 2026 was undertaken using linear interpolation or extrapolation from 2023 and 2025 year's modelled NO₂ results for each model output point.

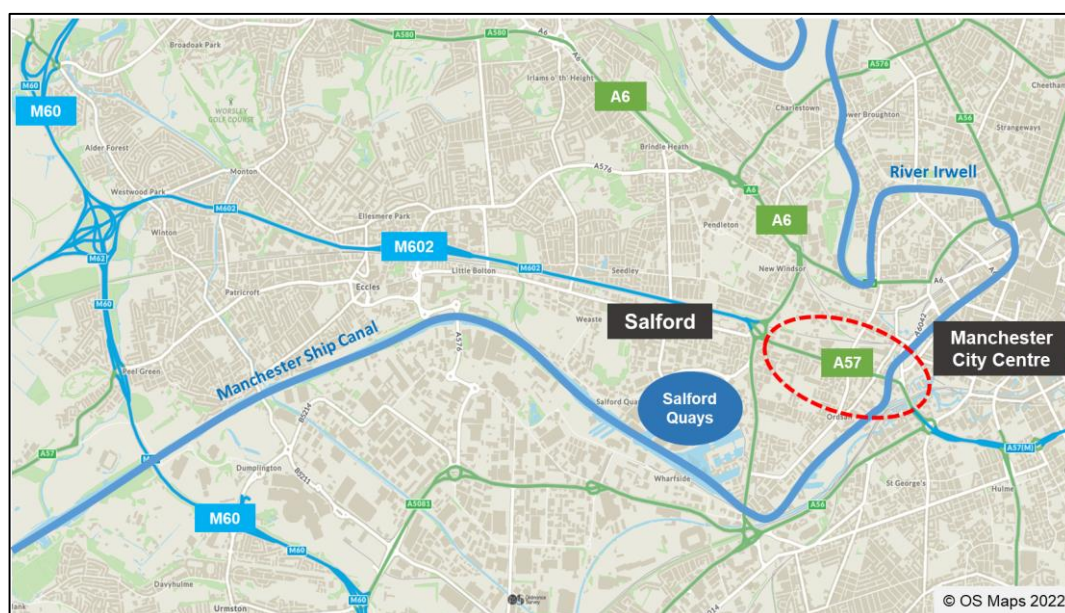
7.2.22 It is important to note that the modelled scenarios do not include representation of the CCTS schemes which are expected to have been opened by 2025. A further update to the Do Minimum modelling is underway. There are a number of schemes which could alter the nature of local traffic flows and routing, especially on the A34 Bridge St/John Dalton St, A56 Deansgate, A57 Regent Road and A6 Chapel St. These schemes have the potential to interact, so the exact values presented in this section should be treated with caution.

8 Where are the persistent exceedance areas in Greater Manchester?

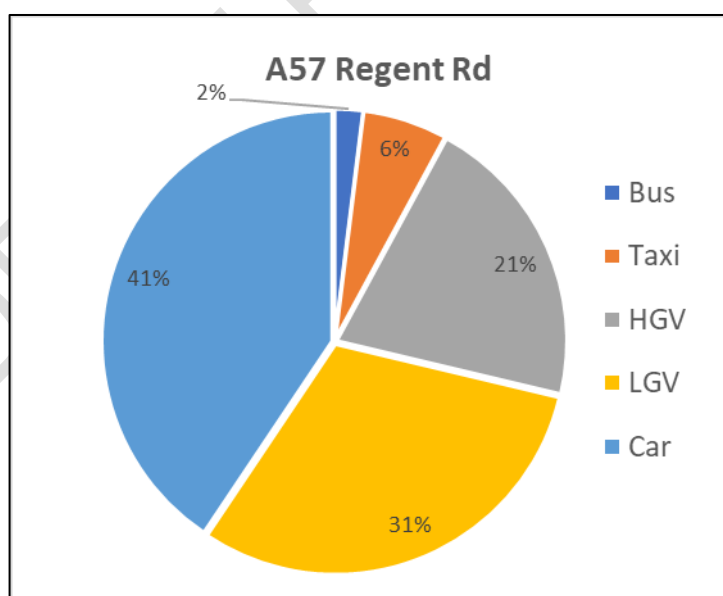
- 8.1.1 This section builds upon the updated do-minimum modelling outputs presented in **Section 7**. The persistent exceedance areas, detailed in this section, are included to provide supporting evidence of the underpinning of poor air quality at these locations. In many cases these can be seen to be driven by bus emissions and therefore the CBF test, which represents bus upgrades, delivered as part of the GM CAP to date would demonstrably deliver improvements in-line with the objectives of the GM CAP.
- 8.1.2 In 2025, there are predicted to be 13 points where roadside NO₂ exceedances persist. These exceedance points are concentrated in three Greater Manchester local authority areas, namely, Manchester, Salford and Bury. This section will provide further information on the location and source apportionment (in other words, how each vehicle type contributes to emissions at that location) of each point of last exceedance (2025). Under the CBF sensitivity test, only the exceedance at the A57 Regent Road (Salford) would remain in 2026.
- 8.1.3 In addition to the points of last exceedances which have been identified through the updated do-minimum modelling outputs, the A628/A57 at Mottram, Tameside is an area with very special route characteristics to be considered. The A57 and the A628 form part of the Strategic Road Network (SRN) operated by National Highways and runs east-west linking the M67 motorway in Greater Manchester towards West Yorkshire and Sheffield over the Pennines. Measured and modelled concentrations indicate exceedances can be expected up to 2026 and beyond.
- 8.1.4 Source apportionment data has been extracted based on the persistent exceedance areas in 2025 and shown in **Sections 8.2-8.4**. It is believed that the Previous GM CAP could no longer be expected to achieve compliance in 2024 and therefore persistent exceedance areas are based upon 2025 data.

8.2 Persistent Exceedance Area (2025) - A57 Regent Road

- 8.2.1 **Figure 4** shows the location of the A57 Regent Road in context of the wider highway network. The A57 Regent Road is an important highway corridor providing an East-West connection through Manchester City Centre and joining the M602, part of the Strategic Road Network which is managed by National Highways.

Figure 4 Persistent exceedance area: A57 Regent Road

8.2.2 **Figure 5** shows the source apportionment for Regent Road. This route contains a relatively high proportion of commercial vehicles, with emissions from HGVs & LGVs at c50% of total emissions, and the remainder primarily derived from private cars c40%. Emissions from buses are very low (just 2% of total), with very few bus services operating on this corridor. This reflects the nature of this route as a primary arterial route from the Strategic Road Network, serving traffic demands of the Regional Centre and surrounding area.

Figure 5 A57 Regent Road Source Apportionment

8.3 Persistent Exceedance Area (2025) - Regional Centre / IRR, Manchester and A6 Chapel Street, Salford

- 8.3.1 The majority of the last points of exceedance are located within Manchester City Centre and the IRR. This persistent exceedance area also includes locations close to the IRR such as Chapel Street. **Figure 6** shows the high-level location of each of the exceedance road links.

Figure 6 Persistent exceedance area: Regional Centre / IRR, Manchester and A6 Chapel Street, Salford



- 8.3.2 The source apportionment indicates that bus emissions dominate the contributions to the predicted exceedances at almost all locations, typically 70% to 100% of vehicle emissions. This can be viewed in **Figure 7** to **Figure 13**. This reflects the higher frequency of buses running on these routes compared with wider Greater Manchester, but also the slower traffic speeds inside the IRR where queuing and congestion occurs more frequently, and signalised junctions occur at a greater density. At low speeds, buses and HGV NO_x emissions are elevated even for Euro VI models.
- 8.3.3 The A56 Deansgate and A6 Chapel Street show a different source pattern to the other exceedance locations, with a lower but still significant proportion of bus emissions (15% or less), and higher proportion of private car and LGV emissions.

Figure 7 A34 Bridge St Source Apportionment

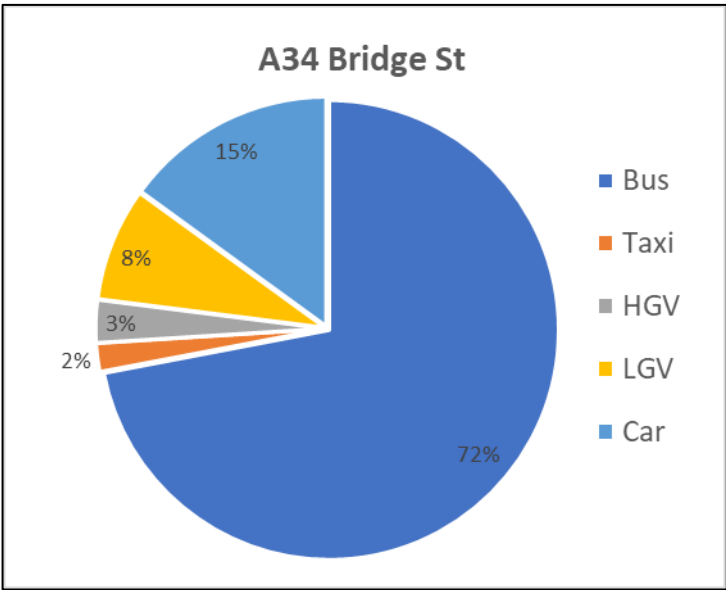


Figure 8 A34 John Dalton St Source Apportionment

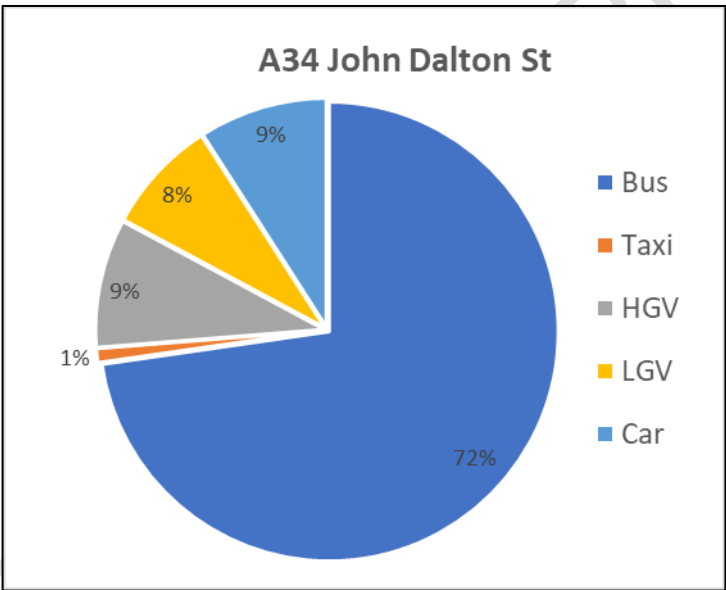


Figure 9 A56 Deansgate Source Apportionment

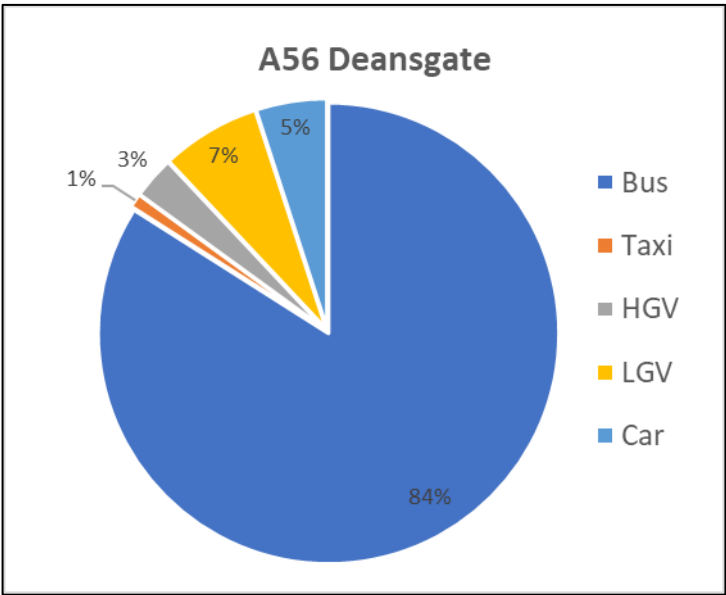


Figure 10 Lever St Source Apportionment

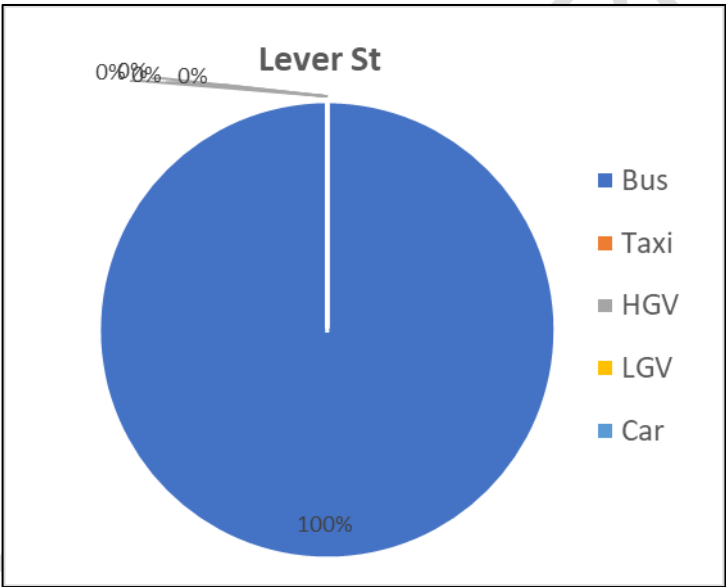


Figure 11 A6 Chapel St Source Apportionment

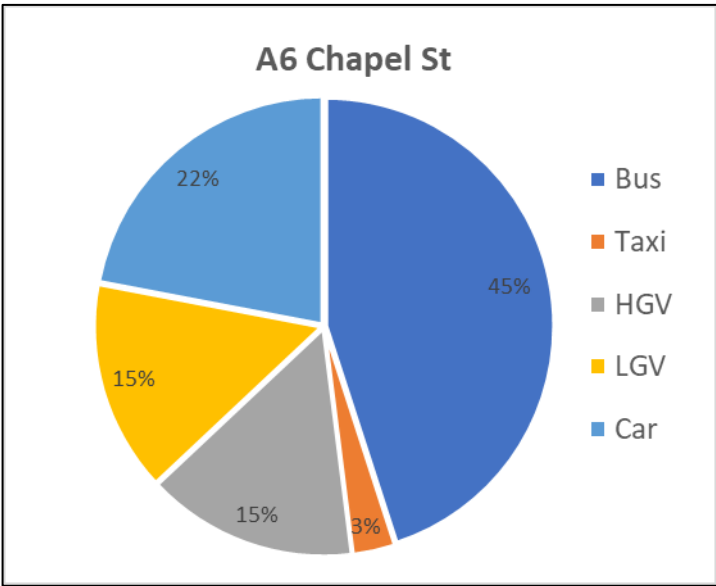


Figure 12 A6041 Blackfriar's Rd Source Apportionment

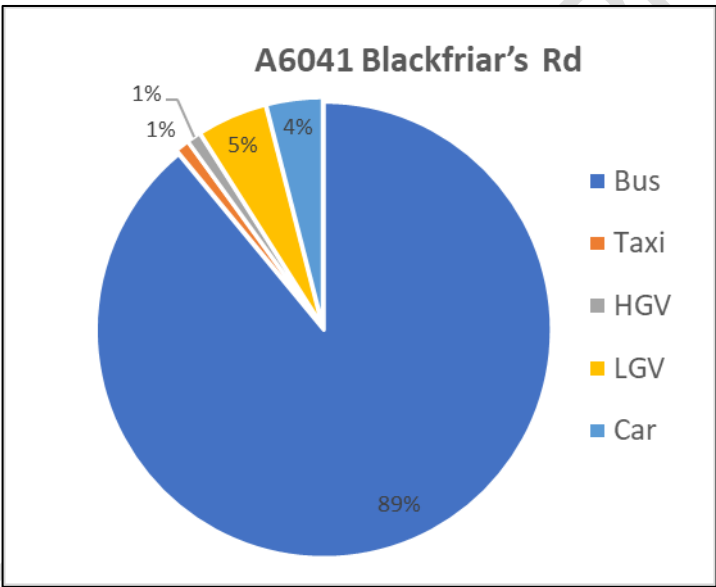
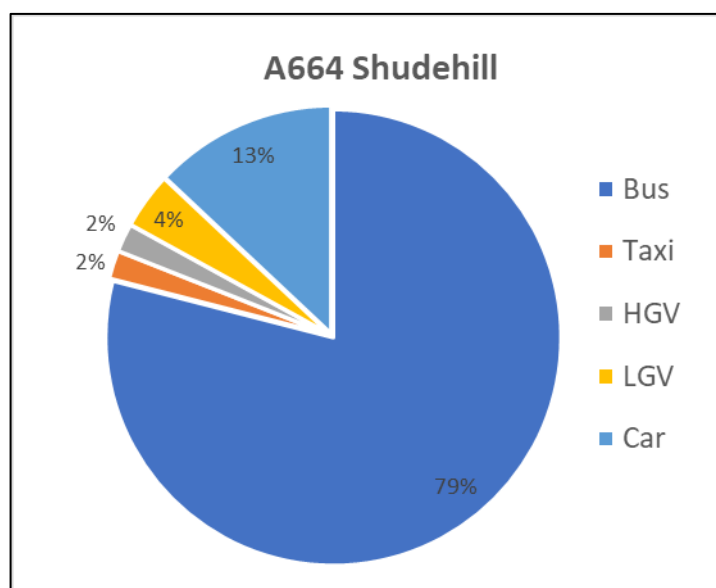
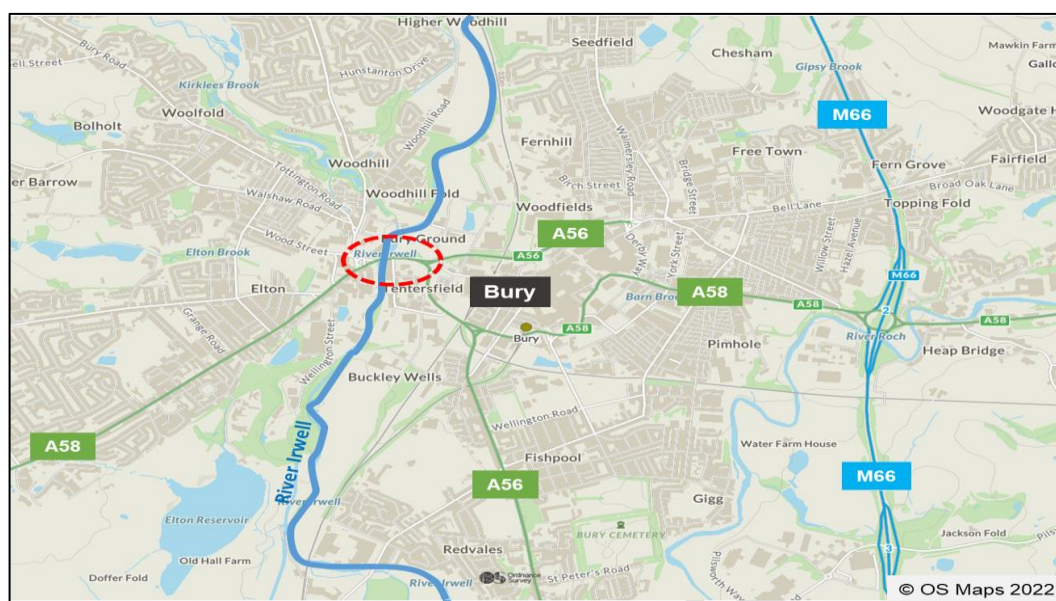


Figure 13 A664 Shudehill Source Apportionment

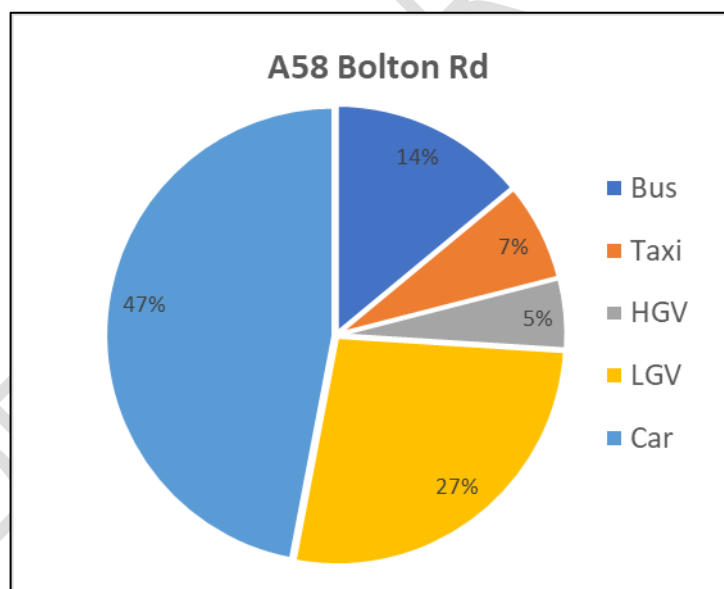
- 8.3.4 Finally, analysis of ANPR data indicates that the modelling under-represents the proportion of taxi movements within the IRR. This is because the modelling process does not have a user class for taxi available, and taxi movements have been represented as a fixed proportion of private car trips, across GM as a whole. The modelling process could be locally refined to address this issue if required.

8.4 Persistent Exceedance Area (2025) – A58 Bolton Road (Bury Bridge)

- 8.4.1 **Figure 14** shows the location of the A58 Bolton Road exceedance at Bury Bridge. At this location, the A58 Bolton Road is a dual carriageway over the River Irwell, serving traffic from the confluence of the A58, B6196 & B6213 roads to and from the Bury town centre ring road. There are modelled exceedances on both of the carriageways but these essentially both represent the same traffic flows.

Figure 14 Persistent exceedance area: A58 Bolton Road (Bury Bridge)

8.4.2 **Figure 15** shows the source apportionment for the A58 Bolton Road, Bury. The contribution from HGVs is low on this link, with the majority of emissions derived from private cars and LGVs. However, there is also a material proportion of emissions from diesel buses.

Figure 15 A58 Bolton Road (Bury Bridge), Bury Source Apportionment

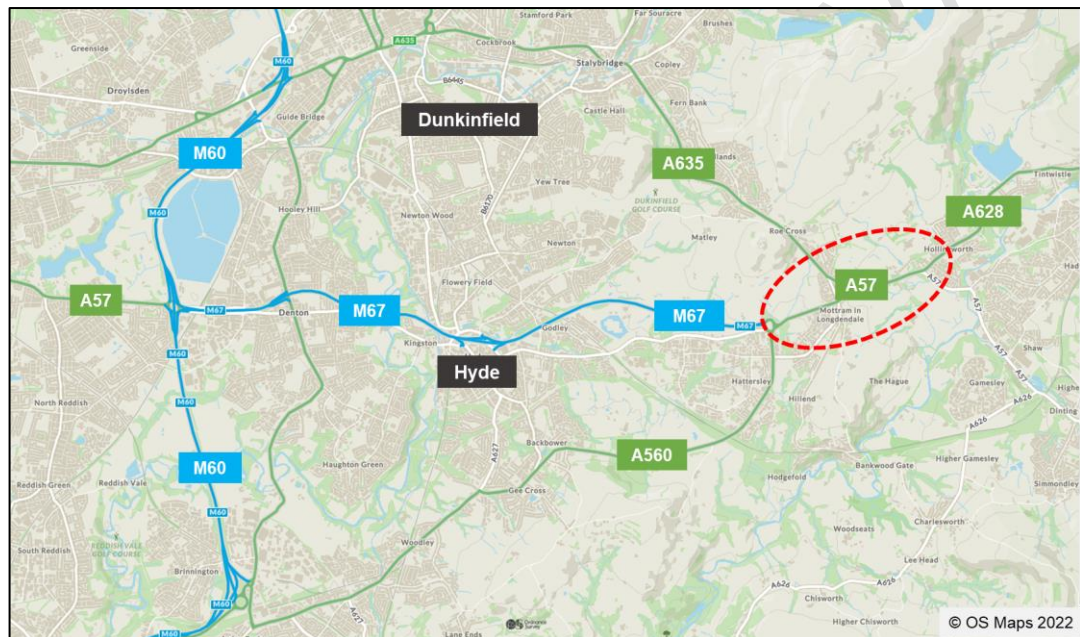
8.5 A57 / A628 Strategic Road Network, Tameside

8.5.1 The ten Greater Manchester local authorities continue to ask the Government to direct National Highways to tackle NO₂ exceedances on the SRN in the same way the Greater Manchester local authorities are having to take action on the local road network.

8.5.2 Tameside MBC has highlighted to Government ministers that the inconsistency in approach between the SRN and local road network is leaving many residents unprotected, particularly, around the A628/A57, a strategically important trans-Pennine route that passes through the villages of Hollingworth and Mottram as a single carriageway. This route, managed by National Highways (formerly Highways England), will be left with NO₂ exceedances that are not being addressed, despite the area being declared as part of Greater Manchester's Air Quality Management Area.

8.5.3 **Figure 16** shows the location of the A57 and the A628 in context of the wider highway network.

Figure 16 Persistent exceedance area: A57 and A628



8.5.4 However, in this location the SRN resembles more typically 'local' roads, rather than a motorway environment, with frequent signalised junctions, single-lane carriageways, pedestrian pavements and residential facades abutting the road.

8.5.5 Following a review of the beneficial impact to compliance with NO₂ legal limits shown by National Highways in their *Assessment of Impact of Potential Charging on A57/A628*, Ministers wrote to Tameside Metropolitan Borough Council in June 2021 to confirm that a section of the A57/A628 should be included as part of the upcoming GM Class C charging CAZ. Ministers noted, the inclusion must be deliverable within current legislative provisions, and with the objective of integrating seamlessly with the GM Class C charging CAZ in order to minimise complexity and confusion for road users.

- 8.5.6 A joint officer working group concluded that there were two viable options: a trunk road charging scheme (complementary to the local charging scheme required to implement the GM CAZ) or a De-trunking Order (the process of returning the National Highways road to the control of Tameside Council - the Highway Authority). Whilst the working group concluded that both options are legally viable, as they presented legal, administrative and procedural complexities, JAQU advised that the options needed further consideration by Ministers. In December 2021 JAQU advised that both options identified did not offer a timeline that guaranteed implementation could coincide with the planned launch of the Class C charging CAZ on the 30 May 2022.
- 8.5.7 In January 2022 the Air Quality Administration Committee received an update and resolved that:
- the inclusion of the identified section of the A57/A628 SRN remains critical and vital to delivering improved air quality in Greater Manchester; and
 - Greater Manchester authorities are resolute in continuing to press Government for the expedient implementation of the scheme on the A628/A57 SRN as a matter of urgency to ensure the benefits to the health of the residents in the villages of Hollingworth and Mottram can be realised without any further delay.
- 8.5.8 Until the outcome of the review is complete and any revised plans are agreed, JAQU has not been able to commit to any specific course of action in relation to the A57/A628. However, because in this instance a trunk road charging scheme cannot be made without a local charging scheme being in place, if the GM charging CAZ does not proceed there can be no charging scheme on the A57/A628, unless and until those roads are detrunked. Notwithstanding this, the Greater Manchester local authorities want to ensure that as government takes appropriate action in relation to exceedances in this locale. It is also recognised that additional SRN is planned by National Highways close to this location through the A57 Link Roads scheme which includes proposals for the creation of two new link roads between the M67 Junction 4 roundabout and the A57 in Woolley Bridge to reduce pollution to neighbouring properties in Mottram in Longdendale as well as improvements in journey time reliability and reductions in congestion and severance impacts.⁶⁴ The scheme is currently awaiting a Development Consent Order (DCO) outcome and the SoS for Transport is anticipated to make a decision around Autumn 2022.

⁶⁴ <https://nationalhighways.co.uk/our-work/north-west/a57-link-roads/>

9 Why Greater Manchester needs a new GM CAP – A Summary

- 9.1.1 The information presented in **Sections 2-8** sets out the background to the GM CAP, the circumstances leading to the current review (the impact of the pandemic such as global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis) and the updated evidence in terms of air quality modelling and areas of exceedance.
- 9.1.2 In summary, and considering all the above, it is proposed that the Previous GM CAP developed pre-pandemic and agreed in Summer 2021 (comprising a blanket measure across the city-region in the form of a Class C charging CAZ) is no longer the right solution to achieve compliance with Legal Limits for NO₂ on the local road network in Greater Manchester. The most significant reasons for this have been set out in depth in this paper, and in summary are:
- The **cost-of-living crisis** means that businesses are less able to afford to invest in vehicle upgrades, whilst households are less able to absorb any costs that may be passed on to them.
 - This is exacerbated by **rising vehicle prices** and – for some vehicle types – lower residual values of non-compliant vehicles. There is evidence that illustrates the demand for new and compliant second-hand vehicles is exceeding supply; leading to longer wait times and rising prices.
 - A charging CAZ could therefore cause **unacceptable financial hardship** and potentially contribute to business failures.
 - In addition, **new opportunities have arisen** – via the approval of bus franchising and new funding for electric buses – that mean that Greater Manchester has the opportunity to directly tackle a major source of emissions in a different, more targeted way.
 - The exceedances become more localised from 2025 onwards, therefore **action can be targeted** at those locations suffering the worst air quality.
- 9.1.3 It is clear that the GM-wide Class C charging CAZ as approved in Summer 2021 could lead to hardship in Greater Manchester and that to develop and deliver a revised charging CAZ would take time to design, consult upon and implement.
- 9.1.4 Unlike the previous charging-led scheme, the New GM CAP will attend to the emerging cost-of-living crisis and other factors set out in this section. It will actively consider the impacts of Covid-19 and wider global economic instability on supply chains, aims to be delivered in 2023, and crucially takes into account the significant benefits that the delivery of electric buses can have along key routes with persistent exceedances.

9.2 Cost-of-living crisis

- 9.2.1 As a result of the ongoing impacts of the pandemic and the more recent impacts of the war in Ukraine, the UK is experiencing a cost-of-living crisis, with inflation reaching a 40 year high of 9% during April 2022, compared to 2% in July 2021. This crisis is far from over – inflation and interest rates are expected to keep rising and this is being reflected in consumer confidence, which has plummeted, and in falling consumer demand.
- 9.2.2 Greater Manchester has a higher than average proportion of small businesses and low income households, making the region particularly vulnerable to inflationary impacts. The evidence shows that prices of basic goods and commodities such as energy and fuel are rising faster and therefore those on lower incomes, who spend a higher proportion of their income on necessities and have less disposable income to cover any cost increases, will be affected more.
- 9.2.3 From a business perspective, those businesses that rely on high vehicle mileage will be particularly affected by rising fuel prices, which were a third higher in March 2022 than July 2021 (for diesel, used in most commercial vehicles) and have risen further since. Furthermore, key vehicle owning sectors such as construction and manufacturing are being affected by the rising cost of materials such as steel, with just under three in ten businesses surveyed by the GM Growth Company reporting such concerns in April 2022, compared to under 5% in autumn last year.
- 9.2.4 The cost of borrowing is increasing, making capital investments such as a vehicle upgrades more challenging and expensive. The Bank of England base rate has risen from 0.25% at the start of the year to 1.25% by early June. The real cost of borrowing will be higher than this for many consumers and will vary depending on their personal circumstances.
- 9.2.5 Businesses and consumers are already feeling the impact of rising costs being passed on, and measures that increase those costs, such as the imposition of a charging CAZ, could lead to real financial hardship and potentially business closures.
- 9.2.6 During this period of widespread economic hardship, the local Government will do its utmost to support the public economically, rather than create additional financial demands and hardship.

9.3 Supply chain issues and vehicle price increases

- 9.3.1 The price of new and used commercial vehicles is rising, making upgrade less affordable. For some vehicle types, there are long lead times for the purchase of new vehicles, and for second-hand vehicles demand is outstripping supply in some sectors. There is some evidence of a growing gap between the value of non-compliant (Euro 5 and older) and compliant (Euro 6) vehicles, adding to the capital cost of upgrade for vehicle owners losing trade-in value of their existing vehicle.

9.3.2 **Table 7** sets out the conditions affecting each vehicle type, based on the evidence Greater Manchester has collected. **Appendix A – D** set this information out in more depth.

Table 7 Changed conditions in vehicle markets

Vehicle Type	Commentary on changed conditions
HGV Est. 70,900 vehicles serving Greater Manchester 81% compliant in 2023 ⁶⁵	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Having remained stable for many years, price rises are being reported of around 40% for Euro 6 vehicles, with the price gap between Euro 6 vs 5 vehicles increasing. Dealers are reporting constraints on availability of new vehicles – due to shortages of materials including semi-conductors – and that this means people are extending leases (so fewer vehicles enter the second-hand market) or trying to buy second-hand, leading to shortages in that market. Price rises reflect these shortages as well as increases in the cost of materials (for new vehicles).
Van Est. 277,400 vehicles serving Greater Manchester 52% compliant in 2023 ⁶²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is substantial evidence of significant price increases in the second-hand van market – the scale of those rises has a high degree of variability depending on the particular vehicle. The extent of the reported rise varies between 13% and almost 60%. Overall, the evidence suggests that demand for new and second-hand vans remains strong, and therefore that the loss of supply caused by lockdowns in 2020 and more recently by the semi-conductor shortage is leading to price rises in the new and second-hand markets, and to long lead times for new vehicle orders. A high proportion of non-compliant vans are owned by sole traders and very small businesses which are vulnerable to the impacts of inflation and the cost-of-living crisis.
Coach 1,700 vehicles serving Greater Manchester 59% compliant in 2023 ⁶²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The coach sector was badly affected by the pandemic, with lockdown restrictions meaning that many were forced to stop operating for long periods. Demand from tourism and major events remained constrained during 2021, and recovery is expected to be slow. The SMMT states that demand for new buses and coaches dropped further in 2021 and was the weakest year since records began in 1996.

⁶⁵ best estimate in a highly changeable economic/vehicle market situation, forecast should be considered subject to review

Vehicle Type	Commentary on changed conditions
Hackney Cab 2,100 Hackneys licensed in Greater Manchester 35% compliant in 2023 ⁶²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hackneys and PHVs lost a substantial proportion of their trade during the pandemic, as travel for business, leisure and tourism purposes ceased. The number of vehicles licensed has reduced and drivers report that demand has not returned to pre-pandemic levels. The number of new vehicles entering the Hackney and PHV licensed fleets was much lower than normal in 2020 and 2021, so that the age of the fleet has increased.
PHV 12,400 PHVs licensed in Greater Manchester 68% compliant in 2023 ⁶²	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This is assumed to result from market conditions and conditions in the wider economy, as well as continued uncertainty about licensing and clean air requirements for the fleet. Furthermore, there is anecdotal evidence that the value of Euro 5 and older Hackney Carriage is falling, as more cities bring in tighter licensing standards and/or CAZs.

- 9.3.3 This evidence shows that, in addition to the cost-of-living crisis, some key vehicle owning sectors are still experiencing impacts from the pandemic, with travel demand not back to pre-pandemic levels in some sectors for example.
- 9.3.4 Rising vehicle prices, constraints of the availability of compliant new and second-hand vehicles, as well as rising borrowing costs, mean that upgrade is less affordable and may take more time than previously assumed.
- 9.3.5 This in turn would mean that any charging CAZ proposal would be less effective – with less upgrade and a higher proportion choosing to stay-and-pay. Negative economic impacts would also be increased, with potential equalities impacts for affected vehicle owning groups.

9.4 New opportunities for electrification of the bus fleet

- 9.4.1 Since the Previous GM CAP was developed, there has been a significant increase in funding opportunities for electric buses in Greater Manchester. This has had an impact on the Do-Minimum forecast, as set out in **Section 7.2**.
- 9.4.2 In April 2022, following a court ruling that the decision to franchise bus services was lawfully carried out, as were all other aspects of the franchising process, the GMCA confirmed that it would be proceeding with bus franchising across Greater Manchester. The current programme sees the first franchised services in place by September 2023, and across the whole of the city region by the end of 2024.

- 9.4.3 Bus franchising will enable the integration of the bus network across bus services and with other modes of transport, significantly increasing the efficiency of the network. It will allow the introduction of integrated ticketing and a single, clear point of customer information. Critically for the GM CAP, it allows Greater Manchester to invest in buses with the confidence that they have control of the strategic delivery. Crucially, franchising allows TfGM to specify the vehicles to be used on the network. Under franchising, governance/planning processes are being established so that the cleanest buses are running on routes containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance - with a focus on the regional centre/city centre as the transport hub of the city-region.
- 9.4.4 In April 2022, Greater Manchester was awarded its City Region Sustainable Transport Settlement (CRSTS) and an indicative allocation of £115m from that award has been made to towards zero emission buses, with the aim that a third of the bus fleet in Greater Manchester will be zero carbon by 2027. These funds will build on the existing ZEBRA scheme, and will be used to fund the incremental costs of updating buses to zero emission over above the cost of new diesels. A commitment has been made that from September 2023, 50 new zero emission buses will be brought into service with the launch of the regulated bus system in Wigan and Bolton which will be a major contributor to resolving exceedances at the Bury Bridge persistent exceedance location.
- 9.4.5 Early analysis indicates that the CRSTS funding could support the deployment of sufficient numbers of electric buses targeted at the most persistent exceedance locations in order to achieve compliance at those locations, subject to a delivery plan. This could mean that, because poor air quality at the majority of the locations contains a significant contribution from diesel bus emissions, most areas of Greater Manchester could potentially be compliant in 2025, if electric buses were deployed at those locations.
- 9.4.6 The exception is the A57 Regent Road, which has very few bus services, and therefore electric buses cannot deliver significant reductions in vehicle emissions. Without supporting funding (CRSTS), it is likely that compliance would be achieved in most areas (excluding the A57 Regent Road – which has very few bus services) in 2026, under the CBF test scenario. This scenario is currently not included in Greater Manchester's core modelling, because take up of the CBF grants is less certain without the charge and because Greater Manchester cannot be certain where on the network the upgraded buses will be deployed.

9.5 Targeting the most persistent exceedances

- 9.5.1 As shown, the spatial pattern of exceedances within the timeline now under consideration is such that a Greater Manchester-wide charging CAZ would be an excessive solution to address the issues remaining in 2025.

- 9.5.2 In addition, a Greater Manchester-wide charging CAZ is increasingly unacceptable given the current economic conditions, as set out in this paper. In Summer 2021, Greater Manchester had proposed a Greater Manchester-wide charging CAZ, forecast to achieve compliance in 2024. By February 2022, it had become clear that the Previous GM CAP was no longer likely to achieve compliance by that date, as a result of greater-than-expected reductions in new car purchases in 2021 and rising van prices. Concerns were also emerging about the affordability of upgrade for key groups given rising prices and supply constraints.
- 9.5.3 In February 2022, the Government revoked the 2020 Direction to Greater Manchester which required the implementation of a Class C charging CAZ in the shortest possible time and by 2024 at the latest and gave Greater Manchester until 1st July to present a new plan to achieve compliance with legal air quality standards in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest.
- 9.5.4 The Do Minimum NO₂ forecasts show that the number of sites in exceedance reduces over time, moving from a Greater Manchester -wide problem in 2023 to a localised problem from 2025 focused around the regional centre with some acute outliers. This means that, in order to achieve compliance by 2026, Greater Manchester can target measures as part of an investment-led approach, such as deployment of electric buses to those most persistent exceedances, which are particularly found in and around the city centre.
- 9.5.5 The updated modelling summarises the existing areas of exceedance that are likely to remain unless action is taken through the New GM CAP during the period from now until 2026. Targeting these areas of exceedance will form the basis of the New GM CAP and the Greater Manchester local authorities are now making the case to Government that this should take the form of an investment-led non-charging GM CAP, which aims to achieve compliance in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest but without creating additional financial hardship for local businesses and families. Without the need to mitigate a Greater Manchester-wide charging CAZ, a New GM CAP should target resources efficiently and effectively at the most persistent exceedances while providing support to those vehicles contributing the most to poor air quality. Additionally, with supported funding for electric bus through CRSTS, targeted investment could enable Greater Manchester to reduce the number of exceedances to only one point remaining in exceedance without other action by 2026.

9.6 A revised charging CAZ would take time to design, consult upon and implement

- 9.6.1 In summary, as shown in this document, the spatial pattern of exceedances within the timeline now under consideration is such that a Greater Manchester-wide charging CAZ would be an excessive to address the issues remaining in 2025. In addition, a Greater Manchester-wide charging CAZ is increasingly unacceptable given the current economic conditions, as set out in this paper. The updated modelling summarises the existing areas of exceedance that are likely to remain unless action is taken through the New GM CAP during the period from now until 2026. Targeting these areas of exceedance will form the basis of the New GM CAP and the Greater Manchester local authorities are now making the case to Government that this should take the form of an investment-led non-charging GM CAP, which aims to achieve compliance in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest but without creating additional financial hardship for local businesses and families.
- 9.6.2 Since this review commenced, Greater Manchester necessarily paused the implementation of the Previous GM CAP, to allow the review to take place. For the reasons set out above, implementing a Greater Manchester-wide Class C charging CAZ, as per the Previous GM CAP, is no longer the right plan for Greater Manchester as it would result in unacceptable financial hardship and would not be expected to achieve compliance in 2024 as previously forecast.
- 9.6.3 Implementing a materially revised charging CAZ, for example with a different boundary, vehicles in scope or discounts and exemptions, would take time to design and consult upon and then implement.

10 The way forward: an Investment-led non-charging GM CAP

10.1.1 An investment-led non-charging GM CAP will target action at the most polluted places. This could be delivered using a three-pillared approach including:

- Funding for electric buses;
- Funding to support vehicle upgrades; and
- Working in partnership with delivery bodies and other stakeholders to develop targeted solutions.

10.1.2 The new investment-led non-charging GM CAP will develop measures based on the following core objectives:

- To reduce NO₂ concentrations to below the legal limits in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest;
- Achieve compliance in a way that is fair to businesses and residents, and does not cause financial hardship to people in Greater Manchester; and
- Ensure the reduction of harmful emissions is at the centre of Greater Manchester's wider objective for delivering the Bee Network's core objectives.

10.1.3 Targeted investment is envisaged to be developed based on the following three mechanisms:

10.2 Electric buses

10.2.1 Investment in electric buses across the network and particularly targeting the last points of exceedance will bring significant air quality benefits, as set out in **Sections 7-9**, though further work is required to develop this evidence base.

10.2.2 It is anticipated that this investment would include 50 electric buses delivered in September 2023 in the first phase of Greater Manchester's bus franchising programme. This programme of works has been approved for delivery recently, and is therefore only now able to be factored into the New GM CAP. The New GM CAP will also likely specify funding for electric buses on services travelling through the regional centre, particularly at key 'last compliance' sites as set out in this report.

10.2.3 Bus accounts for a high proportion of emissions at the majority of the most persistent locations of exceedance in Greater Manchester. By targeting zero emission bus investment at services passing through those locations, Greater Manchester could achieve substantial reductions in NO_x emissions and reduce NO₂ concentrations. This approach could bring air quality improvements and additional benefits to passengers benefiting from high quality new buses without the need to implement a charging CAZ.

10.3 Vehicle upgrades

- 10.3.1 An investment-led non-charging GM CAP will also aim to encourage upgrade to cleaner vehicles, leading to better air quality, by providing funding packages to those most polluting vehicles travelling in locations experiencing NO₂ exceedances.
- 10.3.2 Under an investment-led non-charging GM CAP, rather than a formally signed charging CAZ, the ANPR cameras could be used to inform and support the development of investment-led solutions, which will be developed further.
- 10.3.3 An investment-led non-charging GM CAP could facilitate upgrade for those still in a financial position to do so, over a timescale that they can achieve, without requiring any investment from those not able to afford it. This approach will provide businesses that could be in a position to upgrade with financial support to do so, bringing fresh investment into Greater Manchester's local economy and allowing businesses to access cleaner vehicles that may be cheaper and more efficient to operate. Under an investment-led approach and without a charging CAZ in place, those businesses and individual vehicle owners who are not in a financial position to upgrade are able to continue operating as now, without any increase in costs imposed by the scheme.

10.4 Partnership working

- 10.4.1 The 10 authorities are committed to working in partnership with stakeholders and with other transport bodies to deliver solutions that are area-specific and appropriate for Greater Manchester. This could include working with National Highways to tackle poor air quality on Regent Road and on the A628/A57 at Mottram (some of the last compliance sites that are discussed in more depth in **Section 8**). Partnership working could also include working with vehicle-owning stakeholders to ensure the New GM CAP delivers change and meets their needs.
- 10.4.2 **Table 8** sets out the type of measures that an investment-led non-charging GM CAP could consider; the next steps are to carry out a participatory policy development exercise to determine a package of measures to deliver the best possible investment-led non-charging GM CAP. Further detail on this planned approach is set out in **Section 12**.
- 10.4.3 Under an investment-led non-charging GM CAP, rather than a formally signed charging CAZ, the ANPR cameras could be used to better understand those vehicles where GM would get the greatest emissions reduction from those non-compliant vehicles travelling regularly through GM's most NO₂ polluted places. This will be explored in further detail, alongside other approaches to targeting the funds in the most impactful manner.

Table 8 Greater Manchester CAP Vehicle Measures

Vehicle type	Measure subject to review during participatory policy approach
Bus	<p>Continue with existing funding.</p> <p>Ensure franchising and other governance/planning processes are established so that electric buses are running on routes containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance - with a focus on the regional centre/city centre as the transport hub of the city-region.</p> <p>Initial sensitivity testing indicates that delivery of sufficient bus electrification would achieve compliance at modelled exceedance locations except Regent Road by 2025. A delivery plan is under development with the aim of achieving this.</p>
HGV	<p>Consider offer including eligibility for funding, in light of needing to ensure the cleanest vehicles are running in areas containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance.</p>
Coach	<p>Consider offer including eligibility for funding, in light of needing to ensure the cleanest vehicles are running in areas containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance.</p>
Greater Manchester Hackney Carriage	<p>Consider offer including eligibility for funding, in light of needing to ensure the cleanest vehicles are running in areas containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance – most Hackney Carriages are licensed in the Manchester City Council (MCC) district.</p> <p>Target GM CAP funding to increase roll out of dedicated taxi and other general electric vehicle charging infrastructure points to ensure fleet upgrade to electric vehicles is viable and taxi industry is supported. Consider opportunities for regulatory measures such as licensing standards to complement funding incentives to accelerate fleet upgrades.</p>
Greater Manchester PHV	<p>Consider offer including eligibility for funding, in light of needing to ensure the cleanest vehicles are running in areas containing most persistent exceedance points to ensure compliance. Consider opportunities for regulatory measures such as licensing standards to complement funding incentives to accelerate fleet upgrades.</p>
Clean air promotion of clean air initiatives	<p>Explore opportunities for EVCI investment to support expansion of Car Club in and around city centre and wider city.</p> <p>Target GM CAP funding to continue to roll out sustainable transport infrastructure investment and messages particularly in and around the regional centre to reduce emissions in key exceedance areas. This will include a particular focus on city centre in points of persistent exceedance, such as Deansgate and surrounding streets, as well as other active travel and public transport schemes.</p>

Vehicle type	Measure subject to review during participatory policy approach
	Explore opportunities for GM CAP funding to support other infrastructure investment to address air quality issues, such as green infrastructure.

Table 9 Greater Manchester CAP Cluster Measures

Exceedance cluster	Measure subject to review during participatory policy approach
City centre	<p>In the city centre, bus emissions account for at least 70% of total NO_x emissions at the majority of locations and therefore electric buses can be very effective. Initial sensitivity testing indicates that delivery of sufficient bus electrification would achieve compliance at these locations by 2025. A delivery plan is under development with the aim of achieving this.</p> <p>Further work is also underway to develop a proposition for taxi that encourages upgrade to the cleanest vehicles, and to explore how investment in highway and other transport infrastructure under the city centre transport strategy can best support clean air.</p>
Regent Road	<p>Emissions on Regent Road are principally derived from commercial and logistics traffic, which accounts for c.50%. In addition, the corridor is immediately fed by the M602 motorway and subject to the implications of National Highways signage and traffic management policies.</p> <p>Salford City Council (SCC) and MCC have commissioned analysis via TfGM to improve understanding of the operation of the road and nature of the traffic on Regent Road to help with the joint working with National Highways (NH) which must include how the deployment of funds and local servicing plans can support appropriate solutions to deal with the exceedance at this location.</p> <p>Note that Electric Towns and Cities Infrastructure initiative (ETCI) – NH initiative being explored for mitigation for sections of the SRN.</p>
Bury Bridge	<p>The electrification of bus services over the bridge should happen with the first 50 new zero emission buses that will be brought into service with the launch of the regulated bus system in Wigan and Bolton. Initial sensitivity testing indicates that delivery of sufficient bus electrification would achieve compliance at this location by 2025. A delivery plan is under development with the aim of achieving this.</p>

- 10.4.4 Under an investment-led non-charging GM CAP the ANPR cameras installed for the Class C charging CAZ could be used to inform and support the development of investment-led solutions- for example, ANPR cameras could help determine eligibility for upgrade funding by identifying those non-compliant vehicles travelling most regularly through areas of NO₂ exceedance. GM would also want to utilise the ANPR cameras for potential law enforcement activity related to the detection of crime.
- 10.4.5 Greater Manchester will continue to seek to ensure that the Government takes appropriate action to address exceedances on the A628/A57, a stretch of the Strategic Road network, managed by National Highways that cuts through the villages of Hollingworth and Mottram.

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

11 How will Greater Manchester deliver the New GM CAP?

- 11.1.1 The ten Greater Manchester local authorities have taken a region-wide approach to producing a GM CAP because it is recognised that air pollution does not respect local authority boundaries. This enables a consistent and coordinated approach, maximising air quality benefits for all people living and working in Greater Manchester, whilst minimising the risk of unintended consequences. These could include the displacement of existing, elevated NO₂ concentrations to other locations within Greater Manchester. A coordinated approach also helps to ensure, as far as possible, alignment between the GM CAP and other Greater Manchester strategies, including the existing Greater Manchester Air Quality Action Plan.^{66,67}
- 11.1.2 Governance arrangements for the ten Greater Manchester local authorities have been established through the Greater Manchester Clean Air Charging Authorities Committee⁶⁸ (a committee created to enable joint decision-making by the 10 local authorities as charging authorities) and the Air Quality Administration Committee⁶⁹ (a further joint committee created by the ten Greater Manchester local authorities and the GMCA).
- 11.1.3 Whilst the New GM CAP will propose an alternative to a Greater Manchester-wide Class C charging CAZ, as set out in **Section 9**, the approach to delivery of the New GM CAP will not change and will build upon the existing collaborative delivery and governance arrangements already developed between the ten local authorities through the development of the Previous GM CAP. The New GM CAP will also be developed in conjunction with a range of stakeholders, using a 'Participatory Policy Development' process, which is described in **Section 12**.

⁶⁶ <https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/media/1272/air-quality-action-plan-2016-21.pdf>

⁶⁷ <https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/media/1276/low-emission-strategy-dec-2016.pdf>

⁶⁸ [Clean Air Charging Authorities Committee Terms of Reference.pdf \(greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk\)](#)

⁶⁹ [Terms of Reference - Air Quality Administration Committee.pdf \(greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk\)](#)

12 How will Greater Manchester ensure a participatory approach to the development of a New CAP?

12.1 Changing Public Awareness

12.1.1 The Previous GM CAP development has gone through multiple stages including an options assessment. That options assessment concluded in February 2019 that a Greater Manchester-wide Class C charging CAZ was the preferred option to achieved air quality compliance in the shortest possible time, as accepted by government per ministerial Directions issued in 2019 and 2020. Since that stage, the proposals forming the GM CAP have been refined based on further evidence gathering and stakeholder consultation which formed the Previous GM CAP in Summer 2021. This included:

- In 2019, a public conversation⁷⁰ was held on the proposals at the outline business case, with over 3,300 responses.
- Between 8 October and 3 December 2020, a statutory consultation on the GM CAP was held on the proposed Class C charging CAZ. A total of 4,768 responses were received during the consultation period.
- A six-week public consultation commenced from the 1st September 2021 on the inclusion of motorhomes classified as MSP1 within the scope of CAZ charges and on the inclusion in the GM CAZ of the A575 and A580 at Worsley. The analysis of consultation responses was paused when the review of the Previous GM CAP commenced.

12.1.2 Signage implementation for the GM Class C charging CAZ commenced on 29th September 2021 with temporary sign faces developed in accordance with existing DfT authorisation to raise awareness about the zone. In January 2022 a Facebook group formed asking Greater Manchester leaders to rethink the GM CAP. In a short space of time this group gathered 85,000 followers on a social media page with the core aim of the campaign stating something needed to be changed or the scheme needed to be scrapped all together.

12.2 Participatory Approach

12.2.1 The ten Greater Manchester authorities are currently working to develop the New GM CAP, in conjunction with a range of stakeholders. This wider, more participatory approach will ensure that the Plan works for the residents and businesses of Greater Manchester. This process is set out below.

⁷⁰ The information provided at the conversation, as well as the summary of responses can be found here: <https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents>

- 12.2.2 The 10 authorities are working to ensure that the New GM CAP is the right fit to deal with Greater Manchester's challenges, both in economic and air quality terms. Given the situation – a poor economic outlook for the UK as a whole and for Greater Manchester – and increasing evidence of the harm poor air quality causes, this is a delicate balance.
- 12.2.3 Integral to the success of any New GM CAP is active engagement with those it will affect. Greater Manchester is committed to undertaking a participatory approach to the development of the New GM CAP to ensure that Greater Manchester's proposals consider evidence regarding deliverability and the impacts on affected groups. Greater Manchester has conducted such engagement throughout the development of the GM CAP, and will continue to do so at this next, critical, stage.
- 12.2.4 Due to the timescales governing the initial submission back to Government, it is proposed that Greater Manchester will continue with a process of Participatory Policy Development after this initial submission is provided. This is described further in **Section 15** and will involve engaging with a wide range of stakeholder groups to continue to gather feedback on proposals as they are developed.

13 What are the equalities considerations?

13.1.1 Under Section 149 of the Equality Act (2010), public bodies are subject to the Public Sector Equality Duty, which requires that they have due regard to the need to:

- Eliminate discrimination, harassment, victimisation, and any other conduct that is prohibited by or under the Act;
- Advance equality of opportunity between persons who share a protected characteristic and persons who do not share it; and
- Foster good relations between persons who share a relevant protected characteristic and persons who do not share it.

13.1.2 The aim of an Equality Impact Assessment (EqIA) is to identify whether people with protected characteristics could be affected by the GM CAP disproportionately or differentially:

- Disproportionate effects arise when an impact has a proportionately greater effect on people with protected characteristics than the rest of the population.
- Differential effects arise where people with protected characteristics could be affected differently from the rest of the population, due to a particular need or sensitivity.

13.1.3 In addition to the 9 protected characteristics covered within the Equality Act, the majority of Greater Manchester's local authorities also consider socio-economic deprivation as a characteristic in their equality assessments. As such, low income / socio-economic deprivation will be considered in this instance.

13.1.4 A full EqIA will be undertaken to support and inform the development of the policy and measures within the New GM CAP. This will build on the learning from the work undertaken in 2020-2021, taking into account the proposed measures and updated demographic and socio-economic data, including the 2021 census data if available.

13.1.5 An initial screening has been undertaken to assess which protected characteristics are likely to be impacted by the New GM CAP, and in scope for the EqIA as shown in **Table 10**.

Table 10 Equality Considerations - Protected Characteristics

Protected characteristic	Likely to be disproportionately affected by improved air quality	Likely to be differentially affected by improved air quality
Age		x
Disability (includes all forms of physical and mental disability)		x
Pregnancy and maternity		x
Gender (male drivers)	x	
Race	x	
Low income / socio-economic deprivation	x	

13.1.6 The 2022 Direction requires that any revised GM CAP must reduce NO₂ concentrations to below legal limits in the shortest possible time and by 2026 at the latest. In addition to a GM-wide assessment of the impact of improved air quality on the scoped-in groups, the EqlA will pay particular attention to those communities within, or neighbouring the last points of exceedance: namely, those in the city centre, at Bury Bridge and Regent Road.

13.1.7 Those impacted by air quality changes with protected characteristics could potentially be impacted by the proposed measures adopted within the New GM CAP. The nature and scale of the impact will depend on the preferred policy option and the measures chosen. Therefore, **Table 11** provides a summary of the protected characteristics which will also be considered in the EqlA.

Table 11 Equality Considerations – Protected Characteristics Scope

Protected characteristic	Potential disproportionate impact dependent on option
Age	X
Disability (includes all forms of physical and mental disability)	X
Pregnancy and maternity	X
Race	X
Religion / belief	X

Protected characteristic	Potential disproportionate impact dependent on option
Sex	X
Gender Reassignment	X
Sexual Orientation	X
Low income / socio-economic deprivation	X

13.1.8 As a result of this screening process, marriage and civil partnership will not be scoped into the EqlA process for the New GM CAP.

13.1.9 To inform a robust EqlA for the New GM CAP the approach to Participatory Policy Development, as described in **Section 12**, will include engagement with Greater Manchester-based organisations and networks which represent protected characteristic groups that could potentially be impacted by the New GM CAP. Representative groups will be identified at the next stage and their feedback will also be used to inform the final EqlA.

14 Government asks

14.1.1 Throughout the development of the GM CAP the local authorities have made clear the expectation that the UK Government would support the plans through:

- Clear arrangements and funding to develop workable, local vehicle scrappage / upgrade measures;
- Short term effective interventions in vehicle and technology manufacturing and distribution, led by national Government
- Replacement of non-compliant buses; and
- A clear instruction to National Highways to implement measures which deliver compliance with legal limits for NO₂ on the strategic road network, for which they are responsible, in the shortest possible time⁷¹.

14.1.2 In particular, Greater Manchester had been clear from the outset in the OBC for the GM CAP (2019) that any GM CAP based on significant vehicle change could only be sustained under stable vehicle market conditions. Greater Manchester had been from the outset concerned about the scale and diversity of the LGV fleet/LGV-owning business sectors; the fact that compliant diesel LGVs had only become available in 2016; the high volume of diverse and active Small and Medium-sized Enterprises (SMEs) in Greater Manchester, many of whom rely on small commercial vehicles on a daily basis; and the relatively old age profile of LGVs in Greater Manchester.

14.1.3 Greater Manchester therefore required Government to maintain a clear oversight of the supply chain conditions, within which the GM CAP would have to operate, recognising the structural nature of markets that are beyond the influence of any one local authority or area.

14.1.4 Further, one key barrier preventing Greater Manchester local authorities from being able to effectively oversee the progressive improvement of private hire vehicle (and therefore emission) standards, is the ongoing ability of vehicle owners / drivers to be licensed 'out of area'.

14.1.5 Over the past three years, the ten Greater Manchester local authorities have worked together to adopt Minimum Licensing Standards to increase public safety including driver standards, rationalising age and emissions policies and livery on vehicles. However, the effect of out-of-area licensing has been to undermine Greater Manchester's approach, and to negatively impact public safety while doing nothing to improve public confidence in a well-regulated local trade.

⁷¹ Greater Manchester Authorities are directed to take action on the local road network. Those roads managed by National Highways, such as motorways and trunk roads are excluded from the CAP.

- 14.1.6 Accordingly, Greater Manchester is looking to secure, via Greater Manchester's Devolution Trailblazer bid, a commitment from Government to devise an appropriate regulatory approach that will legally require that all private hire journeys within the Greater Manchester boundary must be undertaken by a driver and vehicle which are both licensed by one of the ten Greater Manchester local authorities. The effect would be to ensure that private hire operators with a license to operate in one or more of the ten Greater Manchester local authorities will be required to serve any intra Greater Manchester journey request with a locally licensed driver and locally licensed vehicle.
- 14.1.7 Greater Manchester represents the ideal spatial scale to introduce this vital measure. With over 40 million trips taken each year by hackney and private hire vehicles, around 20,000 driver licenses issued and 13,000 vehicle licensed locally across an area with a coherent economic geography, the vast majority of these trips are undertaken within the external boundary of the ten Greater Manchester local authorities.
- 14.1.8 Government's response to the DfT Task and Finish Group on taxi and private hire licensing report was to highlight that *"Local authorities are accountable for licensing in their areas and it is only right that they have the powers to properly shape and influence their local market." To this end, Greater Manchester is keen to work with the Department to "consider further (with a view to legislation) how it might best work in detail".*⁷²
- 14.1.9 As it stands, out-of-area operation enables the evasion of fair, safe and democratically determined local licensing standards, which undermines public safety as well as local measures to progressively improve up driver and vehicle standards.
- 14.1.10 In context of the GM CAP, the ability to provide local licensing standards would help to improve the emission standards of taxis operating in Greater Manchester whilst providing incentives to upgrade non-compliant vehicles. This complementary measure would provide more certainty in Greater Manchester's ability to meet required exceedance levels.
- 14.1.11 Under an investment-led non-charging GM CAP the ANPR cameras installed for the Class C charging CAZ could be used to inform and support the development of investment-led solutions. GM also wants to work with Government to agree the use of the GM CAP ANPR cameras to support identification of vehicles that could be upgraded, and also for potential law enforcement activity related to the detection of crime.

⁷² <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/taxi-and-private-hire-vehicle-licensing-government-response-to-independent-report>

15 Next steps

- 15.1.1 Greater Manchester recognises that the current economic climate has changed. This has impacted on individuals and businesses' ability to upgrade their vehicles and ultimately, deliver compliance in the shortest possible time.
- 15.1.2 This submission has set out the evidence base underpinning Greater Manchester's belief that a charging CAZ scheme is no longer the best solution to deliver compliance. Additionally, this submission has set out that an investment-led non-charging GM CAP is the best solution to address the air quality problem in Greater Manchester.
- 15.1.3 In support of this submission, Greater Manchester has engaged with the following key groups to discuss their experiences of current economic and vehicle market conditions and validate the evidence and conclusions set out throughout this submission document. The groups that have been engaged with prior to this submission are:
- Greater Manchester business leaders as convened through the LEP Chair;
 - Road Haulage Association;
 - A number of Hackney Carriage and PHV groups including trade representation organisations, the National Private Hire and Taxi Association and the Licensed Private Hire Car Association;
 - One Bus Partnership – representing bus operators in Greater Manchester; and
 - The Confederation of Passenger Transport.
- 15.1.4 Feedback from these discussions is reported to the Air Quality Administration Committee on the 1st July 2022. Following submission of this document, Greater Manchester will undertake a Participatory Policy Development process. This will involve exploration of three aspects of policy:
- Developing Greater Manchester's electric bus proposition, including identifying bus routes and services to be upgraded, assessing the impact on NO₂ concentrations and proposing a delivery plan;
 - Developing a Fund proposition and any other measures to encourage upgrade to cleaner vehicles considering questions such as what funding offer would be effective, who should be in scope for funding, and whether funds should be targeted at the last points of exceedance; and
 - Carrying out local area studies of the last points of exceedance to assess what measures are required to achieve compliance at each site.

15.1.5 The policy development process will involve the following stages:

- Evidence gathering – including via stakeholder engagement, research and the development of analytical tools and methods for estimating the impact of different measures;
- Review of that evidence to define the challenge and inform the development and assessment of different individual measures and policy options; and
- Development of a package of proposed measures and assessment of that package.

15.1.6 At each stage of this process, stakeholder input and feedback will be sought and this will be used to inform the proposed package of measures and ensure that it has been designed in collaboration with those affected by the scheme.

15.1.7 Alongside the Participatory Policy Development process, Greater Manchester will work with JAQU to agree the submission requirements for a New GM CAP and will review delivery plans and operational requirements for any new scheme, including financial and commercial considerations.

15.1.8 As the final output of the Participatory Policy Development process, Greater Manchester will have developed, assessed and agreed a package of measures forming a proposed New GM CAP, suitable for public consultation. It is anticipated that local authorities would be in a position to proceed with public consultation in early 2023.

15.1.9 The requirement for statutory consultation on the GM CAP arose as a consequence of the use of Transport Act 2000 powers for road user charging and therefore it is likely that an investment-led non-charging GM CAP would not require statutory consultation. However, in line with the principles for the review outline by Greater Manchester authorities in the Spring, it is proposed that broad public engagement on the New GM CAP will be undertaken in line with good local authority practice, to ensure impacts are understood, and in particular to inform the ongoing equality impact analysis.

15.1.10 Greater Manchester will review the responses to the consultation and make any adaptations to the proposals as necessary. It is anticipated that local authorities could be in a position to make a decision to proceed with the New GM CAP in July 2023.

15.1.11 Greater Manchester will agree with JAQU the nature and timescale of a submission to Government. Alongside the proposed package of measures and policy for a New GM CAP, it is anticipated that this would include analysis setting out the air quality and socio-economic impacts of the scheme and an EqIA.

- 15.1.12 The submission will set out Greater Manchester's approach to managing the performance of the scheme through a performance management plan, a monitoring and evaluation plan and an adaptive planning process if alterations to the scheme post-implementation are required. This will ensure that the policy contained in the New GM CAP remain appropriate throughout the lifetime of the interventions. Air quality monitoring data will be kept under review and further action may be taken at any sites identified as being at risk of persistent exceedance.
- 15.1.13 Through preparation and commissioning of the Previous GM CAP, Greater Manchester has experience in engaging and appointing contractors to deliver clean air benefits. The scheme submission will include a delivery plan to provide confidence in the proposed procurement and management approach for delivery of each aspect of an investment-led non-charging GM CAP.

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

Greater Manchester's Clean Air Plan to tackle Nitrogen Dioxide Exceedances at the Roadside

Appendix A - Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – HGV Sector

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

June 2022

1. Introduction

Background

- 1.1 After the initial OBC submission, a series of technical notes were published setting out the results of analysis and research carried out to better understand the vehicles in scope for the scheme.
- 1.2 For heavy goods vehicles (HGVs), this included, in particular, Technical Note 3: Analysis of the Freight Market, Technical Note 12: Evidence of the impact of a 2021 implementation of a CAZ C (without exemptions), and Technical Note 20: GM Specialist Goods Survey Results Summary¹. Further notes were produced setting out the development of analytical tools for freight, with the latest published summary of that work provided in T4 Appendix A of the Modelling for Consultation².
- 1.3 This evidence formed the basis of the development of the Option for Consultation. From March 2020, it became clear that the pandemic would affect the Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP); a programme of work was carried out in 2020/2021 to better understand the possible impacts of the Covid 19 pandemic on the GM CAP, published as the Impacts of Covid Report in June 2021³. This evidence, alongside feedback from the Consultation, was used to inform the revised GM CAP as approved by the ten GM local authorities in June/July 2021.
- 1.4 At that time, GM identified a number of possible risks to the GM CAP, which included concerns about the risk of vehicle price increases and the impact of any further lockdowns in the UK or countries in the supply chain.
- 1.5 This report draws a series of findings and conclusions to better understand the circumstances affecting HGV owners in Spring 2022 (based upon the previous' GM CAP implementation date) and the implications for the GM CAP and surrounding policy framework.
- 1.6 Since Spring 2022, there have been further dramatic changes to the economic context in the UK which are not explicitly addressed in this report but are set out in **Appendix E**. A range of factors associated with the impact from war in Ukraine, increased costs of energy and fuel, changes to Bank of England base rates and forecasts, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis have combined to create a context of increased financial hardship for businesses and families.

Structure of Note

- 1.7 The remaining sections of the report are structured as follows:
 - **Section 2** provides a review of the in scope vehicles of the HGV sector in GM;
 - **Section 3** reviews the impacts of Covid-19 on the HGV sector, with a particular focus on the availability and indicative purchase prices of new and used HGVs. This chapter also considers the vulnerability impacts of Covid-19 on the sector; and

¹ All available at <https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/>

² [https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbvvy1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4 - Appendix A Behavioural Response Cost Models and Demand Sifting Tool.pdf](https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbvvy1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4_-_Appendix_A_Behavioural_Response_Cost_Models_and_Demand_Sifting_Tool.pdf)

³ GM CAP- Impact of COVID Report. Available at: <https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/>

- **Section 4** provides a summary of the key findings, also presenting details of any risks or issues facing the sector in responding to GM CAP.

1.8 In addition, **Appendix A** provides a list of data used to inform the report and **Appendix B** reviews the recent changes in travel behaviour within GM through the pandemic up until January 2022.

2. Overview of the HGV sector in GM

Overview of Vehicle Sector

- 2.1 In the UK, the term HGV is used for any lorry with a maximum gross weight of over 3.5 tonnes. Vehicles over 7.5 tonnes gross require a Heavy Goods Vehicle driver's license.
- 2.2 In 2020 GB registered HGVs carried over 1.27bn tonnes of goods and travelled 16.2bn vehicle kilometres.⁴
- 2.3 At the end of 2020 there were 485,900 HGVs operating in the UK, with 99.4% of those powered by diesel.⁵ Vehicles have got larger and heavier, with the average Gross Vehicle Weight now 22.8 tonnes (up from 18.7 tonnes in 2000) and the percentage of vehicles over 41 tonnes (GVW) rising from 17.4% in 2010 to 24.2% in 2020.⁶
- 2.4 An Operator's Licence is required for businesses that use goods vehicles over 3,500kg. The number of goods vehicle operator licences currently issued in Great Britain declined to under 100,000 in 2009/10 falling further to 69,000 in 2019/20. During this period the average size of an operators' fleet increased from 3.8 vehicles to 5.2 vehicles per licence, meaning fewer individual licences covering more vehicles. This means fleets are getting larger, however the sector is still dominated by SMEs, including owner-drivers who drive and operate their own vehicle.⁷
- 2.5 In Greater Manchester it is estimated there are over 20,000 HGVs⁸ registered in the area. Vehicles in the sector vary in size, from 7.5 tonne 4-wheeler box vehicles often deployed on shorter, local runs (such as deliveries to the end customer) to 44 tonne articulated vehicles often used for strategic 'trunking' movements (such as taking a container from a port in the South of England to a Distribution Centre in the Midlands or North of England).
- 2.6 The age profile of HGV fleets has not significantly varied since 2000, with between 25%-30% of the national HGV fleet newer than 3 years old.⁹
- 2.7 Vehicle lifespans vary; companies operating larger fleets, such as those in the food and retail sectors, typically replace vehicles more frequently and are therefore more

⁴ Domestic Road Freight Statistics, United Kingdom 2020, Department for Transport

⁵ Department for Transport Statistics, Table VEH0503 Licensed heavy goods vehicles at the end of the year by propulsion / fueltype, Great Britain from 1994; also United Kingdom from 2014

⁶ Department for Transport Statistics, Table VEH0506 Licensed heavy goods vehicles at the end of the year by gross vehicle weight (tonnes), Great Britain from 1994; also United Kingdom from 2014

⁷ Domestic Road Freight Statistics, United Kingdom 2020, Department for Transport

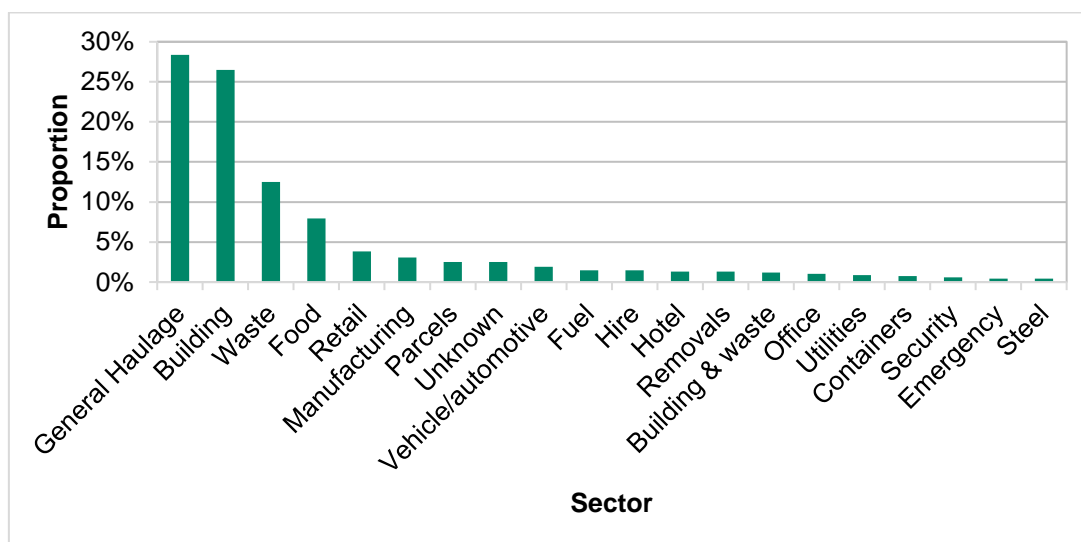
⁸ Based on size of market served by HGV (population served). GM equates to 4.2% of UK population, allocation of circa 500,000 HGVs based in UK (Source: SMMT)

⁹ Department for Transport Statistics, Table VEH0507 Licensed heavy goods vehicles at the end of the year by number of years since first registration, Great Britain from 1994; also United Kingdom from 2014

likely to have CAZ compliant vehicles at present, although some parts of those sectors have been badly affected by the pandemic in terms of extended periods of closure or constrained operations. Longer vehicle lifespans are associated with sectors such as waste and removals, the main factors are the margins on product being moved or the level of intensity that a vehicle is used.

- 2.8 The largest sector, General Haulage, makes up 29.1% of the GM market and includes over 2,000 vehicles affected by the GM CAP¹⁰. (See **Figure 2-1**).

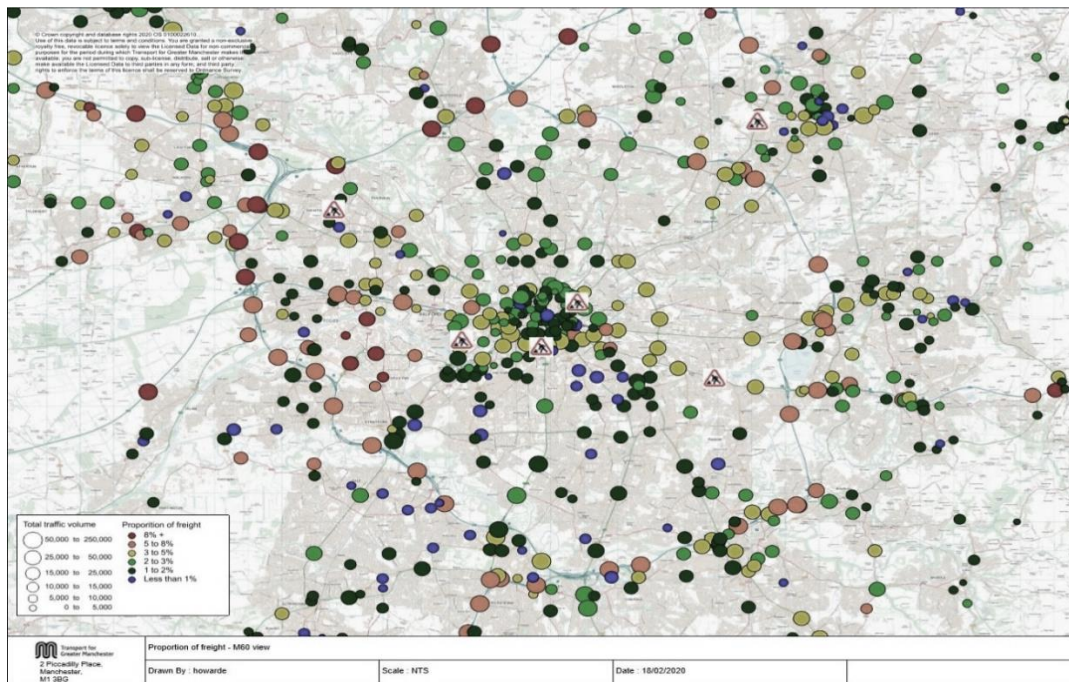
Figure 2-1 HGV Traffic Volumes in Greater Manchester, Feb '20



Source: AECOM Specialised Goods Vehicle Surveys, UK

- 2.9 **Figure 2-2** demonstrates the HGV pre-pandemic traffic proportions in Greater Manchester. The data used to populate the map was taken from traffic count information collected in mid-February 2020. This date was chosen as it would represent a typical “working” weekday in the first quarter of a year. The Strategic Road Network (SRN) generally has higher volumes of traffic overall and higher proportions of freight-related traffic. Key radial routes into the city often have relatively high volumes of freight vehicles, however form a lower proportion of overall traffic volumes, due in part to high volumes of commuter traffic.

¹⁰ Source: AECOM Specialised Goods Vehicle Surveys, UK

Figure 2-2 HGV Traffic Volumes in Greater Manchester, Feb '20

Source: Draft TfGM Freight Strategy

Review of in scope Vehicles

2.10 For context, the proportion of vehicle types in GM, relative to the regional and national averages, are provided in **Table 2-1** based on the latest available registration statistics from the DfT. There will be instances, particularly for commercial usage, where vehicles are licensed in one location but used in another, but this table provides an overview of the relative size of each fleet.

Table 2-1 Proportion of Vehicle Types Registered by Area, 2022

	Cars	Van	HGV	Bus & Coach	Other
GB	85.0%	11.3%	1.3%	0.4%	2.1%
England	85.1%	11.3%	1.3%	0.4%	1.9%
NW	85.7%	10.9%	1.5%	0.3%	1.6%
GM	85.6%	11.8%	1.6%	0.4%	0.7%

Source: Department for Transport, Statistical data set, All vehicles (VEH01), Last updated 13 January 2022

2.11 **Table 2-2** presents the number of HGVs serving Greater Manchester in 2019, split by compliant and non-compliant vehicles.

Table 2-2 2019 HGV Volumes, 2019

Modelled Response	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
Compliant	12,212	29,852	42,064
Non-Compliant	13,525	15,203	28,728
Total	25,737	45,055	70,792

Source: Air Quality Modelling Report: with impacts of Covid-19 and Post Consultation Package Measures

Changes to HGVs Over Time

- 2.12 Projection of the 2019 HGV totals, as set out in **Table 2-2**, was undertaken to forecast the natural change in compliant vehicles into the future, without any interventions applied (Do Minimum – No GM CAP). This was undertaken to understand the market's proportion of natural upgrades. Natural upgrades, without the impact of the pandemic, have been incorporated into the key forecast years (2022, 2023 and 2025) through retention of a constant age profile with the number of non-compliant vehicles reducing over time, summarised in **Table 2-3**.
- 2.13 This shows that natural vehicle upgrades grow the proportion of compliant vehicles serving GM from 42,064 (59%) in 2019 to 54,213 (77%) by 2022. This results in an 8.5% annual change in the split between compliant and non-compliant HGVs serving the GM market.

Table 2-3 Forecast Do Minimum (without CAP) Compliant HGVs

Year	Modelled Response	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
2022	Compliant	18,410	35,803	54,213
	Non-Compliant	7,327	9,252	16,579
	Total	25,737	45,055	70,792
2023	Compliant	19,749	37,523	57,272
	Non-Compliant	5,988	7,532	13,520
	Total	25,737	45,055	70,792
2025	Compliant	22,002	40,785	62,787
	Non-Compliant	3,735	4,270	8,005
	Total	25,737	45,055	70,792

Source: Air Quality Modelling Report: with impacts of Covid-19 and Post Consultation Package Measures

Note: All years indicate the beginning of the year

Review of Fleet Profile

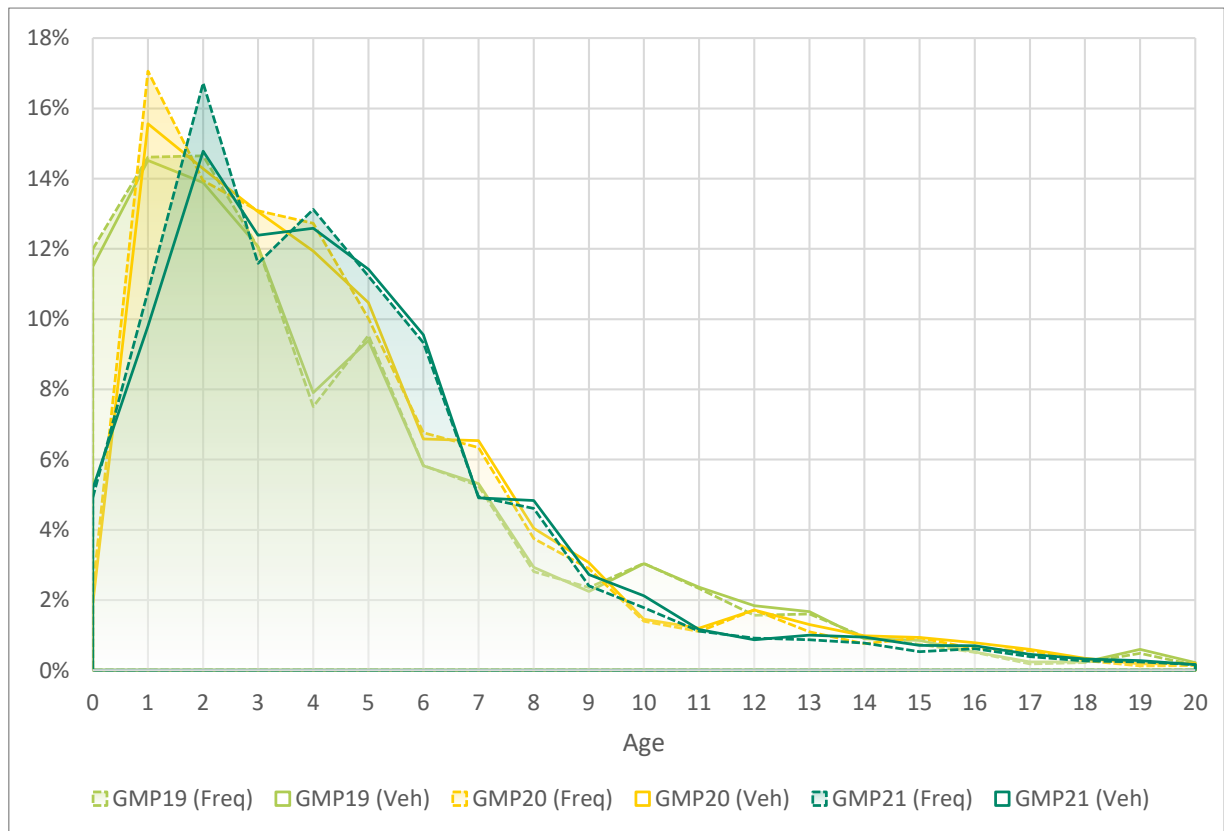
ANPR

- 2.14 Three sets of ANPR data were used, based on available data, these comprise the following time periods:
- GMP19 - January 2019 (pre Covid-19 pandemic);
 - GMP20 - September 2020; and
 - GMP21 - November 2021.

2.15 **Figure 2-3** presents the vehicle age profile of HGV in each survey. The proportion of newly purchased HGVs (i.e. less than 1 year-old) captured by ANPR cameras decreased from near 12% to 2% from 2019 to 2020¹¹ and recovered to close to 6% by the end of the 2021. These figures are likely to be slightly overestimated due to differences in the sample size (10 months' worth of 'new vehicles' captured in the January 2019 survey compared to 6 and 8 months captured in the September 2020 and November 2021 surveys).

2.16 The analysis, as shown in **Figure 2-3** suggests that the average age of HGVs increased by 0.5 years from the beginning of 2019 to the end of 2021.

Figure 2-3 HGV fleet age distribution



Source: GMP ANPR Data analysis

Table 2-4 Average HGV Age

Data set	GMP19	GMP20	GMP21
Frequency			
Average Age	4.6	5.0	5.0
Most common age group	2	1	2
Unique Vehicles			
Average Age	4.8	5.2	5.3
Most common age group	1	1	2

Source: GMP ANPR Data analysis

¹¹ Acknowledging that 2020 is missing at least 3 months of data since the survey was taken in September.

SMMT

- 2.17 The latest figures from SMMT as this document was reviewed shows that HGV registrations are on the rise, but still not at the same levels from the years prior to the pandemic. Sales of new HGVs had been brought forward into 2019 by many hauliers. Given the relatively low divergence of HGV registrations over the 2019-2021 period, it is not possible to distinguish how Covid-19 has impacted on the longer-term pattern of HGV investment cycles.
- 2.18 In July 2019, Specialised Goods Vehicle Counts (SGVC) were undertaken across 3 sites in Salford and Manchester on key approaches to the city centre. This exercise was repeated in October 2020, which demonstrated that compliance rates had improved. This may be due to a general natural trend in improvements to the fleet over time. Although it may also reflect changing travel behaviour due to the restrictions in place at the time, which could have impacted on the types of HGVs accessing these parts of the Regional Centre at this time.
- 2.19 **Table 2-5** shows the results of these surveys, which shows that a significant proportion of non-compliant vehicles are from the building/construction sector.

Table 2-5 Specialised Goods Vehicle Count Results (2019 & 2020)

Location	No of HGVS observed (2019)	Compliance (2019)	Compliance (2020)	Non-Compliance by sector (2019)
Bridge Street, Manchester	271	58%	75%	22% Building 22% Waste 17% Food
Regent Road, Salford	1,071	66%	71%	29% Building 20% General Haulage
A6 (immediately South of Mancunian Way)	612	60%	n/a	27% Building 13% General Haulage

Source: AECOM SGVC Survey, note the A6 site was not resurveyed in 2020

3. Review of Covid-19 impacts on the HGV vehicle sector

Overview

- 3.1 The HGV sector has been reviewed to consider pre-pandemic background characteristics, Covid-19 related impacts on the industries affected by the sector, and review of the expected vulnerabilities when responding to GM CAP.

Pre-Pandemic – Sector related trends

- 3.2 Unlike the van sector, which has seen significant growth in the number of vehicles in recent years, the HGV market pre-pandemic has remained largely constant over the last 20 years, with a 2% reduction in vehicle numbers overall since 2000.¹²
- 3.3 However, HGV registrations do fluctuate as shown in **Figure 3-1** and **Since 2000**, although total HGV numbers have been relatively stable there is some evidence of downsizing from HGVs to LCVs to accommodate more agile supply chains.
- 3.4 Figure 3-2 showing the impact that the financial downturn experienced in 2009 had on the number of HGVs being registered and subsequent 'bounce-back' as the economy recovered.

Figure 3-1 Number of HGV Registered Per Year in the UK

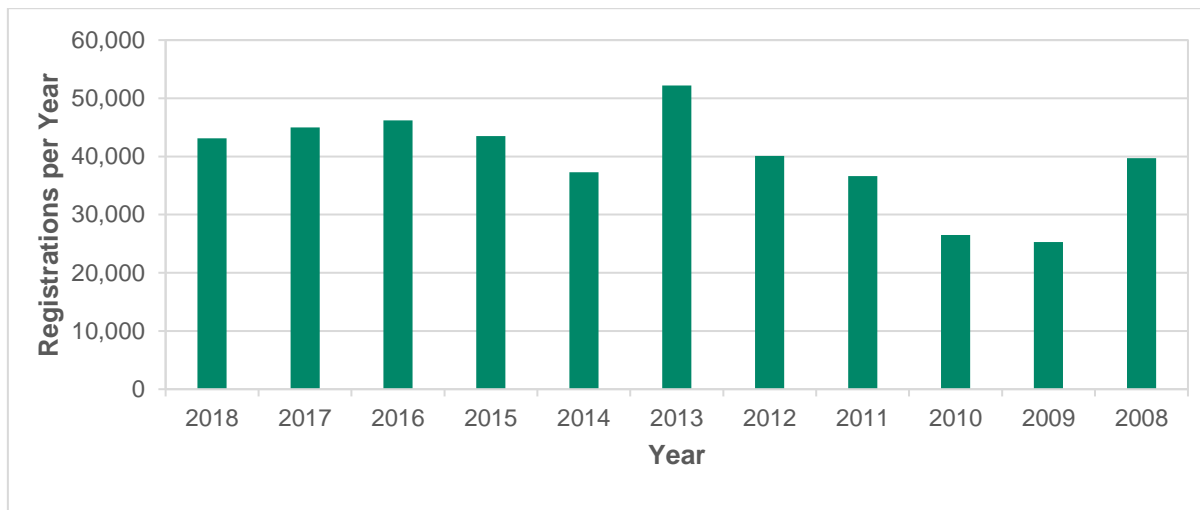
Year	No. of HGVs (000's)	% of HGVs	Euro Standard
2018	43.1	8.2%	Euro 6
2017	45	8.5%	
2016	46.2	8.8%	
2015	43.5	8.2%	
2014	37.3	7.1%	
2013	52.2	9.9%	Euro 5
2012	40.1	7.6%	
2011	36.6	6.9%	
2010	26.5	5.0%	
2009	25.3	4.8%	
2008	39.7	7.5%	Euro 4
2007	32.8	6.2%	
2006	31.5	6.0%	
2005	27.8	5.3%	

Source: <https://www.smmmt.co.uk/vehicle-data/heavy-goods-vehicle-registrations/>

¹² Source: SMMT

- 3.5 Since 2000, although total HGV numbers have been relatively stable there is some evidence of downsizing from HGVs to LCVs to accommodate more agile supply chains.¹³

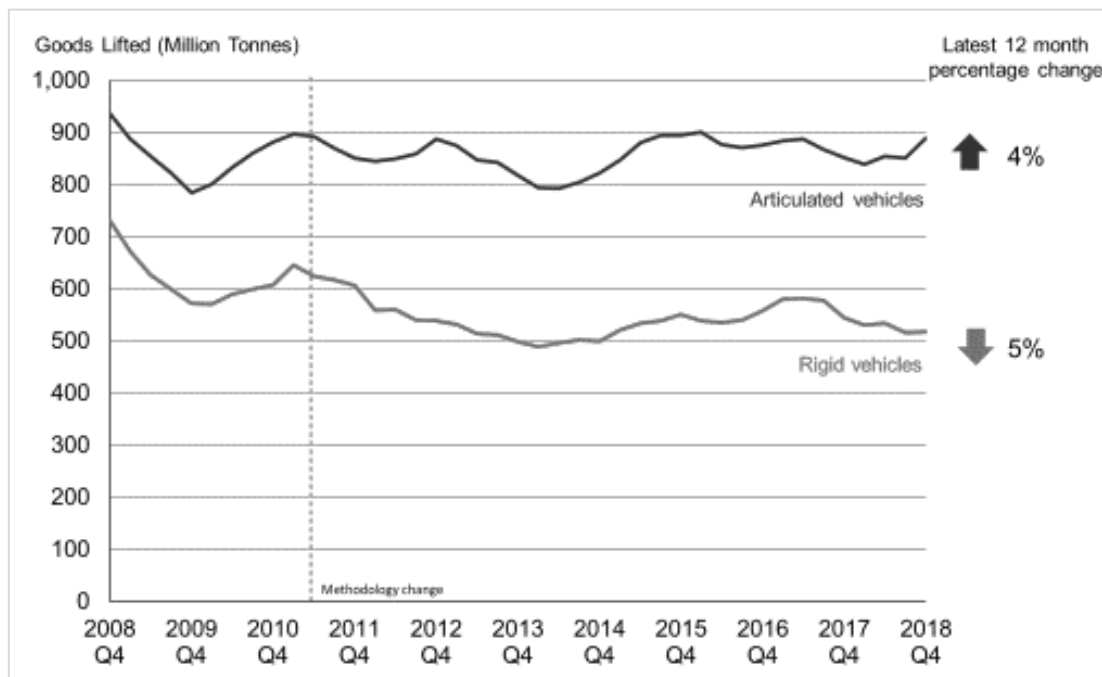
Figure 3-2 HGV Registrations over 10 years



Source: <https://www.smmmt.co.uk/vehicle-data/heavy-goods-vehicle-registrations/>

- 3.6 There has been a move towards greater uptake of larger HGVs able to transport heavier consignments. HGVs deployed in the UK range from a gross vehicle weight of 3.5 tonnes to 44 tonnes, with articulated vehicles - which tend to be longer, larger, heavier vehicles - carrying more freight (see **Figure 3-3**). In 2018, articulated vehicles carried 889 million tonnes (63%) of freight, whereas rigid vehicles only carried 517 million tonnes (37%) of freight.¹⁴

Figure 3-3 Goods lifted by GB-registered HGVs, by type of vehicle



Source: Domestic Road Freight Statistics, United Kingdom: 2018, Department of Transport

- 3.7 In 2018 the 5 most common commodity divisions (representing 64% of all goods) lifted by GB-registered HGVs in the UK were food products (20%), Metal ore and

¹³ Source: SMMT

¹⁴ Domestic Road Freight Statistics, United Kingdom: 2018, Department of Transport

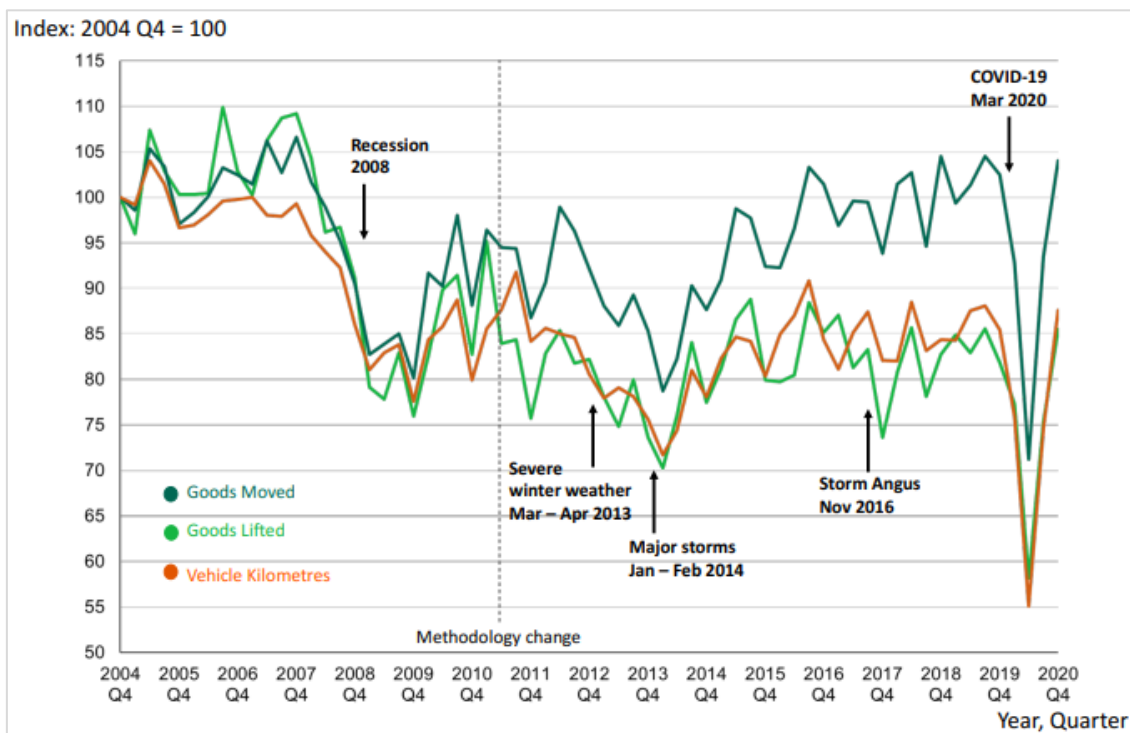
other mining and quarrying (13%), Waste related products (11%), Groupage (10%) and Glass, cement and other non-metallic mineral products (10%).¹⁵

Covid-19 Effects on the HGV sector

Overview

- 3.8 The pandemic caused disruption at all levels of the vehicle sales market, particularly in 2020, where production lines were halted and lockdown rules affected the global supply chain. Skills shortages have been noticed in almost every field, but have been particularly noticeable amongst HGV drivers, leading to government initiatives to bring more people into the field. This driver shortage has had an impact on the demand of HGV vehicles.¹⁶
- 3.9 As with all other modes of transport, the HGV sector was significantly impacted in the aftermath of the March 2020 Covid-19 restrictions as large sections of the economy were shut down. However, by 2020 Q4 domestic road freight had returned to pre-pandemic levels (see **Figure 3-4**).

Figure 3-4 Impact of coronavirus (Covid-19) on quarterly data trends



Source: Domestic Road Freight Statistics, United Kingdom: 2020, Department of Transport

- 3.10 According to the Transport Exchange Group,¹⁷ the cost of road haulage in January 2022 was up by 15% compared to January 2021 as a result of issues in the wider economy amid recent inflation.

¹⁵ Domestic Road Freight Statistics, United Kingdom: 2018, Department of Transport

¹⁶ Business Live <https://www.business-live.co.uk/ports-logistics/hgv-crisis-set-worsen-amid-22146925>

¹⁷ Transport Exchange Group, February 2022 <https://transportexchange.com/road-transport-price-index/january-22/>

Review of Covid-19 impacts on vehicle sales market

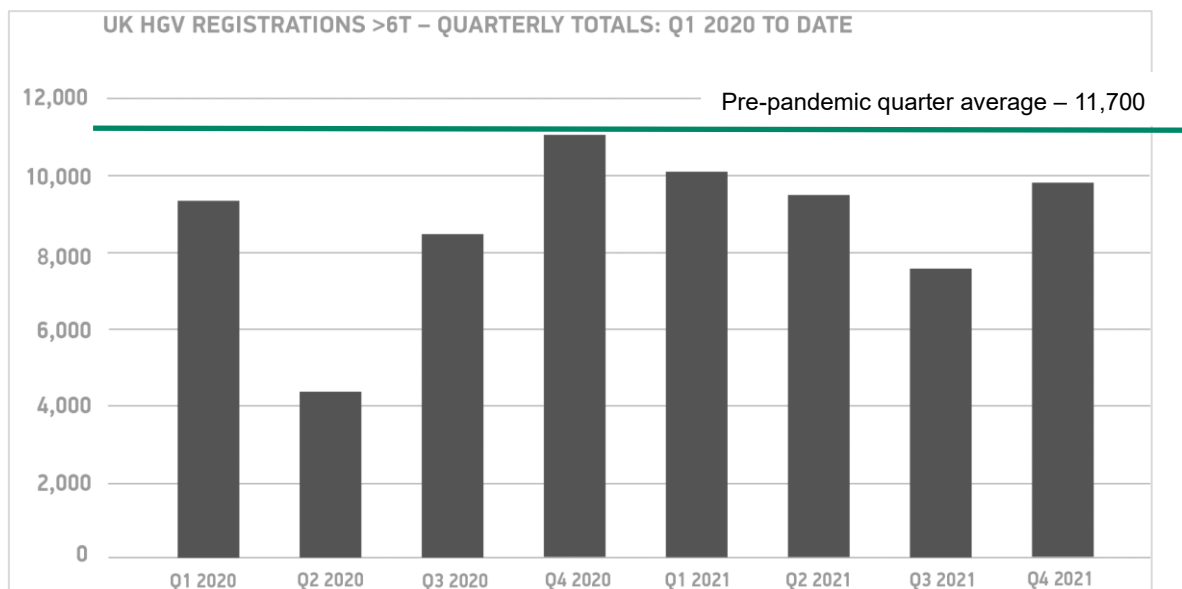
Overview

3.11 The key changes in the HGV sales market during the pandemic are discussed below.

Vehicle Registrations

3.12 Data produced by SMMT shows that despite an initial decrease in HGV registrations, particularly noticeable in quarter two of 2020, HGV registrations are on the rise, but still not at the same levels from the years prior to the pandemic. For example, in the year and a half prior to the pandemic (Q4 2018 – Q1 2020), average registrations per month were around 11,700 per quarter, compared to an average of around 8,500 per quarter since pandemic (Q2 2020 – Q3 2021). In this time, no quarter has reached the same levels as the pre-pandemic quarter average. **Figure 3-5** shows the UK HGV registrations by quarter since Q4 2017.

Figure 3-5 UK HGV Registrations Q1 2020 – Q4 2021

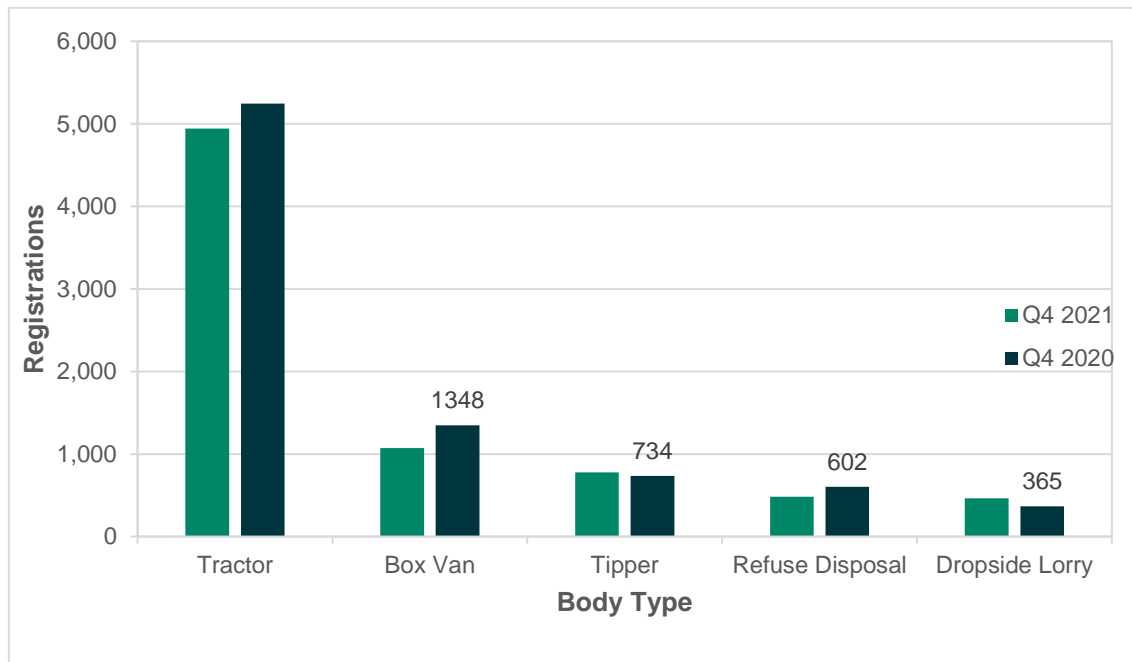


Source: SMMT

- 3.13 Some 37,163 units were registered last year, 57.1% of which were rigids, while 42.9% were articulated trucks, in line with market splits seen in previous years, though both segments grew with 2,239 more rigids (+11.8%) and 2,006 more articles (+14.4%) registered than 2020.¹⁸
- 3.14 As construction began to recover during the year, tipper demand rose by 32.5% to 3,808 units. Tractor units were the most popular type of HGV, with 15,679 units (+16.0%) representing a market share of 42.1%, while refuse trucks increased by 2.0% to 2,067 units between 2020 and 2021, despite a drop in Q4 2021 on the previous years.¹⁹

¹⁸ <https://www.smm.co.uk/2022/02/hgv-market-accelerates-12-9-in-2021-to-defy-supply-challenge/>

¹⁹ <https://www.smm.co.uk/2022/02/hgv-market-accelerates-12-9-in-2021-to-defy-supply-challenge/>

Figure 3-6 Top 5 Body Types

Source: <https://www.smmr.co.uk/2022/02/hgv-market-accelerates-12-9-in-2021-to-defy-supply-challenge/>

Vehicle Availability

- 3.15 To enhance understanding of HGV availability in the current market, three major vehicle manufacturers and dealerships were consulted. The three companies chosen represent around 60% of the new truck market in 2021. Their responses provide an insight into the availability of new and used HGVs.

Commercial Dealership (1) Manchester – 11th February 2022

Consultation with a dealership in Greater Manchester outlined the significant issues of vehicle supply and availability of new HGVs. Lead times for certain models were approximately 8 months, 10 months, and 11 months respectively, timescales which do not include postproduction fit outs. The branch broke its sales record in 2021, however were required to close to new orders in December 2021 due to supply issues. Vehicles have been held back due in part to the semiconductor shortage, with key components such as window modulators missing. The manufacturer has also increased prices over the last year.

The used HGV sector is experiencing similar issues with availability, with all HGV types scarce, but curtainsider rigids and tractor units were identified as being particularly difficult to source. Prices were also reported to be high, with the same vehicles fetching the same price second-hand two years on from the initial sale.

Feedback suggests that the company do not expect the situation to be resolved in 2022 at the earliest.

Commercial Dealership (2), Manchester – 17th February 2022

. Lead times for new HGVs were reported to be significant, with an approximate 12 month wait for a new diesel vehicle once ordered. Certain electric models were said to be available in around 14 weeks for the chassis. But there is industry reticence to invest in HGV EVs at the moment.

Trucks were reported to be semi-built, waiting for components (primarily semiconductors). The lack of semiconductors was described as still an issue to all Auto OEMs. The wait for tractor units) was longer than rigid HGVs, due to their relative lack of complexity (rigid wait times being 6-9 months). Prices of new vehicles have risen gradually across the year mainly due to increases in the cost of energy, rubber and steel. 85% of the unladen weight of a typical truck weighing 8500kg is metal and producing steel is very energy intensive.

The availability of used HGVs is also limited, with dealers extending leases whilst new vehicles are being manufactured. This is creating a shortfall in the market and it was reported that vehicles up to 4 years old are fetching higher prices at auction than their original brand new price. The GM CAP is already playing a role in shifting demand, with Euro V vehicles often being sold abroad.

The respondent felt that the market was 2 years away from returning to 'normal' levels and as manufacturers are unable to construct vehicles at the high level that they are being ordered, the waiting list is currently growing.

Commercial Dealership (3) – 14th February 2022

Consultation with the dealership suggested that the future supply of new HGVs was uncertain and whilst there were a small number of vehicles available to sell, the delivery of further trucks from the manufacturer was uncertain.

It was stated as 'likely' that any orders placed now could not be fulfilled until 2023 and that the issues of new vehicle availability was having an impact on the used HGV sector, with owners holding on to their vehicles for longer and dealerships were unable to fulfil large fleet renewal orders.

New Vehicle Prices

- 3.16 Prices of new HGVs did not significantly change in years immediately before the pandemic. In 2018, the cost of an 18-tonne rigid vehicle was £66.7k, in 2019 and 2020 the price was £67.9k, showing only a 1.8% price increase over 2 years. A similar increase of 1.7% can be seen in 44-tonne artic vehicles (£83.2k rising to £84.6k).²⁰
- 3.17 However, consultation with manufacturers and dealers, shown in the boxes above, has demonstrated that the prices of new vehicles has increased in 2021 and 2022 as scarcity and cost of parts and materials has risen.²¹

Second-hand Vehicle Prices

- 3.18 In contrast, the second-hand market has seen price increases much larger than that of new vehicles. In the article *Continuing strong demand predicted to lead to a record year for used HGV prices*²², Commercial Fleet notes positive feedback from dealers, suggesting strong retail appetite and conditions and notes that the 58% increase in average selling price of all heavy goods vehicles is record breaking. The article notes that Cox Automotive states that a significant contributing factor to this is the high demand for Euro 6 HGVs, with a 42% year on year increase in price on these vehicles from 2020 to 2021. Manheim expect the price difference between Euro 5 and Euro 6 to continue to grow from the current value of £9,000.
- 3.19 Second-hand dealers are reflecting the demand for vehicles to be Clean Air Zone (based on national criteria as applied in local zones across the country) and Ultra Low Emission Zone compliant as a selling point by advertising this on their websites.

Review of Vulnerability in responding to GM CAP

- 3.20 Covid-19 has had an impact on the HGV sector. The national lockdowns and Covid-19 restrictions have resulted in a reduced availability of new HGVs to the markets. This has increased the market purchase price of new vehicles and at the same time reduced the availability of newer second-hand vehicles to the market. This has in turn pushed the price of available second-hand HGVs to a level close to that of new vehicles. Most second-hand vehicles coming to the market already have buyers lined up.
- 3.21 There has been a drop in demand for Euro V vehicles, probably due to the GM CAP, with high proportions of Euro V HGVs coming to the markets being sold abroad.
- 3.22 This section reviews the original vulnerability assessment of the HGV sector undertaken in 2019 and assesses how the Covid-19 pandemic has impacted vulnerability to the GM CAP.

²⁰ Motor Transport, MTR_141220_028-030.indd (motortransport.co.uk)

²¹ <https://www.commercialfleet.org/fleet-management/best-practices/used-values-soar-as-van-and-truck-shortages-continue>

²² <https://www.coxautoinc.eu/content-hub/fuel/continuing-strong-demand-predicted-to-lead-to-a-record-year-for-used-hgv-prices/>
Continuing strong demand predicted to lead to a record year for used HGV prices (September 2021)

Market Segment	Pre Covid-19 – Responding to GM CAP	Covid-19 Impact	Impact on Responding to GM CAP (Post Covid-19)
HGV	<p>Medium impact</p> <p>Significant cost to upgrade if existing vehicles are non-compliant.</p> <p>Period for leased vehicles average 4 years, high proportion of these would already be compliant.</p> <p>Likely less impact to larger haulage companies and higher impact on smaller companies as fleet more likely second-hand or not be renewed as quickly.</p> <p>GM CAP having an influence on the second-hand sales market with high proportion of Euro V class HGVs being sold abroad.</p>	<p>High impact likely.</p> <p>A reduction in HGV movements initially during the first national lockdown had recovered to pre-pandemic levels by Q4 2020.</p> <p>Cost of road haulage has increased 15% from Jan 2021 to Jan 2022, due to current economic climate, partially due to Covid-19 pandemic.</p> <p>Driver shortages sector wide.</p> <p>HGV demand for new vehicles exceeds supply resulting in up to 12 months lead times. Caused by supply chain issues and part shortages.</p> <p>Lack of new vehicle supply has resulted in second-hand HGV prices significantly increasing, as there is reduced vehicle rotation.</p>	<p>Medium impact</p> <p>New HGVs experiencing increased lead times, resulting in second-hand vehicle being used for increased length of time.</p> <p>Lack of second-hand vehicles is resulting in prices of second-hand HGVs exceeding cost of new HGVs in some cases.</p>

4. Conclusion

Summary

4.1 This note has sought to address the following key considerations:

- A review of the current position of the HGV fleet;
- Report on the impact of Covid-19 in terms of changes to travel behaviour within GM, including changing transport trends and economic trends as a result of the Covid-19 pandemic;
- Specific Covid-19 pandemic impacts on this vehicle type (HGVs); and
- Comment on the extent to which those changes may be considered material to the success of the GM CAP given the vulnerability of the vehicle type (HGVs) to meet GM CAP compliance.

4.2 HGVs account for around 1.5% of the total vehicle fleet in GM.

4.3 Based on 2019 data, it is estimated there were approximately 71,000 HGVs serving GM, with 60% of those being compliant.

4.4 Vehicle fleets are tending to get larger, however the sector is still dominated by SMEs, including owner-drivers who drive and operate their own vehicle.

4.5 The age profile of HGV fleets has not significantly varied since 2000, with between 25%-30% of the national HGV fleet newer than 3 years old.

4.6 Vehicle lifespans vary; companies operating larger fleets, such as those in the food and retail sectors, typically replacing vehicles more frequently whilst longer vehicle lifespans are associated with sectors such as waste and removals, the main factors are the margins on product being moved or the level of intensity that a vehicle is used. The largest sector, General Haulage, makes up 29.1% of the GM market and includes over 2,000 vehicles affected by the GM CAP.

4.7 Whilst there was a significant impact in 2020, the overall volume and usage of HGVs has generally returned to pre-pandemic levels.

4.8 The HGV sector is experiencing significant issues in relation to demand and supply of new vehicles. HGV production has been hampered by the shortages in components, particularly semiconductors. This shortage has impacted on the ability of manufacturers to meet the increased demand as the economy grows and the requirement to 'catchup' with lower production in Q2 2020. The issue is so significant that some major manufacturers are not taking new orders for this year.

4.9 Significant price increases have been observed, particularly in the second-hand compliant market. For new vehicles, the more significant issue is availability and lead times as noted above.

4.10 Whilst the situation is fluid, responses from vehicle manufacturers and dealerships suggest that the issue will not be resolved until 2023. This means that higher prices for new and used vehicles and a lack of availability of HGVs are likely to continue throughout 2022.

Appendix A – List of Documents

This Appendix provides a list of documents and data sources used to inform this report.

Document Title	Date	Description	Relevance to GM CAP
Chapter 1			
Mayor of Greater Manchester writes to Government reiterating call for non-charging Clean Air Zone	May 2022	Announcement, provide background on current status of GM CAP https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/news/mayor-of-greater-manchester-writes-to-government-reiterating-city-region-s-call-for-non-charging-clean-air-plan/	Current Status of GM CAP
GM CAP Technical Documents (various)	Various	All available at Technical Documents Clean Air Greater Manchester (cleanairgm.com) https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Published Technical Reports for GM CAP
Chapter 2			
Domestic Road Freight Statistics	2020	HGV industry statistics - Department for Transport	Understand UK HGVs industry statistics
Table VEH0503 Licensed heavy goods vehicles at the end of the year by propulsion	May 2021	Department for Transport Statistics - Licensed heavy goods vehicles at the end of the year by propulsion	Understand UK HGVs Statistics
Table VEH0506 Licensed heavy goods vehicles at the end of the year by gross vehicle weight (tonnes)	May 2021	Department for Transport Statistics - Licensed heavy goods vehicles at the end of the year by gross vehicle weight (tonnes)	Understand UK HGVs Statistics
HGV data (SMMT)	various	Based on size of market served by HGV (population served). GM equates to 4.2% of UK population, allocation of circa 500,000 HGVs based in UK	To understand the HGV market in the GM
Table VEH0507 Licensed heavy goods vehicles at the end of the year by number of years since first registration,	May 2021	The age profile of HGV fleets has not significantly varied since 2000, with between 25%-30% of the national HGV fleet newer than 3 years old	Understand UK HGVs Statistics
AECOM Specialised Goods Vehicle Surveys	Various	Specialised Goods Vehicle Count Results	Provides background details of the HGV sector 2019 & 2020
All vehicles (VEH01)	Jan 2022	Data on all licensed and registered vehicles, produced by Department for Transport.	Provided the proportion of Vehicle Types Registered by Area, 2022

Air Quality Modelling Report: with impacts of Covid-19 and Post Consultation Package Measures	2021	https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	GM CAP Technical Report
GMP ANPR Data analysis	Various	Data on average HGV age	Understand GM HGVs average age
Chapter 3			
HGV SMMT report	2019	HGV market pre-pandemic has remained largely constant over the last 20 years, with a 2% reduction in vehicle numbers overall since 2000	Understand pre-pandemic HGV market
HGV Registrations - SMMT	2019	HGV Registrations over 10 years https://www.smmt.co.uk/vehicle-data/heavy-goods-vehicle-registrations/	To understand the UK HGV registration trend
Domestic Road Freight Statistics - DfT	2018	Goods lifted by GB-registered HGVs.	To understand the UK HGV types and commodity divisions
HGV crisis set to worsen amid mass exodus of drivers over conditions	Nov 2021	This driver shortage has had an impact on the demand of HGV vehicles https://www.business-live.co.uk/ports-logistics/hgv-crisis-set-worsen-amid-22146925	Impact of driver shortage on the demand of HGV market
January '22 Highest ever price-per-mile for January: TEG Road Transport Price Index up 15% on last January	Jan 2022	the cost of road haulage in January 2022 was up by 15% compared to January 2021 as a result of issues in the wider economy amid recent inflation. https://transportexchange.co.uk/road-transport-price-index/january-22/	Cost of road haulage as a result of inflation
HGV market accelerates 12.9% in 2021 to defy supply challenge - SMMT	Feb 2022	Provide recent HGV registrations post-covid. https://www.smmt.co.uk/2022/02/hgv-market-accelerates-12-9-in-2021-to-defy-supply-challenge/	Information on post-covid HGV market
Annual cost tables history - MotorTransport	Dec 2020	Prices of new HGVs did not significantly change in years immediately before the pandemic. In 2018, the cost of an 18-tonne rigid vehicle was £66.7k, in 2019 and 2020 the price was £67.9k, showing only a 1.8% price increase over 2 years. https://motortransport.co.uk/annual-cost-tables-history/	Information about prices of new HGVs
Used values soar as van and truck shortages continue	July 2021	The prices of new vehicles has increased in 2021 and 2022 as scarcity and cost of parts and materials has risen https://www.commercialfleet.org/fleet-management/best-practices/used-values-soar-as-van-and-truck-shortages-continue	Information on increased price of vehicles
Continuing strong demand predicted to lead to a record year for used HGV prices	Sept 2021	The second-hand HGV market has seen price increases much larger than that of new vehicles. https://www.coxautoinc.eu/content-hub/fuel/continuing-strong-demand-predicted-to-lead-to-a-record-year-for-used-hgv-prices/	Provide information on second-hand HGV market
Chapter 4			
		(No new Sources in Chapter 4)	

Appendix A			
		(No new Sources in Appendix A)	
Appendix B			
Coronavirus (Covid-19) UK Government Dashboard	Oct 2020	https://coronavirus.data.gov.uk/	Background of Covid Timeline
"Greater Manchester's Covid-19 Management Plan: how we control outbreaks"	2022	https://greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/coronavirus/Covid-19-management-plan/	Background of Covid Timeline
"Prime Minister announces new local COVID Alert Levels"	Oct 2020	https://www.gov.uk/government/news/prime-minister-announces-new-local-covid-alert-levels	Background of Covid Timeline
TfGM's C2 Database	various	Traffic flow data was extracted and analysed from TfGM's C2 Database https://tfgmc2.drakewell.com/multinodemap.asp	Information on local traffic impacts
"Budget 2021: Fuel duty rise axed as petrol prices hit record highs"	Oct 2021	Fuel Prices Increase: https://www.standard.co.uk/news/politics/budget-2021-fuel-duty-rise-axed-petrol-prices-record-highs-b962832.html	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"GDP monthly estimate, UK : December 2021"	Dec 2021	GDP information https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"Average weekly earnings in Great Britain: February 2022"	Dec 2021	Growth in average total pay (including bonuses) of 4.3% and growth in regular pay (excluding bonuses) of 3.7% among employees was seen in October to December 2021 https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/averageweeklyearningsingreatbritain/february2022	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"UK economy latest"	Dec 2022	Information on Goods import and exports https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/economicoutputandproductivity/output/articles/ukeconomylatest/2021-01-25#output	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"Cities Outlook 2022"	Jan 2022	Change in pub and restaurant sales in City Centres and Suburbs. Weekday footfall in Birmingham, Manchester and London https://www.centreforcities.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/01/Cities-Outlook-2022-2.pdf	Information on Economic Related Impacts

Appendix B – Review of COVID Impacts

Overview

- B.1 Travel behaviour and the economy have been impacted by the Covid-19 pandemic and have resulted in changes in the way that people travel and the way businesses operate. In this chapter we will assess some of the key data findings found throughout the period to better understand the levels of impact on transport and travel generally.

COVID Timeline

- B.2 In January 2020, Covid-19 first appeared in the UK. By 30th November 2020, there were an estimated total of 1.6 million people testing positive to the virus in the UK with 58,24523 cases resulting in deaths.²⁴
- B.3 As stated within the GMCA Covid-19 Management Plan Executive Summary, GM had more than 16,000 confirmed cases and nearly 2,800 people died during the first four months of the Covid-19 pandemic.²⁵
- B.4 In Summer 2020, North West England was one of the worst affected areas by the pandemic with GM placed under additional restrictions on 31st July 2020. Throughout 2020, GM continued to experience a disproportionate impact to the rest of the UK from these additional restrictions, such as the three-tier system for lockdowns across England. This three-tiered system was first announced by the Government in October 2020 to '*simplify and standardise local rules*'.²⁶
- B.5 On 5th November 2020, the Government imposed a second national lockdown with restrictions on continued business activity in England. These restrictions were in place between 5th November and 2nd December 2020, followed by a return to 3 Tier system restrictions.
- B.6 On 19th December 2020 the Government introduced an additional 4th Tier, with lockdown measures beginning in London and the South East, after having identified the Alpha (Kent) variant, coming into effect on 21st December 2020 until a third nationwide lockdown was re-introduced on 6th January 2021.
- B.7 March 2021 saw Step 1 of the Government's roadmap being introduced, with schools reopening and outdoor gatherings being allowed with the proviso of staying local. April 2021 saw Step 2 of the roadmap allowing limited indoor contact, businesses such as hairdressers to reopen and outdoor hospitality. Step 3 came into effect in May 2021, allowing indoor meetings limited to 6 people and 10,000 people for large sport stadiums. Step 4, on 19th July 2021, saw the remaining venues such as nightclubs reopen, and the removal of most other restrictions.
- B.8 With the discovery of the Omicron variant, Plan B measures (face coverings indoors and use of Covid Passes at specific settings such as nightclubs), which

²³ UK deaths is based on deaths within 28 days of a positive test and does not include excessive deaths.

²⁴ Coronavirus (COVID-19) UK Government Dashboard <https://coronavirus.data.gov.uk/> (accessed 01/10/20)

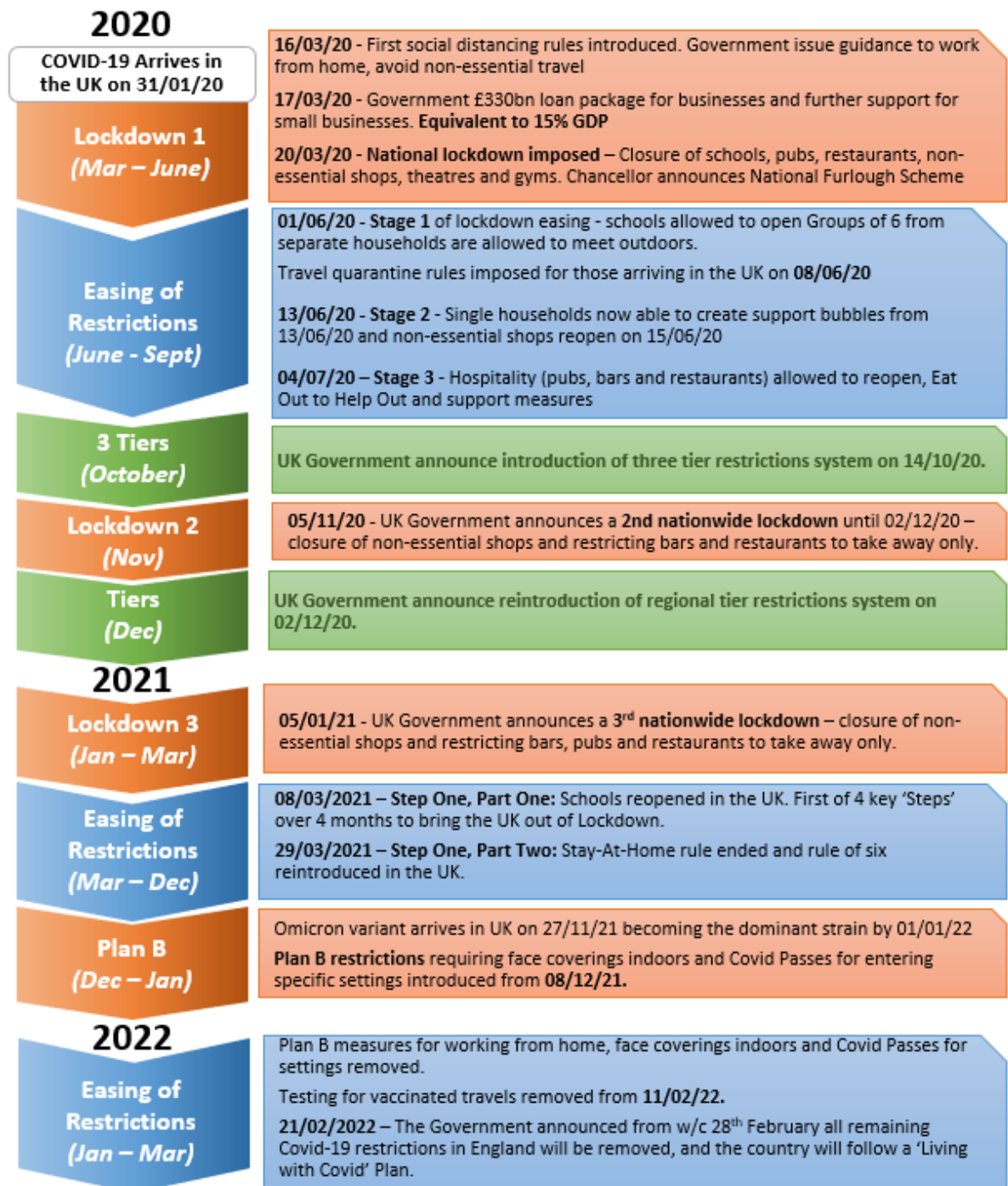
²⁵ COVID-19 Management Plan – Executive Summary (GMCA) <https://greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/coronavirus/COVID-19-management-plan/>

²⁶ Prime Minister announces new local Covid Alert Levels - <https://www.gov.uk/government/news/prime-minister-announces-new-local-covid-alert-levels>

also recommended working from home where possible, were implemented from 8th December 2021 to 27th January 2022.

- B.9 A summary of the key Covid-19 events and Government responses has been captured in **Figure B-1**.

Figure B-1 Covid-19 Timeline January 2020 to March 2022



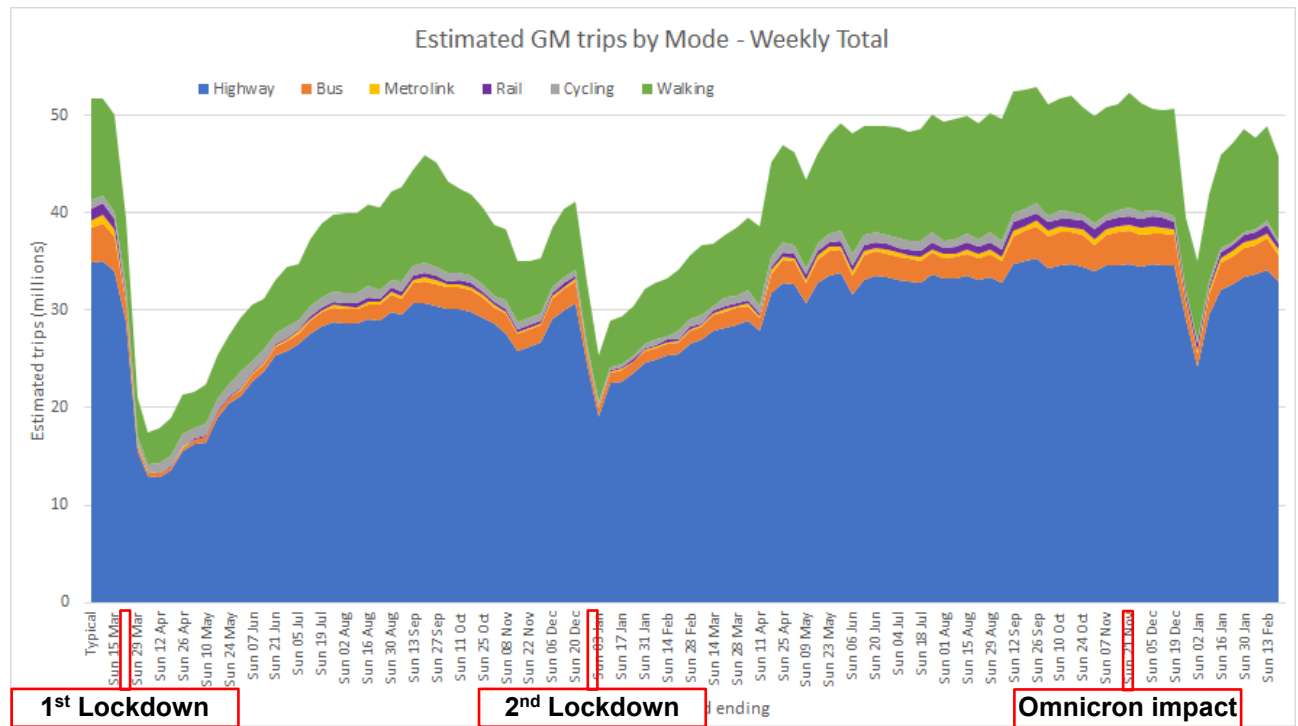
- B.10 The Covid-19 pandemic has had a transformative global impact to health, businesses, the economy, and way we live and interact with one another.
- B.11 At the time of the production of this note in March 2022, the UK appears to be exiting the pandemic. Case numbers are stabilising, death and in-patient numbers

remain low, reflecting the positive impact of a successful vaccine programme rollout.

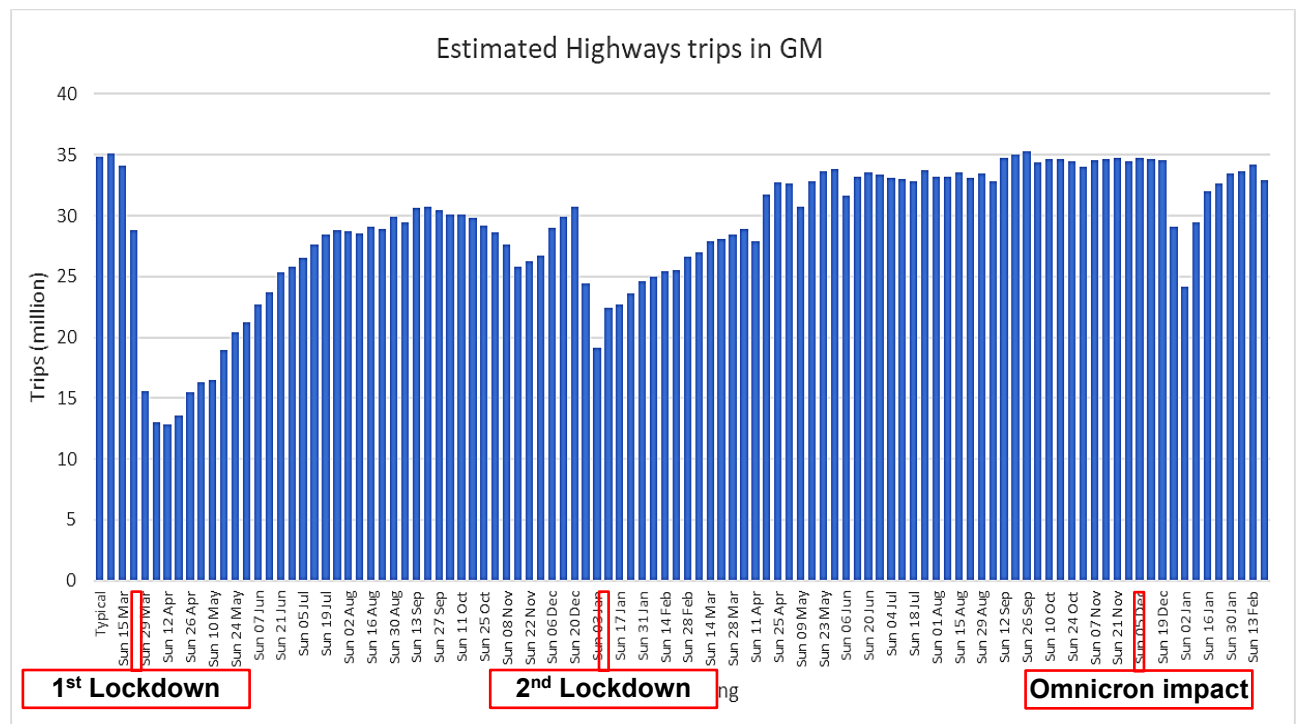
- B.12 However, emerging evidence gathered over the course of 2020 and 2021 has shown that there have been substantial changes to the economy, travel patterns and our behaviours. These changes have been driven by Government policy in the short term, however some of the behaviours adopted during Government lockdowns may continue as restrictions ease. In addition to this, economic impacts following the recent easing of restrictions have resulted in impacts which can be seen locally, nationally and globally within the economy.

Covid-19 Impacts on Travel Behaviour

- B.13 Detailed analysis has been undertaken on the impacts of Covid-19 on travel demand within GM to compare 'pre-pandemic' and 'during pandemic' travel levels within GM.
- B.14 As shown in **Figure B-1**, there are a number of Government interventions which have had an impact on traffic levels (for all modes of transport). These include:
- Government guidance issued on 16th March 2020 to work from home 'where possible';
 - Closure of all UK schools to children, apart from those who have key worker guardians on 20th March 2020;
 - Closure of the hospitality and leisure sector on the 20th March 2020 including pubs, bars, restaurants, gyms, theatres etc.;
 - Re-opening of schools to all children in September 2020 alongside the UK Government encouraging workers to return to the office;
 - Implementation and extension of the Government Tiered restrictions;
 - Return to lockdown conditions on 5th November 2020, 2nd December 2020 and 6th January 2021; and
 - Hotel quarantine for travelers from high-risk countries.
- B.15 Since the beginning of the pandemic, travel patterns across the UK have significantly changed, driven by changing Government guidelines and the perception of transmission risks on certain forms of transport. An overview of the changing trends of travel behaviour by mode in Greater Manchester is provided in **Figure B-2** to **Figure B-6**; the data has been provided by TfGM. Three key dates have been flagged in each figure: the first and second national lockdowns plus the emergence of the Omicron variant.

Figure B-2 Overview of travel behaviour – All Modes

Source: TfGM

Figure B-3 Overview of travel behaviour – Highway

Source: TfGM

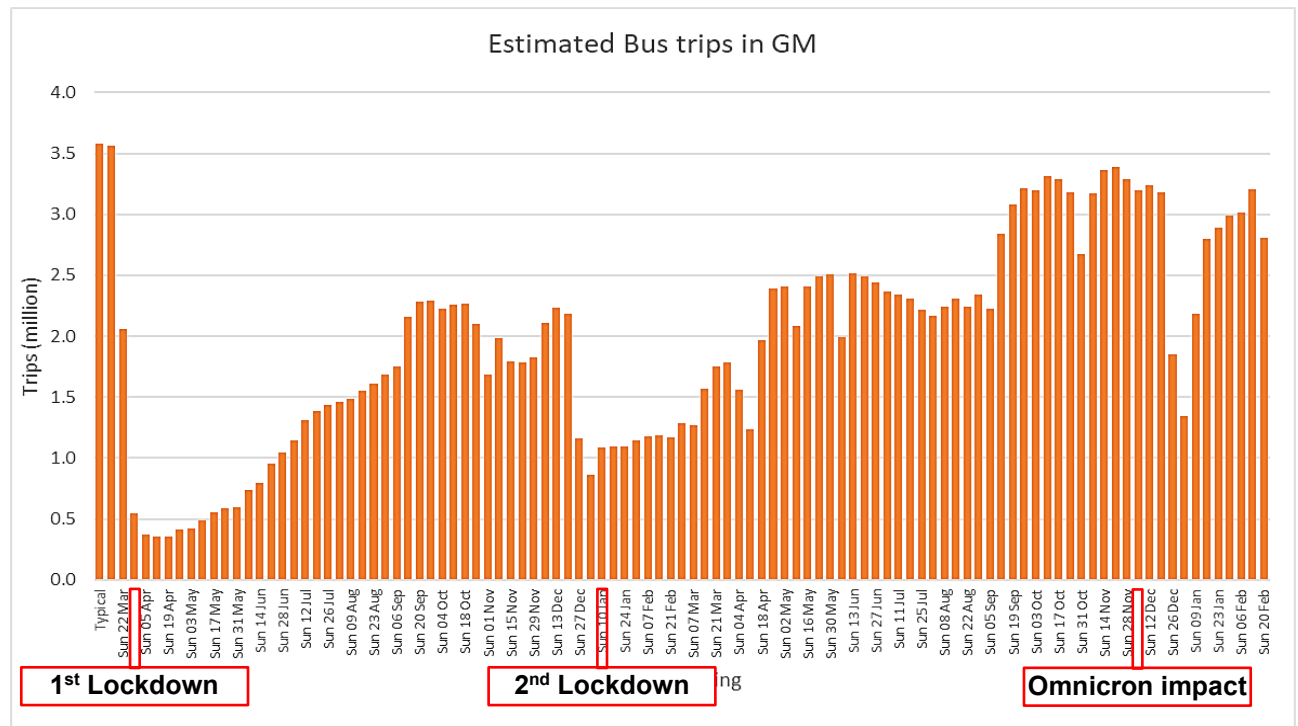
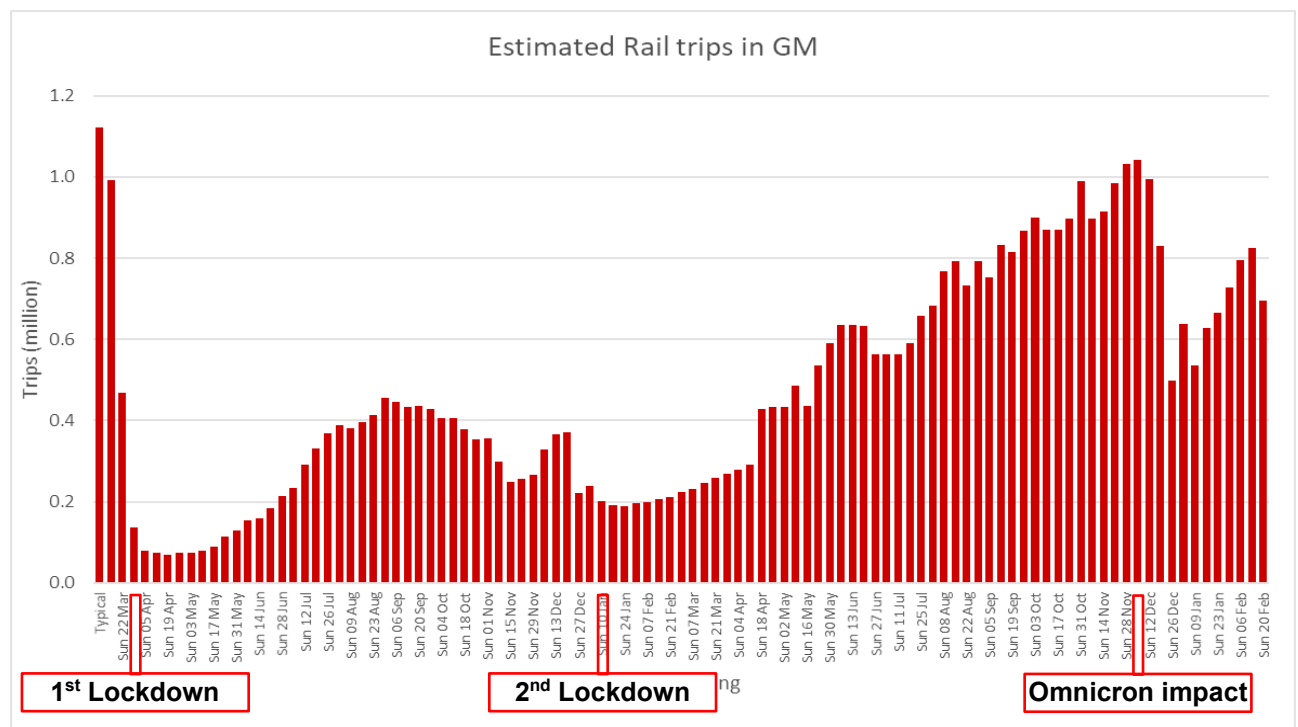
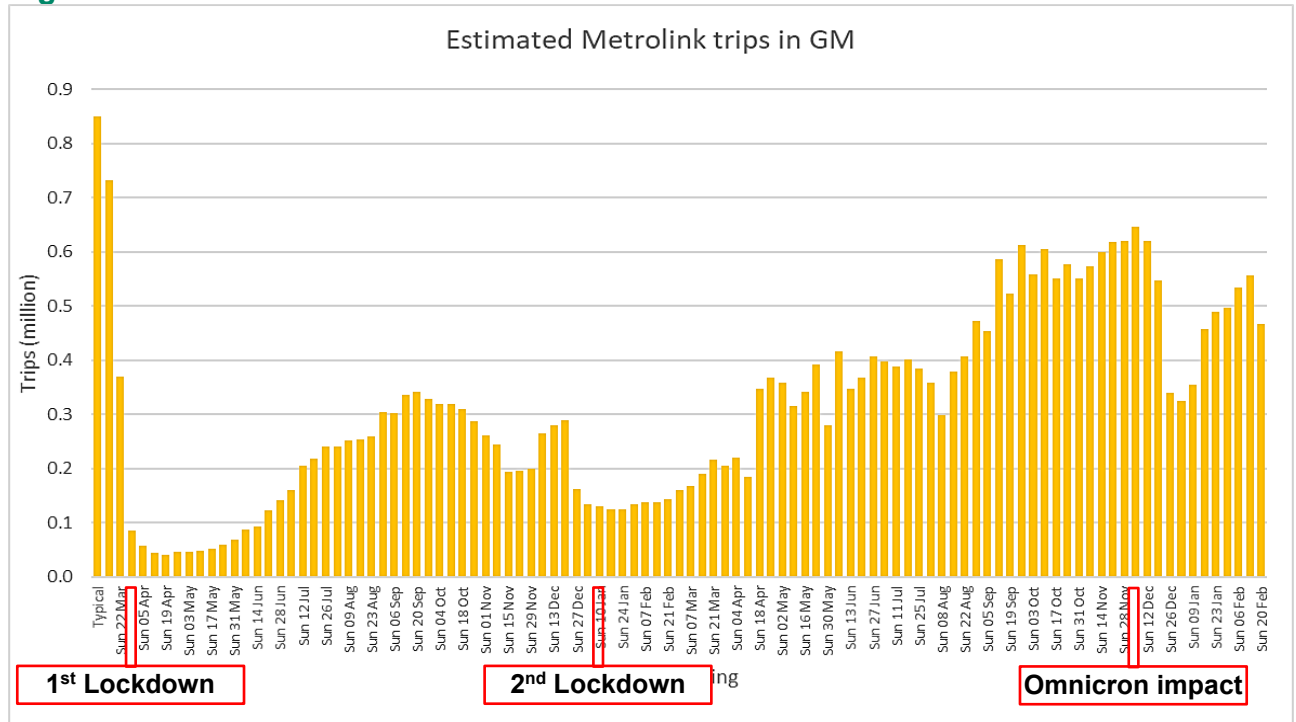
Figure B-4 Overview of travel behaviour – Bus**Figure B-5 Overview of travel behaviour – Rail**

Figure B-6 Overview of travel behaviour – Metrolink

Source: TfGM

- B.16 These figures illustrate that the impact of the pandemic has been pronounced and the extent to which pre-pandemic travel volumes have returned varies by mode. In summary, at the aggregate level across GM:
- Highway trips are close to pre-pandemic levels (approximately 95% of 'typical'); and
 - Public transport trip levels are between 60% and 75% of pre-pandemic / typical levels with bus performing more strongly than rail / Metrolink.

Local Traffic Impacts

- B.17 Further analysis was undertaken regarding traffic flows on the local highway network, in order to understand the changing highway demand levels at various points through the pandemic. This has provided an insight into how the Covid-19 related travel guidance and changing behaviours because of the pandemic have impacted travel across GM.
- B.18 This analysis has considered changing travel levels at a range of locations across Greater Manchester, to understand how traffic flows have changed on the following:
- Roads near to the Regional Centre;
 - Key radial routes;
 - Roads adjacent to local centres within GM; and
 - Roads accessing centres of employment.
- B.19 The analysis has considered several points in time, comparing:
- September 2019 (before the pandemic);

- September 2020 (during the pandemic);
- November 2021 (during pandemic – pre Omicron); and
- January 2022 (most recent, though impacted by Omicron variant).

B.20 Traffic flow data was extracted and analysed from TfGM's C2 Database²⁷. These have been reviewed and presented for the 2-way hourly link volumes, by hour, at the following locations:

- Manchester Rd (A56) / 15m South of Ashlor St, Bury (ATC);
- Princess Rd (A5103) / 100m North of Bonsall St, Hulme, Manchester (ATC);
- Washway Rd (A56) / 40m North of Hunston Rd, Sale, Trafford (ATC);
- Bury New Rd (A56) / 90m North of Kingswood Rd, Prestwich, Bury (ATC); and
- Centenary Way (A576) / 160m North of Guinness Rd, Trafford Park, Trafford (ATC)

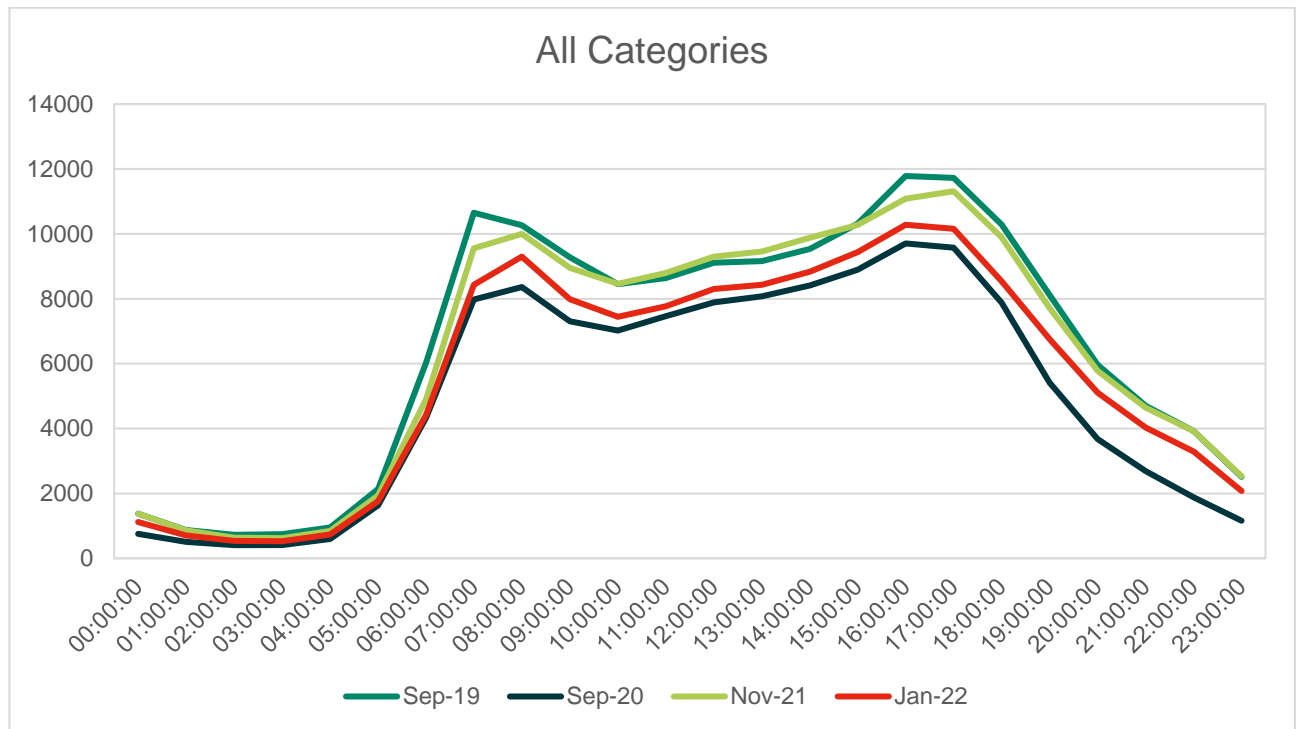
B.21 Using these specific locations around Greater Manchester the traffic behaviours at each location type can be assessed.

General Traffic Conditions

B.22 Averaging the sites identified above (see **Figure B-7**) suggests there has been a change in travel behaviour throughout the pandemic, noting the following key observations:

- The AM and PM peak periods have remained, although there is a dampening down effect on the peaks, with less variation between peak flows and interpeak flows, as the interpeak has continued to perform strongly.
- During late 2021, highway demand was almost back at pre-pandemic levels, there was then a noticeable drop again in demand as a result of the Omicron variant in December 2021.
- There has been some recovery during the peak periods, though they have not yet returned to pre pandemic levels.
- It is also noted that the earlier part of the AM peak is less strong than pre pandemic levels, with the AM peak now occurring 08:00 to 09:00, rather than 07:00 to 08:00 based on the sample of data sites.
- It also appears that the evening traffic (after 19:00) in 2022 is recovering at a slightly faster rate than the daytime traffic flows. This returned to pre-pandemic levels in November 2021 however, there has been a slight drop again in 2022, although it has been less impacted than other times of day. During the 2020 restrictions, the evening economy was significantly restricted by the Covid-19 restrictions in place at the time.

²⁷ <https://tfgmc2.drakewell.com/multinodemap.asp>

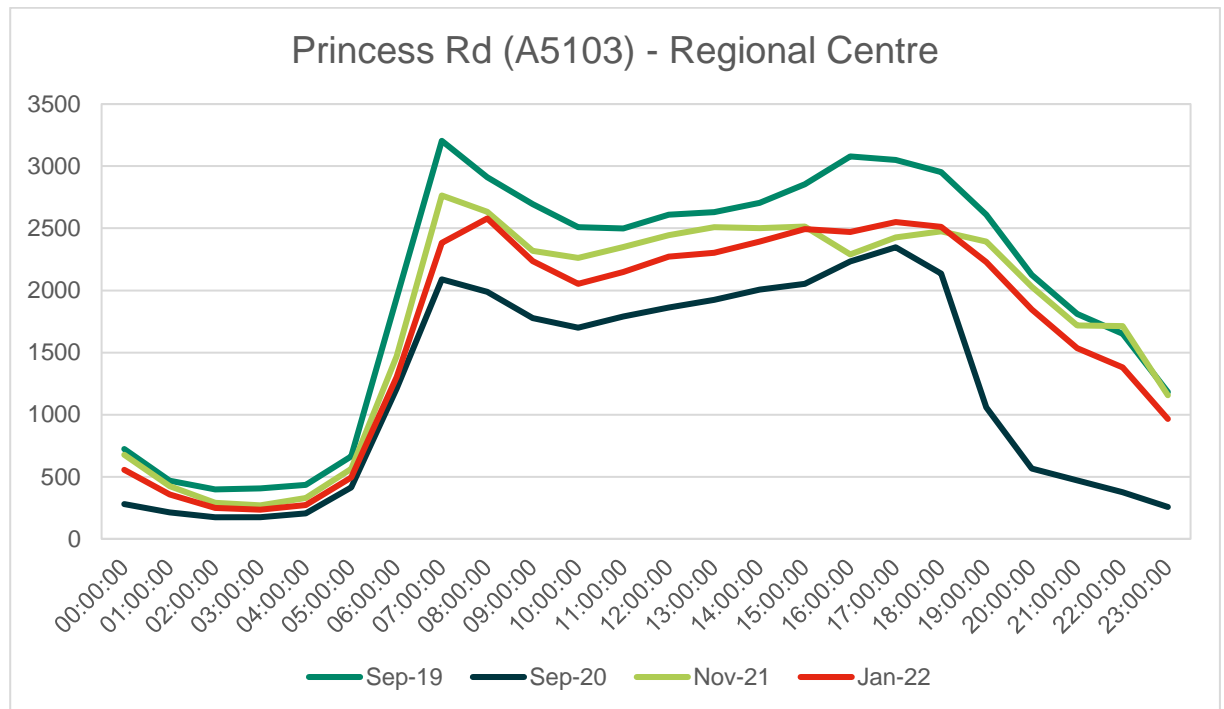
Figure B-7 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (all areas)

Source: TfGM C2 Database

Roads adjacent to the Regional Centre

B.23 Traffic flows adjacent to the Regional Centre have been significantly impacted throughout the pandemic (see **Figure B-8**). The following key trends have been identified:

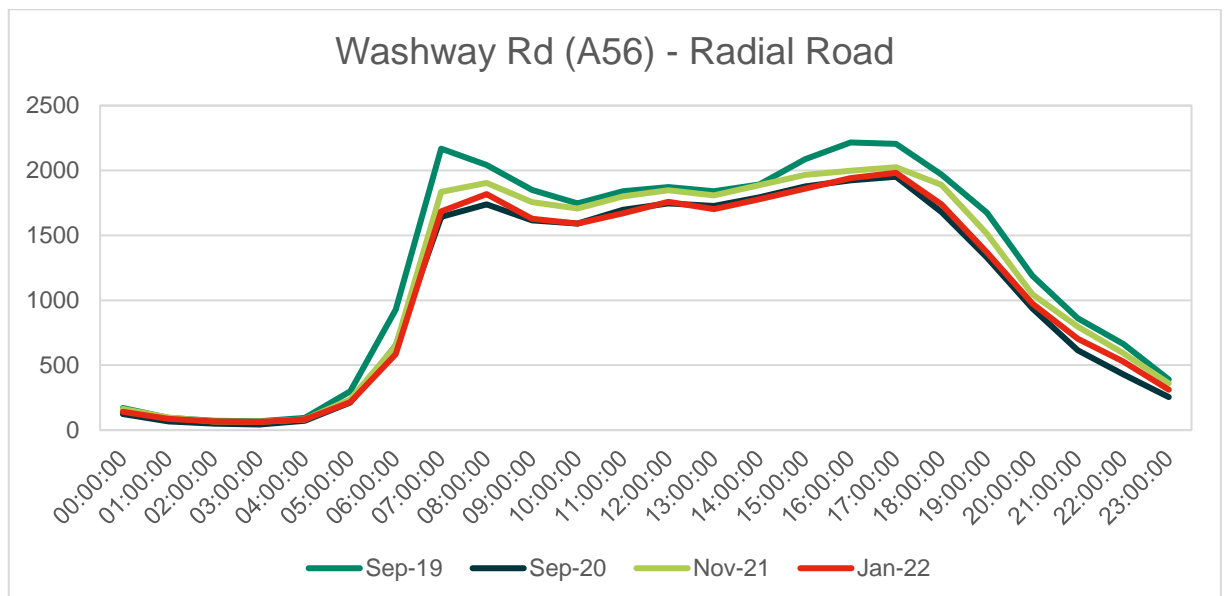
- From the data assessed, the pandemic (and associated restrictions) appears to have had the greatest impact on regional centre flows, with the largest decrease in 2020 and the slowest recovery;
- The recovery of traffic flows in the peaks is still subdued, though traffic flows during the Omicron variant have been higher than in Autumn 2020, unlike what is seen at local centres;
- In 2020, Covid-19 restrictions had a considerable impact on demand for travel relating to the Regional Centre, with heavy restrictions placed on sectors such as leisure, tourism, and the night time economy. By November 2021, the easing of COVID restrictions resulted in a return of travel demand to the Regional Centre, showing considerable recovery at particular times of day, reaching close to 2019 levels. The 2022 travel demand to Mar-22 also showed a strong return of traffic during the evening periods, though the Omicron variant is likely to be keeping these slightly below pre-pandemic levels at present.
- The early part of the AM peak is now much weaker than prior to the pandemic, and the PM peak is less pronounced. In November 2021, traffic flows were slightly reduced from pre pandemic levels, with the PM peak most strongly impacted. In January 2022, the PM peak appears to be starting to recover, with a slightly later AM peak.

Figure B-8 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Regional Centre)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location N of Bonsall St, Hulme

Radial Roads

- B.24 On Washway Road in Sale (see **Figure B-9**), its proximity close to the M60, and as a key radial route, has resulted in a high level of traffic demand at various points throughout the pandemic. The site is also close to the Local Centre of Sale. Demand has remained strong at the various points assessed although, as with most other locations, the peak periods are showing slightly lower demand in 2022.

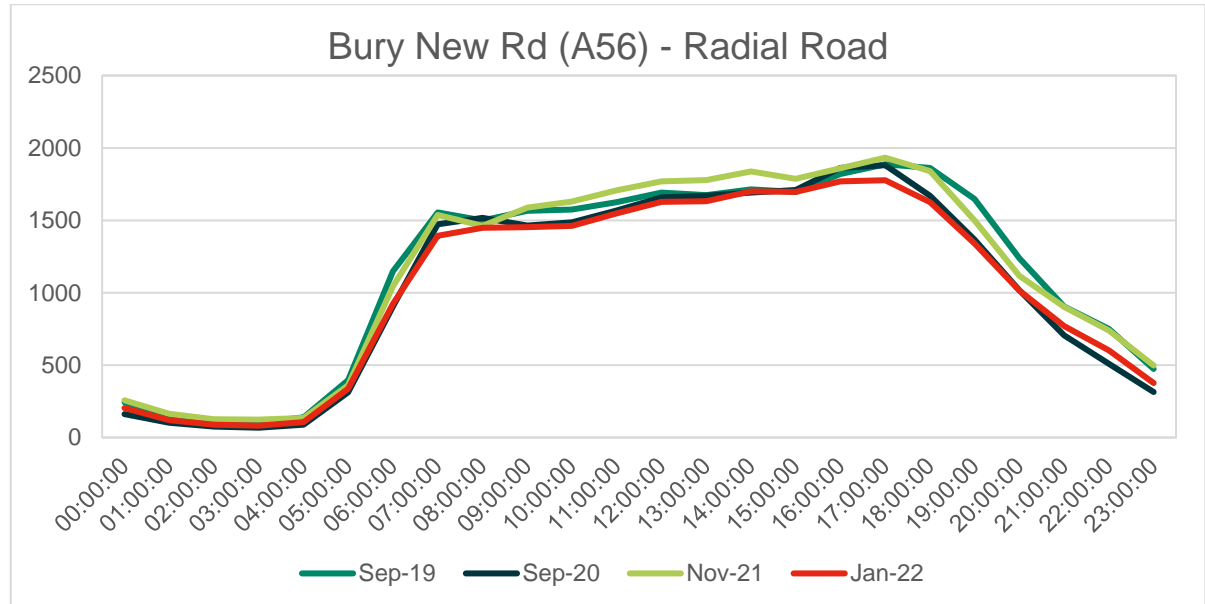
Figure B-9 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Radial Roads Outside M60)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location adjacent to Sale Local Centre

- B.25 Another key radial route north of the Regional Centre is Bury New Road (see **Figure B-10**). This site is also a key radial, though also serves local centres, such as at Prestwich. This location has shown a strong recovery of travel behaviour with travel at certain times of day exceeding pre-pandemic levels, especially during the

interpeak, both in autumn 2020, autumn 2021 and currently in 2022. The evening period has, however, shown a slower recovery.

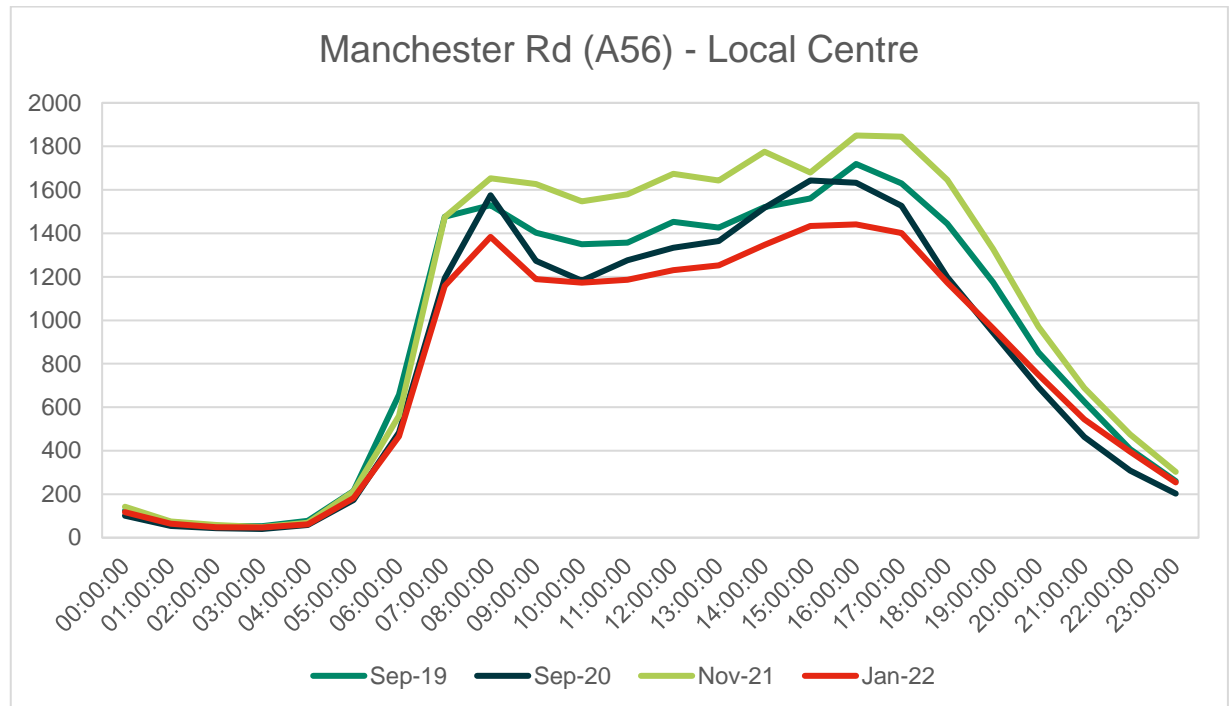
Figure B-10 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Radial Roads Inside M60)



Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location N of Kingswood Rd, Prestwich (Near to M60 J17)

Local Centres

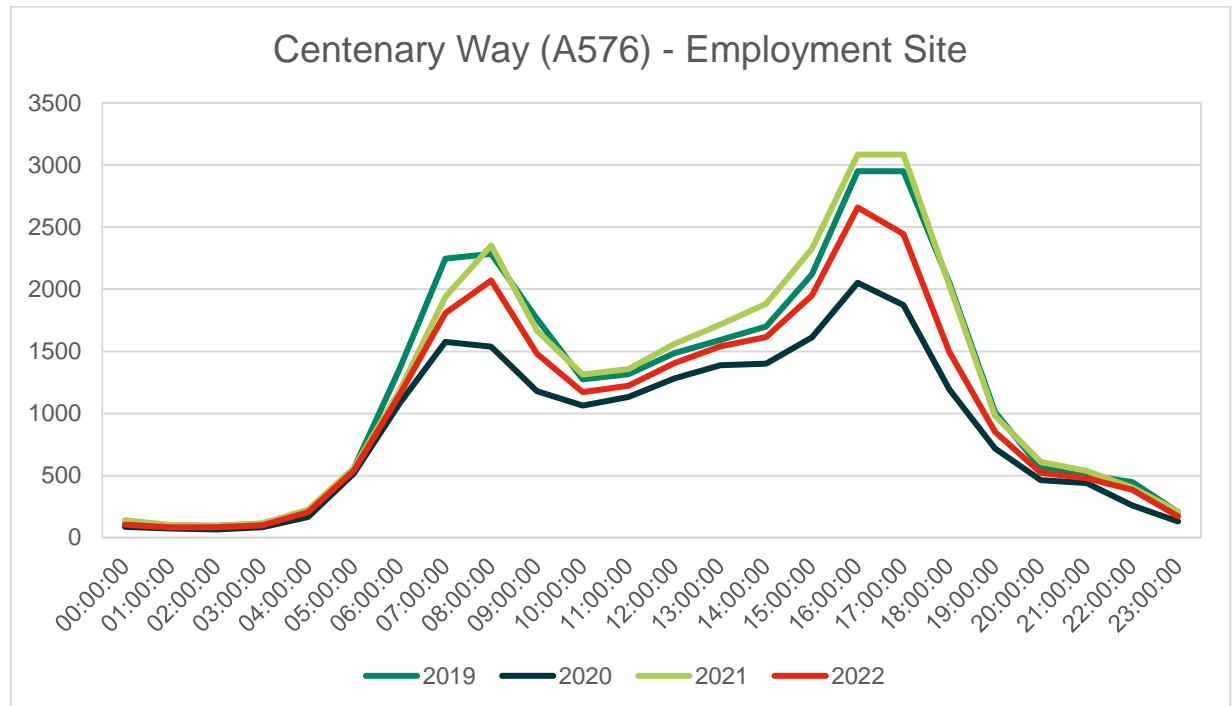
- B.26 Throughout the pandemic, as the UK Government eased travel guidance, travel demand in the vicinity of local centres, have bounced back strongly. **Figure B-11**, shows the A56 Manchester Road near Bury, which experienced a strong bounce back effect in Autumn 2020, when travel restrictions were eased. **Figure B-11** shows the later part of the AM peak and the early part of the PM peak exceeding pre pandemic levels, plus a strong interpeak and was likely an impact of more localised travel.
- B.27 By the end of 2021, demand had exceeded 2019 pre-pandemic levels by a clear margin, however this demand fell significantly in January 2022. The recent 2022 data shows the impacts of restrictions associated with the Omicron variant which has suppressed traffic flows once again.

Figure B-11 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (adjacent to Local Centres)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location S of Ashlor St, Bury

Centres of Employment (Trafford Park)

- B.28 Trafford Park is a major site of employment within Greater Manchester, with traffic flows accessing this employment area changing significantly during the pandemic.
- B.29 During the limited easing of travel restrictions in Autumn 2020, traffic flows to/from Trafford Park remained low, with limited return of higher peak time travel flows. This was possibly due to the higher levels of working from home at the time. The more recent data from November 2021 shows flows higher than pre-pandemic levels. January 2022, though impacted by the Omicron variant, shows a recovery of peak hour travel demand, close to pre pandemic levels, although the early part of the AM peak and the later part of the PM peak show a slightly weaker recovery. Interpeak travel is also similar to pre pandemic levels (See **Figure B-12**).

Figure B-12 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Centres of Employment)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location Trafford Park, Trafford

Summary

- B.30 The review of local traffic flows at various locations across GM has shown considerable variations in changing travel behaviour by location, when compared to pre-pandemic levels. This is likely to be impacted by changing travel habits, although the recent Omicron variant is likely to be impacting some travel behaviour in the 2022 data, as shown in **Figure B7**, general traffic levels in Autumn 2021 showed overall recovery in traffic flows above pre-pandemic levels.
- B.31 The change in travel behaviour by location since September 2019 is summarised in **Table B-1**.
- B.32 Considering the position in November 2021, when travel patterns were least affected, it is notable that Local Centre traffic flows were higher than previously whilst the Regional Centre flows were still much reduced. For radial routes and employment centres, overall (daily) levels were back to pre-pandemic but with some variation during the day; the morning peak being less pronounced but the interpeak higher.

Table B-1 Traffic flow changes by location type from September 2019 to January 2022

Location Type	Period	Change relative to Sep-19 (Index=100)			
		Sep-19	Sep-20	Nov-21	Jan-22
Regional Centre	AM	100	67	88	81
	IP	100	73	95	88
	PM	100	41	92	85
	Eve	100	26	95	85
	Daily	100	61	88	83
Radial inside M60	AM	100	98	98	93
	IP	100	98	105	96
	PM	100	101	102	96
	Eve	100	80	94	83
	Daily	100	92	101	91
Local Centres	AM	100	103	108	90
	IP	100	96	115	88
	PM	100	94	113	86
	Eve	100	74	110	87
	Daily	100	90	111	86
Employment Centre	AM	100	69	95	86
	IP	100	83	108	94
	PM	100	61	102	79
	Eve	100	74	99	91
	Daily	100	74	102	88

Source: TfGM C2 Database

Economic Related Impacts

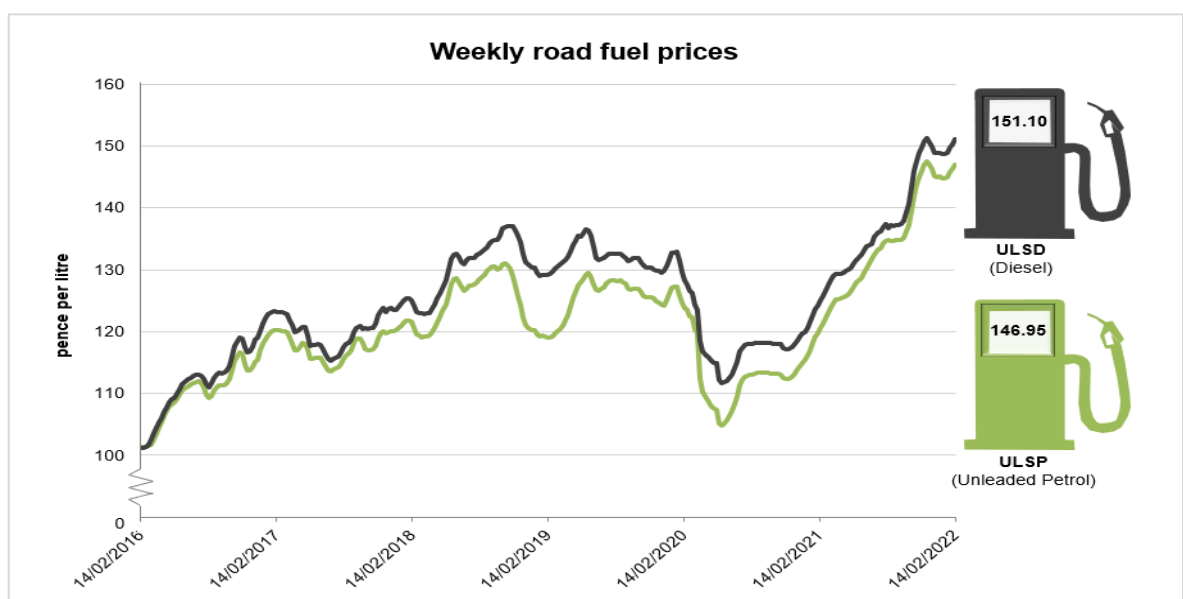
Introduction

- B.33 Changes in the economic situation are also likely to have had an influence on travel behaviour. The section below presents the trends for a range of factors impacting the economy, several of which are likely to impact the way people travel and businesses operate.

Fuel Prices

- B.34 There are six companies (four oil companies and two supermarkets) that feed into the weekly fuel price survey prepared by the government. These companies cover around 65% of the market. The change in fuel price is displayed in **Figure B-13**.
- B.35 The price of road fuel is volatile over shorter time periods, with prices regularly rising and falling. The key trends from during the pandemic are:
- At the start of 2020 prices appear to have been on the decline. There was then a significant fall in both Diesel and Unleaded Petrol in early 2020, corresponding with the first national lockdown.
 - During the second part of 2020, prices appear to be stable, with prices beginning to rise steadily throughout 2021 in line with global oil market prices.
 - There is a steep rise in prices towards the end of 2021, reaching record highs. This corresponds with a sudden rise in post-pandemic energy demand. This has triggered a tax freeze on petrol and diesel for the twelfth year in a row²⁸.
 - In September 2021 long queues and forecourt closures were witnessed, caused by panic buying throughout the country, sparking a fuel shortage in Britain.

Figure B-13 Weekly Road Fuel Prices



Source: gov.uk

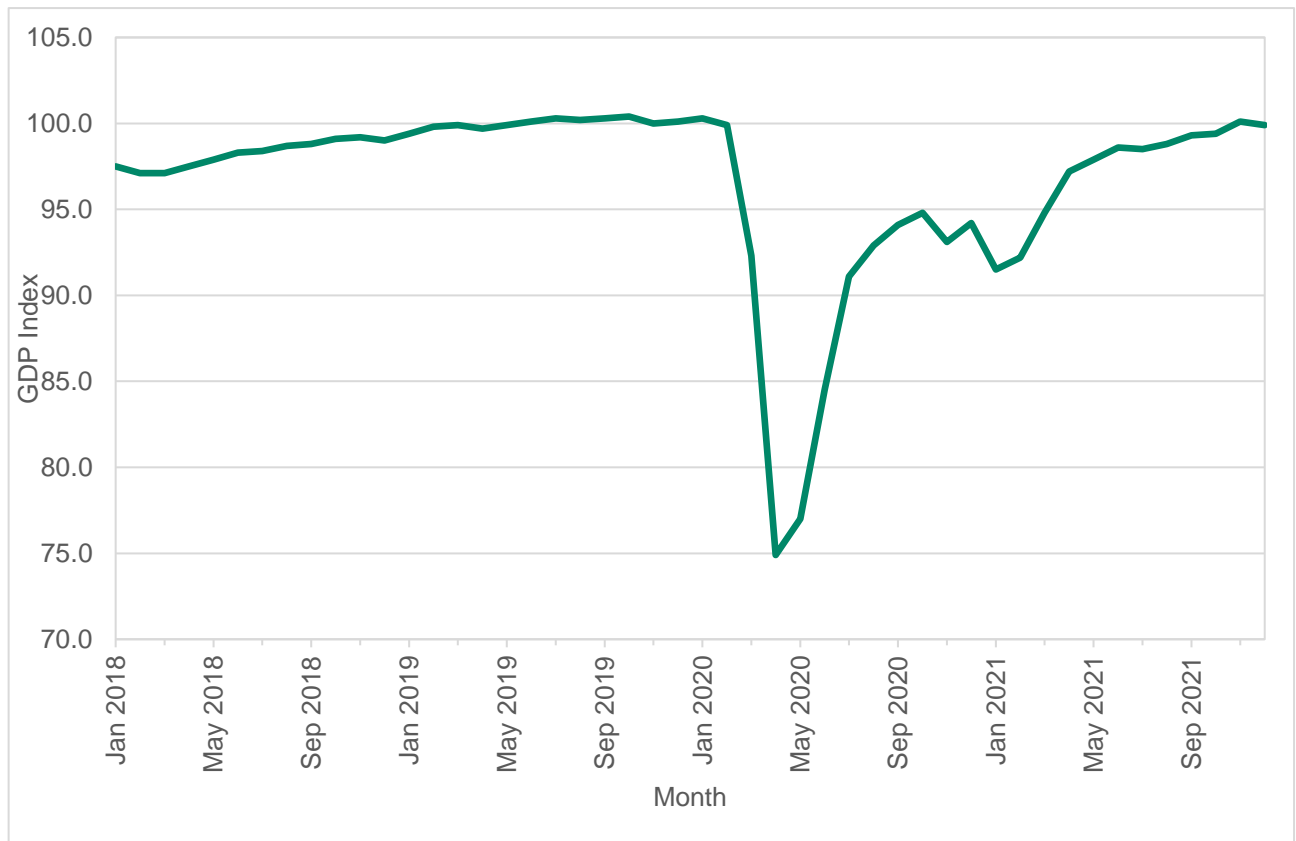
²⁸ <https://www.standard.co.uk/news/politics/budget-2021-fuel-duty-rise-axed-petrol-prices-record-highs-b962832.html>

- B.36 It was already likely that the price of fuel would remain unsteady for some time as a consequence of the impact of the pandemic and recent events in Ukraine have brought additional uncertainty to that market.

GDP

- B.37 From bulletins on the ONS data website²⁹ the end of 2021 saw a drop in GDP by 0.2%, to equal the pre pandemic level of February 2020. In December 2021 services and construction are both above pre-pandemic levels, while production remained below. Consumer facing services fell within December, driven by a fall in retail, 8.4% below pre-coronavirus levels, contributing to the GDP fall in December 2021 (see **Figure B-14**).

Figure B-14 GDP in the UK (Index, 2019 = 100)



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy³⁰

- B.38 Growth in average total pay (including bonuses) of 4.3% and growth in regular pay (excluding bonuses) of 3.7% among employees was seen in October to December 2021³¹. In real terms (adjusted for inflation), total and regular pay fell for the year by 0.1% and 0.8% respectively.

Imports and Exports

- B.39 **Figure B-15** shows the trends in UK goods imports and exports throughout 2019, 2020, and 2021. After an initial decrease in imports at the beginning of the pandemic, this appears to have recovered. There was another significant decrease at the end of 2020, however imported goods are on the increase back to

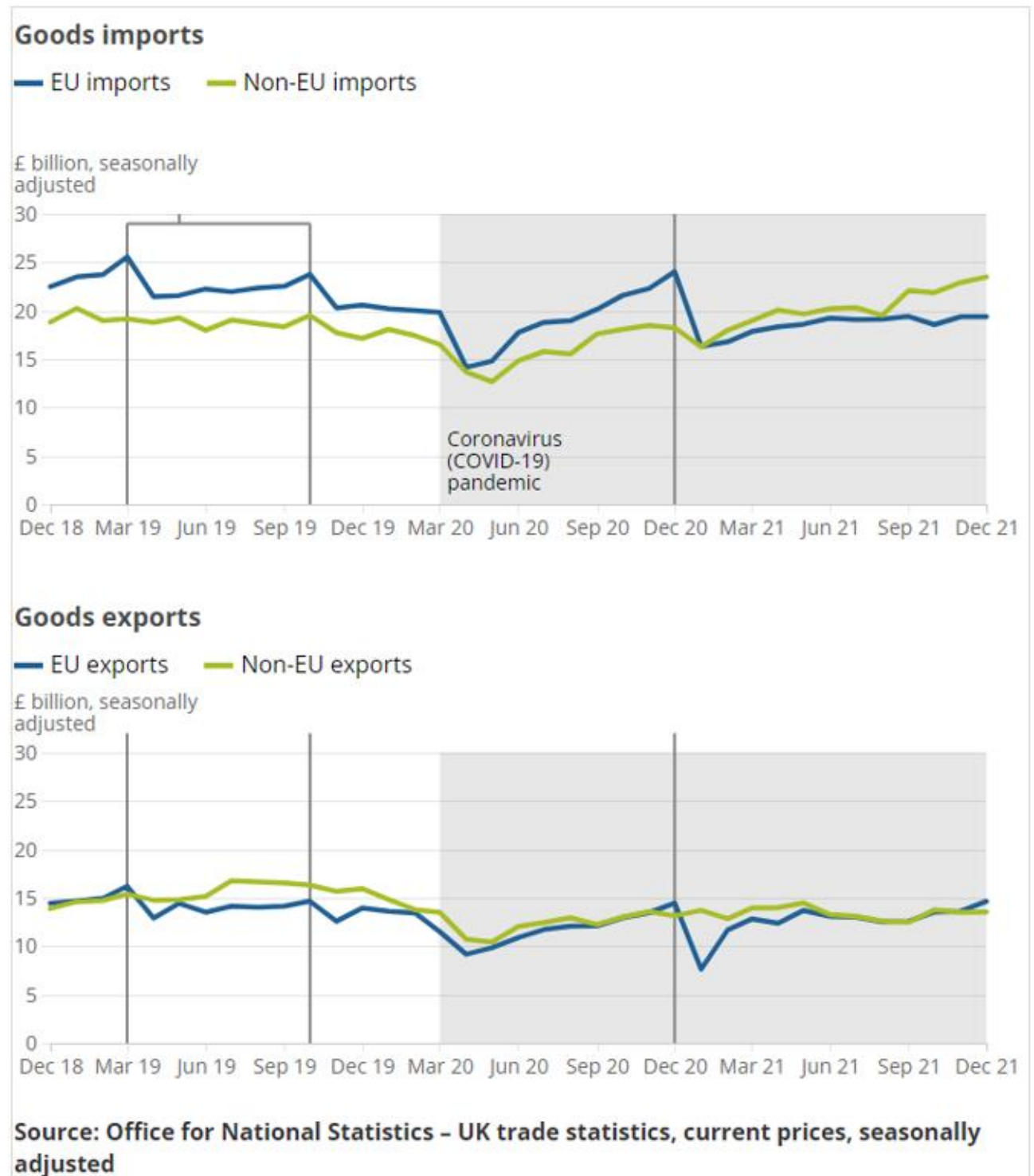
²⁹ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021>

³⁰ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021>

³¹ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/averageweeklyearningsingreatbritain/february2022>

pre-pandemic levels. There was less impact on exports, with these remaining steady throughout.

Figure B-15 Import and Exports



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy³²

Centre for Cities – Cities Outlook

- B.40 Centre for Cities produced the Cities Outlook 2022 report looking in-depth at the state of UK high streets, to get a sense of the short-term impact of the pandemic on Britain's town and city centres, and the long-term consequences and implications this has for the Government's levelling up agenda. This report showed

³² <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/economicoutputandproductivity/output/articles/ukeconomylatest/2021-01-25#output>

that there was a quick and considerable shift away from high streets to online shopping during the pandemic. However, in most cities the shift stalled, or slightly fell again once shops reopened.

- B.41 The Cities Outlook report also studies the impacts on pubs and restaurants, stating that the fashion sector was hit harder than pubs and restaurants. **Figure B-16** shows the trend in sales throughout 2020 and 2021. There are clear decreases in sales corresponding to the national lockdowns but in all instances, these soon recover when the sector reopens. This is also reflected in the suburbs, with retail and fashion experiencing a slight decline from Feb 2020 to September 2021 but food and drink on a steady incline.

Figure B-16 Change in pub and restaurant sales in City Centres and Suburbs



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy³³

- B.42 Due to the work from home regulations and, for many, working from home becoming a regular part of the working week, it is feared the reduced footfall in cities will have a lasting effect on retail, hospitality, and transport sectors. **Figure B-17** show the weekday footfall in London, Manchester and Birmingham. Although not yet back to pre-pandemic levels, there is a steady climb in footfall in the major cities with Manchester appearing to recover more quickly than Birmingham, and London taking considerably longer.
- B.43 The more significant impact on London may be related to the impact of Covid-19 on international tourism.

Figure B-17 Weekday footfall



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy

³³ <https://www.centreforcities.org/>

Greater Manchester's Clean Air Plan to tackle Nitrogen Dioxide Exceedances at the Roadside

Appendix B - Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – Taxis (Hackney Carriages and Private Hire Vehicles)

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

June 2022

1. Introduction

Background

- 1.1 After the initial Outline Business Case (OBC) submission in March 2019, a series of technical notes were published setting out the results of analysis and research carried out to better understand the vehicles in scope for the scheme. For taxis, this included, in particular, *Technical Note 10: Taxi Behavioural Responses Note*, and *Technical Note 19: Taxi and Private Hire Vehicle Fleet Research*.¹
- 1.2 Further notes were produced setting out the development of analytical tools for taxis, with the latest published summary of that work provided in *T4 Appendix A* of the *Modelling for Consultation*.² Research was carried out with taxi owners potentially in scope for the scheme, including deliberative research³ and a survey with 66 taxi owners.⁴
- 1.3 This evidence formed the basis of the development of the Option for Consultation. From March 2020, it became clear that the Covid-19 pandemic would affect the Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP); a programme of work was carried out in 2020/2021 to better understand the possible impacts of the Covid-19 pandemic on the GM CAP, published as the *Impacts of COVID Report* in June 2021.⁵ This evidence, alongside feedback from the Consultation, was used to inform the revised GM CAP as approved by the ten GM local authorities in June/July 2021.
- 1.4 At that time, GM identified several possible risks to the GM CAP, which included concerns about the risk of vehicle price increases and the impact of any further lockdowns in the UK or countries in the supply chain.
- 1.5 This report, which was originally developed in February 2022, draws a series of findings and conclusions to better understand the circumstances affecting hackney and PHV owners in Spring 2022 (based upon the previous' GM CAP implementation date) and the implications for the GM CAP and surrounding policy framework.
- 1.6 Since Spring 2022, there have been further dramatic changes to the economic context in the UK which are not explicitly addressed in this report but are set out in **Appendix E**. A range of factors associated with the impact from war in Ukraine, increased costs of energy and fuel, changes to Bank of England base rates and forecasts, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis have combined to create a context of increased financial hardship for businesses and families.

Structure of Note

- 1.7 The remaining sections of the report are structured as follows:

¹ All available at <https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/>

² https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbv1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4_-_Appendix_A_Behavioural_Response_Cost_Models_and_Demand_Sifting_Tool.pdf

³ https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbv1k6h2/15ZwMWdJ0EQ1NvqPNG1Hgw/f856512a823040934674eb543573ff70/GM_CAP_P_Deliberative_Research_ALL_-_Spring_2019.pdf

⁴ https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbv1k6h2/5e5iXeGPZwXiSvaTTWglD0/4c93aa82e0d4ec3e5f4f7ddcb29ae9ff/GM_CAP_Survey_and_Interviews_VAN_-_Autumn_2019.pdf

⁵ https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbv1k6h2/2vJXVuLxfXON7HexGli29Q/4726e8696145d9f10bd1b19c16bdc1dd/Appendix_5_Impacts_of_Covid-19_Report.pdf

- **Section 2** provides a review of the in-scope vehicles of the current Taxi sector in GM;
 - **Section 3** reviews the impacts of Covid-19 on the Taxis sector, with a particular focus on the availability and prices of purchasing new and used taxis. This chapter also considers the vulnerability impacts of Covid-19 on the sector; and
 - **Section 4** provides a summary of the key findings, also presenting details of any key risks or issues facing the sector in responding to GM CAP.
- 1.8 In addition, **Appendix A** provides a list of data used to inform the report and **Appendix B** reviews the recent changes in travel behaviour within GM through the pandemic up until January 2022.

2. Review of Vehicles in Scope

Overview of Vehicle Sector

- 2.1 Taxis offer a flexible form of door-to-door public transportation. The taxi vehicle sector comprises of two vehicle types:
- Hackney Carriage; and
 - Private Hire Vehicles (PHVs).
- 2.2 Hackney Carriages can be distinguished from PHVs in their licensing and operating regime. Hackney Carriages can legally be hailed by passengers in the street, pick up fares from taxi ranks and take pre-bookings from within their licensing authority (or an origin outside their area in the case of pre-bookings only). PHVs must be pre-booked with a licensed operator and cannot be hailed by passengers in the street or use taxi ranks. For the purposes of this note, 'taxi' refers to the collective term for both Hackney Carriages and PHVs.
- 2.3 Local Authorities regulate Hackney Carriage fare tariffs and have control over total Hackney Carriage numbers through the issue of licences. A licence is required for both the Hackney Carriage and for any person driving a Hackney Carriage. PHVs fares are not regulated by the local authorities and the council has no power to regulate fares charged.
- 2.4 Detailed research on taxis has been carried out as part of the Clean Taxi Fund (CTF) - Case for Measure, produced in Autumn 2020 and Cost Response Model reports.
- 2.5 It is important to note that there are a small number of Hackney Carriage that operate within GM that are not registered to a GM Local Authority (LA), these vehicles would also be affected by GM CAP. Due to Hackney Carriage operational requirements, non-GM licensed Hackney Carriages are not permitted to take fares solely within GM. Therefore, non-GM Hackney Carriages operating within GM will be for trips where the journey origin is outside GM or for pre booked journeys.
- 2.6 For context, the proportion of vehicle types in GM, relative to the regional and national averages, are provided in **Table 2-1** based on the latest available registration statistics from the DfT. There will be instances, particularly for commercial usage, where vehicles are registered in one location but used in another, but this table provides an overview of the relative size of each fleet.

Table 2-1 Proportion of Vehicle Types Registered by Area, Jan-22

	Cars	Van	HGV	Bus & Coach	Other
GB	85.0%	11.3%	1.3%	0.4%	2.1%
England	85.1%	11.3%	1.3%	0.4%	1.9%
NW	85.7%	10.9%	1.5%	0.3%	1.6%
GM	85.6%	11.8%	1.6%	0.4%	0.7%

Source: Department for Transport, Statistical data set, All vehicles (VEH01), Last updated 13 January 2022

- 2.7 Within these national statistics, Hackneys are one of a number of vehicle types categorised as 'other'; PHVs are included within the cars category.

- 2.8 Referring to ANPR data captured by GM in 2019, compared to the GM Taxi fleet list, GM licensed taxis as a proportion of cars registered in GM equates to approximately 1.4%.

In-scope Vehicles

Compliance of the Hackney Carriage fleet serving GM

- 2.9 **Table 2-2** presents the number of Hackney Carriages estimated to be serving GM in 2019 and 2023, including splits by compliant and non-compliant vehicles which failed to meet Euro VI standards at that point.

Table 2-2 Number of Hackneys Carriages in GM by compliance – 2019 & 2023 (without CAP)

	2019			2023 ⁶		
	GM Licensed	Non-GM Licensed	Total	GM Licensed	Non-GM Licensed	Total
Compliant	259 (12%)	37 (13%)	296 (12%)	738 (36%)	105 (36%)	844 (36%)
Non-Compliant	1,821 (88%)	259 (87%)	2,080 (88%)	1,342 (64%)	191 (64%)	1,532 (64%)
Total	2,080 (100%)	296 (100%)	2,376 (100%)	2,080 (100%)	296 (100%)	2,376 (100%)

Source: FBC Appendix V, T4 Annex C: Vehicle Population Estimates (FBC – includes 1 year delay in natural fleet upgrade)

- 2.10 In 2019, there were 2,376 Hackney Carriages serving GM, with 296 (12%) deemed compliant and 2,080 (88%) non-compliant. Non-GM licensed vehicles represent 10% of the total.
- 2.11 The large proportion of Hackney Carriages which are non-compliant is partly due to a relatively long lifespan, with many Hackney Carriage owners typically holding onto vehicles for several years (given the limited second-hand market for this vehicle type). Also, compliant Hackney Carriages did not come onto the market until 2015, with the Euro VI standard coming into force for Hackney Carriages in 2015.
- 2.12 GM forecast that the number of non-compliant Hackney Carriages serving GM will have reduced from 2,080 in 2019 to 1,532 by 2023 as a result of ongoing vehicle upgrades. This means that 548 vehicles would have been upgraded from a non-compliant vehicle as a result of business-as-usual purchase.
- 2.13 The anticipated rate of upgrade for Hackney Carriages was revised in 2021 based on evidence that the Covid-19 pandemic had delayed vehicle purchases, such that the fleet was estimated to be around 12 months older than previously forecast (note this delay is represented within the values quoted in **Table 2-2**).

⁶ Note: 2023 vehicle volumes include a one-year delay in the natural turnover of the taxi fleet assumption. This assumption was agreed with JAQU in Spring 2021 and incorporated within the 2021 modelling undertaken by GM support the FBC and is currently being reviewed based on new available data.

- 2.14 The rationale and methodology for this change is set out in the report “GM’s proposed approach to representing the impact of Covid-19 in core modelling scenarios”.⁷ This had the effect of reducing the number of GM-based Hackney Carriages expected to make a business-as-usual upgrade between 2019 and 2023 by 149.⁸

Compliance of the PHV fleet serving GM

- 2.15 **Table 2-3** presents the number of PHVs estimated to be serving GM in 2019 and 2023, including splits by compliant and non-compliant vehicles which failed to meet Euro VI standards at that point.

Table 2-3 Number of PHVs in GM by compliance – 2019 & 2023 (without CAP)

	2019			2023		
	GM Licensed	Non-GM Licensed*	Total	GM Licensed	Non-GM Licensed	Total
Compliant	3,595 (29%)	1,384 (29%)	4,979 (29%)	8,425 (68%)	3,243 (68%)	11,668 (68%)
Non-Compliant	8,806 (71%)	3,390 (71%)	12,196 (71%)	3,976 (32%)	1,530 (32%)	5,506 (32%)
Total	12,401 (100%)	4,773 (100%)	17,174 (100%)	12,401 (100%)	4,773 (100%)	17,174 (100%)

Source: FBC Appendix V, T4 Annex C: Vehicle Population Estimates. *Note: Non-GM fleet information estimated based on FOI request data. Note: 2023 values include a 12 month delay to the natural turnover of the fleet due to the pandemic

- 2.16 In 2019, there were 17,174 PHVs serving GM, with 4,979 (29%) deemed compliant and 12,196 (71%) non-compliant. Vehicles licensed with one of GM’s ten local authorities are as likely to be compliant as non-GM licensed vehicles (29% compliant).
- 2.17 A proportion of the PHVs within the taxi fleet would normally be upgraded each year, with the oldest vehicles being scrapped out of the fleet. GM’s forecast suggests that the number of non-compliant PHVs serving GM will have reduced from 12,196 in 2019 to 5,506 by 2023. Meaning 6,690 vehicles would have been upgraded from a non-compliant vehicle as a result of business-as-usual purchase.
- 2.18 Based on evidence that the Covid-19 pandemic had delayed vehicle purchases, the anticipated rate of upgrade for PHVs was revised in 2021, such that the fleet was estimated to be around 12 months older than previously forecast. The rationale and methodology for this change is set out in the report “GM’s proposed approach to representing the impact of Covid-19 in core modelling scenarios”⁹. This had the effect of reducing the number of GM-based PHVs expected to make a business-as-usual upgrade between 2019 and 2023 by 965¹⁰.

⁷

https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbvvy1k6h2/2ZMJ3DJXiv7p3xOeZu4CYQ/247196ef60e33ac89f7f8938e1e16418/Appendix_6D_GM_proposed_approach_to_representing_the_impact_of_Covid-19_in_core_modelling_scenarios.pdf

⁸ TN 37 Vehicle Populations, compared to T4 Annex C

⁹

https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbvvy1k6h2/2ZMJ3DJXiv7p3xOeZu4CYQ/247196ef60e33ac89f7f8938e1e16418/Appendix_6D_GM_proposed_approach_to_representing_the_impact_of_Covid-19_in_core_modelling_scenarios.pdf

¹⁰ TN 37 Vehicle Populations, compared to T4 Annex C

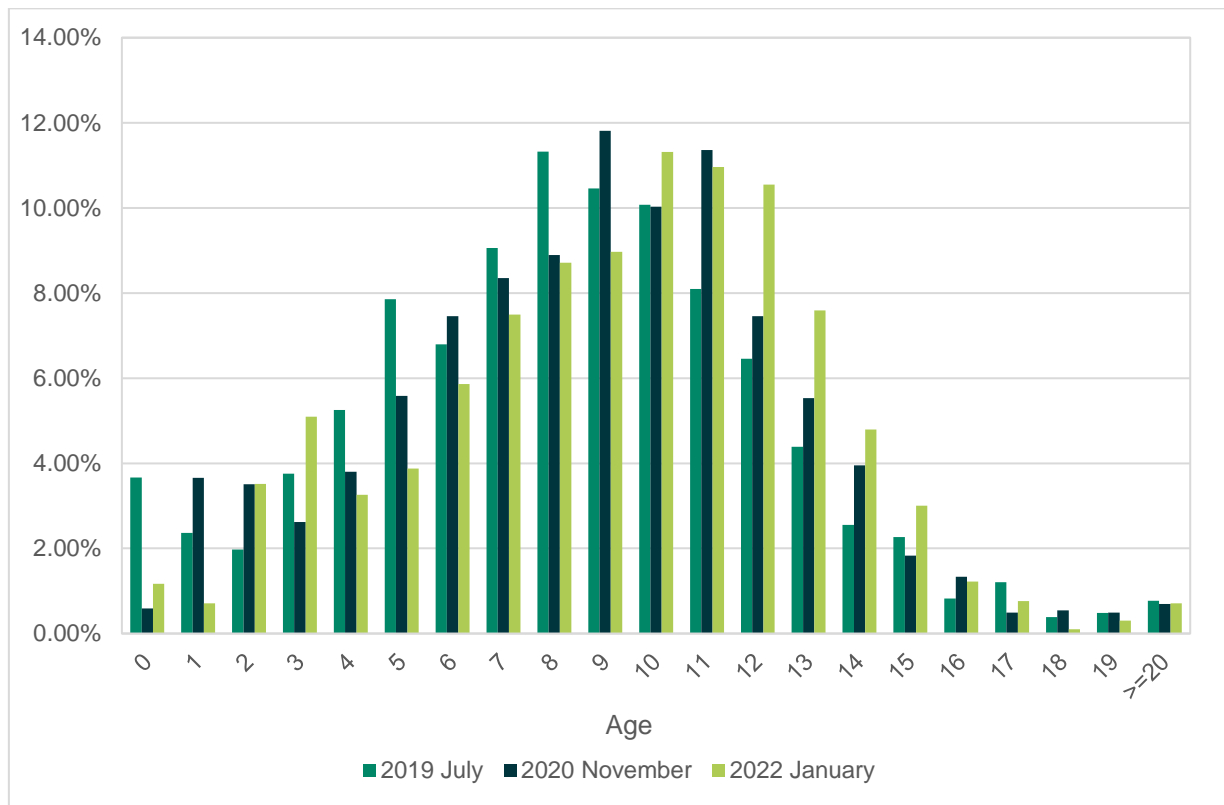
Review of Fleet Profile

2.19 Taxi licensing data from GM local authorities has been obtained and compared across July 2019, November 2020 and January 2022 to understand the taxi fleet profile operating in GM and how it has changed over time.

2.20 **Figure 2-1** below provides an insight into the change of GM-registered Hackney Carriage age profile over time. Only 12 brand-new Hackney Carriages (0-year-old) were licensed within GM within the year before November 2020 which is significantly lower than that of 2019 when 76 brand-new Hackney Carriages were licensed. The number of brand-new Hackney Carriages licensed increased from 12 to 23 in 2022 although this is still lower than the 2019 figure of 76, and suggests that the purchasing of new Hackney Carriages has significantly reduced since 2019.

2.21 It can be seen clearly that the Hackney Carriage age profile has been slightly “shifted” to the right from 2019 to 2022, which indicates that fleet age has grown older, and the fleet natural upgrade process had been delayed slightly.

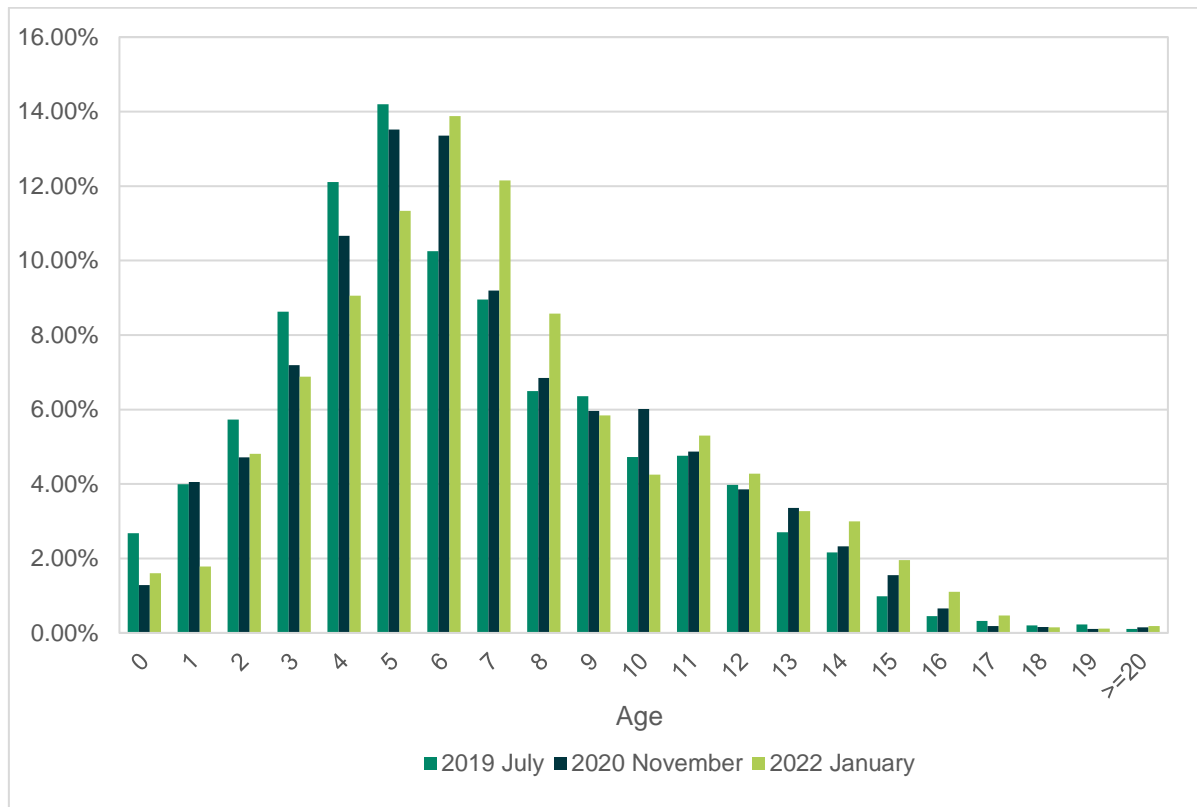
Figure 2-1 Change in Hackney Carriage Fleet Age Distribution



Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

2.22 A similar trend can be seen in PHVs as shown in **Figure 2-2**, with 147 brand-new PHVs licensed in the year before November 2020, which is less than half of the number in 2019 (327). 181 brand-new PHVs were licensed in 2022, a slight increase from 2020, although still lower than the number in year 2019 (327). This suggests there has been a reduction in the purchasing of brand-new PHVs since 2019.

2.23 The PHV fleet age profile had also grown older in 2020 and 2022 comparing to 2019, which indicates that the PHV fleet natural-upgrade process had also been delayed. However, the upgrade delay seems to be less significant when compared to that of Hackney Carriages.

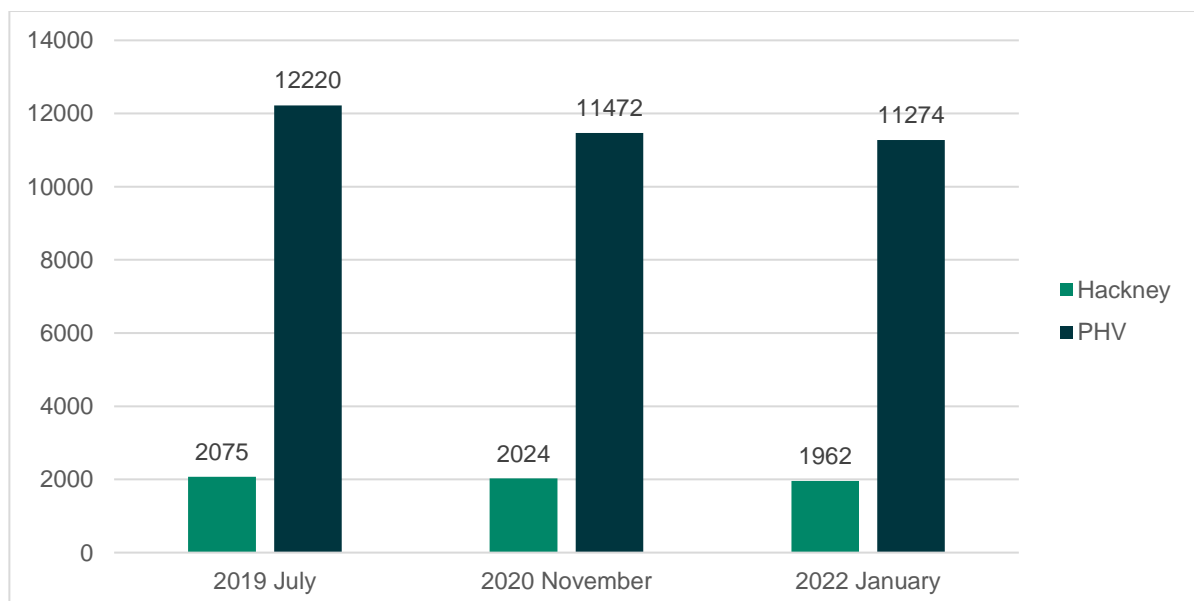
Figure 2-2 Change in PHV Fleet Age Distribution

Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

2.24 ANPR data shows the age distribution for both GM registered Hackney Carriages and PHVs increased from 2019 to 2021. Comparisons of key vehicle profiles have been conducted to examine the changes over time. The key findings are as follows:

Total GM registered taxi numbers

2.25 The total number of GM licensed taxis decreased from 2019 to 2022 by 5.4% for PHVs and 7.7.% for Hackney Carriages as shown in **Figure 2-3**.

Figure 2-3 Total GM Licensed Hackney Carriage and PHV Numbers

Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Taxi age profile

- 2.26 The average age of both PHVs and Hackney Carriages in the GM licensed fleet increased from 2019 to 2022 as shown in **Table 2-4**. The PHV average age increased by 0.7 years and Hackney Carriages by 0.9 years. The average age of PHVs is now 7.1 years and 9.1 years for Hackney Carriages

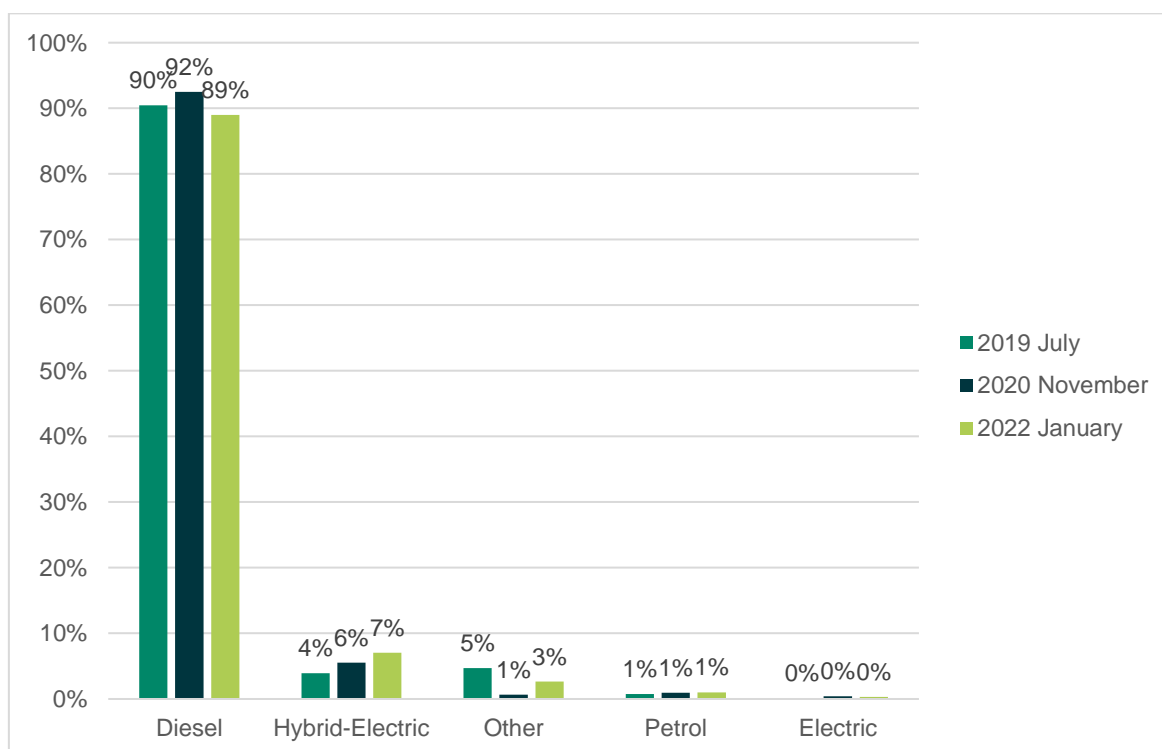
Table 2-4 Average Vehicle Age

Taxi Types	Data year	2019	2020	2022
Hackney Carriage	Average Age	8.2	8.7	9.1
	Most common age group	8	9	10
PHV	Average Age	6.4	6.8	7.1
	Most common age group	5	5	6

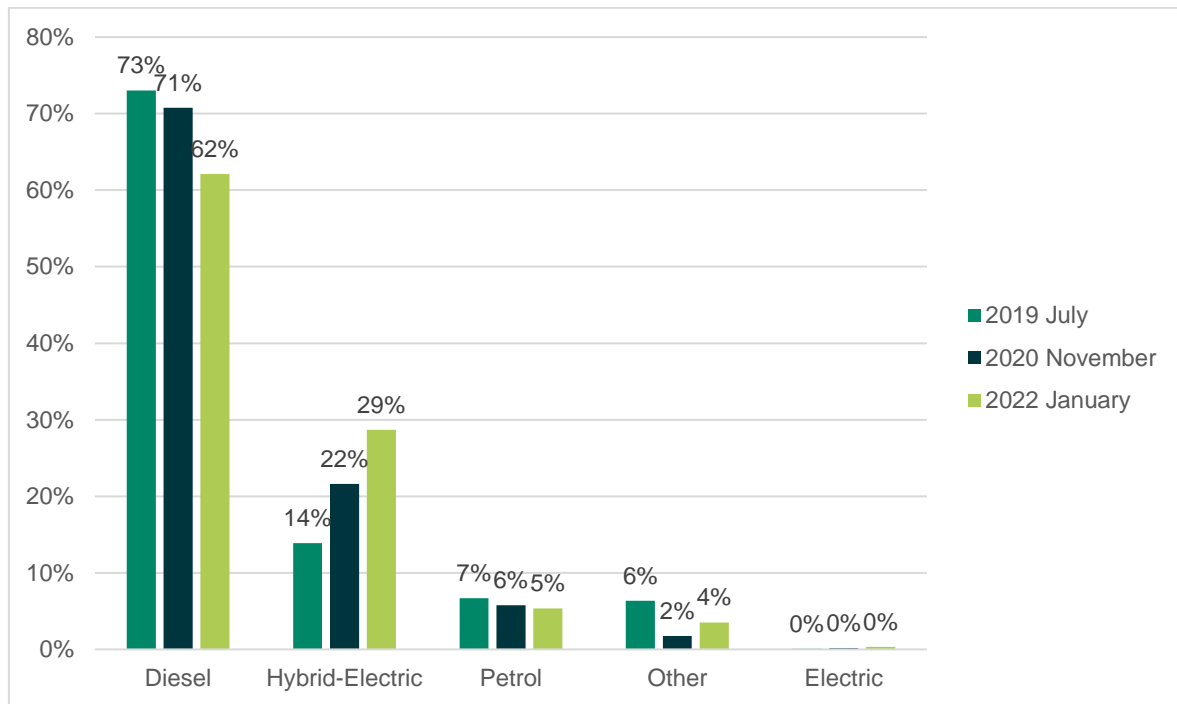
Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Fuel types

- 2.27 The change of the fuel types of Hackney Carriages and PHVs licensed in GM are shown in **Figure 2-4** and **Figure 2-5**.
- 2.28 No significant change has been seen in Hackney Carriage fuel types with 89% still fuelled by diesel. Conversely, the proportion of PHVs fuelled by diesel has fallen from 73% to 62% between 2019 and 2022. There has been a shift from diesel to Hybrid-electric for PHVs, with Hybrid-Electric PHVs rising from 14% 2019 to 29% in 2022. The EV uptakes remain very low at less than 1% for both PHVs and Hackney Carriages.

Figure 2-4 Fuel Types for GM Hackney Carriages

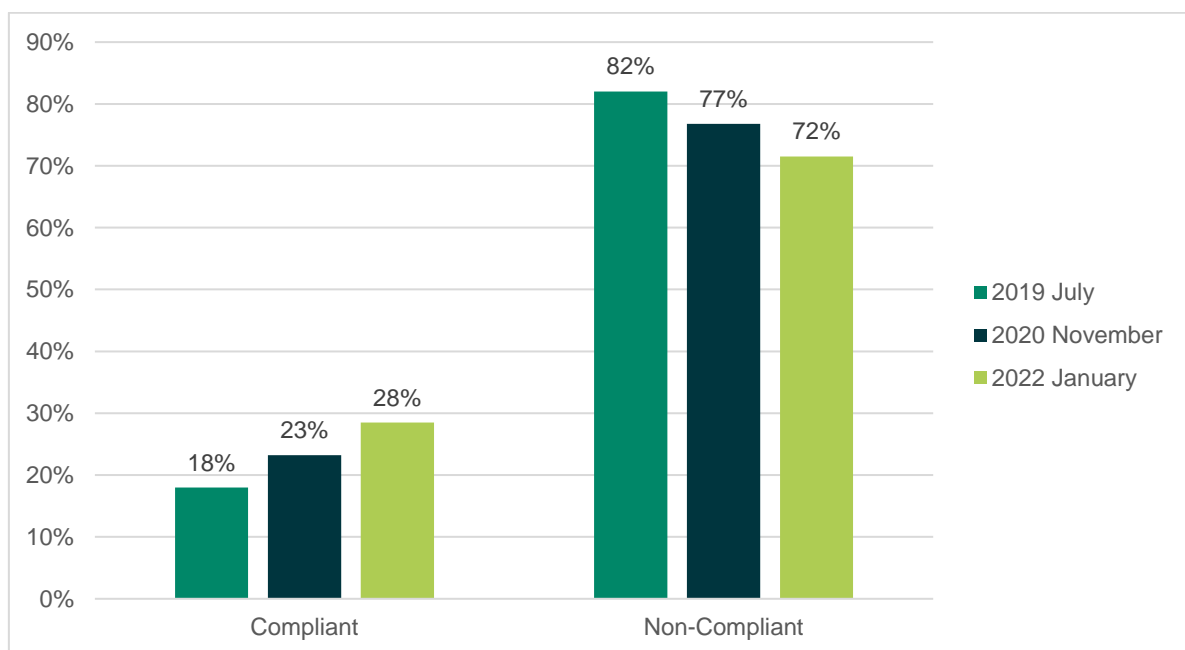
Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Figure 2-5 Fuel Types for GM PHVs

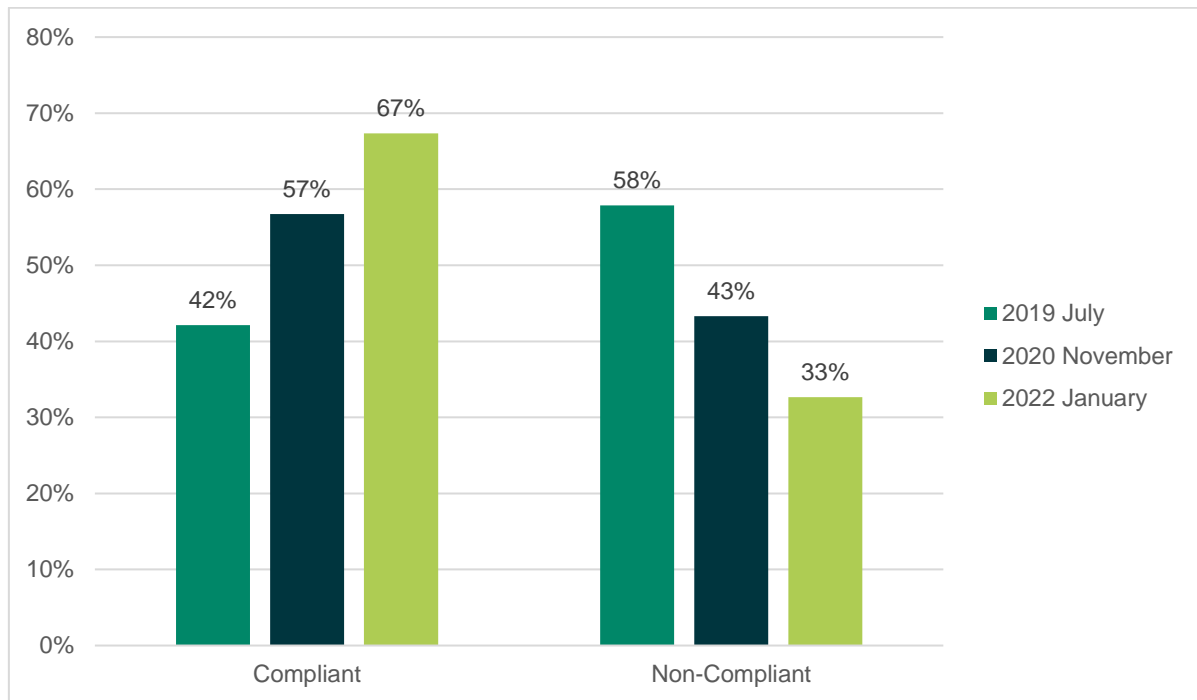
Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Compliance rate

2.29 Hackney Carriage compliance has increased from 18% in 2019 to 28% in 2022, averaging a 20% increasing compliance rate per annum over the observed period as shown in **Figure 2-6**. PHV compliance has increased from 42% in July 2019 to 67% in January 2022, averaging a 21% increase compliance rate per annum over the observed period as shown in **Figure 2-7**. In addition, the PHV compliance level in 2019 is significantly higher than the compliance level of Hackney Carriages.

Figure 2-6 Hackney Carriage Compliance Rates

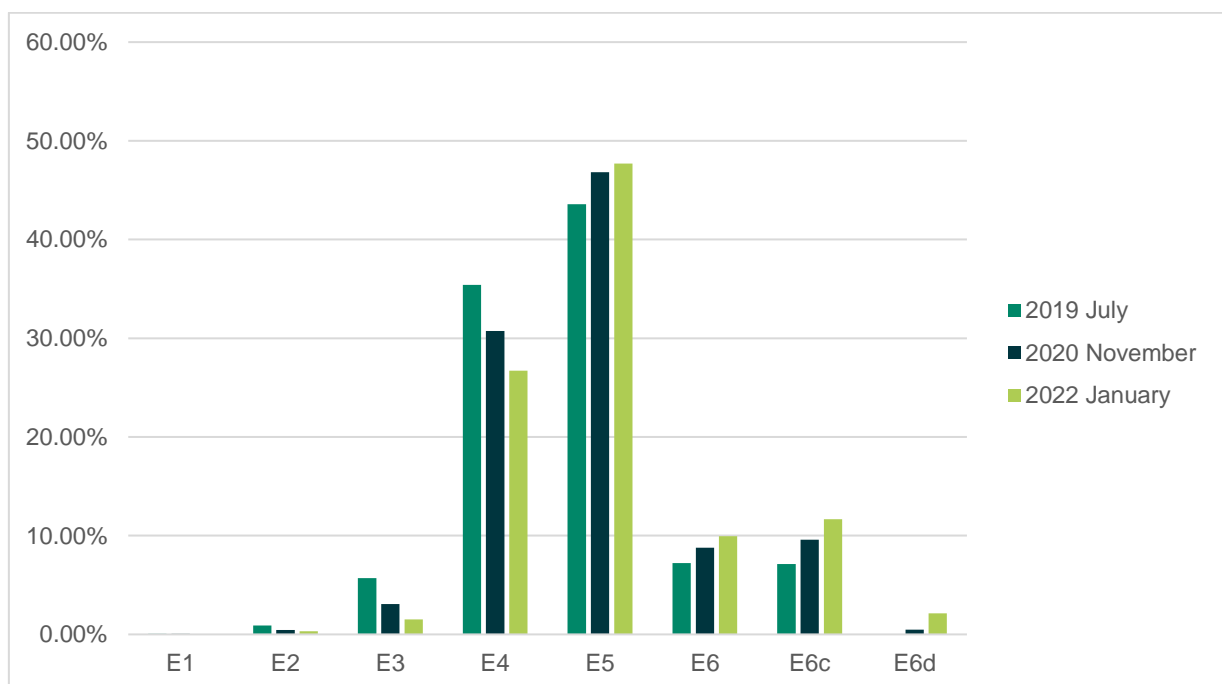
Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Figure 2-7 PHV Compliance Rates

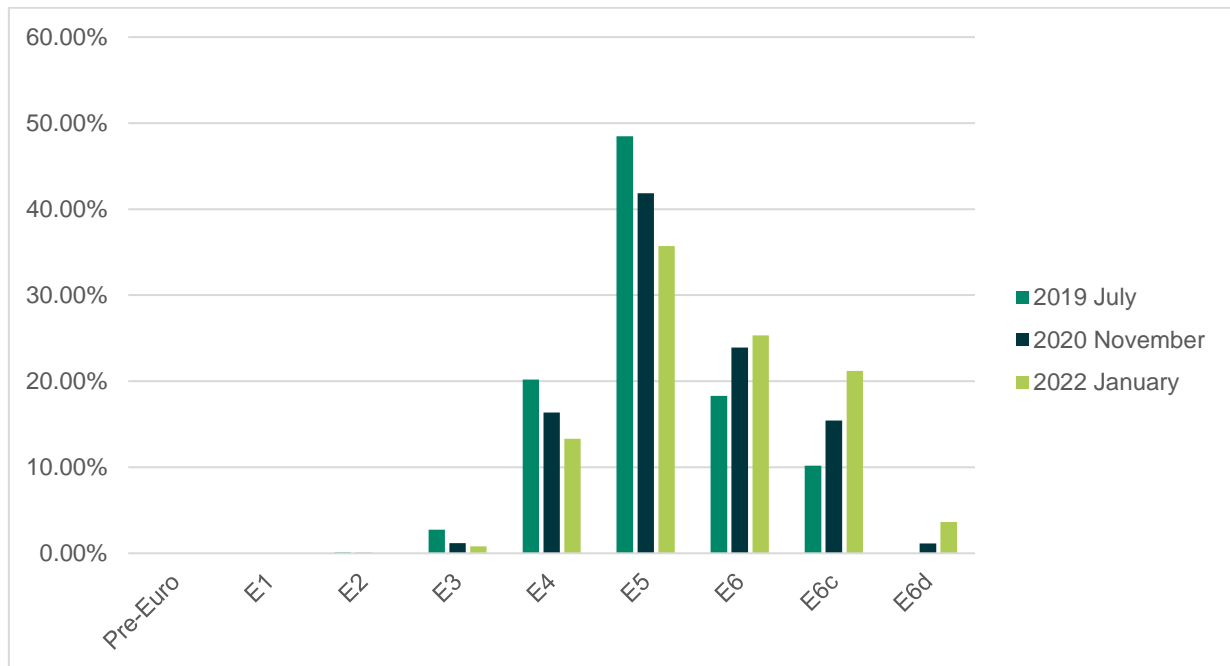
Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Euro classifications

- 2.30 There is a sustained reduction in Hackney Carriage Euro IV (E4) engines across the observed period. The E5 remains the predominant engine standard for Hackney Carriages in 2022 with 48% share which has increased between 2019 and 2022.
- 2.31 A significant reduction was seen in PHV E4 and E5 engines and corresponding increases were seen in E6 and E6c. It is worth noting that the proportion of PHVs with E5 engines decreased between 2019 and 2022 unlike Hackney Carriages.

Figure 2-8 Hackney Carriage Euro Classification trend

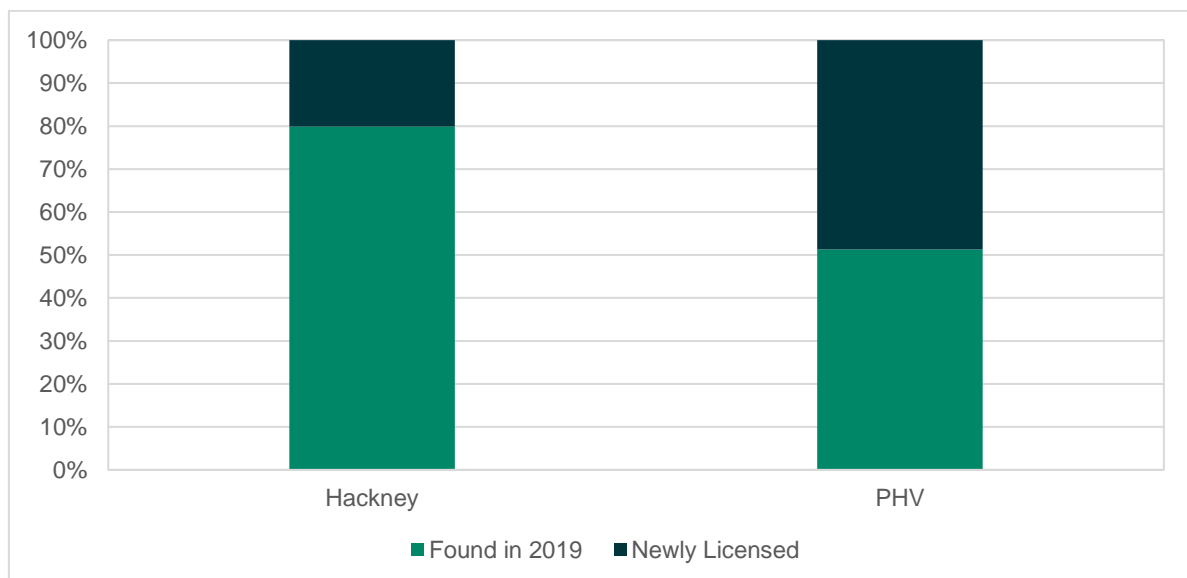
Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Figure 2-9 PHVs Euro Classification trend

Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Registration by LAs

- 2.32 Vehicle registrations for Hackney Carriages and PHVs have been examined in 2022 to compare with 2019 showing the proportion of unique registration plates in GM to demonstrate the churn in the vehicle market.
- 2.33 **Figure 2-10** shows the percentage of Hackney Carriages and PHVs licensed in 2022 that were found in 2019, suggesting that since 2019, 20% of licensed Hackney Carriages and 49% of licensed PHVs are 3 years old or less. The level of natural churn experienced in the PHV fleet is significantly higher than in the Hackney Carriage fleet, demonstrating a quicker, natural trajectory within the PHV market to achieve compliance with the GM CAP. This would be in-keeping with the average age of the vehicles, as presented earlier within this section which demonstrates that in GM PHVs are two years younger than Hackney Carriages on average.

Figure 2-10 2022 Hackney Carriages and PHVs found in 2019 records

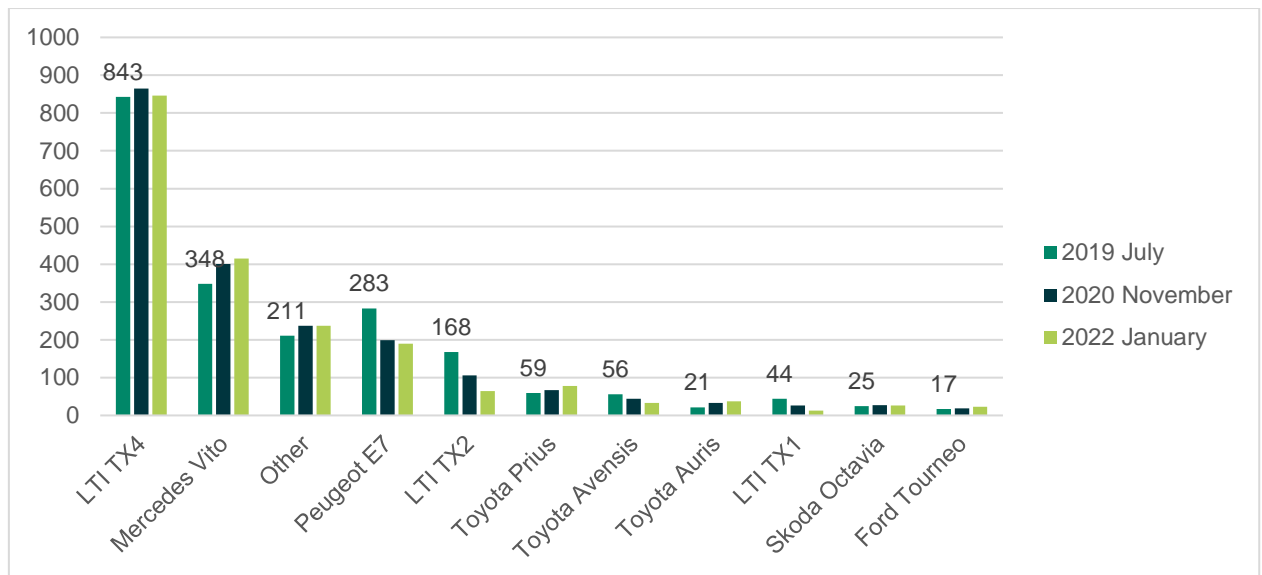
Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Taxi makes and models

2.34 The London Taxi Company TX4 (LTI TX4) has remained the most popular vehicle representing 43% of GM's Hackney Carriage fleet in 2022 as shown in **Figure 2-11**.

2.35 The most common PHV used in GM in 2022 is still the Skoda Octavia which accounts for 19% of the fleet as shown in **Figure 2-12**.

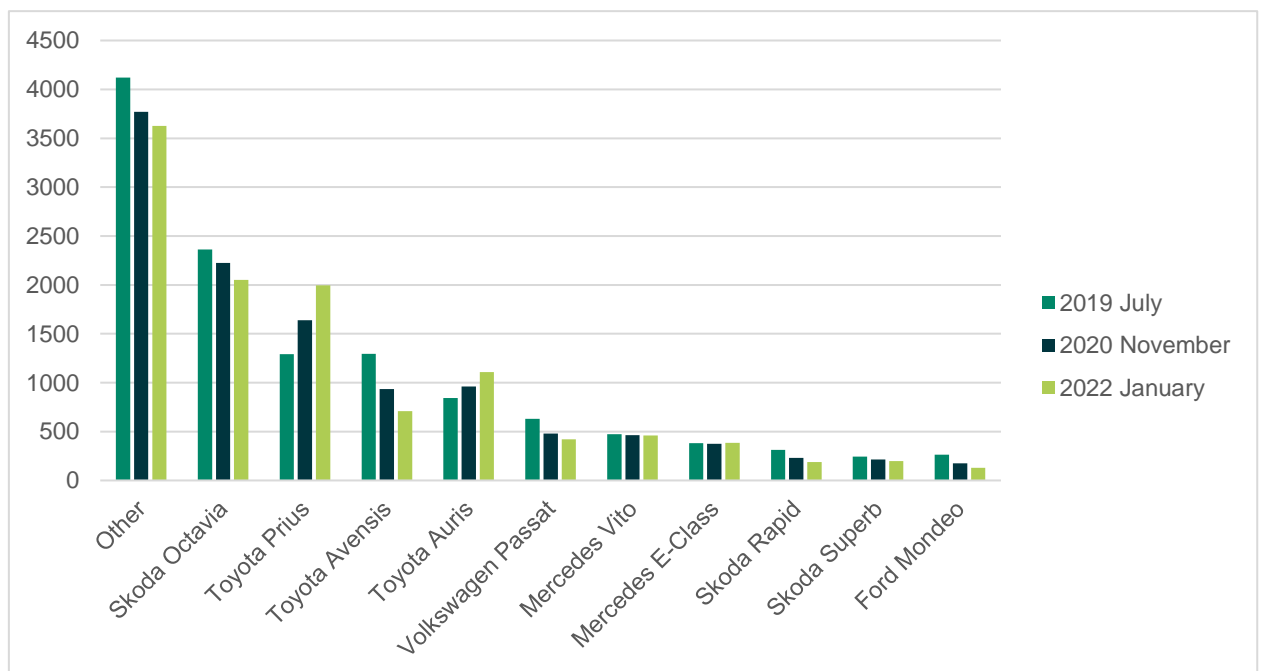
Figure 2-11 GM Hackney Carriage Make and Model Trend



Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Note: Some vehicle types included in this graph are typical of a PHV fleet however they are permitted for Hackney Carriage licensing by some GM local authorities

Figure 2-12 GM PHVs Make and Model Trend



Source: TfGM, GM Taxi Licensing Data (2019, 2020 and 2022)

Note: Some vehicle types included in this graph such as Mercedes Vito, are more commonly associated with Hackney Carriages however a smaller proportion are operated as a PHV

Updated traffic and travel patterns

2.36 Using ANPR data, Hackney Carriage and PHV frequencies have been observed across multiple locations within GM¹¹. The observations show how proportions of Hackney Carriages and PHVs change over the observed years at different locations.

Hackney Carriage

2.37 **Table 2-5** shows the proportions of Hackney Carriages by GM location and the change in proportions from 2019 to 2021. Using ANPR data, taxis were observed at locations inside the M60, outside the M60 and inside the Inner Ring Road (IRR).

2.38 Across the observed period (2019-2021), there was a reduction in the proportion of Hackney Carriages located in the IRR whilst there was a proportional increase in the number of Hackney Carriages located inside the M60. The largest proportion of Hackney Carriages inside the M60 were observed on the A5103 Princess Road, with 25% in 2019, observing a 4% increase from 2019 to 2021. Inside the IRR a high proportion of Hackney Carriages were observed on the B6469 Fairfield Street in 2019 (21%), close to Manchester Piccadilly rail station, which observed a 6% decrease from 2019 to 2021.

Table 2-5 Proportion of Hackney Carriages by GM Location

	2019	2020	2021	2019-2021 % Change
Inside M60¹²	57%	52%	62%	5%
Outside M60	7%	11%	7%	0%
Inside Inner Ring Road (IRR)	36%	37%	30%	-6%

Source: ANPR (2019, 2020 and 2021)

PHV

2.39 Similar proportions can be seen for PHVs, as shown in **Table 2-6**, with the category 'Inside M60' having the largest proportions and 'Outside M60' having the smallest proportion. However, the proportion of PHVs inside the IRR is lower than Hackney Carriages which could be associated with Hackney Carriage depots located in Manchester City Centre and pick-up areas such as at Manchester Piccadilly rail station.

2.40 The proportion of PHVs inside the M60 increased by 2% from 2019 to 2021, from 71% in 2019 to 73% in 2021. Inside the M60 saw a 1% increase from 2019 and 2021, and inside the IRR a 3% decrease from 2019 and 2021 was observed.

¹¹ ANPR data based on data collection from following number of sites by location: Inside M60 = 9 sites, Outside M60 = 3 sites, Inside IRR = 3 sites

¹² 'Inside M60' refers to taxis captured inside the M60 motorway but outside the IRR.

Table 2-6 Proportion of PHVs by GM Location

	2019	2020	2021	2019-2021 % Change
Inside M60	71%	68%	73%	2%
Outside M60	9%	12%	10%	1%
Inside IRR	20%	20%	17%	-3%

Source: ANPR (2019, 2020 and 2021)

- 2.41 Similarly to Hackney Carriage, the largest proportion of PHVs observed inside the M60 in 2019 were on the A5103 Princess Road (27%), with an observed 1% increase from 2019 to 2021. Across both taxi types, the proportion of vehicles recorded inside the IRR fell between 2019 and 2021 which is consistent with the findings by TfGM across modes for the 'regional centre'. Error! Reference source not found.

3. Review of Covid-19 impacts on vehicle sector

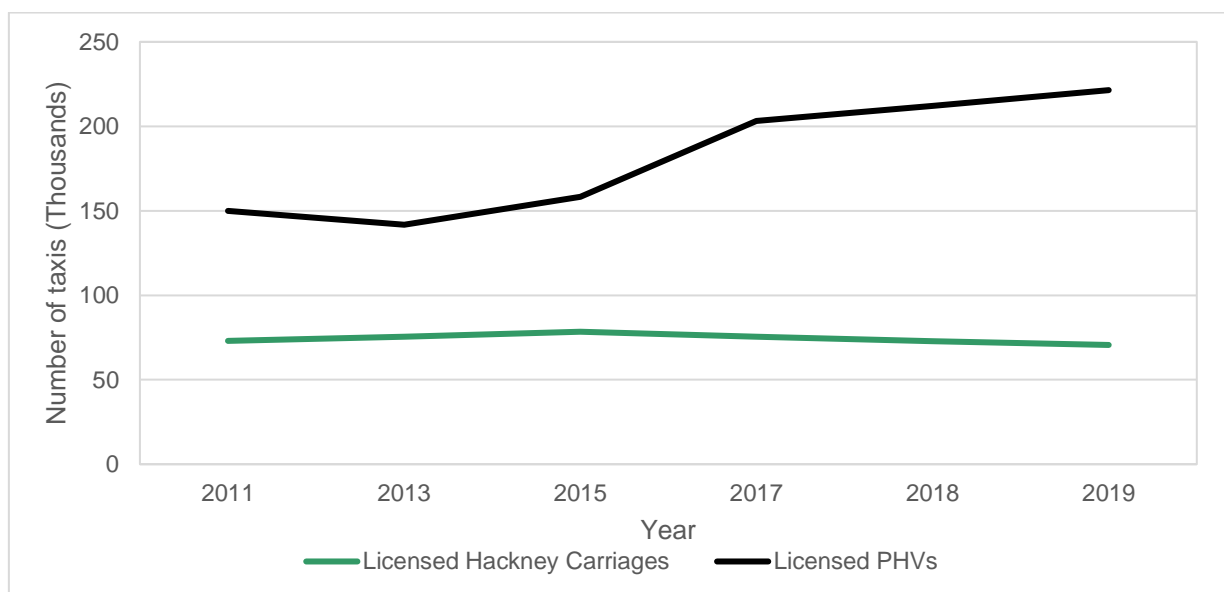
Overview

- 3.1 This section provides an update on the direct impacts the Covid-19 pandemic and associated restrictions have had on taxi fleets and licensed drivers.
- 3.2 This section also assesses the impact Covid-19 has had on the taxi market for the purchasing of new and second-hand compliant vehicles.

Pre-Pandemic – Sector Related Trends

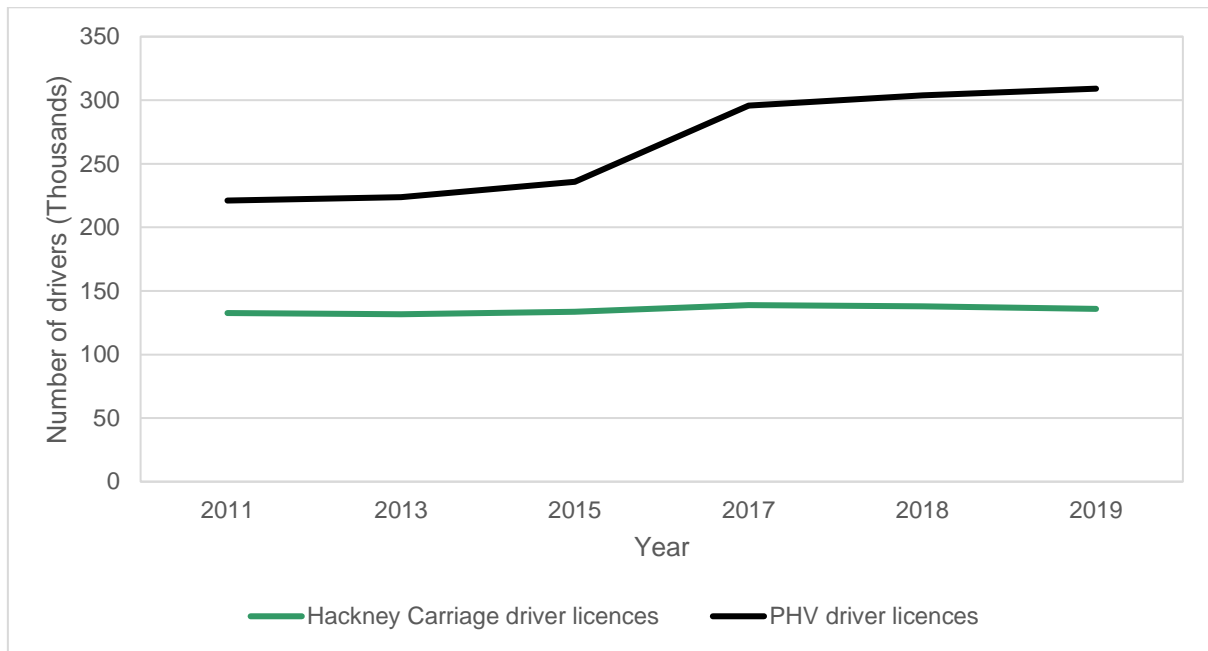
- 3.3 The following charts, displaying DfT Taxi Statistics¹³, show the trend in licensed taxi vehicles and drivers between 2011 and 2019. The dataset follows the same trend for both.
- 3.4 Assessing pre-pandemic conditions (2011-2019), **Figure 3-1** and **Figure 3-2** show the following:
- there is a direct collation between the trend in licensed Hackney Carriage and PHVs with the number of licensed Hackney Carriage and PHV drivers;
 - the number of licensed Hackney Carriage vehicles and drivers in England has remained stable across the pre-pandemic period. Whilst the number of licensed Hackney Carriage drivers in England has increased by 2% in 2019 compared to 2011, the number of licensed Hackney Carriages in England has decreased by 3%; and
 - the number of licensed PHVs and drivers in England has steadily increased over the period, increasing 32% in the number of PHVs in 2019 compared to 2011 and 28% in the number of licensed drivers in 2019 compared to 2011.

Figure 3-1 Licensed Hackney Carriage and licensed PHVs: England



Source: <https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/taxi-statistics>

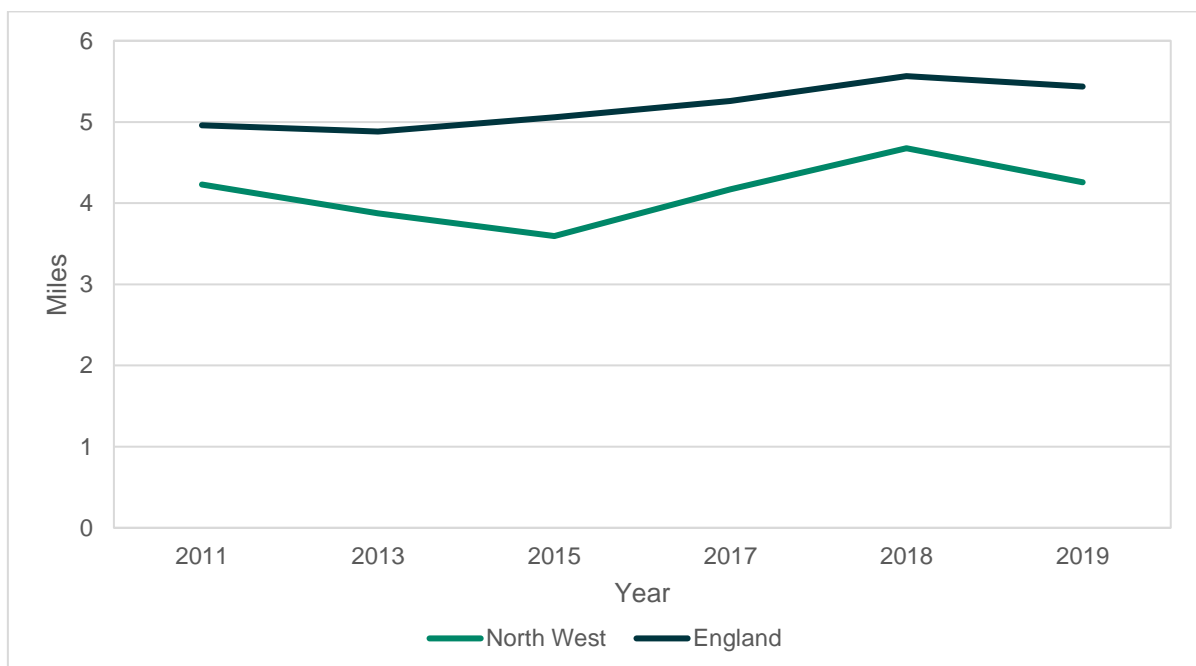
¹³ <https://www.gov.uk/government/organisations/department-for-transport/series/taxi-statistics>

Figure 3-2 Licensed Hackney Carriage drivers and Licensed PHV drivers: England

Source: <https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/taxi-statistics>

Mileage

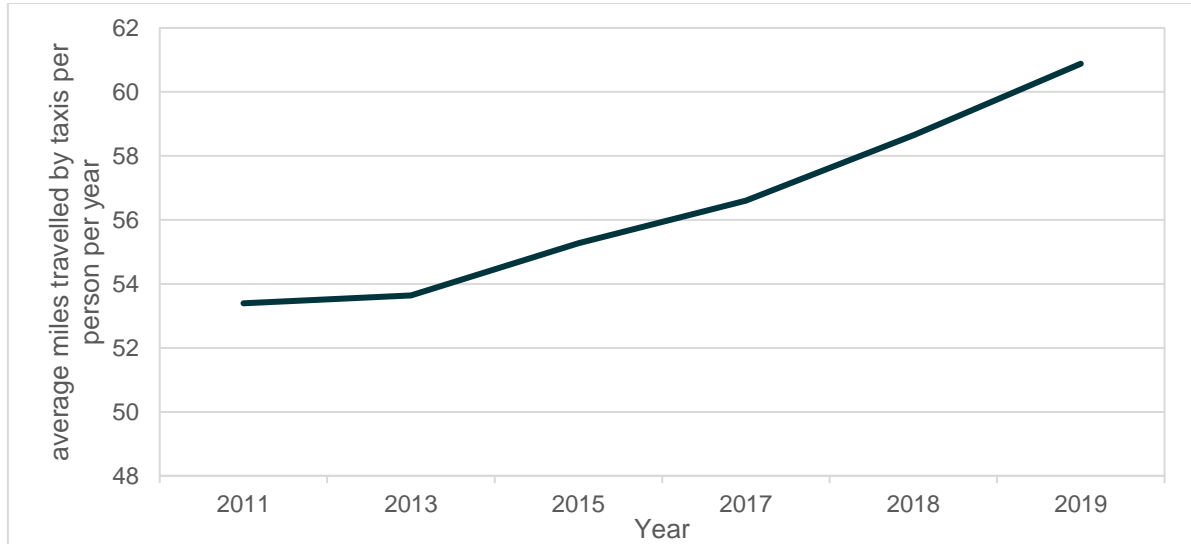
- 3.5 The average trip lengths taken in Hackney Carriages and PHVs has remained steady over the observed period as shown in **Figure 3-3**. Assessing pre-pandemic conditions (2011-2019), trends show that the average trip mileage in a taxi in the North West is lower than the average for England however the gap narrowed in 2018.

Figure 3-3 Average trip lengths of Hackney Carriage and PHVs

Source: <https://www.gov.uk/government/statistical-data-sets/nts03-modal-comparisons>

- 3.6 **Figure 3-4** displays the average miles travelled by taxis per person per year in England. The results show that the average miles travelled by taxis per person per year has increased year-on-year of the observed period prior to the pandemic.

Figure 3-4 Average miles travelled by Hackney Carriage or PHV per person per year: England



Source: <https://www.gov.uk/government/statistical-data-sets/nts03-modal-comparisons>

Covid-19 Different Industries' Effects on the Hackney Carriage and PHV Sector

Background

- 3.7 The first UK national lockdown in March 2020 had a significant impact on the Hackney Carriage and PHV sector, with demand significantly decreasing as restrictions limited mobility across the UK.
- 3.8 After 10 years of stable numbers, licensed Hackney Carriages fell between 2020 to 2021. Licensed PHVs have taken a significant fall from March 2020 to March 2021, a fall of 38,000 vehicles.
- 3.9 Of the national totals for licensed taxis, 20% are registered within GM (2018 18%) and 15% of licensed drivers are registered within GM (2018 13%). Between 2020 and 2021 there was a reduction of 1,500 licensed vehicles within GM, although there was an increase of 331 licensed drivers within GM between 2020 and 2021, this does not follow the national trend with a decrease of 7,082 in England and Wales during the same time period. However, the number of GM licensed drivers has not recovered to 2019 (pre-pandemic) levels.
- 3.10 Through review of GM based ANPR data, the number of unique Hackney Carriage vehicles fell 22% between 2019 and 2020 and PHVs fell 7% over the same period. The number of unique Hackney Carriages and PHVs recovered in 2021 with a 14% increase for Hackney Carriages compared to 2020 and 11% increase for PHVs compared to 2020 however 2021 volumes were still below pre-pandemic (2019). In addition, trip frequency between 2019 and 2020 fell 49% for Hackney Carriages and 23% for PHVs. Trip frequency recovered between 2020 and 2021 however 2021 data were marginally below average trip frequency recorded in 2019 with Hackney Carriages 0.6% and PHVs 5% below 2019 levels.

- 3.11 The Licensed Private Hire Car Association (LPHCA) estimated in 2021 that only 160,000 of the nearly 300,000 pre-Covid-19 cab drivers are now active. An interview conducted with PHV firm, Cresta Cars, based in Manchester, indicated that, since the pandemic, the number of drivers has reduced from 400 to 300¹⁴.
- 3.12 As a result of the reduction in demand and trade, due to the pandemic, drivers were forced to move into jobs which remained resilient during the pandemic, such as the supermarket and delivery sector with some drivers not returning to the taxi industry.
- 3.13 Some drivers moved to part time work, only 9% of drivers were working 7 days a week in April 2020, a reduction from 22% in April 2019, this could be explained by reduced trade during the pandemic and the need to find alternative employment. Contributing factors to the driver shortage also include those taking the opportunity to retire in higher numbers than pre-pandemic and a backlog to become licensed again with a 5.7% reduction in the number of Hackney Carriage and PHV driver licences in 2021 compared with 2020¹⁵.
- 3.14 Along with lack of drivers is the lack of actual vehicles. Hackney Carriages in particular can be expensive to own and insure, and with older diesels falling foul of clean-air rules based upon a London example with circa 5,000 London black cabs were handed back, sold or scrapped as demand reduced in 2020, and only 13,500 remain in 2021.¹⁶
- 3.15 According to the NTS the majority of trips taken by Hackney Carriage or PHV are for leisure purposes, with a share of 51% in 2019¹⁷. As lockdowns were brought into effect across the UK, the leisure industry was hit significantly, bringing profound changes to consumer behaviour and thus adversely reducing the demand on the Hackney Carriage and PHV sector. According to DfT Hackney Carriage and PHV statistics (June 2021), there were 251,100 licensed Hackney Carriages and PHVs in 2021 nationally, a decrease of 15.9% since 2020. There was a 5.4% reduction of drivers between March 2020 and March 2021, equating to over 24,000.
- 3.16 The following section provides a summary of Covid-19 impacts for the key sectors which the taxi industry relies on.

Covid-19 Impacts on Industry Sectors that are served by the Taxi Sector

- 3.17 This section provides a narrative for the reduction in demand for taxis during the Covid-19 pandemic which have been influenced by Government policy and public confidence to travel. The section provides the background behind the underlying financial stability of the taxi industry and how the pandemic may have influenced their ability to have sufficient levels of cash reserves to upgrade non-compliant vehicles.

Leisure

- 3.18 According to the NTS, leisure trips made up 51% of all Hackney Carriage and PHV journeys in 2019, this was significantly impacted during the pandemic¹⁸. Restrictions introduced on March 23rd ordered people in the UK to “stay at home”, limiting all non-essential business and leisure activities.

¹⁴ <https://lphca.co.uk/lphca-news/industry-driver-shortages>

¹⁵ https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/997793/taxi-and-private-hire-vehicle-statistics-2021.pdf

¹⁶ <https://www.theguardian.com/uk-news/2021/nov/13/taxi-taxi-why-its-suddenly-getting-so-hard-to-find-a-cab>

¹⁷ Taxi and Private Hire Vehicle Statistics: England 2021

¹⁸ Taxi and Private Hire Vehicle Statistics: England 2021

- 3.19 As part of the restrictions to curb the spread of Covid-19, a 10pm curfew for bars and restaurants was introduced on 24th September 2020. The closure of these establishments has undoubtedly affected the taxi industry. In February 2021, nightclubs were trading at just 5% of their pre-COVID annual revenue, bars were trading at 9% and pubs at 11%.¹⁹
- 3.20 Following the easing of restrictions, consumer demand for leisure activities has increased, the Leisure Consumer state in their 2021 report that in the first quarter of 2021 there was a 50% increase in demand for eating out when compared to the final quarter of 2020, similar increases are expected for visiting pubs and bars and culture and entertainment.²⁰
- 3.21 As COVID restrictions continued to ease, some sectors have bounced back strongly, such as the Manchester evening economy which was previously severely impacted by the pandemic. Although, recent media articles have suggested difficulties in passengers obtaining taxis;
- “In Manchester, which has a good night-time economy, it’s a real problem,” says Derek Brocklehurst, manager of Cresta Cars, one of the city’s largest private hire firms. After more than 40 years in business, he says: “We feel embarrassed, unable to fulfil our customers’ requirements, with people having to wait one or two hours.” Some drivers only want to work workdays since the pandemic, he says: “They’ve taken on different jobs, their work-life has changed and they are spending more time with their families.”²¹*

Travel and Tourism

- 3.22 The Covid-19 pandemic has impacted the travel and tourism sector heavily as restrictions in the UK and worldwide have hindered, and in cases prevented domestic and international travel. Unnecessary travel was first discouraged in March and was again impacted by the second and third English lockdowns in November 2020 and January 2021.
- 3.23 In June 2021 Eurocontrol published a report stating that the UK aviation sector has lost a total of 2 Million flights since March 2020, a 72% decrease from 2019. In March 2020 the average daily flights departing and arriving Manchester was 135, a 79% decrease from 2019, and flights travelling to or from the UK were down by 49%²². In 2019 Hackney Carriages and PHVs made up just under a third (29%) of the transport modes used by passengers travelling to/from Manchester Airport²³.
- 3.24 The reduction in air travel impacted the demand for airport Hackney Carriage and PHV journeys, with the lack of passengers needing a taxi to travel to or from airports in the UK declining during the pandemic and thus negatively impacting airport trade for Hackney Carriages and PHVs.
- 3.25 The continued reduced levels of aviation travel, due to wider international Covid-19 restrictions still in place, taxi journeys to / from Manchester airport are likely to continue to be operating at below pre-pandemic levels. It is not clear when tourism activity will reach pre-pandemic growth levels.

¹⁹ APPG submission by UK Hospitality, February 2021

²⁰ The Leisure Consumer 2021, Emerging from the Pandemic

²¹ <https://www.theguardian.com/uk-news/2021/nov/13/taxi-taxi-why-its-suddenly-getting-so-hard-to-find-a-cab>

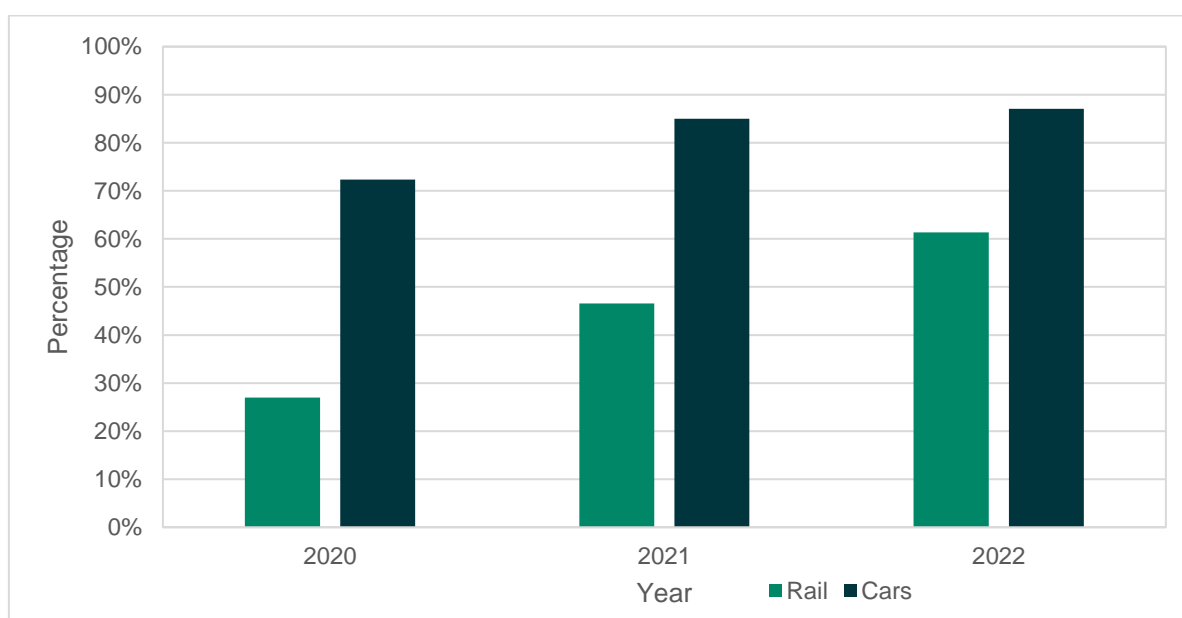
²² Covid-19 Impact on EUROCONTROL Member States, EUROCONTROL States Briefing, June 2021

²³ <https://www.statista.com/statistics/303820/modes-of-transport-to-manchester-airport-uk-united-kingdom/>

Transport Hubs – Access to Rail

- 3.26 Taxis also provide an important role serving a mode of access to transport hubs for onward public transport travel, especially at larger rail stations across GM.
- 3.27 GM has a number of important railway stations that see high volumes of passengers every year. Two of the busiest in the region are Manchester Piccadilly and Manchester Victoria. Both these stations normally have busy taxi ranks. However, Covid-19 has had a significant impact on the number of people travelling by rail as the advice to work from home and avoid unnecessary travel was issued from the government at the start of the pandemic.
- 3.28 Data released from DfT show the percentage of rail users from the start of the first national lockdown between 2020 and 2022 compared against cars²⁴; this is shown in **Figure 3-5**. Rail patronage levels continue to recover in 2022 however they still remain significantly below pre-pandemic levels with less than two thirds (61%) of pre-pandemic rail trips made. In comparison, car has recovered to 87% as a 2022 average compared to pre-pandemic levels.
- 3.29 For taxis serving transport hubs across Greater Manchester, this significant reduction in rail travel will result in a substantial reduction in the demand for taxis to serve these transport hubs. Although this data does not provide direct findings for GM stations it does give an insight into the significant reductions in train travel which undoubtedly have had an impact on those drivers and operators that rely on train passengers, though it is noted that taxi makes up a small proportion of overall station access trips.

Figure 3-5 Use of transport modes: Great Britain, since 1 March 2020 – Rail and Car



Source: <https://www.gov.uk/government/statistics/transport-use-during-the-coronavirus-covid-19-pandemic>

Note: Data does not represent full year date and corresponds to the following period – 01/03/2020 to 14/03/2022

²⁴ <https://www.gov.uk/government/statistics/transport-use-during-the-coronavirus-covid-19-pandemic>

Commuting

- 3.30 Commuting made up 11% share in trip purpose for Hackney Carriages and PHVs in 2019²⁵, with the ONS Labour Force Survey implying that 70% of the entire UK labour force was commuting most working days prior to the pandemic. Government restrictions and advice to work from home across the nation saw around 40% of the population working from home during the pandemic. This resulted in a significant decrease in commuting numbers, therefore fewer people relied on the Hackney Carriage and PHV sector.
- 3.31 It is expected that many people will adopt the new working habit of commuting to the workplace part time and working from home part time. The demand for taxis for commuting is therefore expected to rise again, however not to the extent that it was pre pandemic²⁶.

Shopping

- 3.32 Shopping made up 14% of all Hackney Carriage and PHV trips in 2019, however the introduction of the lockdown in March 2020 saw the closure of all non-essential high street businesses. Restrictions on shopping continued throughout the pandemic and sales in April 2020 were 19% lower than in February 2020, with significant decrease in the number of people making journeys to and from high-street business and retail outlets ²⁷.
- 3.33 Restrictions on non-essential high street businesses eased throughout the pandemic, and now operate with no restrictions, which has seen total retail sale volumes recover to above pre-pandemic levels. From data presented in **Section 2**, for both Hackney Carriage and PHVs, the IRR (also known as city centre) had the largest decreases in taxis operating by GM area across 2019-2021 compared to locations inside and outside the M60. This would align to the sector concentrations within GM with the IRR having the highest proportion of leisure and hospitality uses.

Review of Covid-19 impacts on vehicle sales market

Overview

- 3.34 The UK vehicle market has made a slow recovery due to a combination of manufacturing issues and lack of consumer purchasing. The vehicle market has seen a slow return to pre-pandemic manufacturing levels, experiencing supply chain interruptions, export disruption and the closure of manufacturing plants. In January 2021, commercial vehicle production, including the production of purpose designated taxis, was 31.5% lower when compared to pre pandemic production in January 2020²⁸.

²⁵ Taxi and Private Hire Vehicle Statistics: England 2021

²⁶ <https://www.economicsobservatory.com/what-is-the-future-of-commuting-to-work>

²⁷ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/articles/impactofthecoronavirusCOVID19pandemiconretailsalesin2020/2021-01-28#:~:text=1.-Main%20points,remain%20below%20pre%2Dpandemic%20levels>

²⁸ <https://www.smmmt.co.uk/vehicle-data/manufacturing/>

- 3.35 A lack of consumer purchasing could explain the reduction in the number of Hackney Carriages and PHVs registered between 2019 and 2022. According to PwC Research's QuantiBus survey, there has been a lack of vehicle purchasing as uncertainty has increased and the demand outlook has declined, this is likely due to financial constraints following the pandemic²⁹. The lack of vehicle upgrades resulted in a limited second-hand market during the pandemic, used car sales, which form the sales for PHVs, fell by 2.2% in March 2020, however between 2020 and 2021 the used car market has seen an increase of 11.5%.
- 3.36 This section provides an update on the changes in market price of new and second-hand taxi fleet. Vehicle price information has been gathered based on the following:
- Extracted from 2019, 2020 and 2021 to examine whether any changes in vehicle sales could be attributed to the Covid-19 pandemic;
 - Prices shown for the most popular taxi fleet for Hackney Carriage and PHV, defined as vehicle make and models which comprise of having a 10% or greater share of the market.
 - Based on estimates, gathered from various sources and, in particular for second-hand vehicles, are subject to other variables including vehicle condition, service history, mileage etc.

New Hackney Carriage

- 3.37 LTI TX4s are the most common Hackney Carriage used in GM with 844 registered in 2019. The LTI TX fleet conjure the 'typical' Hackney Carriage look, however the TX4 is no longer in production as of 2017 so therefore only second-hand vehicles are available. In a shift to cleaner vehicles, LTI relaunched as the London Electric Vehicle Company (LEVC) in 2017 with new petrol/diesel Hackney Carriages no longer available.
- 3.38 **Table 3-1** and **Figure 3-6** displays the estimated cost for the most popular Hackney Carriage vehicles (greater than 10% market share).

Table 3-1 Estimated Cost for New Hackney Carriage vehicles

Vehicle Make	Upgrade	Estimate Cost 2019	Estimate Cost 2021	Estimate Cost 2022
LTI TX4 / LEVC TX	LEVC TX Electric Taxi	Prices starting from £55,599	No data	£63,000*
Mercedes Vito	Euro 6 Upgrade	£42,000	£42,000 - £47,000	From £39,995
Peugeot E7	Euro 6 Upgrade	£30,000	£24,000	£26,000

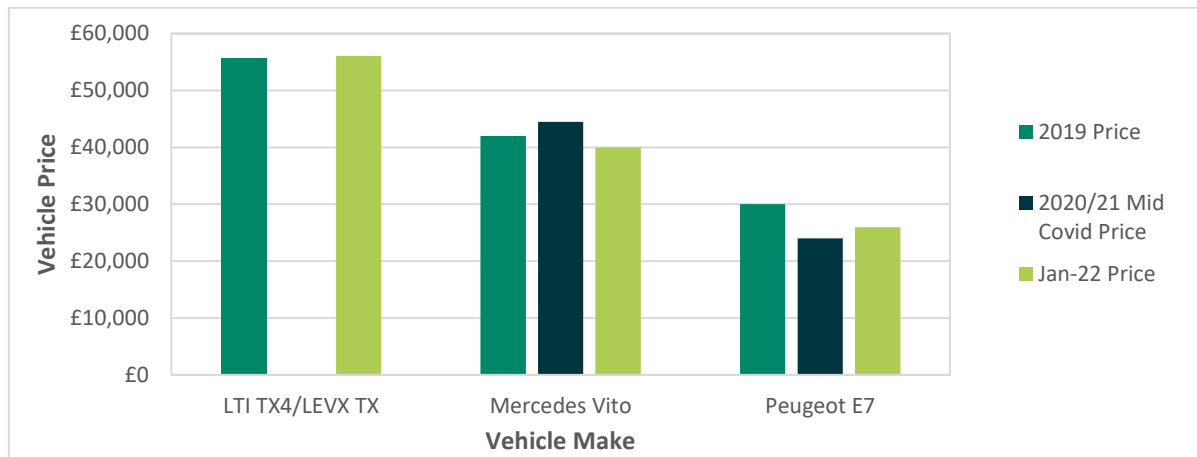
Source Cabdirect³⁰ and LEVC³¹ (2022)

* Does not include Plug-in Taxi Grant (PITG)

²⁹ <https://www.pwc.co.uk/industries/automotive/insights/uk-automotive-demand-in-the-wake-of-Covid-19.html>

³⁰ <https://www.cabdirect.com/>

³¹ <https://levc.com/event/tx-offer-national/>

Figure 3-6 Estimated Cost for New Hackney Carriage vehicles

Source: Cabdirect³² and LEVC³³ (2022) Note: No new Hackney Carriage vehicle price information was available for LTI / LEVC in 2020/21

- 3.39 For new purpose-built Hackney Carriages, manufacturers do not release their prices online and require individual enquiries to gain a quote, for this reason alternative websites were used to get 2022 prices. The LEVC TX price was obtained from UK price spec guide. The other Hackney Carriage style taxis (Mercedes Vito and Peugeot E7) were priced from Cabdirect.com, directed from Mercedes Benz website as approved Hackney Carriage provider.
- 3.40 Vehicle price information for new Hackney Carriage vehicles across the period 2019-2022 show that there have been minimal price changes across the most popular models observed however there are slight variances by model type.

New PHV

- 3.41 **Table 3-2** and **Figure 3-7** displays the estimated cost for the most popular PHV vehicles within GM.
- 3.42 There has been a number of vehicle model changes for Toyota across the observed period. Due to the Toyota Avensis, Auris and Prius no longer being available to purchase as new vehicles in the UK market³⁴, the vehicle price information has been combined to represent a typical, popular PHV model. Other available models within a similar price range, such as the Toyota Corolla are available to purchase in the UK. It is worth noting that both, the Toyota Corolla and Skoda Octavia are available as petrol-hybrid models.

Table 3-2 Estimated Cost for New PHVs

Vehicle Make	Upgrade	Estimate Cost 2019	Estimate Cost 2021	Estimate Cost 2022
Toyota Prius	Euro 6 Upgrade	£19,500 - £27,500	£25,000 - £29,000	£30,000
Skoda Octavia	Euro 6 Upgrade	£18,500 - £31,500	£21,500 - £30,500	£22,000 - £37,000

Source: Toyota³⁵ and Skoda³⁶ (2022)

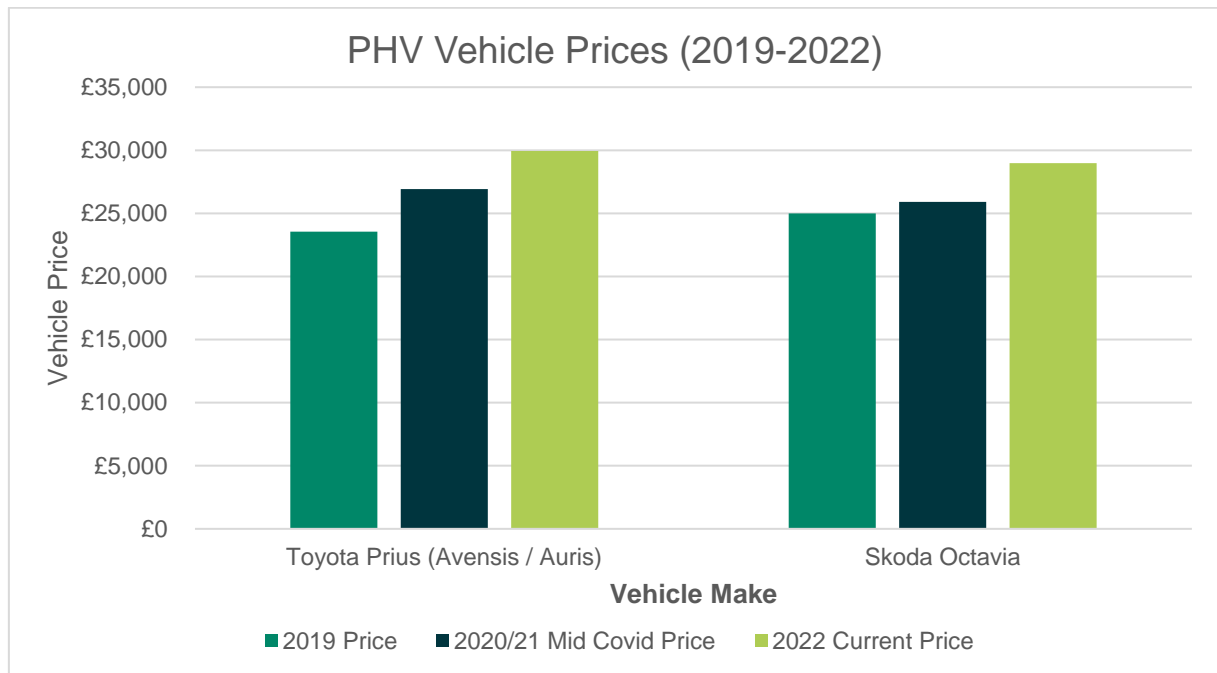
³² <https://www.cabdirect.com/>

³³ <https://levc.com/event/tx-offer-national/>

³⁴ <https://www.toyota.co.uk/new-cars/prius/>

³⁵ <https://www.toyota.co.uk/new-cars/model-filter?errType=ToyotaModelNotFound&model=prius>

³⁶ <https://cc.skoda-auto.com/gbr/en-GB/summary-scenic?activePage=summary&aid=ced75e7b-4b2f-4a66-94c2-43d8bc93337b&color=1Z1Z&configurationId=C7HZXPDH&extraEquipments=UZZCWA2%7CMMKEEM1%7CMMFA7J2%7CGPT1PT1>

Figure 3-7 Estimated Cost for New PHVs

Source: Toyota³⁷ and Skoda³⁸ (2022)

- 3.43 The 2022 market prices were obtained for a mid-specification, new vehicle priced using the dealer websites.
- 3.44 Consistent across both PHV vehicle model types, there has been an upward trend in vehicle prices across the observed period (2019-2022) with Toyota models increasing 21% in 2022 compared to 2019 prices and Skoda Octavia increasing 14% in 2022 compared to 2019 prices. This included 5 vehicles ranging in age from 1 year to 4 years (registered 2018 – 2021). This is compared to the same data collected in 2019.

Second-hand Hackney Carriage

- 3.45 There was a wide range of second-hand prices found in the study conducted in 2019. A price range of £15,500 to £42,995 was found, however it is worth noting that the highest end vehicle was 2019 registered so less than 12 months out at the time of the search. The most common price in 2019 was around £20,000.
- 3.46 The lowest priced vehicle in the same search repeated in January 2022 was £26,995, this is almost £7000 more than the average price in 2019. There was only one vehicle prices within the £20,000 - £30,000 price bracket, all other available second-hand Mercedes Vito's were prices between £35,000 and £40,000. This shows a clear and significant price increase.

<https://www.toyota.co.uk/new-cars/model-filter?errType=ToyotaModelNotFound&model=prius>

<https://cc.skoda-auto.com/gbr/en-GB/summary-scenic?activePage=summary&aid=ced75e7b-4b2f-4a66-94c2-43d8bc93337b&color=1Z1Z&configurationId=C7HZXPDH&extraEquipments=UZZCWA2%7CMMKEEM1%7CMMFA7J2%7CGPT1PT1%7CMGRA8T8%7CGPWZPWZ%7CGPJAPJA%7CGPJ3PJ3%7CGWU1WU1&id=GBR%3Bskoda%3B2022%3BNX33LD%3B1%3BGY02Y02%3Bmda20220124120504%3Ben-GB%3B%3B63003%3B63063&interior=BG&modifiedPages=colors%7Cwheels%7Cengines%7Cextraequipments&snapshotVersion=047fedec-cc29-4574-8822-1acfae823c79&state=NEW&trimline=NX3%7CSE6306363003&visitedPages=colors%7Cwheels%7Cinteriors%7Cengines%7Cextraequipments%7Cservices>

- 3.47 During the desktop study conducted in 2019 for second-hand compliant LTI TX4 it was discovered that there was only one vehicle listed that was CAZ compliant, the vehicle had a 2017 registration plate and was listed for £31,495. This exercise was repeated in 2022 and again only one vehicle was listed at a cost of £28,680. It was therefore worthwhile to again assess the prices of second-hand compliant Mercedes Vito as the second most popular Hackney Carriage as shown in **Table 3-3**. The Mercedes Vito estimate is based on a range of prices available on 18th January 2022. This included 5 vehicles ranging in age from 1 year to 4 years (registered 2018 – 2021). This is compared to the same data collected in 2019.

Table 3-3 Second Hand Compliant Hackney Carriages

	Year of Manufacture	Estimated Cost 2019	Estimated Cost 2022
LTI TX4	2015 – current	£31,495 (2017) *	£28,680 (2016) *
Mercedes Vito	2015 – current	£15,500 - £43,000	£27,000 - £38,500

Source: Online Vehicle Price Data sourced by AECOM (2022)*only one second-hand vehicle for sale at time of research

- 3.48 Due to limitations in second-hand Hackney Carriage vehicle prices, **Table 3-4** provides an overview of the emerging second-hand EV Hackney Carriage market, as stated within Section 2, a second-hand LEVC TX market has started to emerge over the latest few years. As shown in **Figure 2-4**, there has been steady growth in hybrid-electric vehicles from observed ANPR data in GM however the proportion of Hackney Carriages that are electric remain below 1% in 2022.

Table 3-4 Second-Hand EV Hackney Carriage Market

Model	Year	Average Mileage	Average Cost
TX Vista	2018	73,543	£43,750
TX Vista Comfort	2018	77,531	£43,000
TX Vista Comfort Plus	2018	93,004	£42,913

Source: <https://levc.com/>

Second-hand PHV

- 3.49 **Table 3-5** displays the data comparison for the PHV Skoda Octavia. The Skoda Octavia is available in both diesel and petrol engine. As there is a difference in manufacturing years for compliance of the Euro 6 diesel engines and Euro 4 petrol engines the table provides data for both engine types separately, this was provided in the original 2019 study. From this table it is clear that the price of available second-hand Skoda Octavia's has increased between 2019 and 2022. The higher end of vehicles available have increased by circa 10%, whereas the lower end vehicles available have increased by circa 5%. This is reflective of the full second-hand vehicle market.

Table 3-5 Second-Hand Compliant Skoda Octavia PHV

Year of Manufacture	Fuel Type	Price Range 2019	2022 Update
2015 – current	Diesel	£5,500 - £32,000	£6,000 - £35,000
2005 – current	Petrol	£1,500 - £33,000	£7,000 - £39,000

Source: Online Vehicle Price Data sourced by AECOM (2022)

3.50 An assessment of the price change of second-hand non-compliant taxi models was carried out, as in 2019. The data showed that, for Hackney Carriages registered between 2008 and 2014, there was little price difference between the 2019 and 2022 prices. The second hand non-compliant Skoda Octavia prices mirrored the trend as seen in **Table 3-5**, with there being a notable increase in price of available vehicles at both the lower and higher ends of the market. It is worth noting that whilst PHV prices have been presented based on diesel and petrol vehicles, as shown in **Figure 2-5**, there has been substantial growth in hybrid-electric PHVs with 29% of the total observed ANPR movements in 2022 compared to 14% in 2019. Whilst this substantial growth has been seen in hybrid-electric vehicles, the proportion of electric PHVs remains below 1%.

Review of Vulnerability in responding to GM CAP

- 3.51 As part of the 2019 data study a qualitative assessment of vulnerability impacts on the taxi sector was prepared and has since been reviewed in January 2022. This assessment has considered how the Covid-19 pandemic has impacted Hackney Carriage and PHV vulnerability in responding to the GM CAP.
- 3.52 The review findings are presented in **Table 3-6** showing that both Hackney Carriage and PHVs were previously highly vulnerable to the introduction of GM CAP, and vulnerability has increased considerably due to the pandemic.

Table 3-6 Taxi Sector Vulnerability Review

	Vulnerability				
	Oct 2019	Situation: Oct 2020		Situation: Jan 2022	
	GM CAP (Pre-Covid-19)	Covid-19 (2020)	GM CAP (Post-Covid-19)	Covid-19 (2022)	GM CAP (Post-Covid-19)
Hackney Carriage	High	Disadvantaged / Negative Affected	Very High	Disadvantaged / Negatively Affected	Very High
PHV	High	Disadvantaged / Negative Affected	Very High	Disadvantaged / Negatively Affected	Very High

- 3.53 The Hackney Carriage sector within GM was vulnerable to GM CAP pre-Covid-19 due to the high proportion of non-compliant vehicles that are currently operating within GM. During the early part of the pandemic, the COVID restrictions in place in 2020 and 2021 resulted in a significant reduction in demand for Hackney Carriages, this placed Hackney Carriage owners in a more challenging financial position when responding to GM CAP. Since Covid-19 restrictions have eased, there has been some recovery of the sector, although not to pre-pandemic levels. Also, due to increased average age of GM Hackney Carriage fleet, and reduced natural turnover of the fleet during the pandemic, Hackney Carriage owners continue to face a considerable challenge when responding the GM CAP.
- 3.54 Similarly to Hackney Carriages, the PHV sector was vulnerable to GM CAP pre-COVID, and has experienced considerable challenges during the pandemic, due to restrictions on sectors serving the taxi market and changing travel behaviours which have affected the taxi market as a whole. Whilst Covid-19 guidance has eased and there has been some recovery of the sector, PHVs continue to face changes in recovery from increasing vehicle prices and the availability of new PHV type vehicles has been identified as a key factor currently impacting on the PHV sector. This will add extra financial pressure to the already vulnerable sector when responding to GM CAP.

4. Conclusion

Summary of Current Conditions

4.1 This note has sought to capture the following key considerations:

- A review of current taxi fleet compliance;
- A summary of the impact of Covid-19 in terms of changes to travel behaviour within GM, including changing transport trends and economic trends as a result of the Covid-19 pandemic;
- Pre-pandemic sector-related circumstances;
- Sector-related trends during the pandemic; and
- Evaluation to how sector-related trends have changed and to what extent has this impacted on the ability of taxi owners to meet GM CAP compliance.

Key Risk and Issues

4.2 The challenges faced by the taxi market, mainly associated with the impact of the Covid-19 pandemic, has affected Hackney Carriages and PHVs, to some extent, unequally. However, it is also important to recognise the unbalanced profile and trends of Hackney Carriages and PHVs individually to provide a more balanced view of the key risks and issues. Key risks and issues have been categorised into: pre-pandemic circumstances, Covid-19 impacts and emerging trends and are report below.

Pre-Pandemic Circumstances

- In 2019, only 12% of Hackney Carriages and 29% of PHVs serving GM were deemed compliant.
- Hackney Carriages operating in GM are typically older than PHVs with the average age of a Hackney Carriage in 2019 being 8 years old compared to 6 years old for a PHV.
- The number of licensed Hackney Carriage vehicles and drivers remained stable across the pre-pandemic period. During this period, the number of licensed PHV drivers increased by 2% in 2019 compared to 2011, the number of licensed PHVs in England has decreased by 3%.
- Average trip length has remained stable for taxis with the average miles travelled by taxi per person per year increasing in England over the pre-pandemic period.

Covid-19 Impacts

- The number of new GM-licensed Hackney Carriages and PHVs was significantly lower during the pandemic compared to pre-pandemic levels. The number of GM licensed taxis decreased from 2019 to 2022 by 5.4% for PHVs and 7.7.% for Hackney Carriages.
- The average age of Hackney Carriages and PHVs has grown older in 2020 and 2022 compared to pre-pandemic levels (2019) with taxi fleets estimated to be one year older than pre-pandemic.

- There has been no significant shift in fuel types for Hackney Carriage with 89% still fuelled by diesel. However, there has been a shift from diesel to hybrid-electric for PHVs, rising from 14% in 2019 to 29% in 2022. The EV uptake remains very low at less than 1% for both Hackney Carriages and PHVs.
- Industries served by the taxi industry have suffered heavily through Covid-19. Leisure trips comprised of over half of all taxi journeys in 2019 with Government restrictions having a significant impact on the leisure market, particularly bars, pubs, restaurants and nightclubs. Equally, other important taxi markets have been constrained during the pandemic, stemming from Government restrictions on commuting, shopping and tourism.
- A higher proportion of Hackney Carriages operate within the Regional Centre (inside the Inner Ring Road (IRR)) compared to PHVs with the Regional Centre believed to have the highest impact from the Covid-19 pandemic across GM due to the location of a large number of hospitality and leisure businesses. This is in-keeping with the taxi licensing data which states that approximately 55% of Hackney Carriages are licensed to Manchester City Council. The proportion of within IRR trips between 2019 and 2021 fell for both Hackney Carriages and PHVs.

Emerging Trends

- Emerging from the pandemic, taxis are older, more non-compliant than previously assumed and there are fewer taxis and taxi drivers operating in GM compared to pre-pandemic levels.
- Hackney Carriages, in particular, are likely to have faced a more significant impact from the Covid-19 pandemic, compared to PHVs, due to their prominent origins and destinations being located in Manchester City Centre where sectors have been hit the hardest. Both Hackney Carriage and PHV owners are likely to have lower cash reserves to upgrade their vehicles than prior to the pandemic.
- Hackney Carriages are older, more non-compliant and being upgraded at a slower rate compared to PHVs.
- The ability for Hackney Carriage owners to upgrade their vehicles is likely to be more constrained compared to PHV owners due to the higher cost of replacement vehicles and the likelihood of more substantive Covid-19-related impacts. However, there is some evidence to suggest that whilst Hackney Carriage vehicle prices are stable, and even falling for certain vehicle types, the vehicle prices for new and second-hand compliant PHVs are increasing in-line with rising wider car market vehicle prices.

Appendix A – List of Data Sources

List of data sources used within this document.

Document Title	Date	Description	Relevance to GM CAP
Chapter 1			
Mayor of Greater Manchester writes to Government reiterating call for non-charging Clean Air Zone	May 2022	Announcement, provide background on current status of GM CAP https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/news/mayor-of-greater-manchester-writes-to-government-reiterating-city-region-s-call-for-non-charging-clean-air-plan/	Current Status of GM CAP
GM CAP Technical Documents (various)	various	All available at Technical Documents Clean Air Greater Manchester (cleanairgm.com) https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Published Technical Reports for GM CAP
Technical Note 10: Taxi Behavioural Responses Note	July 2019	https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Background on Taxi Sector
Technical Note 19: Taxi and Private hire Vehicle Fleet Research		https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Background on Taxi Sector
Technical Note 12: Evidence of the Impact of a 2021 Implementation of a CAZ C (Without exemptions)	July 2019	Describes analysis carried out by GM to assess the risks of implementing a CAZ C in 2021 without also implementing a two-year sunset period as was proposed in the OBC. https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	analysis of vulnerability by sector, based on the proportion of the fleet that would be non-compliant
T4 Appendix A (Modelling for Consultation)	Jan 2020	Discusses the modelling tools used to assess the impacts of GM CAP https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Modelling tools used to assess impacts of GM CAP
Deliberative Research	Nov 2019	Research was carried out with taxi drivers potentially in scope for the scheme, including deliberative research and surveys of van owners https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Understanding the taxi sector and views of taxi owners
GM CAP Impacts of Covid-19 Report	June 2021	Considers the impacts of the pandemic on GM and reviews the potential and actual impacts of Covid-19 on the GM CAP. https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Review of impacts of Covid-19, including impacts on taxis
Chapter 2			
Proportion of Vehicle Types Registered by Area	Jan 2022	https://www.gov.uk/government/statistical-data-sets/all-vehicles-veh01	Proportion of the fleet
T4 Appendix V (previously TN37)	2021	(Current version not published) – Provides details of vehicle proportions by mode, including future year forecasts	Number of impacted vehicles
Taxi Fleet Data	Various (2019 – 2022)	Comparison of the changing taxis fleet over time. Sourced from the GM Taxi Licencing data (raw data not published) e.g. age profile / fuel type / number of taxis	Understand changes in taxi fleet over time
GMP ANPR Data	Various (2019 – 2022)	GMP ANPR data – to review changing characteristics of the vehicle fleet operating within GM	Understand changes to taxis over time
Chapter 3			
Taxi and private hire vehicle statistics, England: 2021	June 2021	https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/taxi-statistics	Understanding make up of taxi operations

Industry Driver Shortages	2021	https://lphca.co.uk/lphca-news/industry-driver-shortages	Research
Taxi? Taxi? Why it's suddenly getting so hard to find a cab	Nov 2021	https://www.theguardian.com/uk-news/2021/nov/13/taxi-taxi-why-its-suddenly-getting-so-hard-to-find-a-cab	Research
APPG submission by UK Hospitality	Feb 2021	https://www.ukhospitality.org.uk/page/APPG	Research
Emerging from the Pandemic	2021	The Leisure Consumer Group https://www2.deloitte.com/content/dam/Deloitte/uk/Documents/consumer-business/deloitte-uk-the-leisure-consumer-2021.pdf	Research
Covid-19 Impact on EUROCONTROL Member States	June 2021	https://www.eurocontrol.int/sites/default/files/2021-06/eurocontrol-brief-on-covid19-impact-spain-en-09062021.pdf	Research
Modes of transport used by passengers traveling to Manchester Airport between 2002 and 2019	2019	Historical mode shares for surface access, Manchester Airport (pre-COVID) – showing high taxi mode share https://www.statista.com/statistics/303820/modes-of-transport-to-manchester-airport-uk-united-kingdom/	Research
Transport use during the coronavirus (Covid-19) pandemic	2022	https://www.gov.uk/government/statistics/transport-use-during-the-coronavirus-covid-19-pandemic	Research
What is the future of commuting to work?	May 2021	https://www.economicsobservatory.com/what-is-the-future-of-commuting-to-work	Research
Impact of the coronavirus (Covid-19) pandemic on retail sales in 2020	Feb 2021	https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproduct/gdp/articles/impactofthecoronavirusCOVID19pandemiconretailsalesin2020/2021-01-28#:~:text=1.-,Main%20points,remain%20below%20pre%2Dpandemic%20levels.	Research
Manufacturing Data	Various	Review of new vehicle production levels & impacts due to the pandemic https://www.smmmt.co.uk/vehicle-data/manufacturing/	Research
Uk automotive demand in the wake of COVID 19	2021	https://www.pwc.co.uk/industries/automotive/insights/uk-automotive-demand-in-the-wake-of-Covid-19.html	Research
Taxi price search	various	Changing prices for taxis https://www.cabdirect.com/	Taxi Prices
LEVC – Taxi Prices	various	https://levc.com/event/tx-offer-national/	Taxi Prices
Toyota Prius vehicle price	various	Review of taxi prices of popular types of PHV https://www.toyota.co.uk/new-cars/prius/	Taxi Prices
Skoda Octavia Prices	Various	Review of taxi prices of popular types of PHV https://cc.skoda-auto.com	Taxi Prices
Chapter 4			
		(No additional Sources in Chapter 4)	
Appendix A			
		No additional Sources in Appendix A	
Appendix B			
Coronavirus (Covid-19) UK Government Dashboard	Oct 2020	https://coronavirus.data.gov.uk/	Background of Covid Timeline

"Greater Manchester's Covid-19 Management Plan: how we control outbreaks"	2022	https://greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/coronavirus/Covid-19-management-plan/	Background of Covid Timeline
"Prime Minister announces new local COVID Alert Levels"	Oct 2020	https://www.gov.uk/government/news/prime-minister-announces-new-local-covid-alert-levels	Background of Covid Timeline
TfGM's C2 Database	various	Traffic flow data was extracted and analysed from TfGM's C2 Database https://tfgmc2.drakewell.com/multinodemap.asp	Information on local traffic impacts
"Budget 2021: Fuel duty rise axed as petrol prices hit record highs"	Oct 2021	Fuel Prices Increase: https://www.standard.co.uk/news/politics/budget-2021-fuel-duty-rise-axed-petrol-prices-record-highs-b962832.html	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"GDP monthly estimate, UK : December 2021"	Dec 2021	GDP information https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproduct/gdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"Average weekly earnings in Great Britain: February 2022"	Dec 2021	Growth in average total pay (including bonuses) of 4.3% and growth in regular pay (excluding bonuses) of 3.7% among employees was seen in October to December 2021 https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/averageweeklyearningsingreatbritain/february2022	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"UK economy latest"	Dec 2022	Information on Goods import and exports https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/economicoutputandproductivity/output/articles/ukeconomylatest/2021-01-25#output	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"Cities Outlook 2022"	Jan 2022	Change in pub and restaurant sales in City Centres and Suburbs. Weekday footfall in Birmingham, Manchester and London https://www.centreforcities.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/01/Cities-Outlook-2022-2.pdf	Information on Economic Related Impacts

Appendix B – Review of COVID Impacts

Overview

- B.1 Travel behaviour and the economy have been impacted by the Covid-19 pandemic and have resulted in changes in the way that people travel and the way businesses operate. In this chapter we will assess some of the key data findings found throughout the period to better understand the levels of impact on transport and travel generally.
- B.2 Chapter 3 focuses on the impacts of Covid-19 on the coach and minibuss sectors.

COVID Timeline

- B.3 In January 2020, Covid-19 first appeared in the UK. By 30th November 2020, there were an estimated total of 1.6 million people testing positive to the virus in the UK with 58,24539 cases resulting in deaths.⁴⁰
- B.4 As stated within the GMCA Covid-19 Management Plan Executive Summary, GM had more than 16,000 confirmed cases and nearly 2,800 people died during the first four months of the Covid-19 pandemic.⁴¹
- B.5 In Summer 2020, North West England was one of the worst affected areas by the pandemic with GM placed under additional restrictions on 31st July 2020. Throughout 2020, GM continued to experience a disproportionate impact to the rest of the UK from these additional restrictions, such as the three-tier system for lockdowns across England. This three-tiered system was first announced by the Government in October 2020 to '*simplify and standardise local rules*'.⁴²
- B.6 On 5th November 2020, the Government imposed a second national lockdown with restrictions on continued business activity in England. These restrictions were in place between 5th November and 2nd December 2020, followed by a return to 3 Tier system restrictions.
- B.7 On 19th December 2020 the Government introduced an additional 4th Tier, with lockdown measures beginning in London and the South East, after having identified the Alpha (Kent) variant, coming into effect on 21st December 2020 until a third nationwide lockdown was re-introduced on 6th January 2021.
- B.8 March 2021 saw Step 1 of the Government's roadmap being introduced, with schools reopening and outdoor gatherings being allowed with the proviso of staying local. April 2021 saw Step 2 of the roadmap allowing limited indoor contact, businesses such as hairdressers to reopen and outdoor hospitality. Step 3 came into effect in May 2021, allowing indoor meetings limited to 6 people and 10,000 people for large sport stadiums. Step 4, on 19th July 2021, saw the remaining venues such as nightclubs reopen, and the removal of most other restrictions.

³⁹ UK deaths is based on deaths within 28 days of a positive test and does not include excessive deaths.

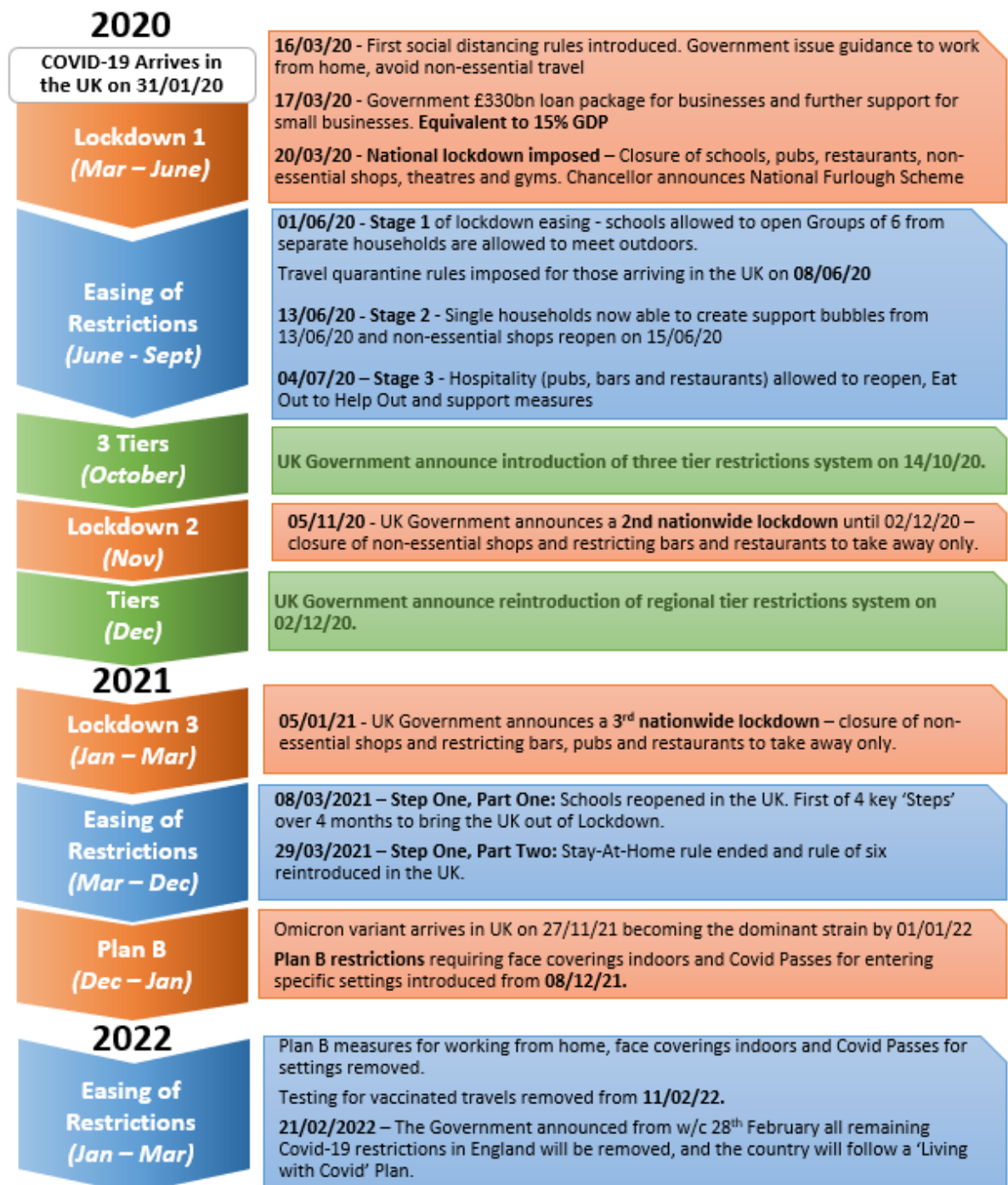
⁴⁰ Coronavirus (Covid-19) UK Government Dashboard <https://coronavirus.data.gov.uk/> (accessed 01/10/20)

⁴¹ Covid-19 Management Plan – Executive Summary (GMCA) <https://greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/coronavirus/Covid-19-management-plan/>

⁴² Prime Minister announces new local Covid Alert Levels - <https://www.gov.uk/government/news/prime-minister-announces-new-local-covid-alert-levels>

- B.9 With the discovery of the Omicron variant, Plan B measures (face coverings indoors and use of Covid Passes at specific settings such as nightclubs), which also recommended working from home where possible, were implemented from 8th December 2021 to 27th January 2022.
- B.10 A summary of the key Covid-19 events and Government responses has been captured in **Figure B-1**.

Figure B-1 Covid-19 Timeline January 2020 to March 2022

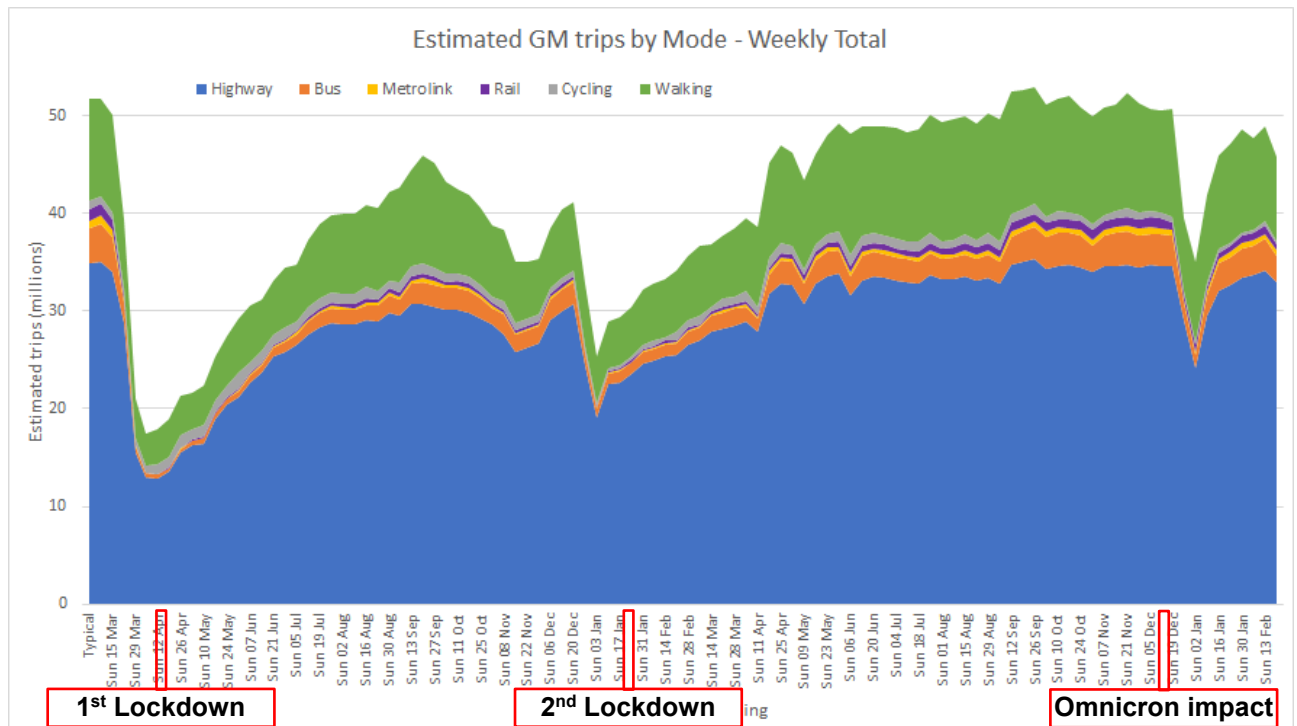


- B.11 The Covid-19 pandemic has had a transformative global impact to health, businesses, the economy, and way we live and interact with one another.

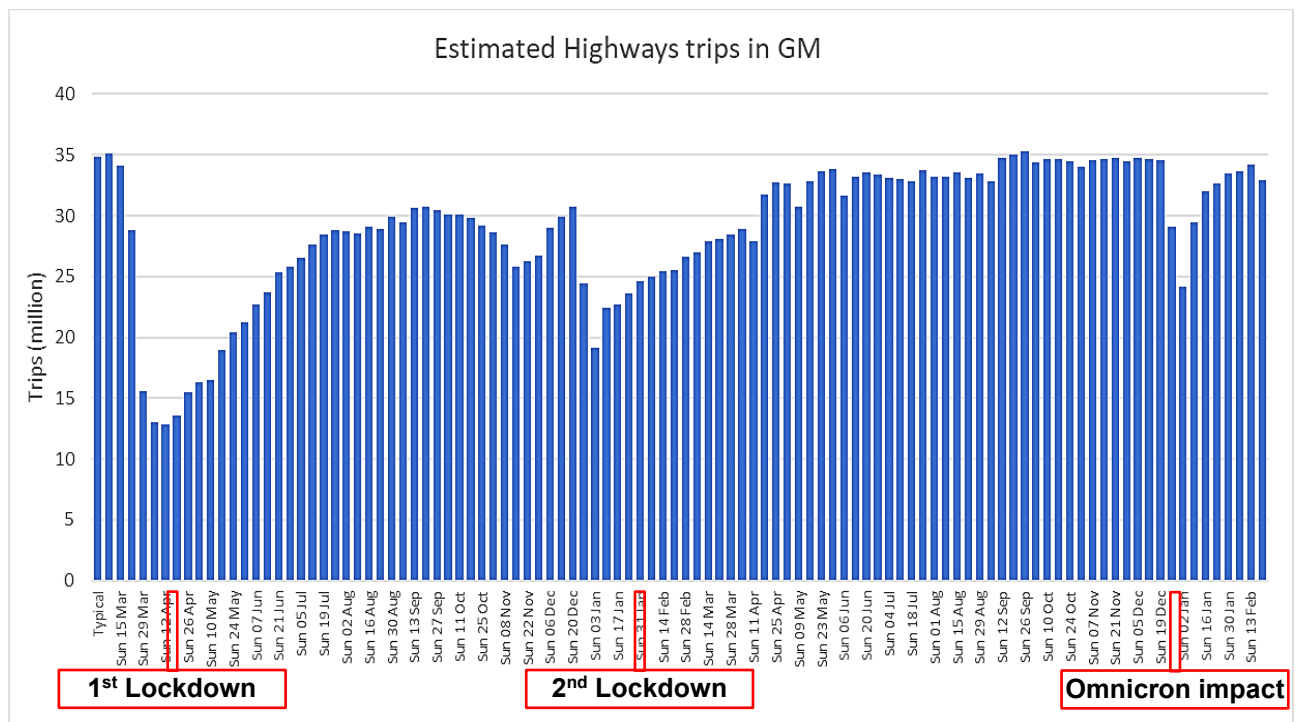
- B.12 At the time of the production of this note in March 2022, the UK appears to be exiting the pandemic. Case numbers are stabilising, death and in-patient numbers remain low, reflecting the positive impact of a successful vaccine programme rollout.
- B.13 However, emerging evidence gathered over the course of 2020 and 2021 has shown that there have been substantial changes to the economy, travel patterns and our behaviours. These changes have been driven by Government policy in the short term, however some of the behaviours adopted during Government lockdowns may continue as restrictions ease. In addition to this, economic impacts following the recent easing of restrictions have resulted in impacts which can be seen locally, nationally and globally within the economy.

Covid-19 Impacts on Travel Behaviour

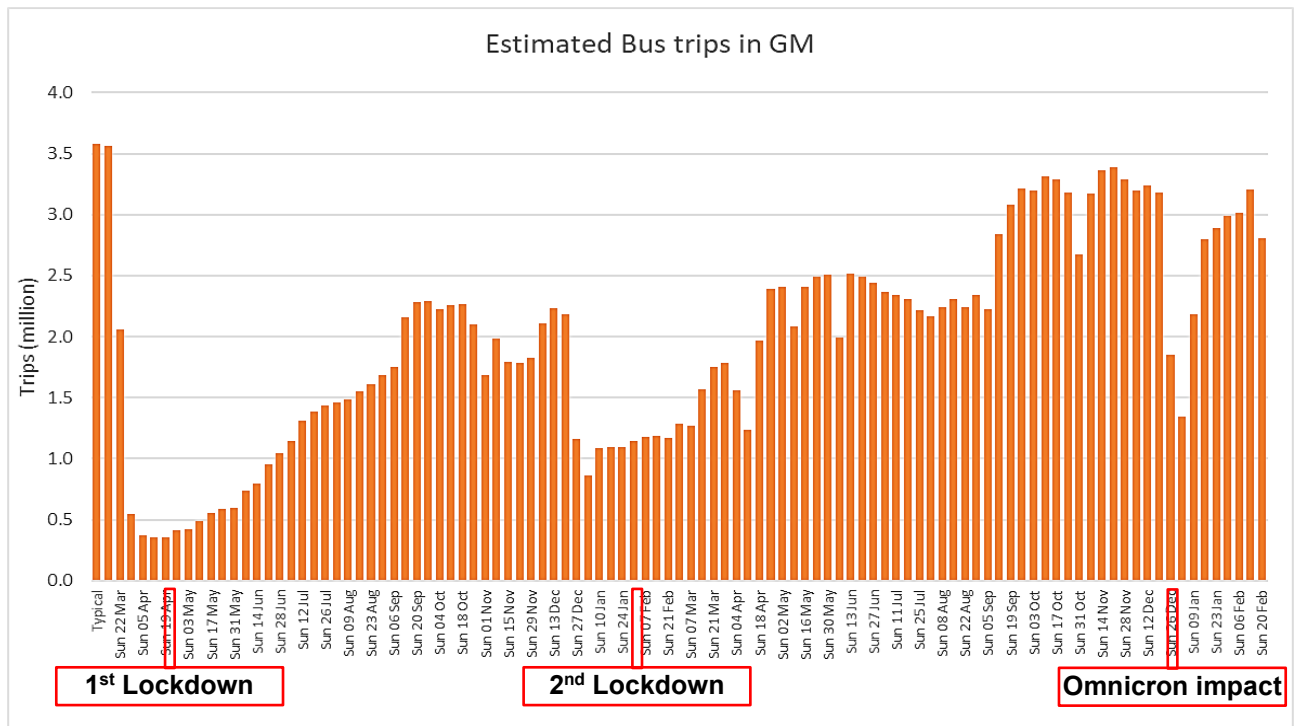
- B.14 Detailed analysis has been undertaken on the impacts of Covid-19 on travel demand within GM to compare 'pre-pandemic' and 'during pandemic' travel levels within GM.
- B.15 As shown in **Figure B-1**, there are a number of Government interventions which have had an impact on traffic levels (for all modes of transport). These include:
- Government guidance issued on 16th March 2020 to work from home 'where possible';
 - Closure of all UK schools to children, apart from those who have key worker guardians on 20th March 2020;
 - Closure of the hospitality and leisure sector on the 20th March 2020 including pubs, bars, restaurants, gyms, theatres etc.;
 - Re-opening of schools to all children in September 2020 alongside the UK Government encouraging workers to return to the office;
 - Implementation and extension of the Government Tiered restrictions;
 - Return to lockdown conditions on 5th November 2020, 2nd December 2020 and 6th January 2021; and
 - Hotel quarantine for travelers from high-risk countries.
- B.16 Since the beginning of the pandemic, travel patterns across the UK have significantly changed, driven by changing Government guidelines and the perception of transmission risks on certain forms of transport. An overview of the changing trends of travel behaviour by mode in Greater Manchester is provided in **Figure B-2 to Figure B-6**; the data has been provided by TfGM. Three key dates have been flagged in each figure: the first and second national lockdowns plus the emergence of the Omicron variant.

Figure B-2 Overview of travel behaviour – All Modes

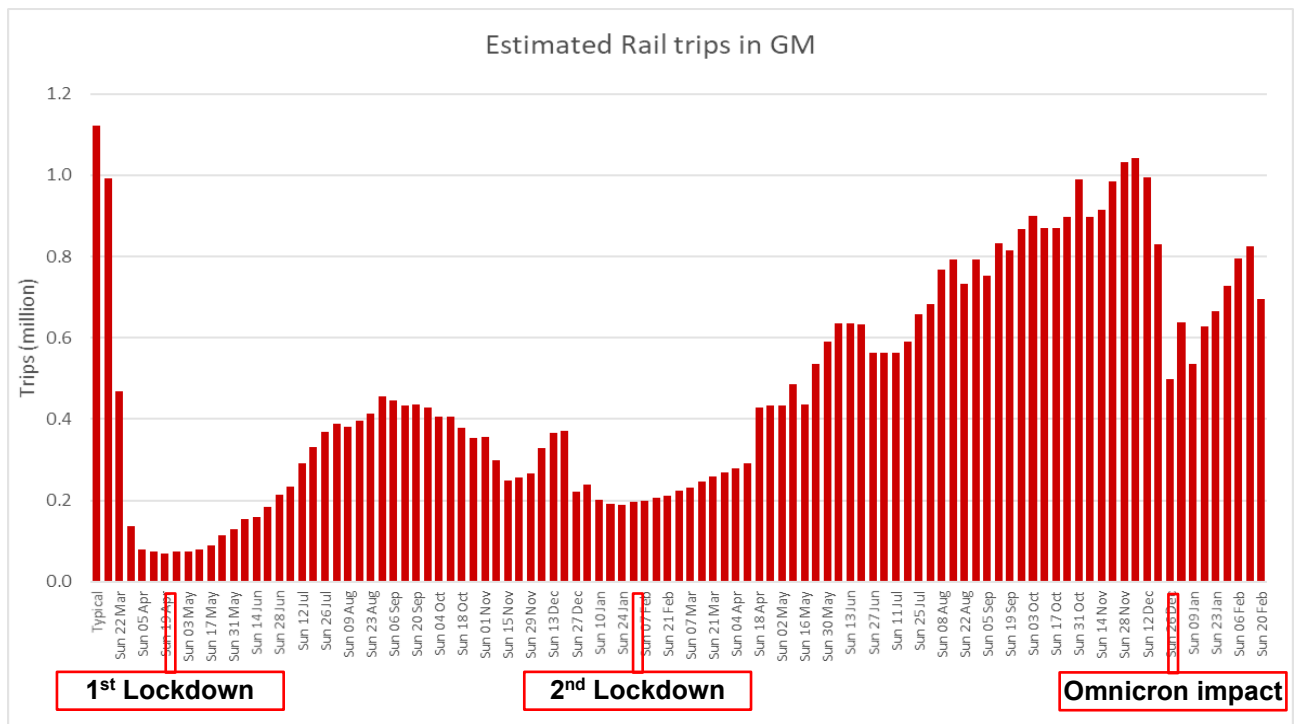
Source: TfGM

Figure B-3 Overview of travel behaviour – Highway

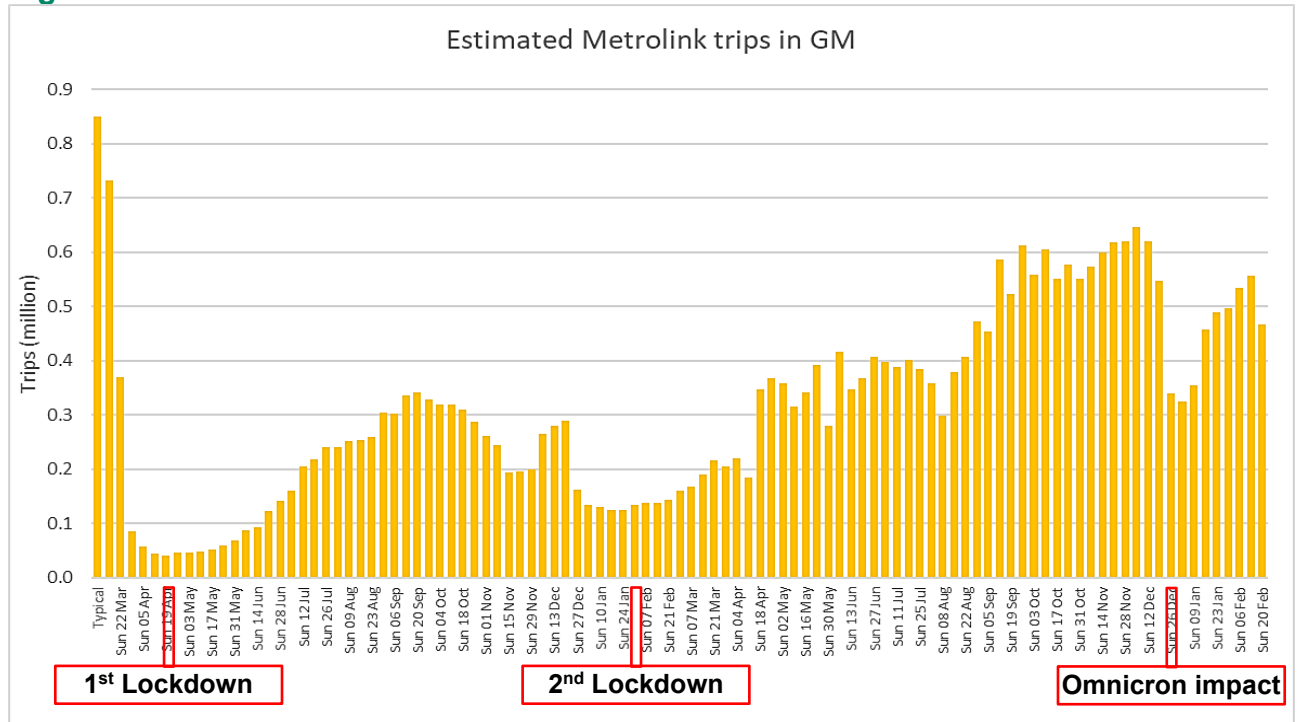
Source: TfGM

Figure B-4 Overview of travel behaviour – Bus

Source: TfGM

Figure B-5 Overview of travel behaviour – Rail

Source: TfGM

Figure B-6 Overview of travel behaviour – Metrolink

Source: TfGM

B.17 These figures illustrate that the impact of the pandemic has been pronounced and the extent to which pre-pandemic travel volumes have returned varies by mode. In summary, at the aggregate level across GM:

- Highway trips are close to pre-pandemic levels (approximately 95% of 'typical'); and
- Public transport trip levels are between 60% and 75% of pre-pandemic / typical levels with bus performing more strongly than rail / Metrolink.

Local Traffic Impacts

B.18 Further analysis was undertaken regarding traffic flows on the local highway network, in order to understand the changing highway demand levels at various points through the pandemic. This has provided an insight into how the Covid-19 related travel guidance and changing behaviours because of the pandemic have impacted travel across GM.

B.19 This analysis has considered changing travel levels at a range of locations across Greater Manchester, to understand how traffic flows have changed on the following:

- Roads near to the Regional Centre;
- Key radial routes;
- Roads adjacent to local centres within GM; and
- Roads accessing centres of employment.

B.20 The analysis has considered several points in time, comparing:

- September 2019 (before the pandemic);

- September 2020 (during the pandemic);
- November 2021 (during pandemic – pre Omicron); and
- January 2022 (most recent, though impacted by Omicron variant).

B.21 Traffic flow data was extracted and analysed from TfGM's C2 Database⁴³. These have been reviewed and presented for the 2-way hourly link volumes, by hour, at the following locations:

- Manchester Rd (A56) / 15m South of Ashlor St, Bury (ATC);
- Princess Rd (A5103) / 100m North of Bonsall St, Hulme, Manchester (ATC);
- Washway Rd (A56) / 40m North of Hunston Rd, Sale, Trafford (ATC);
- Bury New Rd (A56) / 90m North of Kingswood Rd, Prestwich, Bury (ATC); and
- Centenary Way (A576) / 160m North of Guinness Rd, Trafford Park, Trafford (ATC)

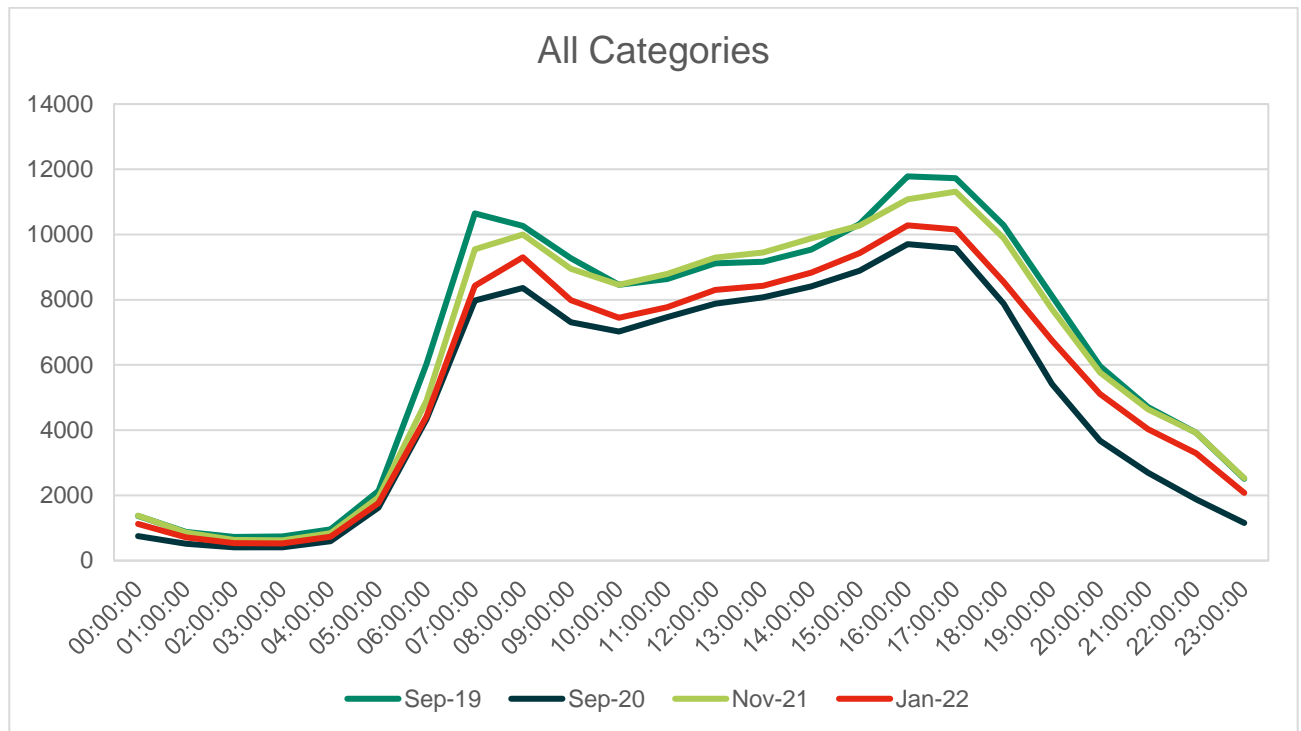
B.22 Using these specific locations around Greater Manchester the traffic behaviours at each location type can be assessed.

General Traffic Conditions

B.23 Averaging the sites identified above (see **Figure B-7**) suggests there has been a change in travel behaviour throughout the pandemic, noting the following key observations:

- The AM and PM peak periods have remained, although there is a dampening down effect on the peaks, with less variation between peak flows and interpeak flows, as the interpeak has continued to perform strongly.
- During late 2021, highway demand was almost back at pre-pandemic levels, there was then a noticeable drop again in demand as a result of the Omicron variant in December 2021.
- There has been some recovery during the peak periods, though they have not yet returned to pre pandemic levels.
- It is also noted that the earlier part of the AM peak is less strong than pre pandemic levels, with the AM peak now occurring 08:00 to 09:00, rather than 07:00 to 08:00 based on the sample of data sites.
- It also appears that the evening traffic (after 19:00) in 2022 is recovering at a slightly faster rate than the daytime traffic flows. This returned to pre-pandemic levels in November 2021 however, there has been a slight drop again in 2022, although it has been less impacted than other times of day. During the 2020 restrictions, the evening economy was significantly restricted by the Covid-19 restrictions in place at the time.

⁴³ <https://tfgmc2.drakewell.com/multinodemap.asp>

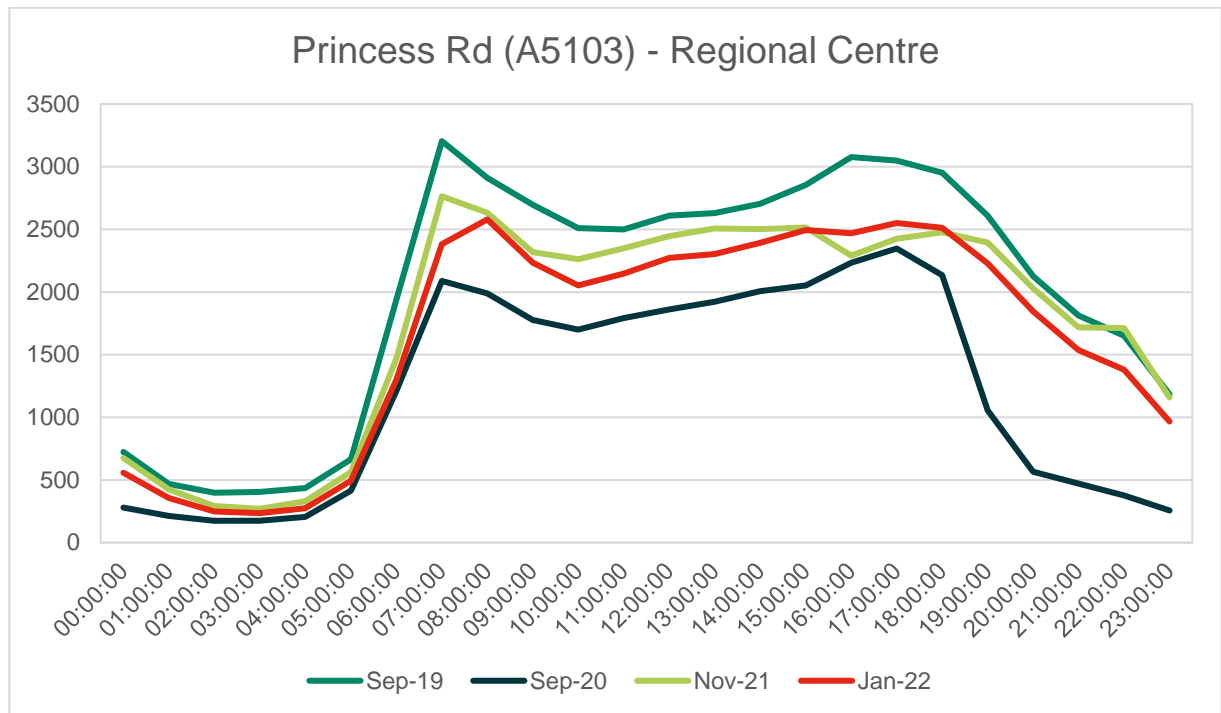
Figure B-7 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (all areas)

Source: TfGM C2 Database

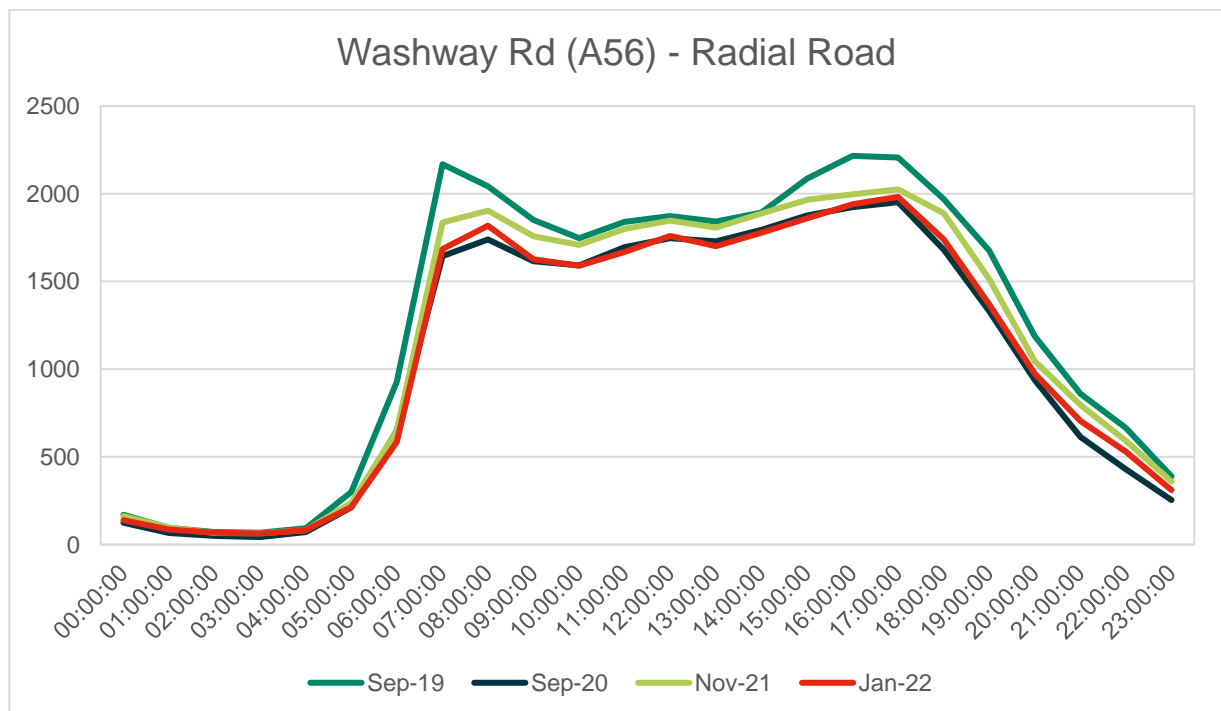
Roads adjacent to the Regional Centre

B.24 Traffic flows adjacent to the Regional Centre have been significantly impacted throughout the pandemic (see **Figure B-8**). The following key trends have been identified:

- From the data assessed, the pandemic (and associated restrictions) appears to have had the greatest impact on regional centre flows, with the largest decrease in 2020 and the slowest recovery;
- The recovery of traffic flows in the peaks is still subdued, though traffic flows during the Omicron variant have been higher than in Autumn 2020, unlike what is seen at local centres;
- In 2020, Covid-19 restrictions had a considerable impact on demand for travel relating to the Regional Centre, with heavy restrictions placed on sectors such as leisure, tourism, and the night time economy. By November 2021, the easing of COVID restrictions resulted in a return of travel demand to the Regional Centre, showing considerable recovery at particular times of day, reaching close to 2019 levels. The 2022 travel demand to Mar-22 also showed a strong return of traffic during the evening periods, though the Omicron variant is likely to be keeping these slightly below pre-pandemic levels at present.
- The early part of the AM peak is now much weaker than prior to the pandemic, and the PM peak is less pronounced. In November 2021, traffic flows were slightly reduced from pre pandemic levels, with the PM peak most strongly impacted. In January 2022, the PM peak appears to be starting to recover, with a slightly later AM peak.

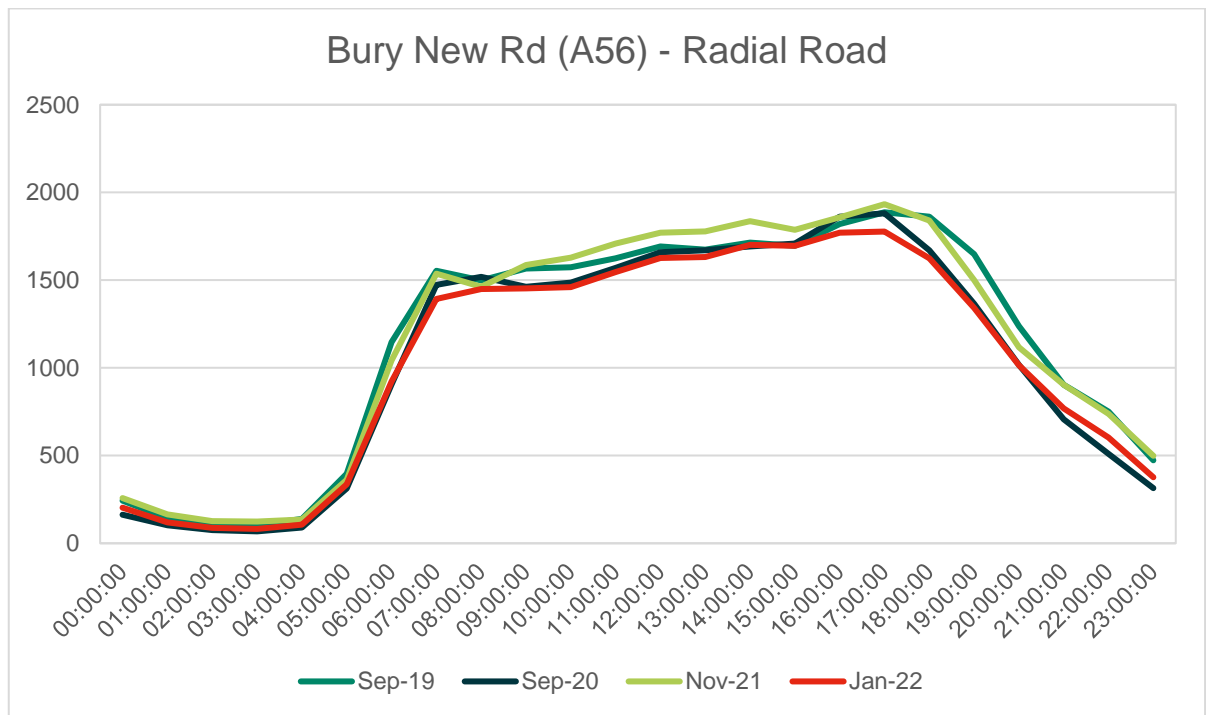
Figure B-8 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Regional Centre)**Radial Roads**

- B.25 On Washway Road in Sale (see **Figure B-9**), its proximity close to the M60, and as a key radial route, has resulted in a high level of traffic demand at various points throughout the pandemic. The site is also close to the Local Centre of Sale. Demand has remained strong at the various points assessed although, as with most other locations, the peak periods are showing slightly lower demand in 2022.

Figure B-9 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Radial Roads Outside M60)

- B.26 Another key radial route north of the Regional Centre is Bury New Road (see **Figure B-10**). This site is also a key radial, though also serves local centres, such as at Prestwich. This location has shown a strong recovery of travel behaviour with travel at certain times of day exceeding pre-pandemic levels, especially during the interpeak, both in autumn 2020, autumn 2021 and currently in 2022. The evening period has, however, shown a slower recovery.

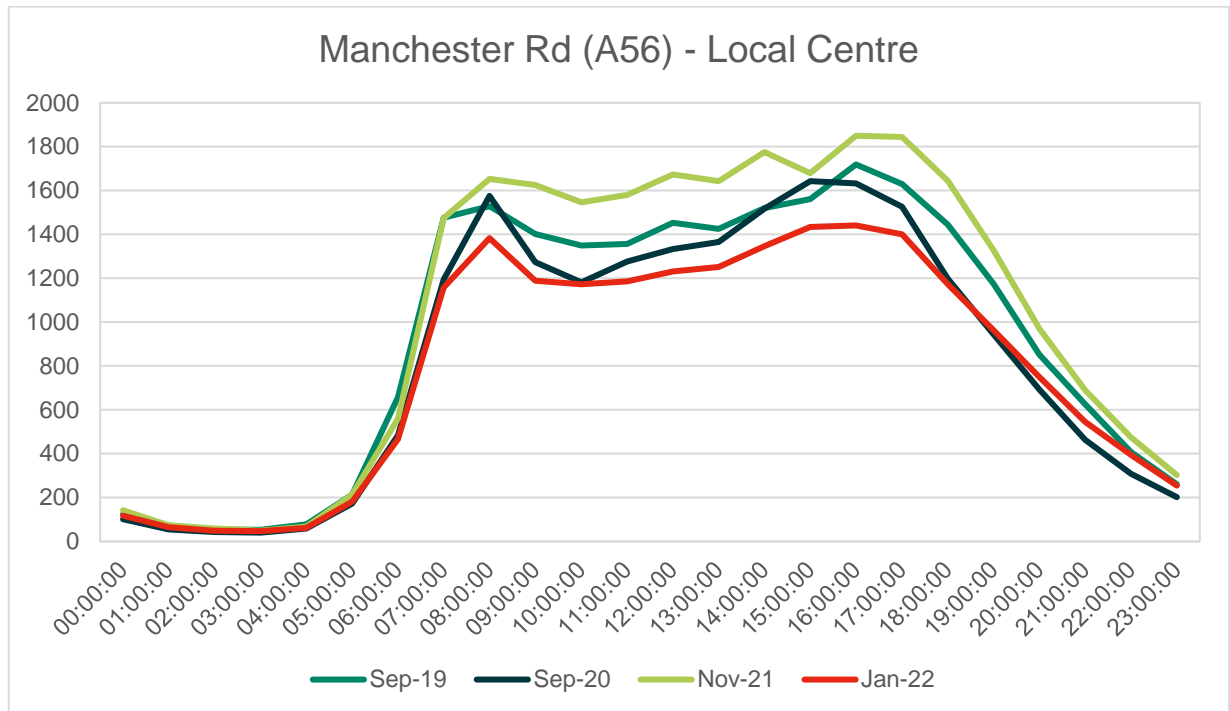
Figure B-10 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Radial Roads Inside M60)



Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location N of Kingswood Rd, Prestwich (Near to M60 J17)

Local Centres

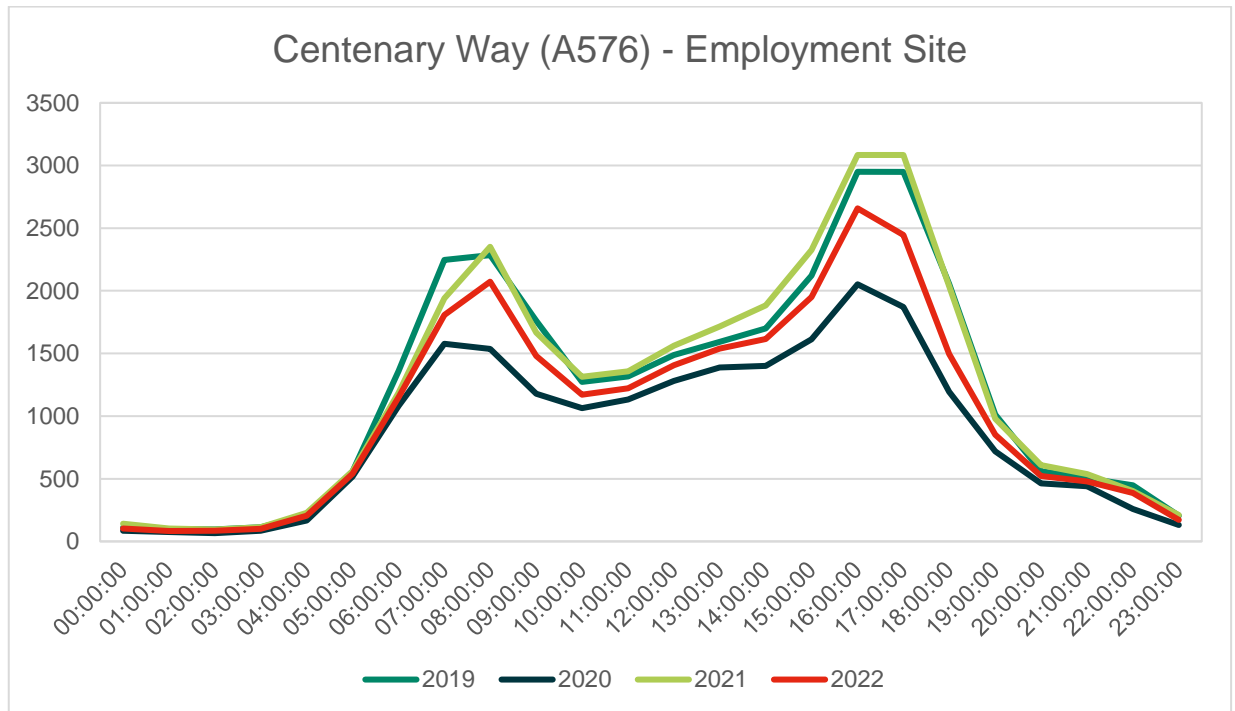
- B.27 Throughout the pandemic, as the UK Government eased travel guidance, travel demand in the vicinity of local centres, have bounced back strongly. **Figure B-11**, shows the A56 Manchester Road near Bury, which experienced a strong bounce back effect in Autumn 2020, when travel restrictions were eased. **Figure B-11** shows the later part of the AM peak and the early part of the PM peak exceeding pre pandemic levels, plus a strong interpeak and was likely an impact of more localised travel.
- B.28 By the end of 2021, demand had exceeded 2019 pre-pandemic levels by a clear margin, however this demand fell significantly in January 2022. The recent 2022 data shows the impacts of restrictions associated with the Omicron variant which has suppressed traffic flows once again.

Figure B-11 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (adjacent to Local Centres)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location S of Ashlor St, Bury

Centres of Employment (Trafford Park)

- B.29 Trafford Park is a major site of employment within Greater Manchester, with traffic flows accessing this employment area changing significantly during the pandemic.
- B.30 During the limited easing of travel restrictions in Autumn 2020, traffic flows to/from Trafford Park remained low, with limited return of higher peak time travel flows. This was possibly due to the higher levels of working from home at the time. The more recent data from November 2021 shows flows higher than pre-pandemic levels. January 2022, though impacted by the Omicron variant, shows a recovery of peak hour travel demand, close to pre pandemic levels, although the early part of the AM peak and the later part of the PM peak show a slightly weaker recovery. Interpeak travel is also similar to pre pandemic levels (See **Figure B-12**).

Figure B-12 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Centres of Employment)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location Trafford Park, Trafford

Summary

- B.31 The review of local traffic flows at various locations across GM has shown considerable variations in changing travel behaviour by location, when compared to pre-pandemic levels. This is likely to be impacted by changing travel habits, although the recent Omicron variant is likely to be impacting some travel behaviour in the 2022 data, as shown in **Figure B7**, general traffic levels in Autumn 2021 showed overall recovery in traffic flows above pre-pandemic levels.
- B.32 The change in travel behaviour by location since September 2019 is summarised in **Table B-1**.
- B.33 Considering the position in November 2021, when travel patterns were least affected, it is notable that Local Centre traffic flows were higher than previously whilst the Regional Centre flows were still much reduced. For radial routes and employment centres, overall (daily) levels were back to pre-pandemic but with some variation during the day; the morning peak being less pronounced but the interpeak higher.

Table B-1 Traffic flow changes by location type from September 2019 to January 2022

Location Type	Period	Change relative to Sep-19 (Index=100)			
		Sep-19	Sep-20	Nov-21	Jan-22
Regional Centre	AM	100	67	88	81
	IP	100	73	95	88
	PM	100	41	92	85
	Eve	100	26	95	85
	Daily	100	61	88	83
Radial inside M60	AM	100	98	98	93
	IP	100	98	105	96
	PM	100	101	102	96
	Eve	100	80	94	83
	Daily	100	92	101	91
Local Centres	AM	100	103	108	90
	IP	100	96	115	88
	PM	100	94	113	86
	Eve	100	74	110	87
	Daily	100	90	111	86
Employment Centre	AM	100	69	95	86
	IP	100	83	108	94
	PM	100	61	102	79
	Eve	100	74	99	91
	Daily	100	74	102	88

Source: TfGM C2 Database

Economic Related Impacts

Introduction

- B.34 Changes in the economic situation are also likely to have had an influence on travel behaviour. The section below presents the trends for a range of factors impacting the economy, several of which are likely to impact the way people travel and businesses operate.

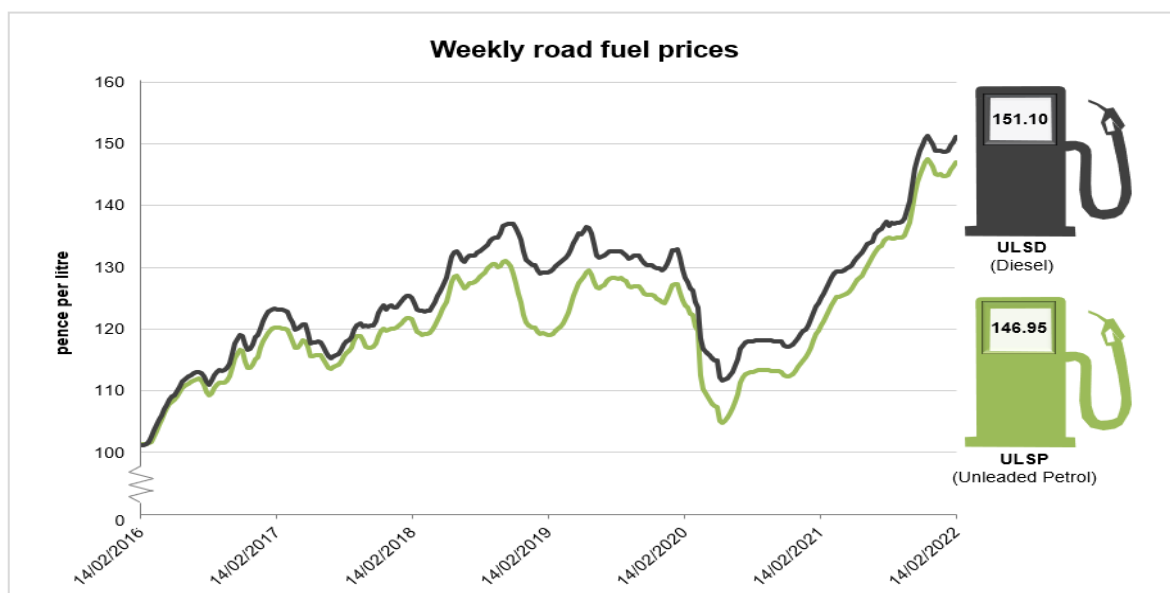
Fuel Prices

- B.35 There are six companies (four oil companies and two supermarkets) that feed into the weekly fuel price survey prepared by the government. These companies cover around 65% of the market. The change in fuel price is displayed in **Figure B-13**.

B.36 The price of road fuel is volatile over shorter time periods, with prices regularly rising and falling. The key trends from during the pandemic are:

- At the start of 2020 prices appear to have been on the decline. There was then a significant fall in both Diesel and Unleaded Petrol in early 2020, corresponding with the first national lockdown.
- During the second part of 2020, prices appear to be stable, with prices beginning to rise steadily throughout 2021 in line with global oil market prices.
- There is a steep rise in prices towards the end of 2021, reaching record highs. This corresponds with a sudden rise in post-pandemic energy demand. This has triggered a tax freeze on petrol and diesel for the twelfth year in a row⁴⁴.
- In September 2021 long queues and forecourt closures were witnessed, caused by panic buying throughout the country, sparking a fuel shortage in Britain.

Figure B-13 Weekly Road Fuel Prices



Source: gov.uk

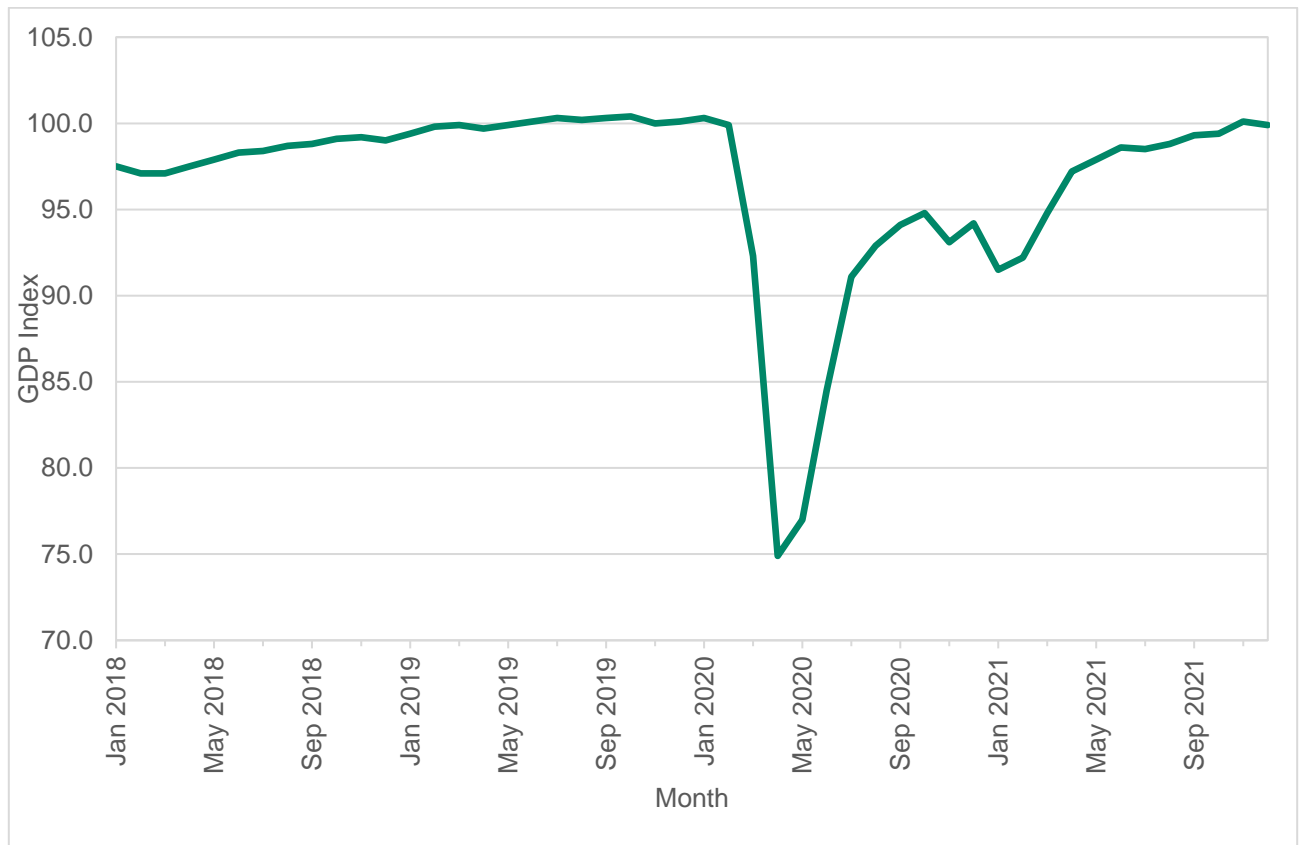
B.37 It was already likely that the price of fuel would remain unsteady for some time as a consequence of the impact of the pandemic and recent events in Ukraine have brought additional uncertainty to that market.

GDP

B.38 From bulletins on the ONS data website⁴⁵ the end of 2021 saw a drop in GDP by 0.2%, to equal the pre pandemic level of February 2020. In December 2021 services and construction are both above pre-pandemic levels, while production remained below. Consumer facing services fell within December, driven by a fall in retail, 8.4% below pre-coronavirus levels, contributing to the GDP fall in December 2021 (see **Figure B-14**).

⁴⁴ <https://www.standard.co.uk/news/politics/budget-2021-fuel-duty-rise-axed-petrol-prices-record-highs-b962832.html>

⁴⁵ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021>

Figure B-14 GDP in the UK (Index, 2019 = 100)

Source: ons.gov.uk/economy⁴⁶

- B.39 Growth in average total pay (including bonuses) of 4.3% and growth in regular pay (excluding bonuses) of 3.7% among employees was seen in October to December 2021⁴⁷. In real terms (adjusted for inflation), total and regular pay fell for the year by 0.1% and 0.8% respectively.

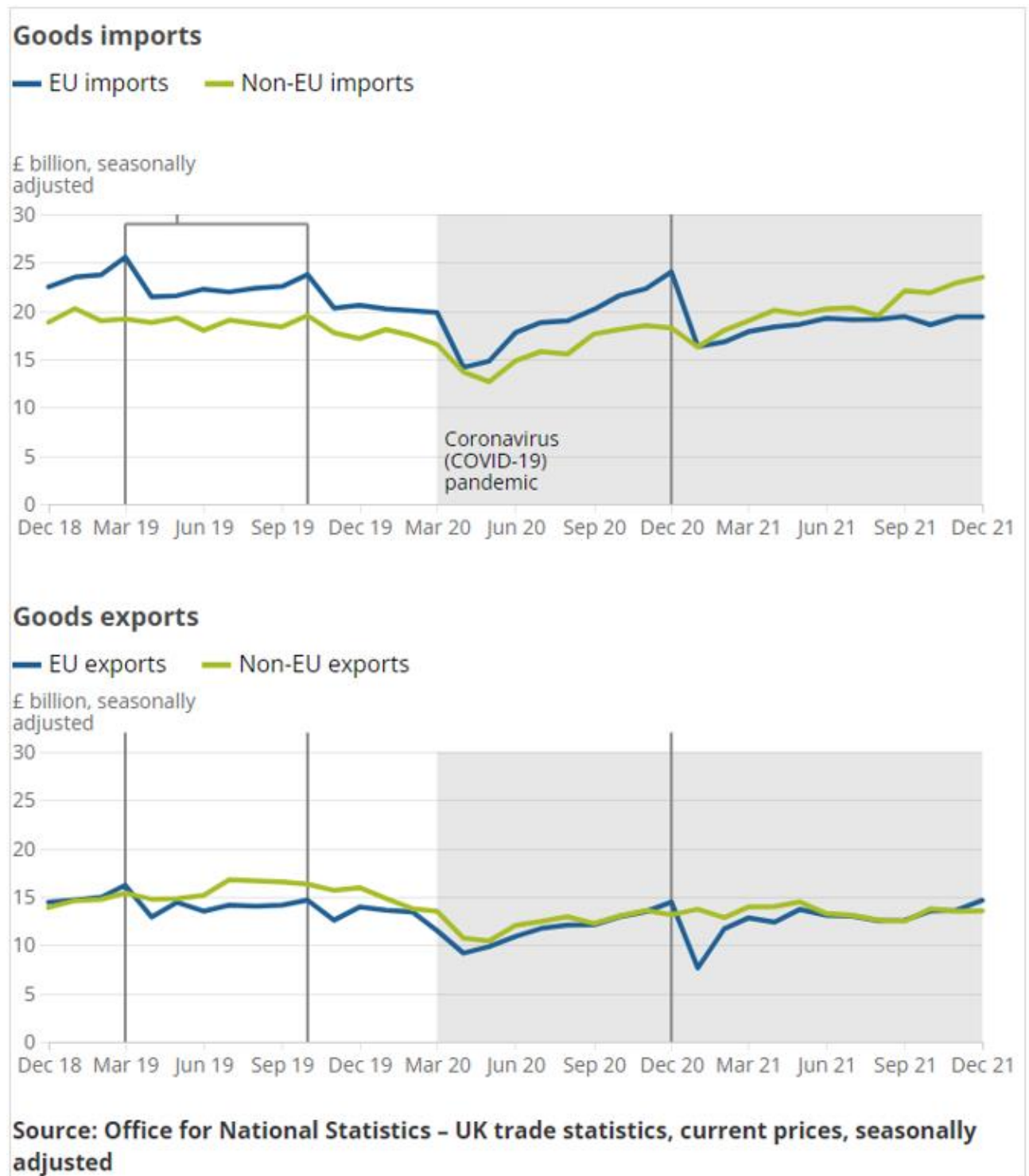
Imports and Exports

- B.40 **Figure B-15** shows the trends in UK goods imports and exports throughout 2019, 2020, and 2021. After an initial decrease in imports at the beginning of the pandemic, this appears to have recovered. There was another significant decrease at the end of 2020, however imported goods are on the increase back to pre-pandemic levels. There was less impact on exports, with these remaining steady throughout.

⁴⁶ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021>

⁴⁷

<https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/averageweeklyearningsingreatbritain/february2022>

Figure B-15 Import and Exports

Source: ons.gov.uk/economy⁴⁸

Centre for Cities – Cities Outlook

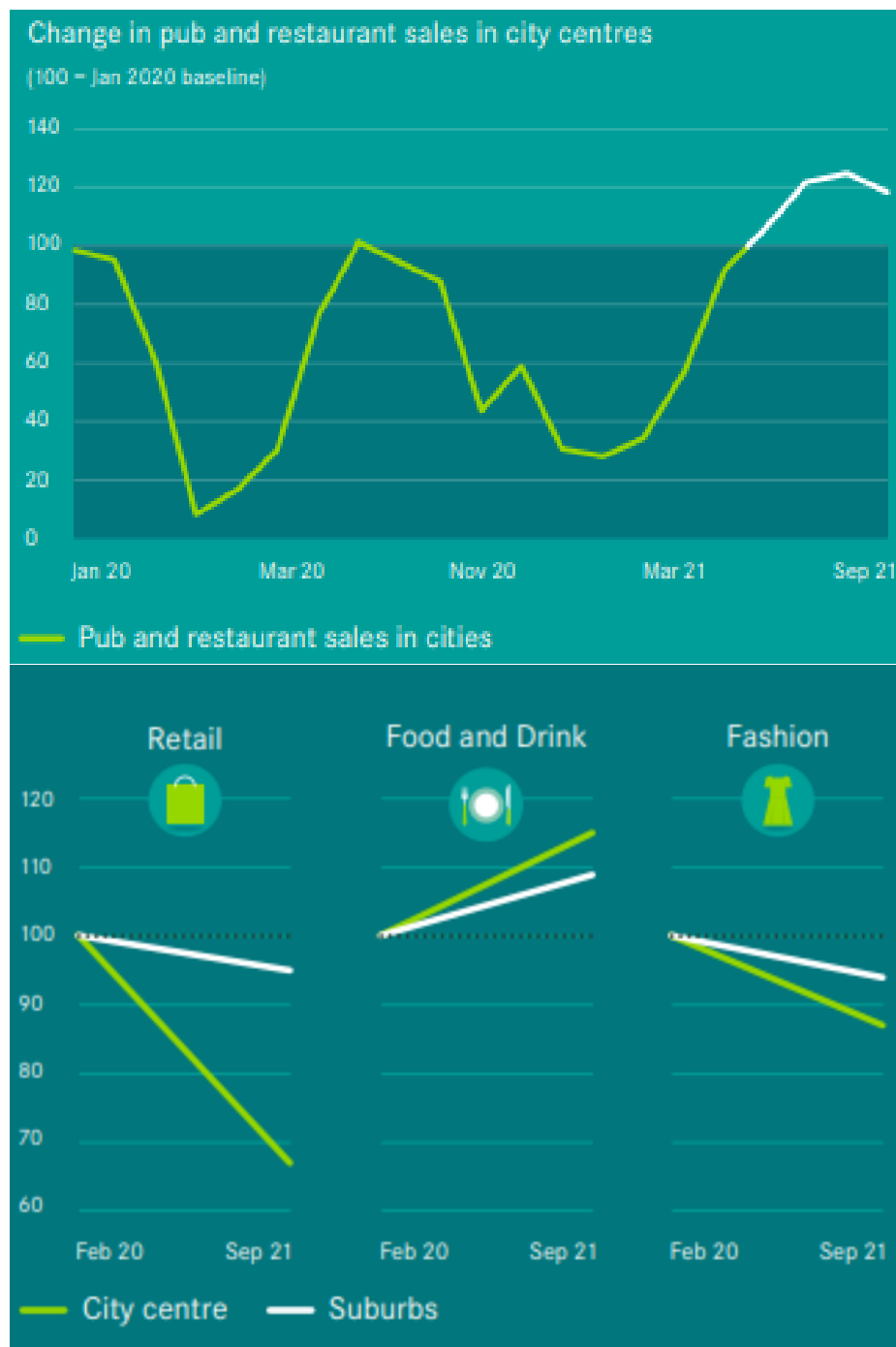
- B.41 Centre for Cities produced the Cities Outlook 2022 report looking in-depth at the state of UK high streets, to get a sense of the short-term impact of the pandemic on Britain's town and city centres, and the long-term consequences and implications this has for the Government's levelling up agenda. This report showed that there was a quick and considerable shift away from high streets to online

⁴⁸ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/economicoutputandproductivity/output/articles/ukeconomy/latest/2021-01-25#output>

shopping during the pandemic. However, in most cities the shift stalled, or slightly fell again once shops reopened.

- B.42 The Cities Outlook report also studies the impacts on pubs and restaurants, stating that the fashion sector was hit harder than pubs and restaurants. **Figure B-16** shows the trend in sales throughout 2020 and 2021. There are clear decreases in sales corresponding to the national lockdowns but in all instances, these soon recover when the sector reopens. This is also reflected in the suburbs, with retail and fashion experiencing a slight decline from Feb 2020 to September 2021 but food and drink on a steady incline.

Figure B-16 Change in pub and restaurant sales in City Centres and Suburbs

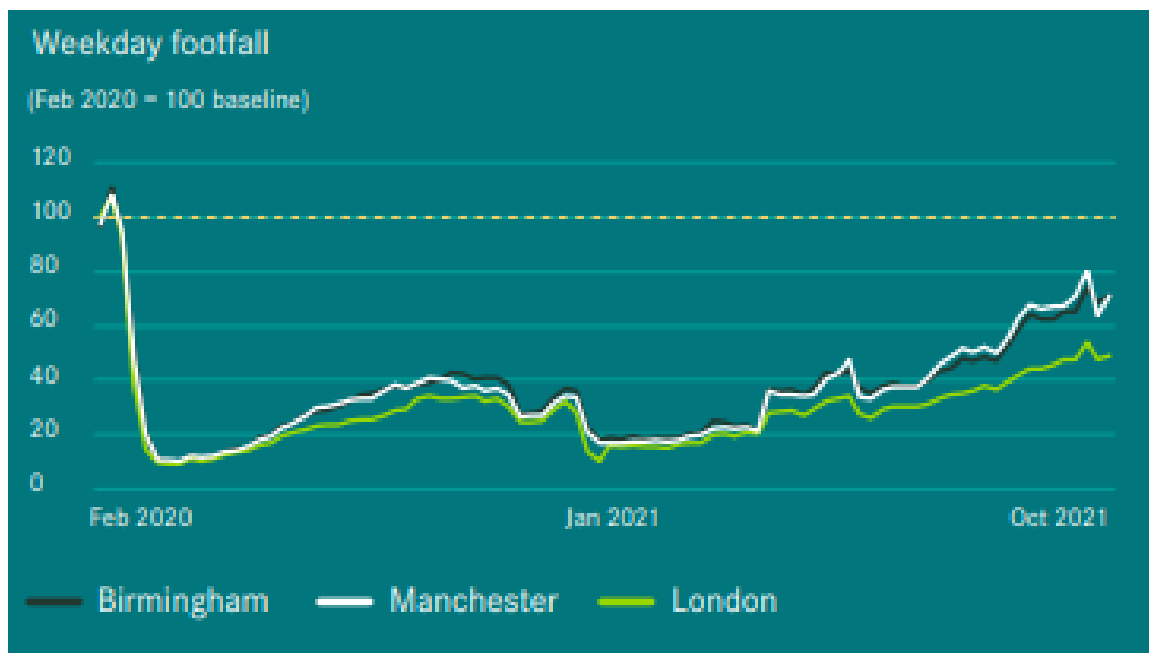


Source: ons.gov.uk/economy⁴⁹

⁴⁹ <https://www.centreforcities.org/>

- B.43 Due to the work from home regulations and, for many, working from home becoming a regular part of the working week, it is feared the reduced footfall in cities will have a lasting effect on retail, hospitality, and transport sectors. **Figure B-17** show the weekday footfall in London, Manchester and Birmingham. Although not yet back to pre-pandemic levels, there is a steady climb in footfall in the major cities with Manchester appearing to recover more quickly than Birmingham, and London taking considerably longer.
- B.44 The more significant impact on London may be related to the impact of Covid-19 on international tourism.

Figure B-17 Weekday footfall



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy

This page is intentionally left blank

Greater Manchester's Clean Air Plan to tackle Nitrogen Dioxide Exceedances at the Roadside

Appendix C - Technical Note: Current issues in the Van Sector

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

June 2022

1. Introduction

Background

- 1.1 After the initial OBC submission, a series of technical notes were published setting out the results of analysis and research carried out to better understand the vehicles in scope for the scheme. For vans, this included in particular Technical Note 3: Analysis of the Freight Market, Technical Note 12: Evidence of the impact of a 2021 implementation of a CAZ C (without exemptions), and Technical Note 20: GM Specialist Goods Survey Results Summary¹.
- 1.2 Further notes were produced setting out the development of analytical tools for freight, with the latest published summary of that work provided in T4 Appendix A of the Modelling for Consultation². Research was carried out with vehicle owners potentially in scope for the scheme, including deliberative research³ and a survey with 800 van owners⁴.
- 1.3 This evidence formed the basis of the development of the Option for Consultation. From March 2020, it became clear that the pandemic would affect the Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP); a programme of work was carried out in 2020/2021 to better understand the possible impacts of the Covid 19 pandemic on the GM CAP, published as the Impacts of Covid Report in June 2021⁵. This evidence, alongside feedback from the Consultation, was used to inform the revised GM CAP as approved by the ten GM local authorities in June/July 2021.
- 1.4 At that time, GM identified a number of possible risks to the GM CAP, which included concerns about the risk of vehicle price increases and the impact of any further lockdowns in the UK or countries in the supply chain.
- 1.5 This report, which was originally developed in January 2022, draws a series of findings and conclusions to better understand the circumstances affecting van owners in Spring 2022 (based upon the previous' GM CAP implementation date) and the implications for the GM CAP and surrounding policy framework.
- 1.6 Since Spring 2022, there have been further dramatic changes to the economic context in the UK which are not explicitly addressed in this report but are set out in **Appendix E**. A range of factors associated with the impact from war in Ukraine, increased costs of energy and fuel, changes to Bank of England base rates and forecasts, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis have combined to create a context of increased financial hardship for businesses and families.

Structure of Note

- 1.7 The remaining sections of the report are structured as follows:
 - Section 2 provides an overview of the van sector in GM;

¹ All available at [Technical Documents | Clean Air Greater Manchester \(cleairgm.com\)](https://technicaldocuments.cleairgm.com)

² [https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpqbyv1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4 - Appendix A Behavioural Response Cost Models and Demand Sifting Tool.pdf](https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpqbyv1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4_-_Appendix_A_Behavioural_Response_Cost_Models_and_Demand_Sifting_Tool.pdf)

³ [GM CAP Deliberative Research ALL - Spring 2019.pdf \(ctfassets.net\)](https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpqbyv1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4_-_GM_CAP_Deliberative_Research_ALL_-_Spring_2019.pdf)

⁴ [CCTS Listening Exercise \(ctfassets.net\)](https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpqbyv1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4_-_CCTS_Listening_Exercise.pdf)

⁵ [GM CAP- Impact of COVID Report \(ctfassets.net\)](https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpqbyv1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4_-_GM_CAP-Impact_of_COVID_Report.pdf)

- Section 3 describes the national van market trends and vehicle volumes;
- Section 4 describes issues affecting the demand for vans;
- Section 5 describes issues affecting the supply of vans;
- Section 6 sets out the impact of supply and demand on van prices;
- Section 7 considers the impact of supply constraints and price rises on the GM CAP; and
- Section 8 provides a summary of the key findings and recommendations.

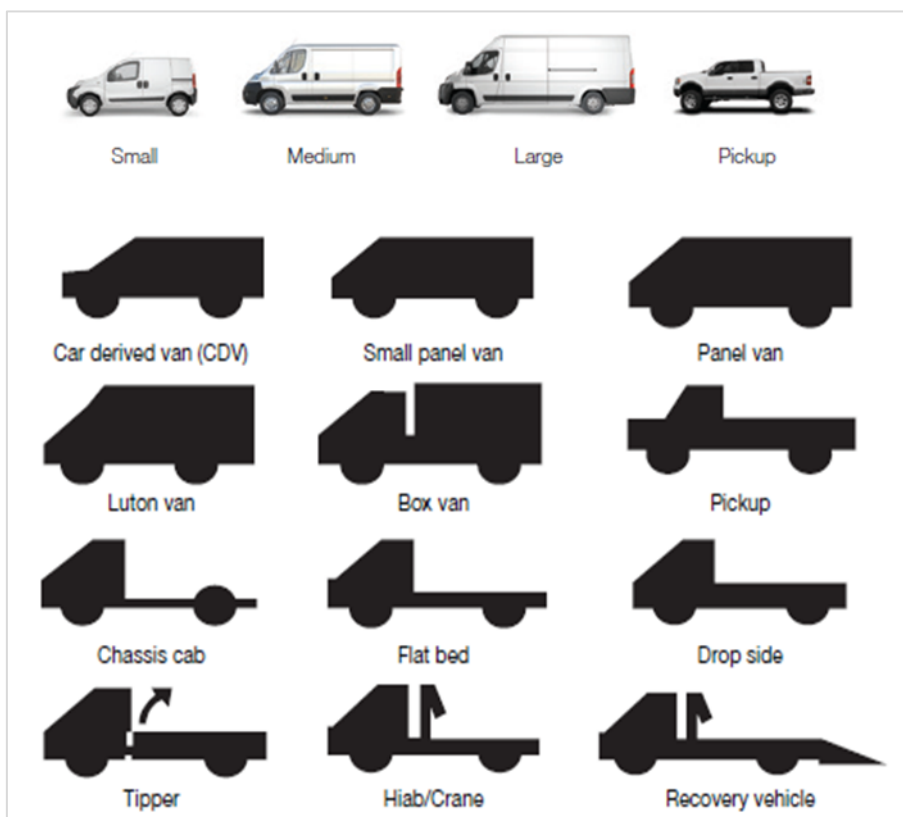
1.8 In addition, **Appendix A** provides a list of data used to inform the report and **Appendix B** reviews the recent changes in travel behaviour within GM through the pandemic up until January 2022.

2. Overview of the van sector in GM

Diversity and importance of the Van Sector

- 2.1 Vans are vital to the UK economy. Nationally, 3.4 million people use or depend on vans for their work and half a million people drive a van as the main part of their job. In total, vans support 10% of the UK's workforce, delivering a combined wage bill of £56bn or 11% of GDP⁶.
- 2.2 There has been a 56% growth in the van sector since 2000, mainly in the larger van market. This has been driven by an increase in the number of self-employed tradespeople and the rapid rise in online shopping. The pandemic has strengthened the trend towards online shopping, with many (especially older) people shopping online for the first time⁷.
- 2.3 More than three quarters of vans are medium or large, and the van market encompasses a wide range of vehicle types, as shown in **Figure 2-1**. Some vehicles will include refrigeration or other modifications, and many van owners will have fitted out their van interior to include shelving, for example.
- 2.4 Vans serve a wide range of sectors, as illustrated in **Figure 2-2**. A quarter of GM's vans fleet serves the construction sector (24%), with other major sectors including wholesale & retail (16%), manufacturing (13%), and transport & storage (9%).

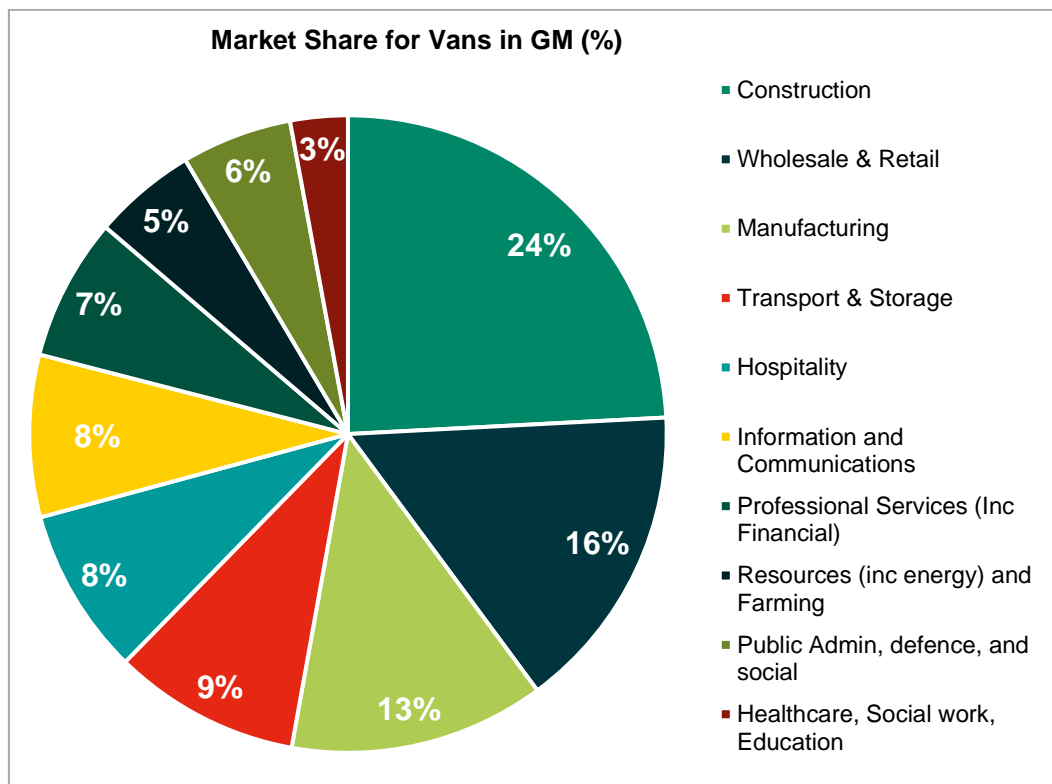
Figure 2-1 Vehicle Types Classified as a Van



Source: Ford Commercials

⁶ Data throughout this section sourced from [Note 3 - GM CAP Analysis of the Freight Market \(ctfassets.net\)](https://www.ctfassets.net/)

⁷ Statista Accessed 5th January 2022 <https://www.statista.com/statistics/1230225/changes-in-online-buying-among-uk-consumers-since-covid-19/>

Figure 2-2 Market share by industrial sector for Vans in GM

Source: <https://www.smmmt.co.uk/wp-content/uploads/sites/2/SMMT-Light-Commercial-Vehicles-Delivering-for-the-UK-economy.pdf>

- 2.5 GM carried out analysis considering how vulnerable different sectors were to the GM CAP. This was carried out before the pandemic in Autumn 2019, and then revisited in Autumn 2020 based on evidence of the impact of Covid on each sector⁸. A summary of that analysis is shown in **Figure 2-3**.
- 2.6 There is a high proportion of sole traders in the most vulnerable sectors. Van drivers have low average incomes, with analysis suggesting that the cost of the charge could equate to 15% of average income.
- 2.7 Longer vehicle lifespans are associated with smaller businesses and sole traders most commonly found in sectors such as removals and construction. Companies operating larger fleets, such as those in the food and retail sectors, typically replace vehicles more frequently and are therefore more likely to have CAZ compliant vehicles at present, although some parts of those sectors have been badly affected by the pandemic in terms of extended periods of closure or constrained operations.
- 2.8 Research conducted by GM in Autumn 2019⁹ with 800 sole traders and microbusinesses found that 48% of businesses change their LGVs when they are over 10 years old or no longer fit for purpose, in comparison with 20% who update their vehicles before they are 4 years old¹⁰.
- 2.9 The largest sector, construction, makes up 24% of the GM market and includes over 21,000 vehicles affected by the GM CAP, 38% of the total overall affected vans. LGVs in the construction sector have the longest lifespans, with an average replacement age of 15 years.

⁸ [GM CAP- Impact of COVID Report \(ctfassets.net\)](https://www.ctfassets.net/gm-cap-impact-of-covid-report)

⁹ [CCTS Listening Exercise \(ctfassets.net\)](https://www.ctfassets.net/ccts-listening-exercise)

¹⁰ [CCTS Listening Exercise \(ctfassets.net\)](https://www.ctfassets.net/ccts-listening-exercise)

Figure 2-3 Vulnerability to the GM CAP by van-owning sector

Sectors	Sector Percentage	Vehicle Replacement Age	Non-compliant percentage	Responding to CAP	
				Vulnerability (Pre COVID – 2019)	Vulnerability (Spring 2022)
Construction	24%	15	56%	Very High	Very High
Wholesale, retail & repair of motor vehicles	16%	10	34%	Medium	High
Manufacturing	13%	10	34%	Medium	High
Transport & storage	9%	10	34%	Medium	High
Accommodation & food services	8%	9	27%	Low	Medium
Information & communication	6%	9	27%	Low	Medium
Professional, scientific & technical activities	4%	10	34%	Medium	High
Mining, energy & water supply	4%	10	34%	Medium	High
Public admin. & defence; social security	4%	12	45%	High	Very High
Human health & social work activities	2%	12	45%	High	Very High
Other services	2%	12	45%	High	Very High
Financial & insurance activities	2%	9	27%	Low	Medium
Administrative & support services	2%	12	45%	High	Very High
Agriculture, forestry & fishing	1%	15	56%	Very High	Very High
Real estate activities	1%	9	27%	Low	Medium
Education	1%	10	34%	Medium	High
Royal Mail	1%	9	0%	Very Low	Very Low
Total	100%	-	40%		-

Vulnerability Criteria	
10% and below	Very Low
11-20%	Low
21-30%	Medium
31-40%	High
40% and above	Very High

Compliance of the van fleet serving Greater Manchester

- 2.10 Based on ANPR data and DfT Statistics, GM estimates that there are around 278,000 vans serving the region, of which around 136,000 are thought to be located within the GM boundary.
- 2.11 **Table 2-1** presents the number of LGVs estimated to be serving Greater Manchester in 2019, including splits by compliant and non-compliant vehicles which failed to meet Euro VI standards at that point.

Table 2-1 Number of vans in GM by compliance – 2019

	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
Compliant	27,290 (20%)	74,147 (52%)	101,437 (37%)
Non-Compliant	108,456 (80%)	67,535 (48%)	175,991 (63%)
Total	135,746	141,682	277,428

Source: FBC Appendix V, T4 Annex C: Vehicle Population Estimates

- 2.12 In 2019, there were 277,400 LGVs serving Greater Manchester¹¹ with 37% deemed compliant and 63% non-compliant. Vehicles based in GM had a lower level of compliance than those based outside GM, with only 20% of LGVs deemed compliant and 80% non-compliant (compared to 52% compliance for LGVs based outside of GM). Overall, there were slightly more LGVs serving GM that were not based in GM (141,700) in comparison with LGVs based in the city region (135,700).
- 2.13 The large proportion of LGVs which are non-compliant is in part due to relatively long vehicle lifespans, typically ranging between 9-15 years depending on the industrial sector in question, and due to the fact that compliant vans did not come onto the market until 2015, with the Euro 6 standard coming into force for vans in 2016.
- 2.14 A proportion of the vans in the fleet would normally be upgraded each year, with the oldest vehicles being scrapped out of the fleet. GM's forecasting suggests that the number of non-compliant vans based in GM will have reduced from 108,500 in 2019 to 75,400 by 2023. This means that around 31,100 vans would have been upgraded from a non-compliant to compliant vehicle as a result of business-as-usual purchases prior to the COVID-19 Pandemic.
- 2.15 The anticipated rate of upgrade for vans was revised in 2021 based on evidence that the Covid-19 pandemic had delayed vehicle purchases, such that the fleet was estimated to be around 3 months older than previously forecast. The rationale and methodology for this change is set out in the report "GM's proposed approach to representing the impact of Covid 19 in core modelling scenarios"¹². This had the effect of reducing the number of GM-based vans expected to make a business-as-usual upgrade between 2019 and 2023 by 1,4000.
- 2.16 **Table 2-2** sets out the number of vans estimated to be serving GM in 2023, by whether they are expected to be compliant without the GM CAP being introduced.

¹¹ Based upon 2019 ANPR splits

¹²

https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbvy1k6h2/2ZMJ3DJXiv7p3xOeZu4CYQ/247196ef60e33ac89f7f8938e1e16418/Appendix_6D_GM_proposed_approach_to_representing_the_impact_of_Covid-19_in_core_modelling_scenarios.pdf

Table 2-2 Number of vans in GM by compliance – 2023

	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
Compliant	58,935 (43%)	86,122 (61%)	145,056 (52%)
Non-Compliant	76,811 (57%)	55,560 (39%)	132,371 (48%)
Total	135,746	141,682	277,428

Source: FBC Appendix V, T4 Annex C: Vehicle Population Estimates

Impact of the GM CAP on Van Upgrades

- 2.17 As set out above, it is anticipated that 76,800 GM-based vans will be non-compliant in 2023 and will therefore need to upgrade their vehicle or pay the charge in response to the GM CAP until compliance with the Government Direction has been achieved.
- 2.18 Of these, it is estimated that up to 59,000 may be in scope¹³ for support from the Clean Commercial Vehicle Fund. This Fund provides financial support of up to £3,500 for the purchase of a compliant van up to 1.6t and up to £4,500 for the purchase of larger compliant van up to 3.5t, with a grant of up to £5,000 available for retrofit where available, subject to eligibility criteria. GM has secured £70m to support the upgrade of vans, sufficient to support around 15,900 vehicles.
- 2.19 **Table 2-3** sets out the number of vans estimated to be serving GM in 2023, by whether they are expected to be compliant with the introduction of the GM CAP.

Table 2-3 Number of vans in GM by compliance, with GM CAP – 2023

	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
Compliant	107,345 (79%)	129,550 (91%)	236,895 (85%)
Non-Compliant	28,401 (21%)	12,132 (9%)	40,533 (15%)
Total	135,746	141,682	277,428

Source: FBC Appendix V, T4 Annex C: Vehicle Population Estimates

¹³ https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbvvy1k6h2/2VNncClzejAvGh3CrVn0oo/d45528de22e593c9be285ddf5b26373b/Appendix_1_-_GM_Clean_Air_Plan_Policy_following_Consultation.pdf

Review of Fleet Profile

ANPR

2.20 Three sets of ANPR data were used, based on available data, these comprise the following time periods:

- GMP19 - January 2019 (pre COVID-19 pandemic);
- GMP20 - September 2020; and
- GMP21 - November 2021.

2.21 The LGV vehicle age profile change is presented in **Figure 2-4**. The proportion of newly purchased LGVs (i.e. less than 1 year-old) captured by ANPR cameras decreased from near 12% to 3% from 2019 to 2020 and recovered to close to 7% by the end of the 2021. It is noted that these figures are likely to be slightly overestimated due to differences in the sample size (10 months' worth of 'new vehicles' captured in the January 2019 survey compared to 6 and 8 months captured in the September 2020 and November 2021 surveys).

2.22 **Table 2-4** suggests that the average age of LGVs increased by 0.8 years from the beginning of 2019 to the end of 2021.

Figure 2-4 LGV fleet age distribution

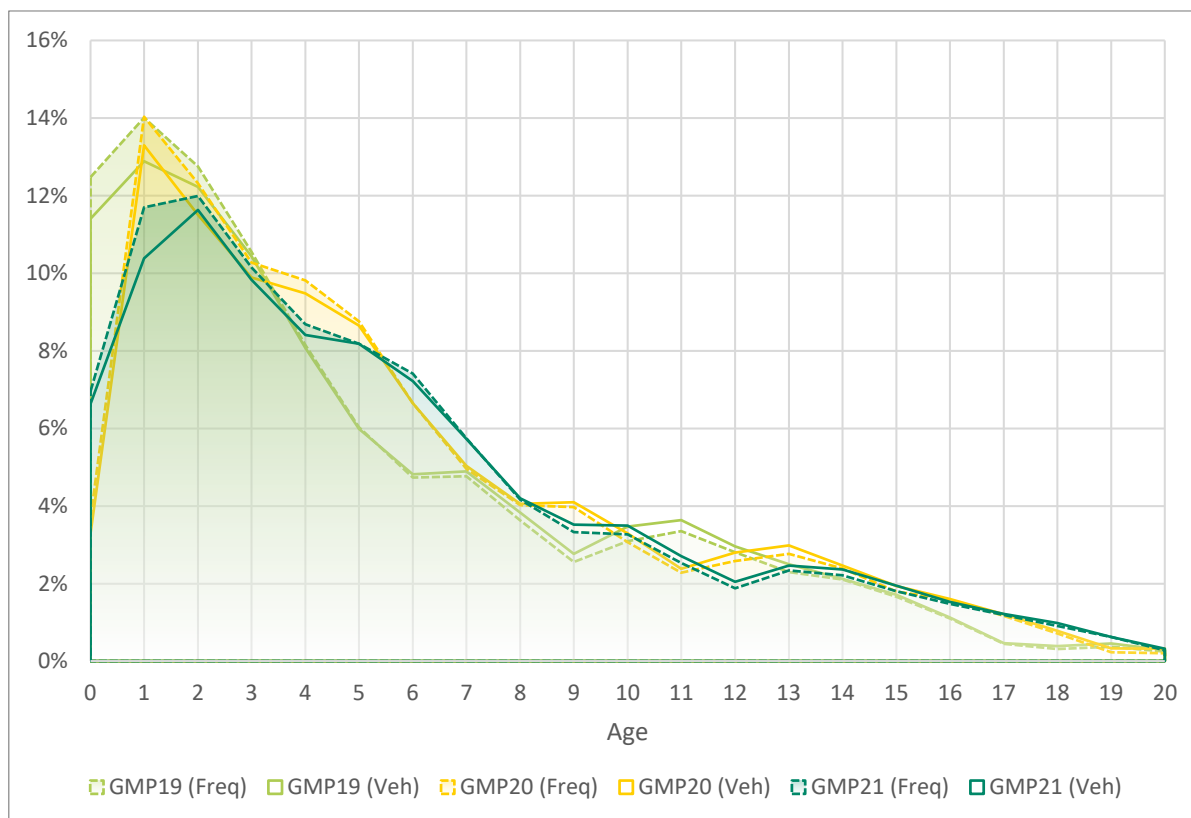


Table 2-4 Average LGV Age

Data set	GMP19	GMP20	GMP21
Frequency			
Average Age	5.3	6.0	6.1
Most common age group	1	1	2
Unique Vehicles			
Average Age	5.8	6.5	6.6
Most common age group	1	1	2

SMMT

2.23 The pandemic had a large impact on the number of new vans sold in the UK in 2020, but sales recovered to nearly pre-Covid levels in 2021. Sales forecasts indicate that market supply will recovery the majority of the lost sales by 2025.

3. National Van Market

Overview of the Van Market

- 3.1 On average, around 367 thousand new vans are registered nationally each year. New vehicles are primarily purchased by larger businesses, vehicle rental companies and the leasing sector. Many large fleet operators lease rather than own their vehicles, and most such vehicles are kept for around 3 to 5 years, with vehicles from the rental sector typically entering the second-hand market first. These good quality second-hand vehicles are typically purchased by small businesses.
- 3.2 Vehicles may then be released onto the market again at 8 to 10 years old, into the third-hand van market, which are typically purchased by people and businesses working in the construction, transport and storage sectors.
- 3.3 Compliant diesel vans came onto the market in 2016 (some early models may have been available from 2015), meaning that the second-hand market for compliant vans started to exist at scale from 2019 onwards.
- 3.4 Pre-pandemic evidence suggested that there are around 10-12,000 second-hand van sales per week nation-wide, of which around 4% take place in GM.
- 3.5 This evidence is set out in more detail in GM CAP Technical Note 3: Analysis of the Freight Market¹⁴.

Van Ownership and Usage

- 3.6 The Department for Transport (DfT) undertook a survey of van activity in Great Britain in 2019¹⁵. This looked at van ownership, van mileage, where and when vans are traveling, and environmental factors. The survey field work was carried out in 2019-20, prior to any Covid-19 related restrictions.
- 3.7 The survey showed that the most common primary usage of licensed vans was for 'carrying equipment, tools and materials' (54%), followed by 'delivery/collection of goods' (16%) and 'private/domestic non-business use' (16%).
- 3.8 Over half (57%) of business kept vans were new; 35% owned outright and 22% owned via a hire purchase agreement. Most privately kept vans were second-hand (82%). Within the DfT survey, the keeper of the vehicle is defined as that responsible for registering and taxing the vehicle only. The keeper of the vehicle is not necessarily the owner or the driver. Furthermore, the keeper is either an individual or a business (including sole trader, partnership or limited company).
- 3.9 Around half of all vans (51%) in Great Britain stayed local, within 15 miles of their base, on a typical day.
- 3.10 Associated statistics produced by the department showed that average mileage for vans has remained broadly stable in recent years (pre-pandemic) at around 13,000 miles per year.

¹⁴ https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpqgvvy1k6h2/sxMVbAwfJrcq3tFd9Thb7/fd8843b6d128ef318da320ee22ca6ac5/3_-_GM_CAP_Analysis_of_the_freight_market.pdf

¹⁵ DfT Statistical Release 15 April 2021, Final Van Statistics April 2019 - March 2020

Van Manufacturers

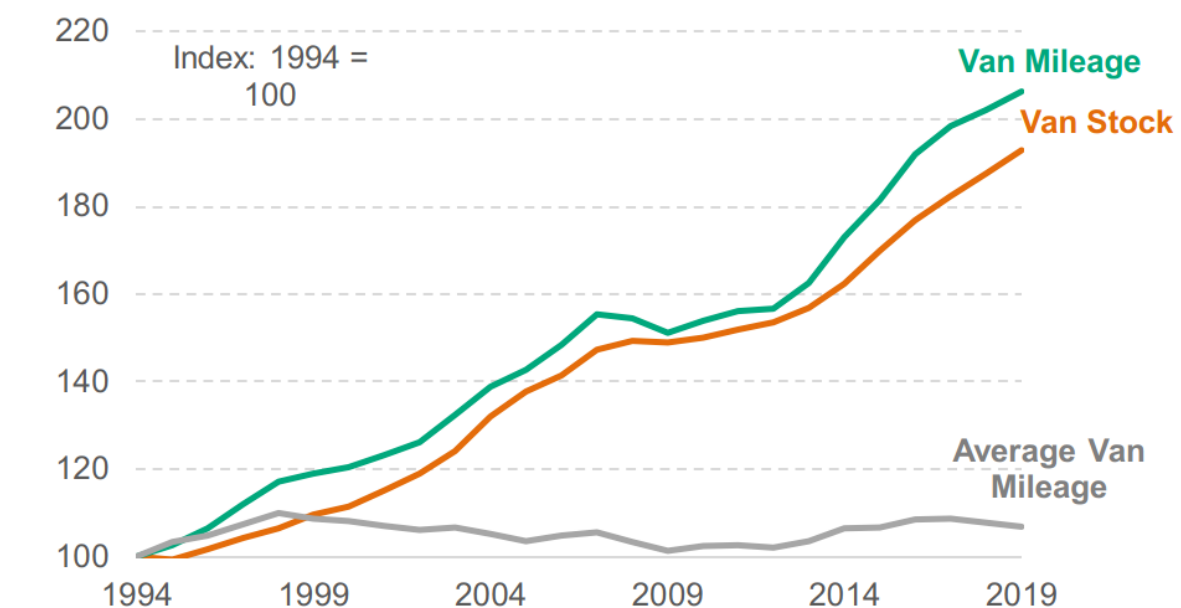
- 3.11 The British van market in 2021 has sales of 355,380 vehicles under 3.5 tonnes. The biggest growth in recent times is in the area of large vans (2.5-3.5 tonnes) which are typically used by parcel companies, food home deliveries and in the construction sector.
- 3.12 The top 10 selling models represent around 60% of the market. Within this top 10 there are three Ford Transit variants which represent 99,185 of sales (28% of the total market) and these vans are made in Turkey. The next best seller is Mercedes Sprinters with 6% of the market. The main van made in the UK is the Vauxhall Vivaro made by Stellantis, and this had sales of 17,957 (5%) of the market.
- 3.13 Almost 95% of vans sold in the UK are imported and reliance on imports has grown over the last twenty years and changed significantly when Ford shut their van plant in Hampshire. Around 330,000 vans were imported last year whilst 60% of vans made in the UK are exported.

4. Van Demand

Historical Trends Pre-Pandemic

- 4.1 The Department for Transport's (DfT) road traffic estimates indicate that van travel has grown substantially over the last 25 years, increasing 106% to 55.5 billion vehicle miles in 2019. Van travel as a proportion of all motor vehicle miles has increased from 10% to 16% over the same period.
- 4.2 This, together with the relationship to the scale of the van stock, is illustrated in **Figure 4-1** from the DfT statistical bulletin relating to the 2019 survey¹⁶.

Figure 4-1 Trend of Van Stock and Van Traffic, Great Britain 1994-2019



Source: Road Traffic estimates in Great Britain: 2019, Vehicle Licensing Statistics: 2019

- 4.3 The increase in van stock in recent years evident from **Figure 4-1** reflects the significant demand for new vans which has been on a consistently upward trend for many years.

Demand Trends Pre-Covid

- 4.4 The Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders (SMMT) 2019 Report¹⁷ identified the following as aspects in the increase in demand seen in the sector since 2000:
- the van parc (the total number of vehicles in operation) has grown by 59% while, by contrast, the HGV parc has shrunk by 2%;
 - the majority of this growth has been driven by demand for larger vans (2,600-3,500 kg Gross Vehicle Weight);
 - Factors fuelling this growth include a fundamental shift in consumer behaviour with the growth of online shopping;

¹⁶ DfT Statistical Release 15 April 2021, Final Van Statistics April 2019 - March 2020

¹⁷ Light Commercial Vehicles, Delivering for the UK Economy, 2019 Report

- an increase in vans as businesses seek to develop more agile logistics operations in response to the growth in the ‘fulfilment from store’ model (a service which previously would have been completed by an HGV); and
- a rise in self-employment (from 3.3 million in 2001 to 4.8 million in 2017)¹⁸.

Impact of Covid

- 4.5 Van sales have been heavily impacted by pressures associated with Covid. SMMT data shows April and May 2020 being particularly poor months for new van registrations.
- 4.6 Supply constraints on delivery of new vehicles in the early 2020 lockdown, were gradually released into the summer as already purchased and manufactured vehicles could be delivered and received. At this point, new orders were likely delayed due to market uncertainty in the early phases of the pandemic.
- 4.7 However, whilst the early phases of the pandemic and subsequent lockdowns and constraints in 2020 constrained demand, it appears that this effect was temporary based on SMMT new van registration monthly data (see later in **Figure 5-1**) and has been offset by growth in demand from other sectors.
- 4.8 Home deliveries surged during the lockdown in 2020, with traditional ‘bricks and mortar’ retail affected by closures for at least three months of the year. This led to many consumers increasing their use of on-line deliveries or using it for the first time.¹⁹ This includes the grocery sector, which whilst not subject to the enforced closures of other retailers, saw increased demand for home deliveries as customers looked to avoid social contact in-store.
- 4.9 This has seen an increase in the use of and demand for vans as companies frequently use these vehicles for home deliveries (although some companies have drivers using their own cars). Vans are the vehicle of choice as larger HGVs are impractical and undesirable for most residential streets and the more stringent regulation and licensing requirements of those vehicles.²⁰

Green Agenda/Corporate Social Responsibility

- 4.10 Many fleet operators and individual van owners are looking to transition their fleets to vehicles using low or zero emission fuels. In the Mayor’s round table session with large fleet operators held in December 2021, many commented that they had corporate goals to speed up the transition of their fleet to electric, from Euro 5 or 6 diesel, but that they were finding it difficult to do so because of the issues in the supply chain. In some cases, this meant that they were retaining existing vehicles for longer whilst they waited for new vehicles to arrive.

¹⁸ Trends in Self-Employment in the UK Office for National Statistics

¹⁹ Statista Accessed 5th January 2022 <https://www.statista.com/statistics/1230225/changes-in-online-buying-among-uk-consumers-since-covid-19/>

²⁰ Motor Trader Accessed 5th January 2022 <https://www.motortrader.com/motor-trader-news/automotive-news/booming-home-delivery-construction-fuel-demand-vans-auction-25-08-2021>

- 4.11 Electric vans, in particular, are increasingly attractive as their price relative to conventionally fuelled vehicles drops, range increases and lifecycle costs become more certain. Sales of electric vans are increasing, albeit from a low base and a lower market share than electric cars²¹. This may be placing additional demand pressure on the market, if operators are bringing forward vehicle replacements.

Clean Air Plan Initiative

- 4.12 Modelling associated with the GM CAP forecast that almost 70% of van owners whose vehicles operate in Greater Manchester were expected under previous conditions to upgrade their vehicles to Euro VI engines or better to avoid the charge, taking advantage of associated funding support. Similarly, the London Ultra Low Emission Zone, along with other smaller city centre CAZs will lead to increased demand for compliant Euro 6 models.
- 4.13 This will increase demand for compliant vehicles, and more substantially at a regional level in GM and London, which for the used vehicle market could lead to regional disparities in purchasing trends and therefore demand across the wider UK.

Forecasting Van Demand

- 4.14 In October 2021 SMMT released a forecast of van sales for the next 3 years, demonstrating that they expect registrations to increase each year to 2023.

Table 4-1 Forecast van sales between 2021 and 2023, SMMT

Forecast Year	2021	2022	2023
Projected van registrations (thousands)	340*	364	378

Source: SMMT

Note: The 2021 sales achieved 355,000, 15,000 more than the October 2021 projection.

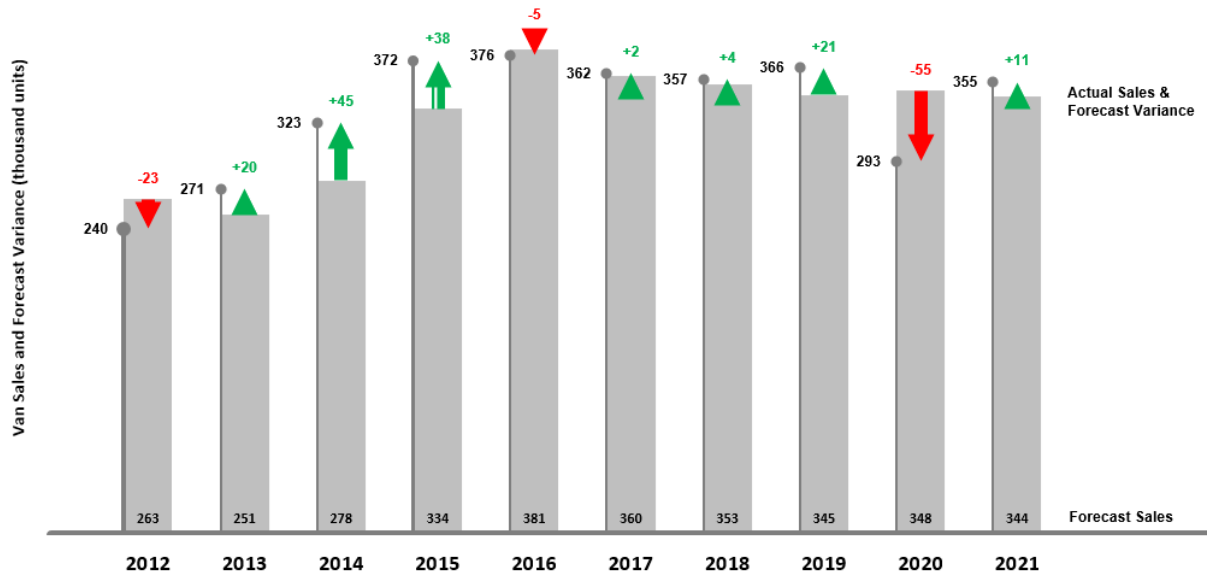
- 4.15 The SMMT historic forecast van sales estimates are useful to understand how the manufacturing base anticipates demand and enables supply. The SMMT annual forecasts have been analysed against the actual van sales to help gain insight on trend in supply versus predicted demand.
- 4.16 **Figure 4-2** and **Figure 4-3** show the variance between actual new van registrations and the SMMT January forecast for the forthcoming year and the following year, respectively²².

²¹ Fleet Europe Accessed 5th January 2022 <https://www.fleeteurope.com/en/last-mile/europe/analysis/why-electric-van-sales-are-set-soar?a=JMA06&t%5B0%5D=e-LCV&t%5B1%5D=Dataforce&t%5B2%5D=Arrival&t%5B3%5D=EV100&t%5B4%5D=Renault&t%5B5%5D=Nissan&t%5B6%5D=Mercedes-Benz%20Vans&curl=1>

²² SMMT accessed 9th January 2022, <https://www.smm.co.uk/category/vehicle-data/used-car-sales-data/>

Figure 4-2 SMMT Van Sales, Actual Sales and Variance from 1-Year Forecast

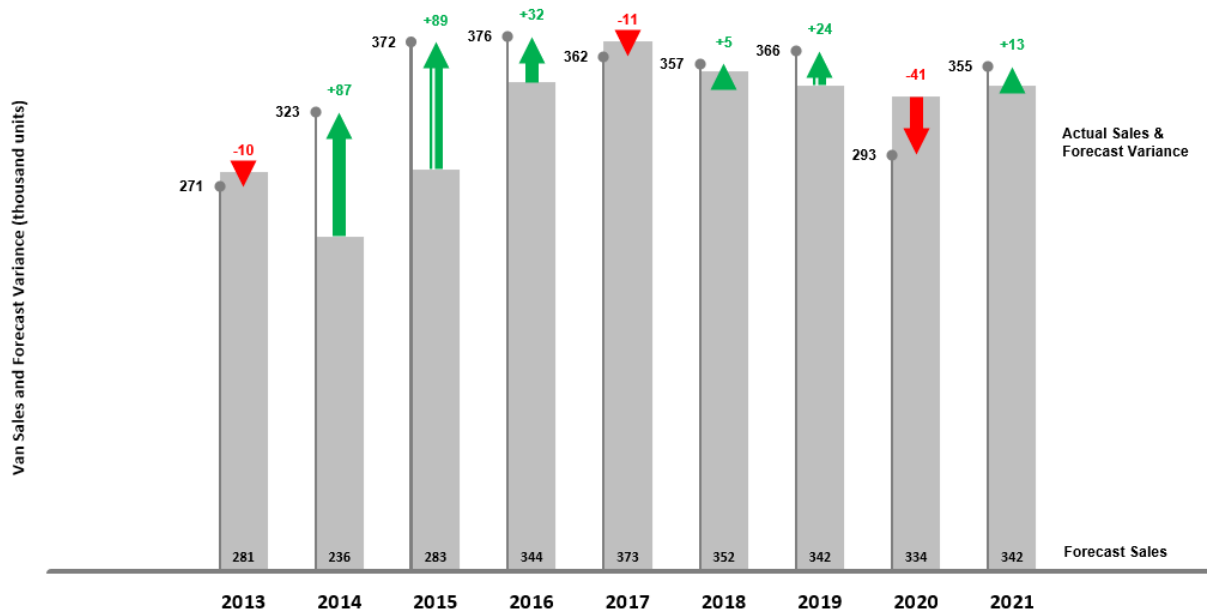
Forecast Sales for the Forthcoming Year vs Actual



Source: SMMT

Figure 4-3 SMMT Van Sales, Actual Sales and Variance from 2-Years On Forecast

Forecast Sales for Two Years On vs Actual



Source: SMMT

4.17 What this shows is that the SMMT forecasts have typically under-predicted sales, with the 2 Years On under-prediction more significant, which may be expected if demand is increasing quickly above previous trends.

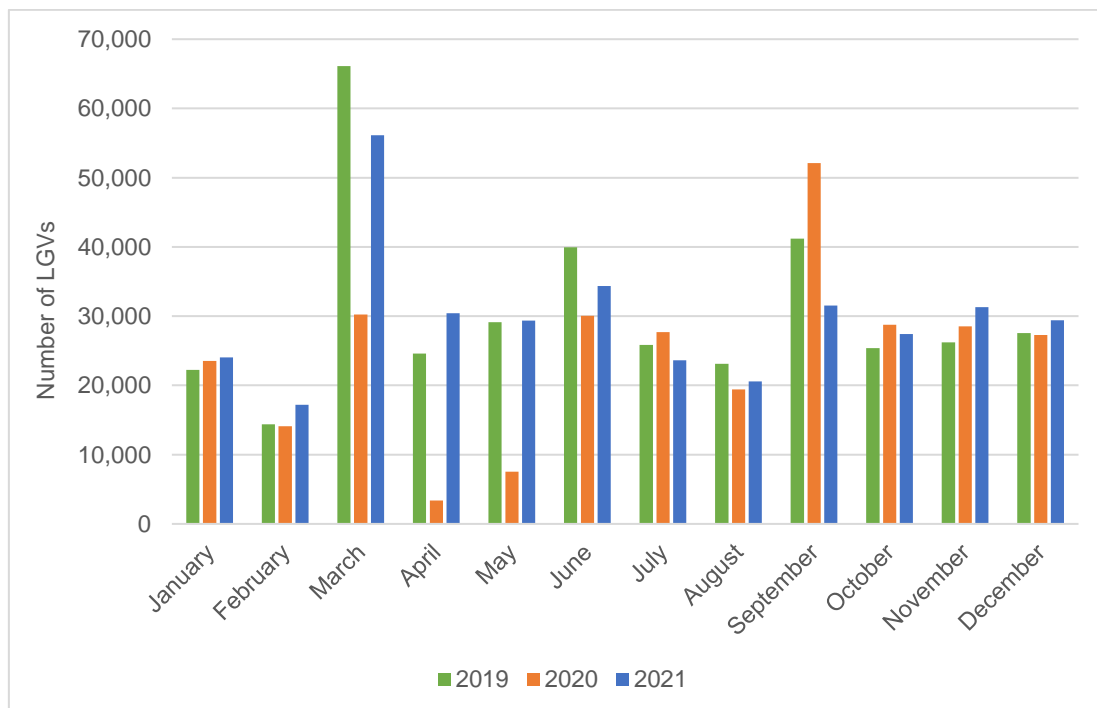
- 4.18 The graphs also show that, prior to the Covid-19 pandemic, total van sales had been stable since 2015, with average sales at 367,000 per annum. Van sales in 2021 recovered back to close to typical levels, after the substantial drop in 2020. So, whilst 2021 sales maybe similar to pre-Covid, the overall reduced new vehicle sales in 2020/21 would require a very significant increase in 2022 to recapture lost sales in time for the GM CAP 2023 opening. To simply recover the lost sales in 2020/2021, the 2022 registrations would need to be 448,000, equivalent to an immediate 23% increase over pre-Covid levels. This is in the face of supply constraints in the manufacturing process and ongoing economic uncertainty. In fact, the SMMT forecasts for 2022/23 presented in **Table 4-1** suggest continued typical levels, meaning there is predicted to be a shortfall in the new van fleet and associated impacts for the used van market too.
- 4.19 However, it can also be inferred that despite these constraints, manufacturing in 2021 has managed to deliver at previous levels of supply, and also owners purchasing new vehicles have been able to afford them. This indicates that there is strong and resilient demand in some sectors, at least those companies able to purchase new vehicles. What isn't clear from these data is how this might filter to the used van market nor whether some groups or sectors are deferring purchases due to high prices or lack of availability of suitable vehicles. The GM CAP behavioural modelling has been based primarily on a sustainable used van market and associated pricing, rather than the cost and availability of new vehicles.

5. Van Supply

Impact of the Pandemic

- 5.1 The pandemic had an initial direct impact on all types of vehicle production as production lines were halted at various times around the world dependant on local lockdown rules. The ability of vehicle manufacturers to respond to demands for increased production is still being limited by the pandemic amongst other factors.
- 5.2 One factor arising from the pandemic is the pronounced effect that it had on the logistics sector, with employees across the supply chain required to isolate causing delays in the supply of parts, with parts from places such as Asia being unavailable due to production issues and temporary staff shortages there.²³
- 5.3 To review the impact of Covid-19 on national van sales, data from 2019 to 2021 for the registration of new vans has been used from SMMT.²⁴ As the registration data demonstrates in **Figure 5-1** van sales were significantly lower in March, April and May 2020 during the first lockdown.
- 5.4 **Table 5-1** displays the total number of vans registered in 2020 and 2021 compared to the last pre-pandemic year of 2019. Sales in 2019 were similar to the previous 5-year average of 367,000 and is therefore a reasonable comparator. In 2020 there were significantly fewer new sales with the total registered down 20%. There was some recovery in 2021 though sales remained 3% below pre-pandemic levels. The net effect is a reduction of over 80,000 new vans in circulation compared to what would have been expected based on pre-pandemic sales.

Figure 5-1 Registration of New Vans from 2019 to 2021



Source: SMMT

²³ Baker McKenzie Accessed 6th January 2022 <https://www.bakermckenzie.com/en/newsroom/2020/04/global-supply-chains-under-huge-pressure-covid-19>

²⁴ LCV Registrations – SMMT - <https://www.smmt.co.uk/vehicle-data/lcv-registrations/>

Table 5-1 Total number of new vans registered in 2019-2021

Year	Total	% Change from 2019
2019	365,778	-
2020	292,657	-20%
2021	355,380	-3%

Source: SMMT

Semiconductor Shortages

- 5.5 The global shortage of semiconductors began in the first quarter of 2021. Analysis by McKinsey²⁵ suggests that the demand for semiconductors in the auto industry in 2020 was below expectations by around 15%. But at the same time, some other market areas experienced rapid expansion, resulting in overall growth of 5% to 9% in semiconductor sales above forecasts. When the automotive sector's demand recovered, the semiconductor industry had already shifted production to meet demand for other applications.
- 5.6 As with other markets and industries there are also now Covid-related closures at semiconductor factories and international shipping ports²⁶.
- 5.7 Consultation with SMMT and vehicle manufacturers demonstrates the significant impact of the semiconductor shortage, with new vehicles typically containing over 1,000 semiconductor chips. This has led to manufacturers reducing their production targets, limiting the number of new vans entering the market.
- 5.8 Reports from Commercial Fleet earlier in 2021²⁷ highlighted that new vehicle supply was affected by the global semiconductor crisis with lead times for new vehicles increased and then standing at up to 12 months for certain factory-order models. Manufacturers were also reported to be removing some non-essential components (e.g. infotainment systems) from vehicle specification to maintain production.

Britain leaving the EU

- 5.9 It is challenging to disaggregate the impact of Britain leaving the EU and the Covid pandemic on supply chains and consumer confidence, however the changing trading arrangements with the EU meant that there were supply issues as businesses got used to new customs requirements (particularly in January/February 2020), which caused delays at major ports. This backlog is likely to have fed into the number of vehicles produced and subsequent registrations.

²⁵ <https://www.mckinsey.com/industries/automotive-and-assembly/our-insights/coping-with-the-auto-semiconductor-shortage-strategies-for-success>

²⁶ <https://www.autocar.co.uk/car-news/business-tech%2C-development-and-manufacturing/latest-updates-semiconductor-chip-crisis>

²⁷ <https://www.commercialfleet.org/news/van-news/2021/04/28/used-lcv-prices-to-rise-as-semiconductor-supply-crisis-hits-new-van-production>

Views from the Industry

5.10 Consultation was undertaken with SMMT and van manufacturers, as well as a review of industry press on the issue.

Conversations with Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders (SMMT) in 2021 & 2022:

The semi-conductor shortage has had a significant impact on vehicle production, with the typical vehicle comprising of 1,500 semi-conductor chips. Due to Covid-19 restrictions in South East Asia, approximately 19 semi-conductor plants have been closed, affecting supply. In addition, due to 'stay-at-home' restrictions, demand from other sectors such as the gaming industry has risen, further reducing supply. Car producers have been hit hardest as it is more difficult for high volume manufacturers to source chips. HGV manufacturers have more specialist providers which means they can source chips more easily and overall volumes are much lower.

The lag on production means that shortages are being felt now and are likely to become more pronounced in early 2022.

As a result of this shortage some specialist orders are not being fulfilled until 2023. The typical delivery date for an HGV has increased from 12 to 26 weeks. However, the SMMT believe this will stabilise and return to normal, with no medium- or long-term impact. They envisage it will take 12 months to correct so some time during 2023.

SMMT also reported that manufacturers were now looking at sourcing semi-conductors from alternative providers, including those not previously focused on the automotive sector

Conversations with Volkswagen Van Centre Greater Manchester, 2021:

VW's most popular van model, the Transporter, is produced at the company's German-based plant and brought over to the UK. Transporters are already sold out for 2022, meaning new customers will now need to wait until Q1 2023 for their van.

Several issues underpin the shortage in vans. The most pressing issue is the shortage in semi-conductors.

Another factor is the 70% increase in the price of steel which has resulted in price rises for customers. Together, these issues have led to four price increases in the last 12 months. As a result, Volkswagen has ceased to provide its usual price guarantees for all new sales and customers have now lost price protection.

The second-hand market is performing strongly. Customers are reselling their vans now more than they ever have before and prices are the highest they have ever been

- 5.11 Reports from industry press also state that supply issues could last until 2023. Speaking at the IAA Munich auto show in September 2021 Daimler CEO Ola Kallenius said soaring demand for semiconductors means the auto industry could struggle to source enough of them throughout next year and into 2023, though the shortage should be less severe by then. BMW CEO Oliver Zipse said: *"I expect that the general tightness of the supply chains will continue in the next six-to-12 months."*
- 5.12 Numerous Ford models are affected and Ford's plant in Turkey, where the Transit van is built, was also closed this summer. The manufacturer is now shipping some models with missing features as noted previously in this report.
- 5.13 Other reports are stating six to nine month lead times for ubiquitous models such as the Ford Transits.
- 5.14 Information from the wider commercial sector was also provided by the Road Haulage Association (RHA) that reflected some of the issues their members were experiencing. Whilst this relates to the heavy goods vehicle sector, it does reflect a similar picture in terms of supply side issues within the automotive market.

Selected extracts from RHA member correspondence:

(1) We have currently stopped pricing & closed our order books for the short term due to the increased difficulty in predicting pricing close to 12 months down the line.

(2) We had requested rate from our commercial supplier for a tractor unit and 2 trailers on long term rental, but we were quickly met with a response of "unfortunately this isn't something we are going to be able to provide in time for next year". I have also spoken with {anonymous} used and could be supplied a used tractor unit, but that option is very limited to what vehicles are coming in off contract. as for new purchase we were told by a sales rep at {anonymous} we would be looking at 2023 deliver times now.

(3) We predominantly run {anonymous} HGVs. Having had a verbal conversation with the dealer about pricing and lead times, we have been advised by them that for any orders placed within the next few weeks we will be looking at quarter 1 of 2023 for delivery of a chassis to the dealer. We then have to factor in further time for crane installation and truck body build etc. Realistically if this remains the case, we will end up not getting new trucks until the end of Quarter 2 of 2023, almost 2 years from now! They have also said that pricing quoted is not guaranteed and is subject to fluctuation due to pricing of raw materials changing between now and the vehicle being built and supplied.

(4) {anonymous} have closed their order books last Friday until 2023, they are concentrating on back orders and are waiting for their suppliers to provide software for their hardware, i.e computers to operate the gearboxes etc etc. They have loads of incomplete trucks at {anonymous} airport awaiting cpu's for various tasks.

6. Van Prices

New Vehicles

- 6.1 Van prices are a function both of the production and supply costs, combined with market demand versus available supply.
- 6.2 As a result of the constraints described previously, new vans are therefore expected to see their value rise more acutely as the semi-conductor crisis persists limiting supply, alongside the newfound shortages in other crucial resources such as rubber and metal, thus pushing up costs.²⁸
- 6.3 The rising costs of materials, caused in part by reduced production associated with Covid are also affecting vehicle prices, with VW reporting that the cost of steel has risen significantly during 2021, causing them to raise prices. Steel prices have reduced in recent months but remain volatile.²⁹
- 6.4 For reasons of commercial sensitivity, it has not been possible to obtain reliable data on changes to prices paid for new vans during the period under review. Advertised prices may be obtainable but records on actual sale values are not available.

Used Vehicles

- 6.5 It was to be expected that the reduction in new vehicles entering the fleet in 2020/21 would also have a knock-on effect to the used van market as the natural turnover of vehicles is stalled, reducing supply at this stage as well. Given the ongoing demand, this would normally lead to increased prices and there is considerable evidence of this occurring as shown later in this section.
- 6.6 Used light commercial vehicle values rose during November according to BCA (www.bca.co.uk) as demand for vehicles to service the online and home delivery sector increased in the run-up to Christmas with average values increasing by 15% from the start of November. Average monthly values continue to be well ahead year-on-year, with November 2021 values up by 16.4% increase compared to the same month last year.
- 6.7 Stuart Pearson, COO at BCA UK, said: *“The used LCV market remains exceptionally competitive and average selling values at BCA have consistently outperformed guide price expectations throughout 2021. The strong market that we’ve experienced reflects the ongoing economic shift supported by consume-driven online activity plus the well-documented challenges with new LCV supplies. In addition, and as we anticipated, we have seen demand increase in the final weeks of the year to meet the needs of the hub delivery, courier and final mile home delivery sectors.”*
- 6.8 Matthew Davock, director of commercial vehicles at Cox Automotive, believes the wholesale performance of the past 12 months will never be witnessed again, but warns that the early part of next year, at least, looks to continue similar trends.
- 6.9 He said the market is likely to reposition itself when stock shortages are resolved halfway through 2022. According to Davock, *“the shortage in the supply of used Euro 6 vans and demand for vehicles that comply with emissions zones such as ULEZ, will*

²⁸ Ibid

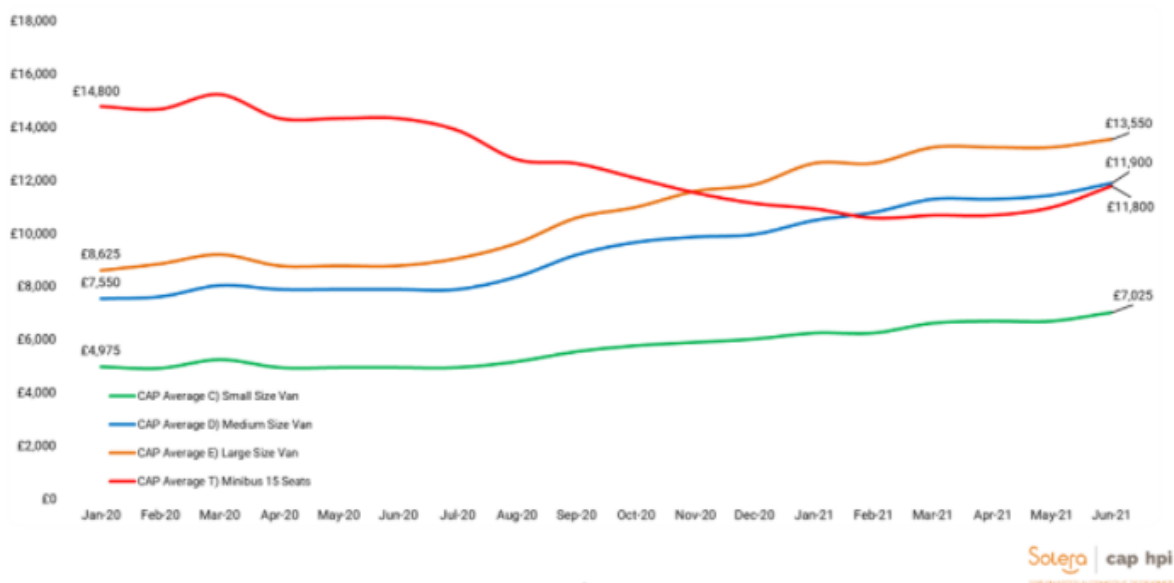
²⁹ Trading Economics Accessed 6th January 2022 <https://tradingeconomics.com/commodity/steel>

impact the market for the next few months at least, affecting wholesale stock dynamics for at least the next three years”.

- 6.10 Earlier in the year BCA reported that used van values remained stable in September, following a period of rapid growth, earlier in the year. That earlier growth was of the order of 25% based on a year on year comparison from September 2021.
- 6.11 The general picture is of considerable market volatility, most pronounced earlier in 2021 but still remaining to some extent as we enter 2022. Overall used light commercial vehicle price rises of at least 40% between the pre-pandemic market and late 2021 are not uncommon.
- 6.12 Commercial Fleet News reported in July 2021³⁰ reported significant increases in second-hand van prices including the example of a three-year-old medium-sized van, with 60,000 miles, being 58% higher at that time than it was at the start of 2020. The same report included data, from Cap HPI (the vehicle valuation company), which revealed that *“the typical medium van was worth £7,550 18 months ago, but is now achieving an average selling price of £11,900 – an increase of £4,350”*. The graphic from CAP HPI is reproduced as **Figure 6-1**.

Figure 6-1 Data from CAP HPI on Used Van Price Trends (as of July 2021)

Value for a typical 3year/60k vehicle 2020/2021- by sector



- 6.13 It should be noted that this reflects wholesale prices (which a dealer pays at places like auctions) as opposed to retail and therefore the dealer margin is not included. This data is collected by Cap HPI, which collects data on transactions in the automotive sector, recording each sale live as it is completed. Dealers are likely to pass on this increased cost to customers or chose to take a reduced margin. Alternatively, where demand is high and additional funding is available related to CAP scheme with associated deadlines, margins may be increased. There is therefore a difference in absolute value between this information and data elsewhere in this report.

³⁰ <https://www.commercialfleet.org/news/van-news/2021/07/05/used-van-values-up-50-in-18-months-despite-mileage-and-age-increasing>

- 6.14 A review of online adverts carried out in January 2022 shows the price of one of UK's most popular vans in 2022 was 13% higher in real terms (£19,495) than a model of the same age in early 2019 (£17,244).³¹ The values are presented in **Table 6-1**.
- 6.15 Specialist vans like dropsides, tippers and Lutons are achieving big values at auction due to the lack of availability on new conversions. Fleet managers are also reporting that they are running vans for longer, with 6-9 month extensions on leases or hiring additional rental vans rather than replacing them.³²

Table 6-1 Example change in second-hand van prices between 2019 and 2022

Type	Manufacture Year	Sold Year	Age	Mileage	Price	Increase by
Ford Transit Custom	2016	2019	3	50,000	£17,244	-
Ford Transit Custom	2018	2022	3	50,000	£19,495	13%

Source: Autotrader UK

³¹ <https://www.carpricetracker.com/car/239343/Ford+Transit+Custom+2.2+TDCi+290+L1H1+Limited+Double+Cab-in-Van+6dr>

³² Automotive Management Accessed 4th January 2022 <https://www.am-online.com/news/market-insight/2021/10/15/supply-shortages-creating-perfect-storm-for-van-sector>

- 7.8 While the recent evidence has been used to create reasonable adjustments, uncertainty remained as to whether sales will ‘catch up’ to their pre-pandemic trajectory or indeed continue to remain below previously assumed levels as a result of the pandemic or other factors and therefore sensitivity testing relating to fleet age assumptions was carried out as follows:
- **Fleet is older than modelled:** HGV, vans and private cars all assumed to be one year older than pre-Covid Do Minimum, taxi to be two years older, no change assumed to Bus. This test showed increased concentrations sufficient to delay the year of compliance. The roads outside of the inner ring road are more sensitive to this test, because car and van emissions are more prevalent compared to buses. However, it is considered unlikely that the fleet age would be as old as this test assumes, given that changes have already been applied to the core to reflect Covid-19 related delays in vehicle upgrades. The most recent data from SMMT suggests that whilst vehicle sales have not caught up with pre-pandemic conditions, van and car sales have not been delayed to the extent of a full year.
 - **Fleet is as per the pre-Covid Do Minimum** (the Consultation Option Do Minimum) as Covid-related changes prove to be transitory and fleet quickly reverts to trend, with the fleet tested as assumed in the Consultation Option Do Minimum. This test produced a reduction in concentrations, but with exceedances remaining in 2023 and therefore would not affect the decision to proceed with the GM CAP but demonstrates that there could be greater certainty of achieving compliance as forecast if vehicle sales recovered to their pre-pandemic position.
- 7.9 GM has used the national SMMT vehicle registrations to assess fleet impacts. The latest data on van registrations to end 2021 suggests that the assumptions with regards to vans remain valid, but given the supply and demand issues set out above, GM will need to keep the evidence under urgent review.
- 7.10 Monitoring of the on-road fleet will be undertaken throughout the lifetime of the GM CAP using ANPR data and can be compared with the quarterly/annual SMMT releases to assess whether the GM CAP is likely to be affected by changes to purchasing patterns other than those forecast.

Price of upgrade and behavioural responses to the GM CAP

- 7.11 In summer 2021, GM was concerned that prices could increase as a result of constraints in the availability of compliant vehicles, as set out above, or due to increased demand arising from sustained behavioural changes post-pandemic. For example, GM was aware that the rise in internet shopping during the initial lockdown periods led to increased demand for vans, with anecdotal evidence that vans temporarily released by construction firms were re-purposed for deliveries during lockdown. In summer 2021, GM noted that a sustained increase in van demand could place pressure on the van market and that media reports were suggesting that the price of second-hand vans may be rising. Since then, the evidence of price rises resulting from supply not being able to keep up with demand has strengthened, as set out in this report.
- 7.12 Sensitivity testing carried out in 2021 suggested that whilst HGV behavioural responses are relatively insensitive to vehicle price increases, for vans an increase of

8% in the price of vehicles (compared to the price as assumed in the modelling) could be sufficient to delay compliance by one year, all other things being equal.

- 7.13 This is because if van prices rise, more van owners are expected to stay-and-pay rather than upgrade their vehicle, and therefore the emissions reductions would be less than previously forecast.
- 7.14 The evidence suggests that currently price rises in excess of 8% are being experienced in the van market and therefore that, if these price rises were to be sustained to 2023, and all other things being equal, GM could face an increased risk in terms of achieving compliance by 2024.

Socio-economic impacts on vehicle owners

- 7.15 If, by June 2023, van owners have been unable to access an affordable compliant vehicle, they may reconsider how to respond to the scheme.
- 7.16 Van drivers/owners may look to pass the charge onto customers and keep their non-compliant vehicle. As discussed, the demand for those working in the construction/home improvement sector (tradespeople) in particular means that there are often long lead times for work to commence as skills gaps emerge and the price of materials rises.³⁶ In the context of higher prices and long waiting times, customers may be more willing to accept these charges, which are likely to represent a small proportion of the overall cost of the work. Those charging lower rates or in more competitive markets will be less able to pass on the cost to their customers. If realized, the impacts of this would be a reduction in the environmental benefits of the GM CAP and increased costs for consumers.
- 7.17 Vans in certain sectors often have low load factors (e.g. operate without a full load) and as such it is feasible that van drivers may switch to larger passenger cars, particularly estate or Multi-Purpose Vehicle (MPVs such as a Ford Galaxy) cars. Some parcel company business models have drivers using their own vehicles, usually cars and it is not uncommon for tradespeople to use larger estate cars if it suits their required tasks. As cars are not subject to any charges associated with GM CAP, this approach may become more attractive. Depending on the type of cars that businesses and drivers transition to (and their availability), this could reduce the environmental benefits of the scheme.
- 7.18 The Funding policy is designed to support the smallest businesses, sole traders and private owners to upgrade their vehicle. However, in the worst-case scenario, if van owners cannot afford to upgrade their vehicle even with the funding available, and are not able to pass on the cost of upgrade to their customers, they may cease trading or leave the region.
- 7.19 The impacts of the pandemic and Britain leaving the EU have not been experienced equally across business sectors, with some experiencing major disruptions, costs and loss of business whilst others have been able to benefit from new opportunities created by new ways of working and living. GM's evidence already suggested that a number of vehicle owners were at risk of being placed in hardship as a result of the scheme and it is clear that rising vehicle prices risks worsening that position. However, better evidence is needed to understand the possible nature and extent of such impacts, and who is most at risk.

³⁶ PBC Today Accessed 5th January 2022 <https://www.pbctoday.co.uk/news/planning-construction-news/builders-delays/100980/>

8. Summary and Recommendations

Summary of current conditions in the van market

- 8.1 Pre-pandemic, there was significant growth in van mileage and van stock over a number of years and the expectation was that both growth trends would continue.
- 8.2 However, whilst the early phases of the pandemic and subsequent lockdowns and constraints in 2020 constrained demand, it appears that this effect was temporary and has been offset by growth in demand from some van-owning sectors.
- 8.3 The pandemic had a major impact on the number of new vans sold in the UK, initially due to the halting of production lines and local lockdowns around the world.
- 8.4 Whilst new van sales recovered to some extent, they are still not back to 2019 levels and so there is a substantial 'lost supply' that has not been recovered equating to 80,000 vehicles on a conservative assumption that 2019 levels had been maintained.
- 8.5 The global semiconductor shortage has also impacted the automotive industry and its effects are ongoing.
- 8.6 The industry is reporting significant supply issues with extended lead times for new orders.
- 8.7 It is anticipated that the introduction of clean air zones at particular locations in the UK will introduce some regional disparity in terms of the availability of certain vehicles and place additional demand pressure on the market in general.
- 8.8 Reliable data on the variation in the price of new vans as a consequence of the supply side issues discussed in Chapter 4 is not available.
- 8.9 There is substantial evidence of significant price increases in the second-hand van market – the scale of those rises has a high degree of variability depending on the particular vehicle. The extent of the reported rise varies between 13% and almost 60%.
- 8.10 Overall, the evidence suggests that demand for new and second-hand vans remains strong, and therefore that the loss of supply caused by lockdowns in 2020 and more recently by the semi-conductor shortage is leading to price rises in the new and second-hand markets, and to long lead times for new vehicle orders.

Recommendations

- 8.11 Whilst there is strong evidence relating to the supply of new vans, there is less insight into the full extent of demand beyond the evidence of rising prices. A better understanding of demand would provide insight into the extent of the shortfall in the market. Further consultation with manufacturers, traders and van owners would be informative.
- 8.12 There is a lack of robust national data on second-hand van transactions which is important in the context of forecasting and monitoring the impacts of the various clean air zones around the country. This data should be made available by Government.

- 8.13 There is a lack of robust national data about vehicle prices; this needs to be addressed by Government.
- 8.14 In addition, it is unclear as to how those affected will respond to the changing circumstances. Research was undertaken with van owners in 2019, followed by consultation activity in 2020, prior to issues described in this note becoming as pronounced as they are at present. Previous assumptions may need to be revisited, which would require engagement with those who operate non-compliant vans.
- 8.15 It appears that supply constraints and price increases may be more severe for those operating more unusual or specialist vehicles. More research and analysis is required to better understand the types of specialist vehicle operating in the LGV market and how these are being affected by current market circumstances.
- 8.16 It is apparent that there is strong demand for vans and that high prices are currently being tolerated without reducing demand for vehicles. This suggests that some sectors may be experiencing growth and stronger economic conditions. Nevertheless, it is also clear from previous evidence that rising prices will mean that, for some, it is increasingly unaffordable to upgrade their vehicle. Therefore, more work is required to better understand market conditions by van-owning sector, and to reassess how vulnerable different groups are to the impacts of the GM CAP.
- 8.17 In particular, GM and Government could consider revisiting analysis carried out previously on the socio-economic impacts of the GM CAP and also review any potential equalities issues that may emerge from changing market conditions.

Appendix A – List of Documents

This Appendix provides a list of documents and data sources used to inform this report

Document Title	Date	Description	Relevance to GM CAP
Chapter 1			
Mayor of Greater Manchester writes to Government reiterating call for non-charging Clean Air Zone	May 2022	Announcement, provide background on current status of GM CAP https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/news/mayor-of-greater-manchester-writes-to-government-reiterating-city-region-s-call-for-non-charging-clean-air-plan/	Current Status of GM CAP
GM CAP Technical Documents (various)	various	All available at Technical Documents Clean Air Greater Manchester (cleanairgm.com) https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Published Technical Reports for GM CAP
Technical Note 3: Analysis of the Freight Market	July 2019	Describes the number of HGVs operating in GM, the compliance status of those vehicles, and the business and usage patterns of those vehicles. https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Background on Freight Sector
Technical Note 12: Evidence of the Impact of a 2021 Implementation of a CAZ C (Without exemptions)	July 2019	Describes analysis carried out by GM to assess the risks of implementing a CAZ C in 2021 without also implementing a two-year sunset period as was proposed in the OBC. https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	analysis of vulnerability by sector, based on the proportion of the fleet that would be non-compliant
Technical Note 20: GM Specialist Goods Survey Results Summary	Aug 2019	Sets out the results of on-street surveys carried out at three sites identified in the local exceedances study where freight was a significant contributor of emissions. The surveys provide estimates of vehicle volumes by size, compliance status and industry. https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Reviews the composition of the freight vehicles operating at specific location in GM
T4 Appendix A (Modelling for Consultation)	Jan 2020	Discusses the modelling tools used to assess the impacts of GM CAP https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Modelling tools used to assess impacts of GM CAP
Deliberative Research	Nov 2019	Research was carried out with vehicle owners potentially in scope for the scheme, including deliberative research and surveys of van owners https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Understanding the vans sector and views of van owners
GM CAP Impacts of COVID-19 Report	June 2021	Considers the impacts of the pandemic on GM and reviews the potential and actual impacts of COVID-19 on the GM CAP. https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Review of impacts of COVID-19, including impacts on vans

Chapter 2			
Percentage change in online purchases due to the coronavirus (COVID-19) pandemic	Jan 2022	Percentage change in online purchases due to the coronavirus (COVID-19) pandemic in the United Kingdom from March 2020 to February 2021 https://www.statista.com/statistics/1230225/changes-in-online-buying-among-uk-consumers-since-covid-19/	Linked to vans activities for certain sectors
Light Commercial Vehicles Delivering for the UK Economy	2019	Background on Light Commercial Vehicles Sector https://www.smmmt.co.uk/wp-content/uploads/sites/2/SMMT-Light-Commercial-Vehicles-Delivering-for-the-UK-economy.pdf	Provides background details of the vans sector (Pre-Covid-19)
T4 Appendix C – Vehicle Populations	2021	Provides details of vehicle proportions impacted by GM CAP (NB: Current version not published – TN37, link below provides previous version of this note) https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Details of vans vehicle proportions (compliant / non-compliant splits)
GMP ANPR Data	2019 / 2020 / 2021	Greater Manchester Police – ANPR camera data, reviewed to understand the composition of the vans fleet, including age profile of the fleet (Raw Data not published)	Understand composition of the vans fleet (e.g. fleet age distribution)
Chapter 3			
Vans Sales data (SMMT)	Various	Sales data as reported by Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders (SMMT) https://www.smmmt.co.uk/vehicle-data/lcv-registrations/	Vans sales data
Vans Statistics	Apr 2021	DfT Statistical Release 15 April 2021, Final Van Statistics April 2019March2020 https://assets.publishing.service.gov.uk/government/uploads/system/uploads/attachment_data/file/1065072/van-statistics-2019-to-2020.pdf	Vans Statistics
Chapter 4			
Self Employment Stats (ONS)	Feb 2022	Trends in Self-Employment in the UK Office for National Statistics https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/articles/trendsinselfemploymentintheuk/2018-02-07	To understand business types for van ownership
Booming home delivery and construction fuel demand for vans	Aug 2021	Motor Trader review of market sectors https://www.motortrader.com/motor-trader-news/automotive-news/booming-home-delivery-construction-fuel-demand-vans-auction-25-08-2021	Understand impacts of COVID on Vans sectors
Why electric van sales are set to soar	Mar 2021	Review of position of electric vehicle take up https://www.fleeturope.com/en/last-mile/europe/analysis/why-electric-van-sales-are-set-soar?a=JMA06&t%5B0%5D=e-LCV&t%5B1%5D=Dataforce&t%5B2%5D=Arrival&t%5B3%5D=EV100&t%5B4%5D=Renault&t%5B5%5D=Nissan&t%5B6%5D=Mercedes-Benz%20Vans&curl=1	Understand likely EV uptake on vans sector
SMMT Car Sales data	Various	Review of ongoing changes in vehicle sales data. Covers other modes than car	Reviewing trends of

		https://www.smmmt.co.uk/category/vehicle-data/used-car-sales-data/	vehicle registrations / sales
Chapter 5			
Baker McKenzie	Jan 2022	https://www.bakermckenzie.com/en/newsroom/2020/04/global-supply-chains-under-huge-pressure-covid-19	Impacts of the pandemic on supply chains
LCV Registrations	Various	https://www.smmmt.co.uk/vehicle-data/lcv-registrations/	Changing fleet profile over time
Coping with the auto-semiconductor shortage: Strategies for success	May 2021	https://www.mckinsey.com/industries/automotive-and-assembly/our-insights/coping-with-the-auto-semiconductor-shortage-strategies-for-success	Research
Latest updates as semiconductor chip crisis cripples industry	Feb 2022	https://www.autocar.co.uk/car-news/business-tech%2C-development-and-manufacturing/latest-updates-semiconductor-chip-crisis	Research
Used values to rise as semiconductor crisis hits new van production	Apr 2021	https://www.commercialfleet.org/news/van-news/2021/04/28/used-lcv-prices-to-rise-as-semiconductor-supply-crisis-hits-new-van-production	Research
Chapter 6			
Steel Prices	Various	Changing Price of Steel – impacts on supply chains https://tradingeconomics.com/commodity/steel	Research
LCV Market Statement	2021	BCA – Statements Stuart Pearson, COO at BCA UK www.bca.co.uk	Research
LCV Market Statement	2021	Cox Automotive Statement - Matthew Davock, director of commercial vehicles	Research
Changes in Van Prices	2021	Changing van prices provided by CAP HPI https://www.cap-hpi.com/	Research – Vehicle prices
Used van values up 50% in 18 months despite mileage and age increasing	Jul 2021	https://www.commercialfleet.org/news/van-news/2021/07/05/used-van-values-up-50-in-18-months-despite-mileage-and-age-increasing	Research
Used Van Prices	2019 / 2022	https://www.autotrader.co.uk/	Research – Vehicle prices
Van Prices	Various	https://www.carpricetracker.com/car/239343/Ford+Transit+Custom+2.2+TDCi+290+L1H1+Limited+Double+Cab-in-Van+6dr	Research – Vehicle prices
Supply shortages creating 'perfect storm' for van sector	Oct 2021	https://www.am-online.com/news/market-insight/2021/10/15/supply-shortages-creating-perfect-storm-for-van-sector	Research

Chapter 7			
Appendix 1 - GM Clean Air Plan Policy following Consultation	2021	https://cleanairm.com/technical-documents/	GM CAP Technical Report
DRAFT GM CAP Post-Covid Post-Consultation AQ Modelling Summary Report v1	2021	https://cleanairm.com/technical-documents/	GM CAP Technical Report
Air Quality Modelling Summary Report Appendix D	2021	https://cleanairm.com/technical-documents/	GM CAP Technical Report
89% of builders face job delays as shortages continue	Oct 2021	https://www.pbctoday.co.uk/news/planning-construction-news/builders-delays/100980/	Research
Chapter 8			
		(No new Sources in Chapter 8)	
Appendix A			
		(No new Sources in Appendix A)	
Appendix B			
Coronavirus (COVID-19) UK Government Dashboard	Oct 2020	https://coronavirus.data.gov.uk/	Background of Covid Timeline
"Greater Manchester's COVID-19 Management Plan: how we control outbreaks"	2022	https://greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/coronavirus/COVID-19-management-plan/	Background of Covid Timeline
"Prime Minister announces new local COVID Alert Levels"	Oct 2020	https://www.gov.uk/government/news/prime-minister-announces-new-local-covid-alert-levels	Background of Covid Timeline
TfGM's C2 Database	various	Traffic flow data was extracted and analysed from TfGM's C2 Database https://tfgmc2.drakewell.com/multinodemap.asp	Information on local traffic impacts
"Budget 2021: Fuel duty rise axed as petrol prices hit record highs"	Oct 2021	Fuel Prices Increase: https://www.standard.co.uk/news/politics/budget-2021-fuel-duty-rise-axed-petrol-prices-record-highs-b962832.html	Information on Economic Related Impacts

"GDP monthly estimate, UK : December 2021"	Dec 2021	GDP information https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"Average weekly earnings in Great Britain: February 2022"	Dec 2021	Growth in average total pay (including bonuses) of 4.3% and growth in regular pay (excluding bonuses) of 3.7% among employees was seen in October to December 2021 https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/averageweeklyearningsingreatbritain/february2022	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"UK economy latest"	Dec 2022	Information on Goods import and exports https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/economicoutputandproductivity/output/articles/ukeconomylatest/2021-01-25#output	Information on Economic Related Impacts
"Cities Outlook 2022"	Jan 2022	Change in pub and restaurant sales in City Centres and Suburbs. Weekday footfall in Birmingham, Manchester and London https://www.centreforcities.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/01/Cities-Outlook-2022-2.pdf	Information on Economic Related Impacts

Appendix B – Review of COVID Impacts

Overview

- B.1 Travel behaviour and the economy have been impacted by the COVID-19 pandemic and have resulted in changes in the way that people travel and the way businesses operate. In this chapter we will assess some of the key data findings found throughout the period to better understand the levels of impact on transport and travel generally.

COVID Timeline

- B.2 In January 2020, COVID-19 first appeared in the UK. By 30th November 2020, there were an estimated total of 1.6 million people testing positive to the virus in the UK with 58,24537 cases resulting in deaths.³⁸
- B.3 As stated within the GMCA COVID-19 Management Plan Executive Summary, GM had more than 16,000 confirmed cases and nearly 2,800 people died during the first four months of the COVID-19 pandemic.³⁹
- B.4 In Summer 2020, North West England was one of the worst affected areas by the pandemic with GM placed under additional restrictions on 31st July 2020. Throughout 2020, GM continued to experience a disproportionate impact to the rest of the UK from these additional restrictions, such as the three-tier system for lockdowns across England. This three-tiered system was first announced by the Government in October 2020 to '*simplify and standardise local rules*'.⁴⁰
- B.5 On 5th November 2020, the Government imposed a second national lockdown with restrictions on continued business activity in England. These restrictions were in place between 5th November and 2nd December 2020, followed by a return to 3 Tier system restrictions.
- B.6 On 19th December 2020 the Government introduced an additional 4th Tier, with lockdown measures beginning in London and the South East, after having identified the Alpha (Kent) variant, coming into effect on 21st December 2020 until a third nationwide lockdown was re-introduced on 6th January 2021.
- B.7 March 2021 saw Step 1 of the Government's roadmap being introduced, with schools reopening and outdoor gatherings being allowed with the proviso of staying local. April 2021 saw Step 2 of the roadmap allowing limited indoor contact, businesses such as hairdressers to reopen and outdoor hospitality. Step 3 came into effect in May 2021, allowing indoor meetings limited to 6 people and 10,000 people for large sport stadiums. Step 4, on 19th July 2021, saw the remaining venues such as nightclubs reopen, and the removal of most other restrictions.
- B.8 With the discovery of the Omicron variant, Plan B measures (face coverings indoors and use of Covid Passes at specific settings such as nightclubs), which

³⁷ UK deaths is based on deaths within 28 days of a positive test and does not include excessive deaths.

³⁸ Coronavirus (COVID-19) UK Government Dashboard <https://coronavirus.data.gov.uk/> (accessed 01/10/20)

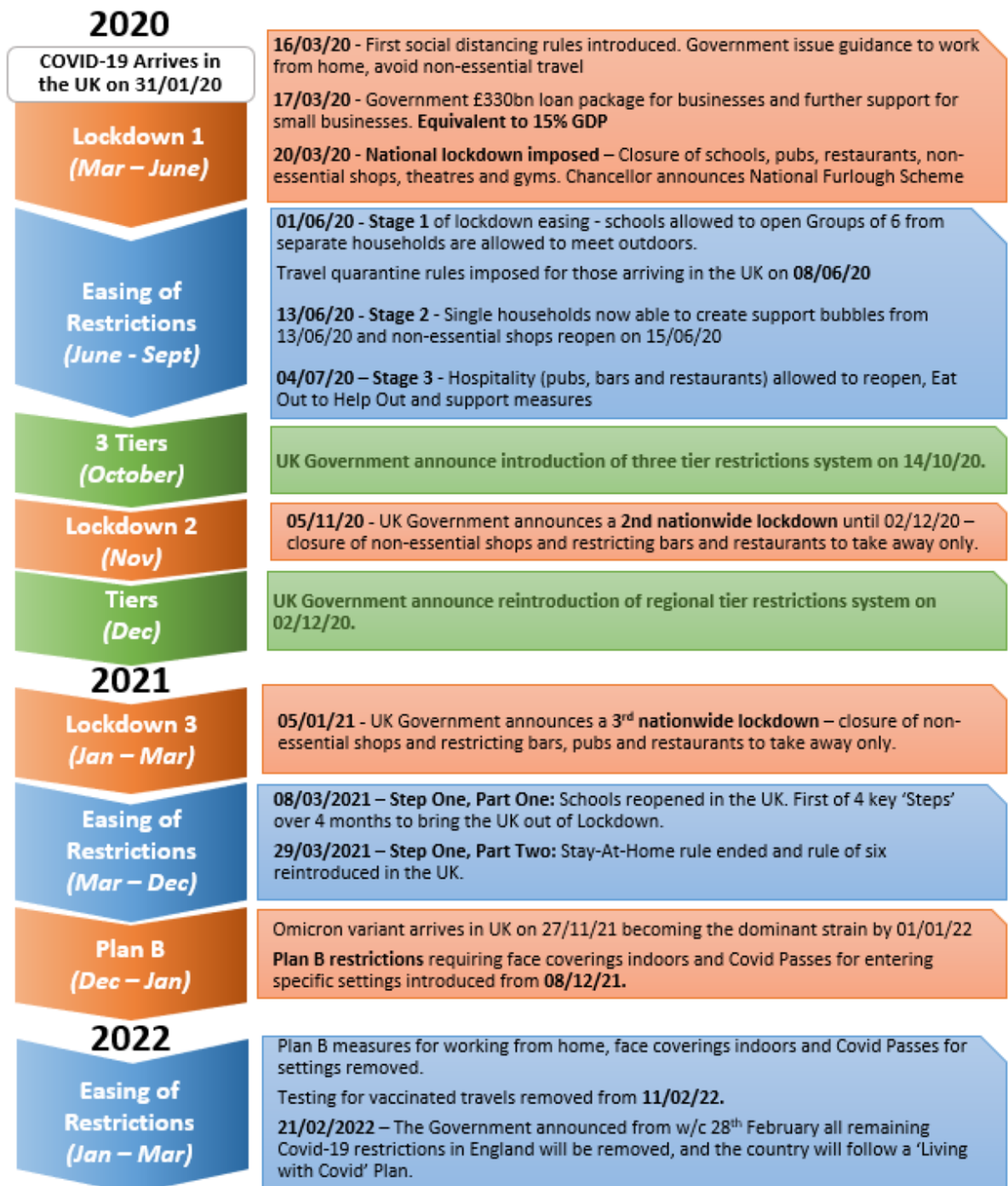
³⁹ COVID-19 Management Plan – Executive Summary (GMCA) <https://greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/coronavirus/COVID-19-management-plan/>

⁴⁰ Prime Minister announces new local Covid Alert Levels - <https://www.gov.uk/government/news/prime-minister-announces-new-local-covid-alert-levels>

also recommended working from home where possible, were implemented from 8th December 2021 to 27th January 2022.

- B.9 A summary of the key COVID-19 events and Government responses has been captured in **Figure B-1**.

Figure B-1 COVID-19 Timeline January 2020 to March 2022



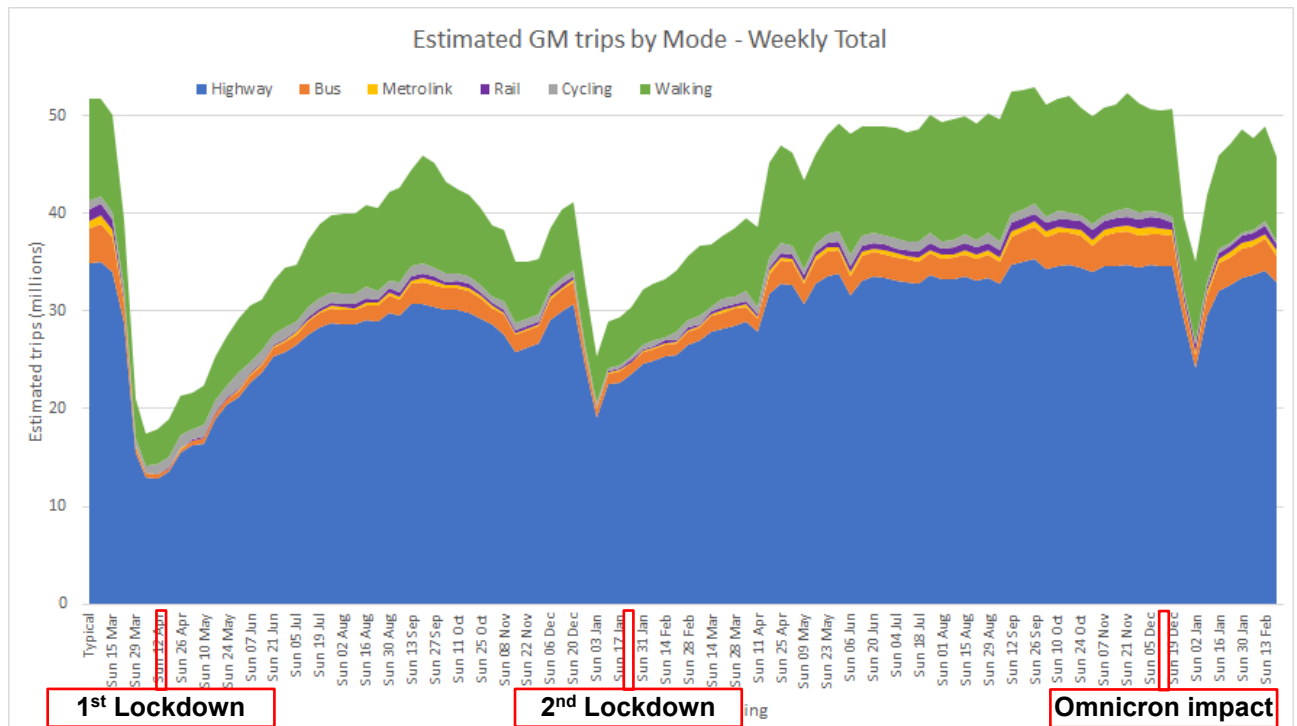
- B.10 The COVID-19 pandemic has had a transformative global impact to health, businesses, the economy, and way we live and interact with one another.
- B.11 At the time of the production of this note in March 2022, the UK appears to be exiting the pandemic. Case numbers are stabilising, death and in-patient numbers

remain low, reflecting the positive impact of a successful vaccine programme rollout.

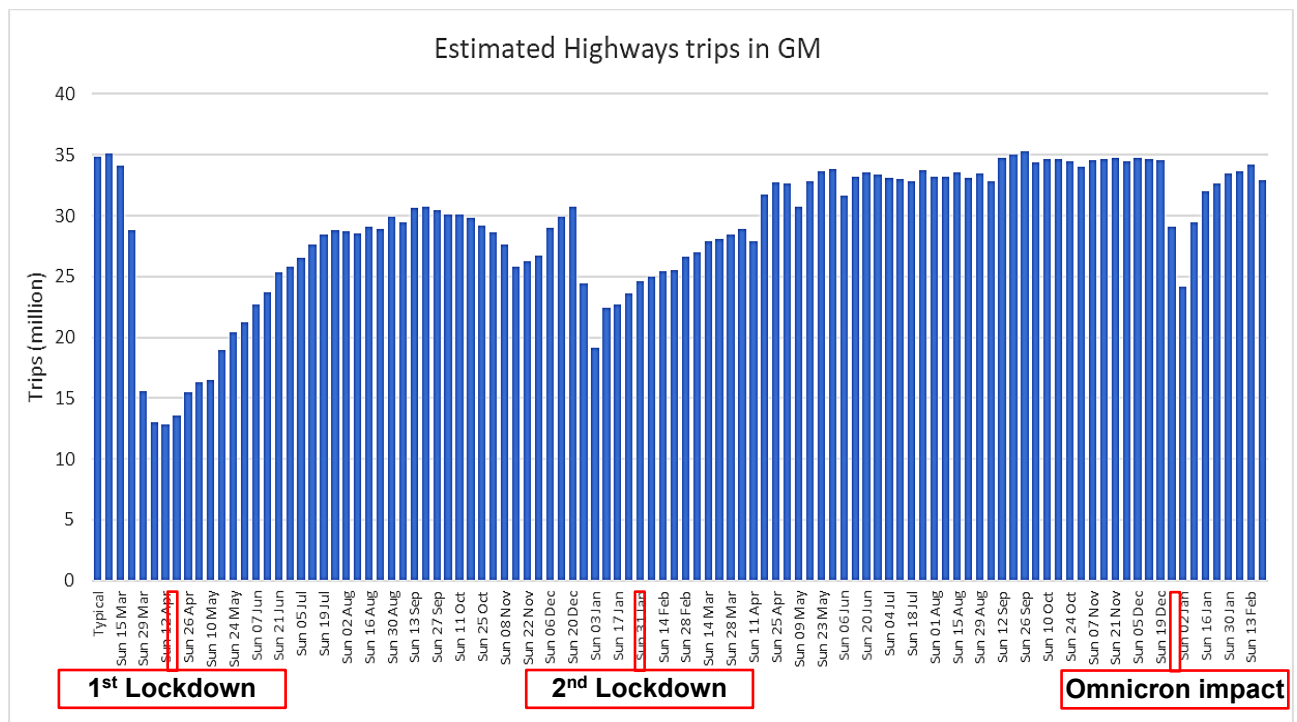
- B.12 However, emerging evidence gathered over the course of 2020 and 2021 has shown that there have been substantial changes to the economy, travel patterns and our behaviours. These changes have been driven by Government policy in the short term, however some of the behaviours adopted during Government lockdowns may continue as restrictions ease. In addition to this, economic impacts following the recent easing of restrictions have resulted in impacts which can be seen locally, nationally and globally within the economy.

COVID-19 Impacts on Travel Behaviour

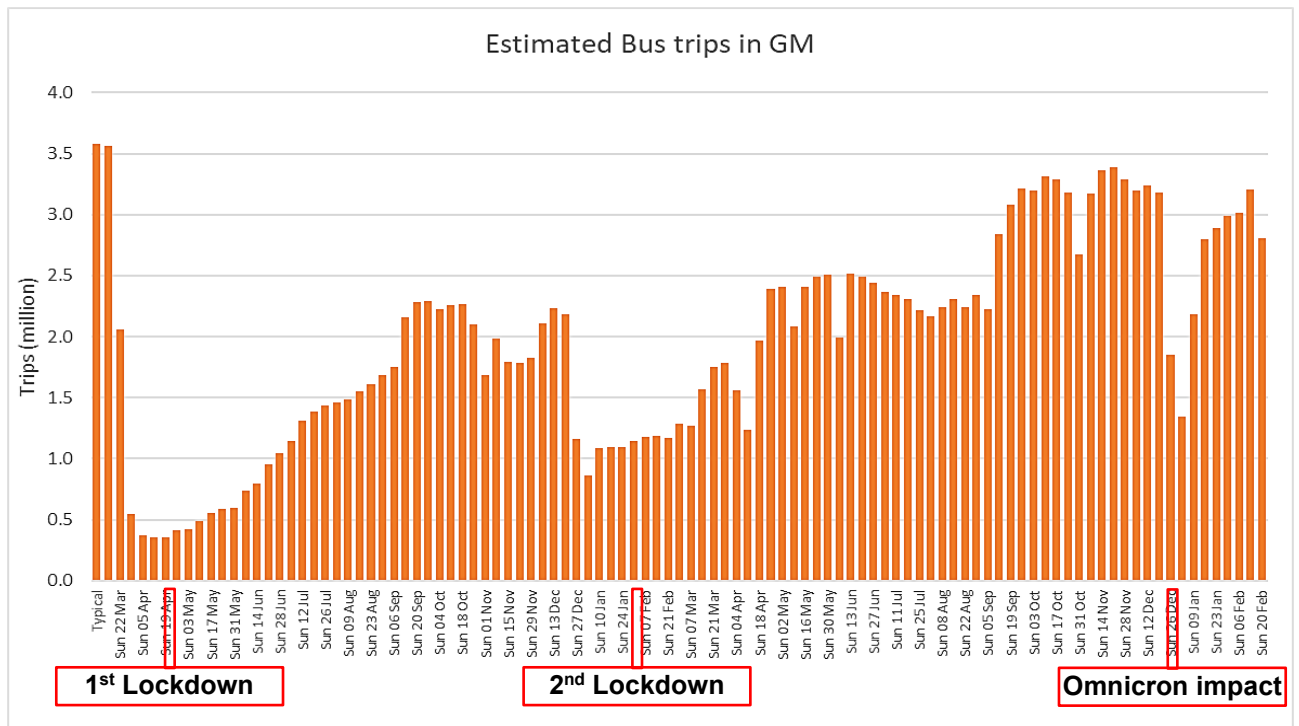
- B.13 Detailed analysis has been undertaken on the impacts of COVID-19 on travel demand within GM to compare 'pre-pandemic' and 'during pandemic' travel levels within GM.
- B.14 As shown in **Figure B-1**, there are a number of Government interventions which have had an impact on traffic levels (for all modes of transport). These include:
- Government guidance issued on 16th March 2020 to work from home 'where possible';
 - Closure of all UK schools to children, apart from those who have key worker guardians on 20th March 2020;
 - Closure of the hospitality and leisure sector on the 20th March 2020 including pubs, bars, restaurants, gyms, theatres etc.;
 - Re-opening of schools to all children in September 2020 alongside the UK Government encouraging workers to return to the office;
 - Implementation and extension of the Government Tiered restrictions;
 - Return to lockdown conditions on 5th November 2020, 2nd December 2020 and 6th January 2021; and
 - Hotel quarantine for travellers from high-risk countries.
- B.15 Since the beginning of the pandemic, travel patterns across the UK have significantly changed, driven by changing Government guidelines and the perception of transmission risks on certain forms of transport. An overview of the changing trends of travel behaviour by mode in Greater Manchester is provided in **Figure B-2** to **Figure B-6**; the data has been provided by TfGM. Three key dates have been flagged in each figure: the first and second national lockdowns plus the emergence of the Omicron variant.

Figure B-2 Overview of travel behaviour – All Modes

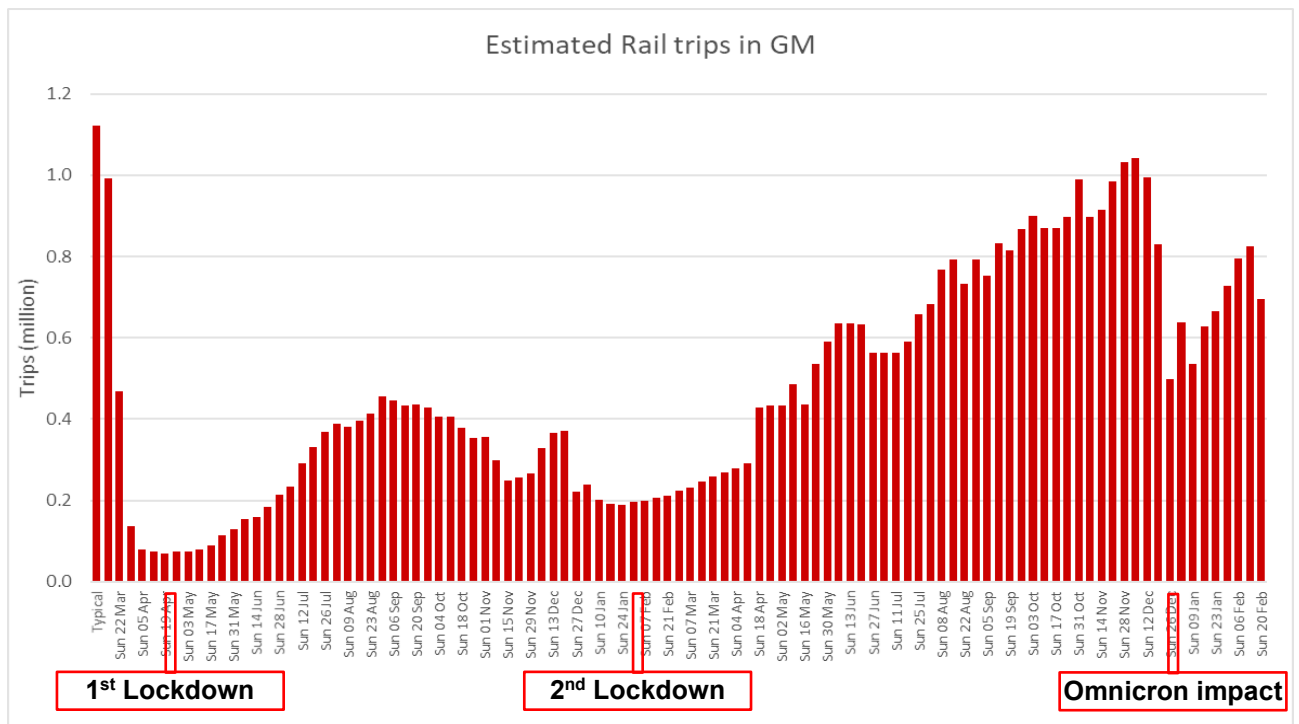
Source: TfGM

Figure B-3 Overview of travel behaviour – Highway

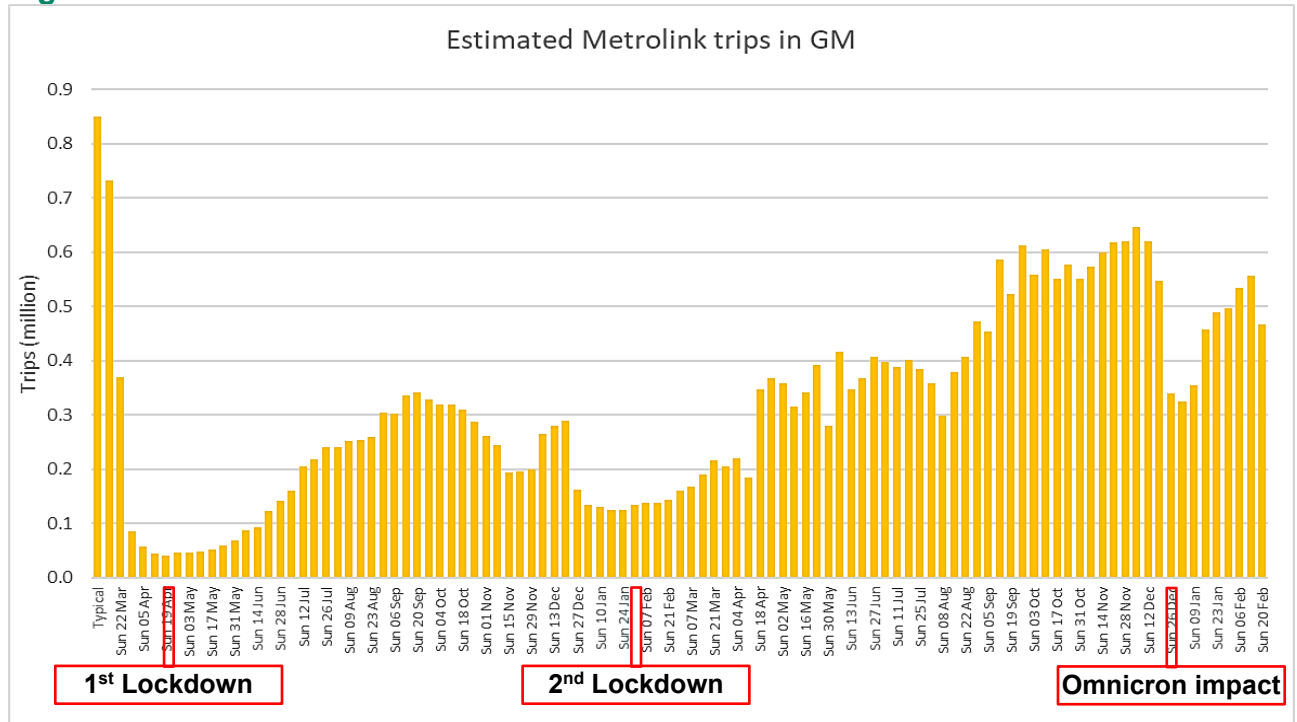
Source: TfGM

Figure B-4 Overview of travel behaviour – Bus

Source: TfGM

Figure B-5 Overview of travel behaviour – Rail

Source: TfGM

Figure B-6 Overview of travel behaviour – Metrolink

Source: TfGM

B.16 These figures illustrate that the impact of the pandemic has been pronounced and the extent to which pre-pandemic travel volumes have returned varies by mode. In summary, at the aggregate level across GM:

- Highway trips are close to pre-pandemic levels (approximately 95% of 'typical'); and
- Public transport trip levels are between 60% and 75% of pre-pandemic / typical levels with bus performing more strongly than rail / Metrolink.

Local Traffic Impacts

B.17 Further analysis was undertaken regarding traffic flows on the local highway network, in order to understand the changing highway demand levels at various points through the pandemic. This has provided an insight into how the COVID-19 related travel guidance and changing behaviours because of the pandemic have impacted travel across GM.

B.18 This analysis has considered changing travel levels at a range of locations across Greater Manchester, to understand how traffic flows have changed on the following:

- Roads near to the Regional Centre;
- Key radial routes;
- Roads adjacent to local centres within GM; and
- Roads accessing centres of employment.

B.19 The analysis has considered several points in time, comparing:

- September 2019 (before the pandemic);

- September 2020 (during the pandemic);
- November 2021 (during pandemic – pre Omicron); and
- January 2022 (most recent, though impacted by Omicron variant).

B.20 Traffic flow data was extracted and analysed from TfGM's C2 Database⁴¹. These have been reviewed and presented for the 2-way hourly link volumes, by hour, at the following locations:

- Manchester Rd (A56) / 15m South of Ashlor St, Bury (ATC);
- Princess Rd (A5103) / 100m North of Bonsall St, Hulme, Manchester (ATC);
- Washway Rd (A56) / 40m North of Hunston Rd, Sale, Trafford (ATC);
- Bury New Rd (A56) / 90m North of Kingswood Rd, Prestwich, Bury (ATC); and
- Centenary Way (A576) / 160m North of Guinness Rd, Trafford Park, Trafford (ATC)

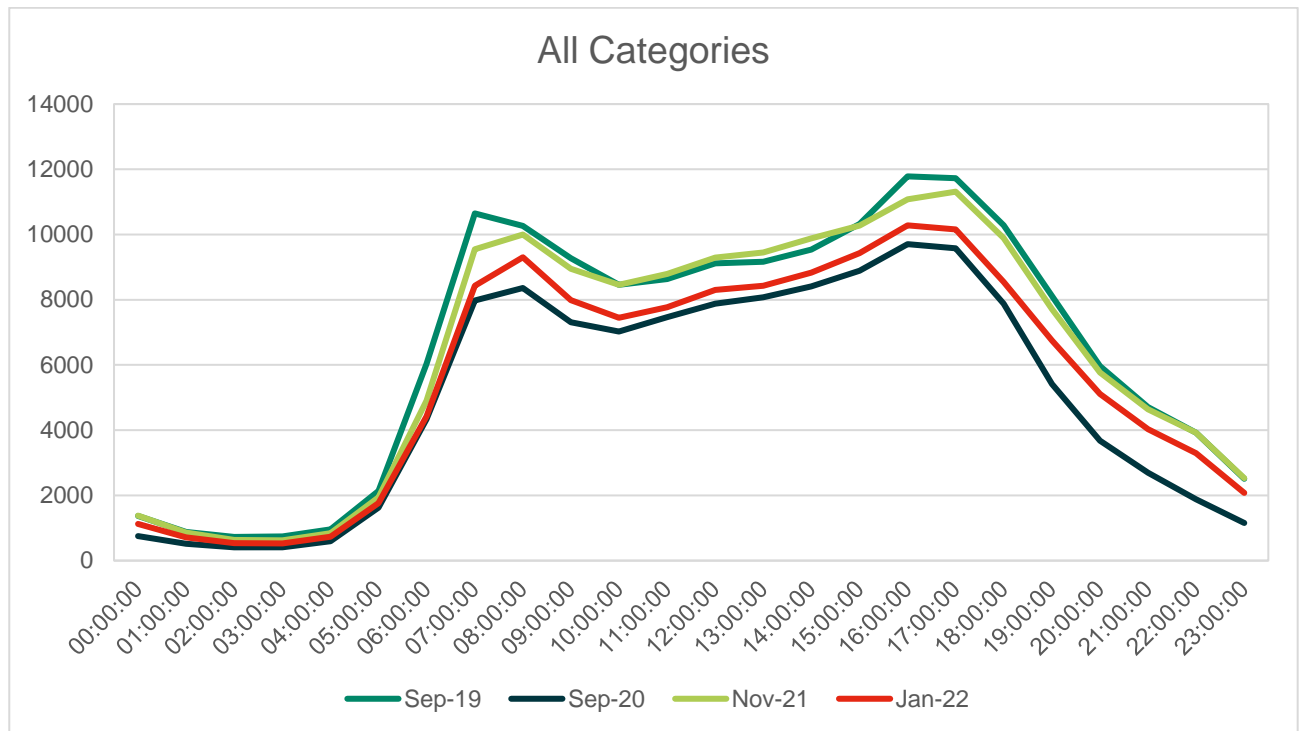
B.21 Using these specific locations around Greater Manchester the traffic behaviours at each location type can be assessed.

General Traffic Conditions

B.22 Averaging the sites identified above (see **Figure B-7**) suggests there has been a change in travel behaviour throughout the pandemic, noting the following key observations:

- The AM and PM peak periods have remained, although there is a dampening down effect on the peaks, with less variation between peak flows and interpeak flows, as the interpeak has continued to perform strongly.
- During late 2021, highway demand was almost back at pre-pandemic levels, there was then a noticeable drop again in demand as a result of the Omicron variant in December 2021.
- There has been some recovery during the peak periods, though they have not yet returned to pre pandemic levels.
- It is also noted that the earlier part of the AM peak is less strong than pre pandemic levels, with the AM peak now occurring 08:00 to 09:00, rather than 07:00 to 08:00 based on the sample of data sites.
- It also appears that the evening traffic (after 19:00) in 2022 is recovering at a slightly faster rate than the daytime traffic flows. This returned to pre-pandemic levels in November 2021 however, there has been a slight drop again in 2022, although it has been less impacted than other times of day. During the 2020 restrictions, the evening economy was significantly restricted by the COVID-19 restrictions in place at the time.

⁴¹ <https://tfgmc2.drakewell.com/multinodemap.asp>

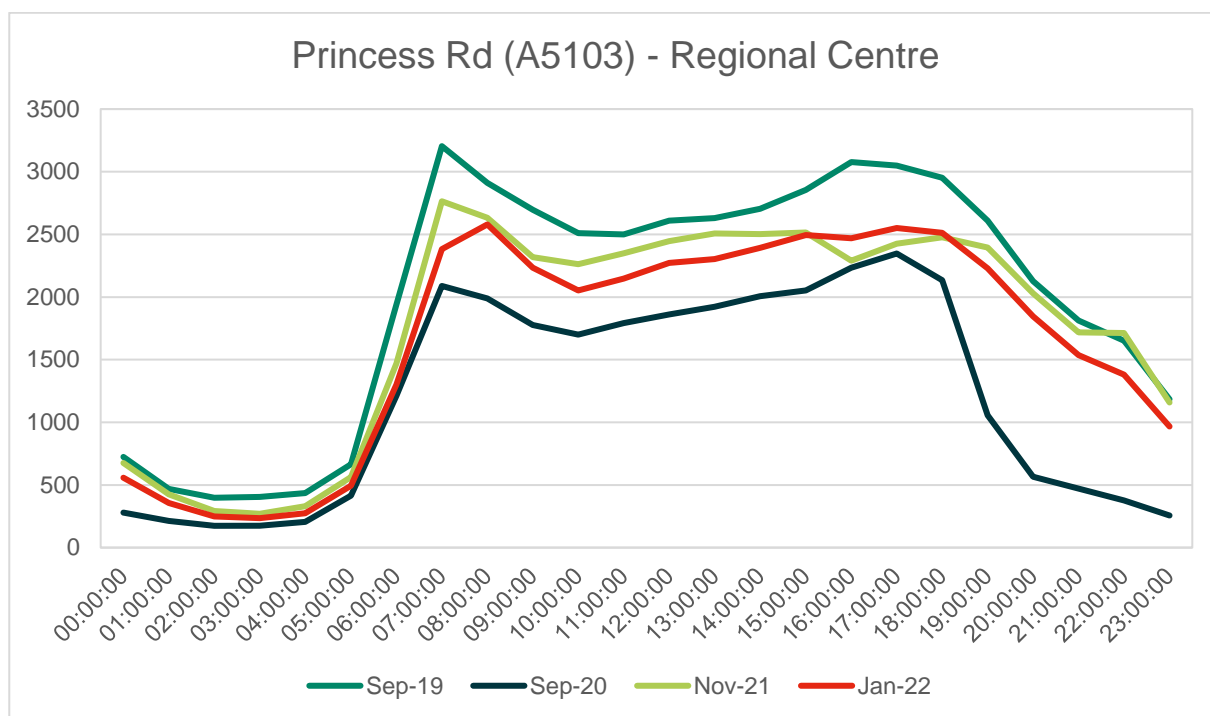
Figure B-7 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (all areas)

Source: TfGM C2 Database

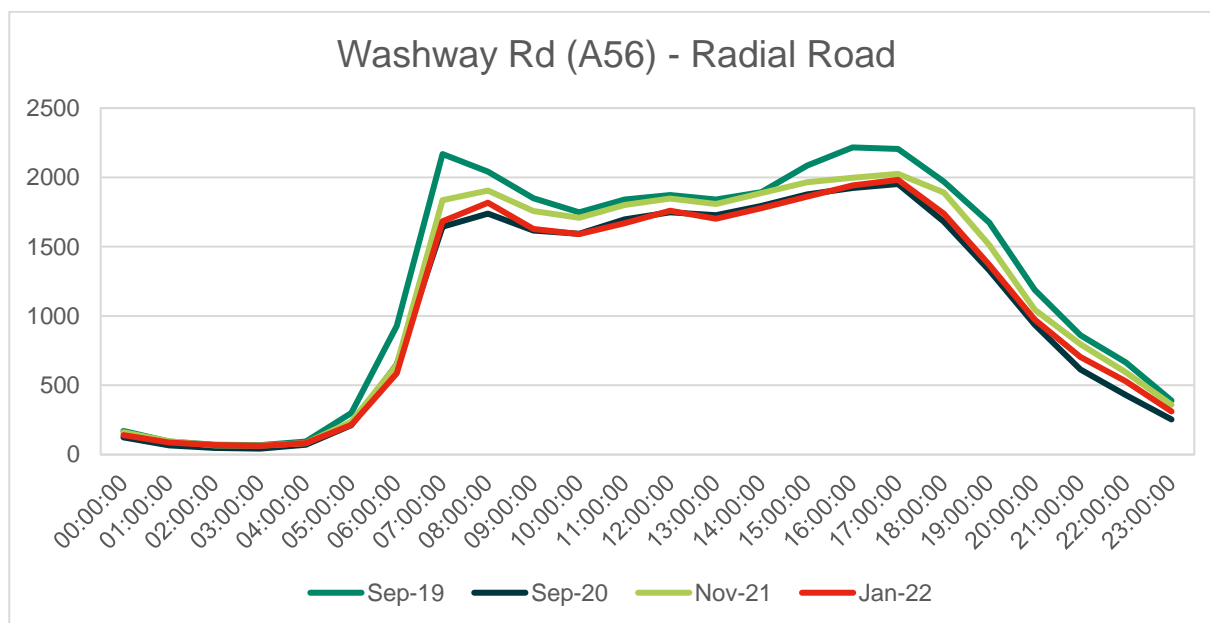
Roads adjacent to the Regional Centre

B.23 Traffic flows adjacent to the Regional Centre have been significantly impacted throughout the pandemic (see **Figure B-8**). The following key trends have been identified:

- From the data assessed, the pandemic (and associated restrictions) appears to have had the greatest impact on regional centre flows, with the largest decrease in 2020 and the slowest recovery;
- The recovery of traffic flows in the peaks is still subdued, though traffic flows during the Omicron variant have been higher than in Autumn 2020, unlike what is seen at local centres;
- In 2020, COVID-19 restrictions had a considerable impact on demand for travel relating to the Regional Centre, with heavy restrictions placed on sectors such as leisure, tourism, and the night time economy. By November 2021, the easing of COVID restrictions resulted in a return of travel demand to the Regional Centre, showing considerable recovery at particular times of day, reaching close to 2019 levels. The 2022 travel demand to Mar-22 also showed a strong return of traffic during the evening periods, though the Omicron variant is likely to be keeping these slightly below pre-pandemic levels at present.
- The early part of the AM peak is now much weaker than prior to the pandemic, and the PM peak is less pronounced. In November 2021, traffic flows were slightly reduced from pre pandemic levels, with the PM peak most strongly impacted. In January 2022, the PM peak appears to be starting to recover, with a slightly later AM peak.

Figure B-8 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Regional Centre)**Radial Roads**

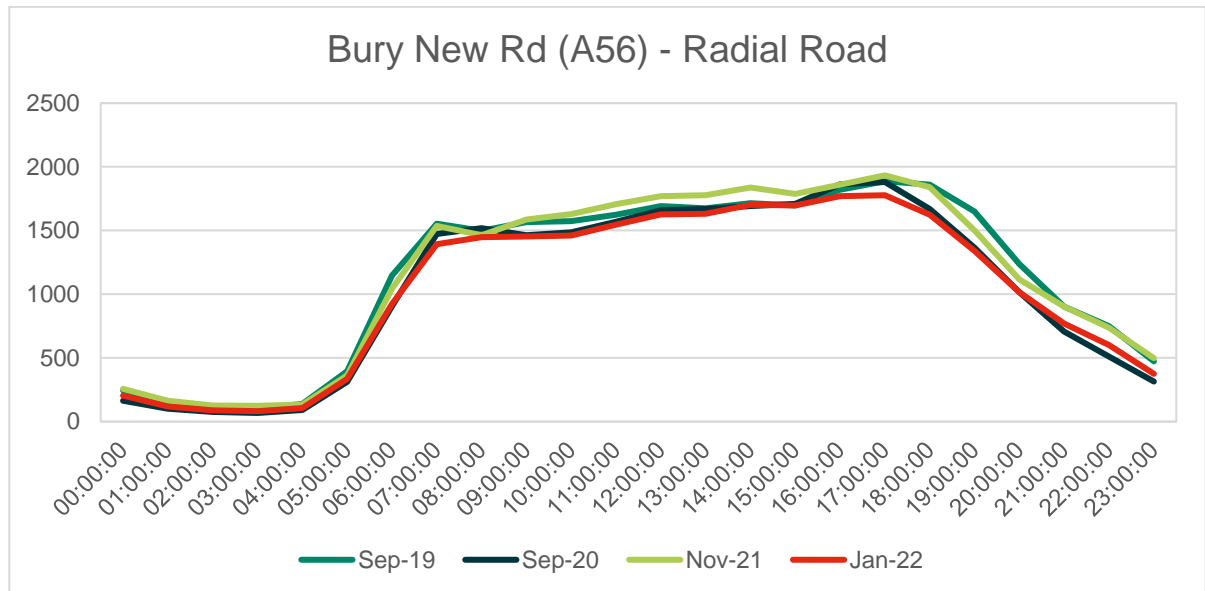
- B.24 On Washway Road in Sale (see **Figure B-9**), its proximity close to the M60, and as a key radial route, has resulted in a high level of traffic demand at various points throughout the pandemic. The site is also close to the Local Centre of Sale. Demand has remained strong at the various points assessed although, as with most other locations, the peak periods are showing slightly lower demand in 2022.

Figure B-9 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Radial Roads Outside M60)

- B.25 Another key radial route north of the Regional Centre is Bury New Road (see **Figure B-10**). This site is also a key radial, though also serves local centres, such

as at Prestwich. This location has shown a strong recovery of travel behaviour with travel at certain times of day exceeding pre-pandemic levels, especially during the interpeak, both in autumn 2020, autumn 2021 and currently in 2022. The evening period has, however, shown a slower recovery.

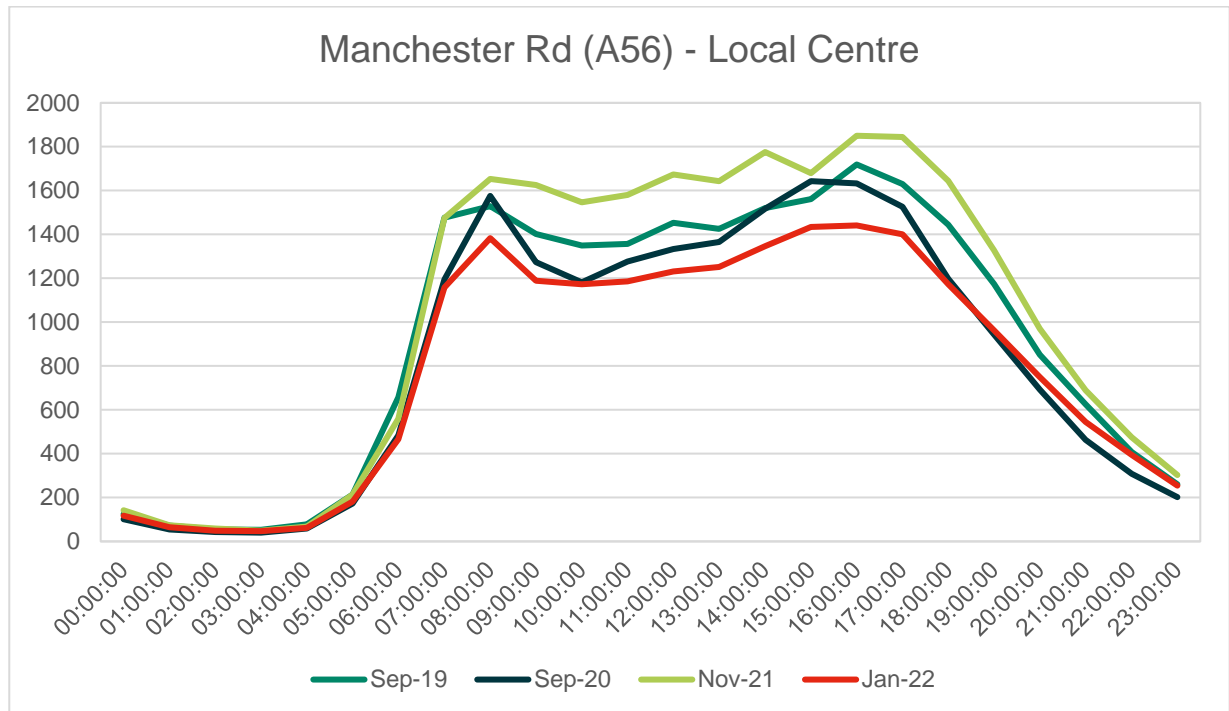
Figure B-10 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Radial Roads Inside M60)



Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location N of Kingswood Rd, Prestwich (Near to M60 J17)

Local Centres

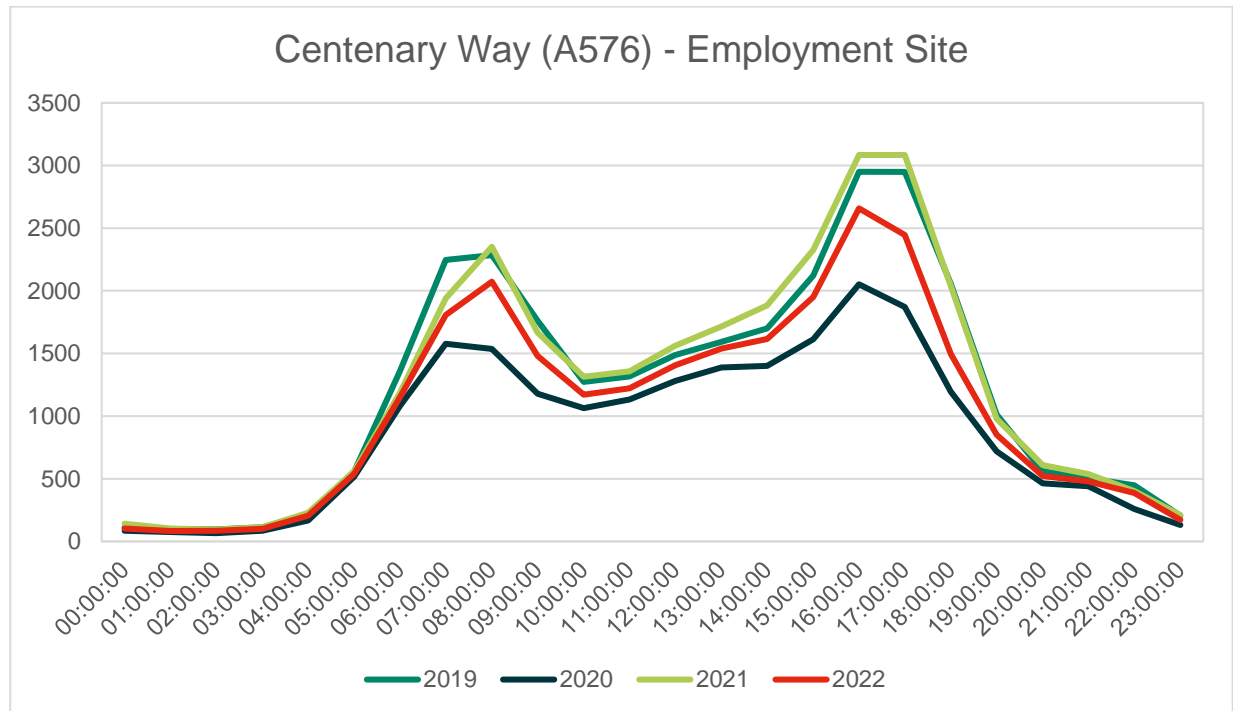
- B.26 Throughout the pandemic, as the UK Government eased travel guidance, travel demand in the vicinity of local centres, have bounced back strongly. **Figure B-11**, shows the A56 Manchester Road near Bury, which experienced a strong bounce back effect in Autumn 2020, when travel restrictions were eased. **Figure B-11** shows the later part of the AM peak and the early part of the PM peak exceeding pre pandemic levels, plus a strong interpeak and was likely an impact of more localised travel.
- B.27 By the end of 2021, demand had exceeded 2019 pre-pandemic levels by a clear margin, however this demand fell significantly in January 2022. The recent 2022 data shows the impacts of restrictions associated with the Omicron variant which has suppressed traffic flows once again.

Figure B-11 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (adjacent to Local Centres)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location S of Ashlor St, Bury

Centres of Employment (Trafford Park)

- B.28 Trafford Park is a major site of employment within Greater Manchester, with traffic flows accessing this employment area changing significantly during the pandemic.
- B.29 During the limited easing of travel restrictions in Autumn 2020, traffic flows to/from Trafford Park remained low, with limited return of higher peak time travel flows. This was possibly due to the higher levels of working from home at the time. The more recent data from November 2021 shows flows higher than pre-pandemic levels. January 2022, though impacted by the Omicron variant, shows a recovery of peak hour travel demand, close to pre pandemic levels, although the early part of the AM peak and the later part of the PM peak show a slightly weaker recovery. Interpeak travel is also similar to pre pandemic levels (See **Figure B-12**).

Figure B-12 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Centres of Employment)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location Trafford Park, Trafford

Summary

- B.30 The review of local traffic flows at various locations across GM has shown considerable variations in changing travel behaviour by location, when compared to pre-pandemic levels. This is likely to be impacted by changing travel habits, although the recent Omicron variant is likely to be impacting some travel behaviour in the 2022 data, as shown in **Figure B7**, general traffic levels in Autumn 2021 showed overall recovery in traffic flows above pre-pandemic levels.
- B.31 The change in travel behaviour by location since September 2019 is summarised in **Table B-1**.
- B.32 Considering the position in November 2021, when travel patterns were least affected, it is notable that Local Centre traffic flows were higher than previously whilst the Regional Centre flows were still much reduced. For radial routes and employment centres, overall (daily) levels were back to pre-pandemic but with some variation during the day; the morning peak being less pronounced but the interpeak higher.

Table B-1 Traffic flow changes by location type from September 2019 to January 2022

Location Type	Period	Change relative to Sep-19 (Index=100)			
		Sep-19	Sep-20	Nov-21	Jan-22
Regional Centre	AM	100	67	88	81
	IP	100	73	95	88
	PM	100	41	92	85
	Eve	100	26	95	85
	Daily	100	61	88	83
Radial inside M60	AM	100	98	98	93
	IP	100	98	105	96
	PM	100	101	102	96
	Eve	100	80	94	83
	Daily	100	92	101	91
Local Centres	AM	100	103	108	90
	IP	100	96	115	88
	PM	100	94	113	86
	Eve	100	74	110	87
	Daily	100	90	111	86
Employment Centre	AM	100	69	95	86
	IP	100	83	108	94
	PM	100	61	102	79
	Eve	100	74	99	91
	Daily	100	74	102	88

Source: TfGM C2 Database

Economic Related Impacts

Introduction

B.33 Changes in the economic situation are also likely to have had an influence on travel behaviour. The section below presents the trends for a range of factors impacting the economy, several of which are likely to impact the way people travel and businesses operate.

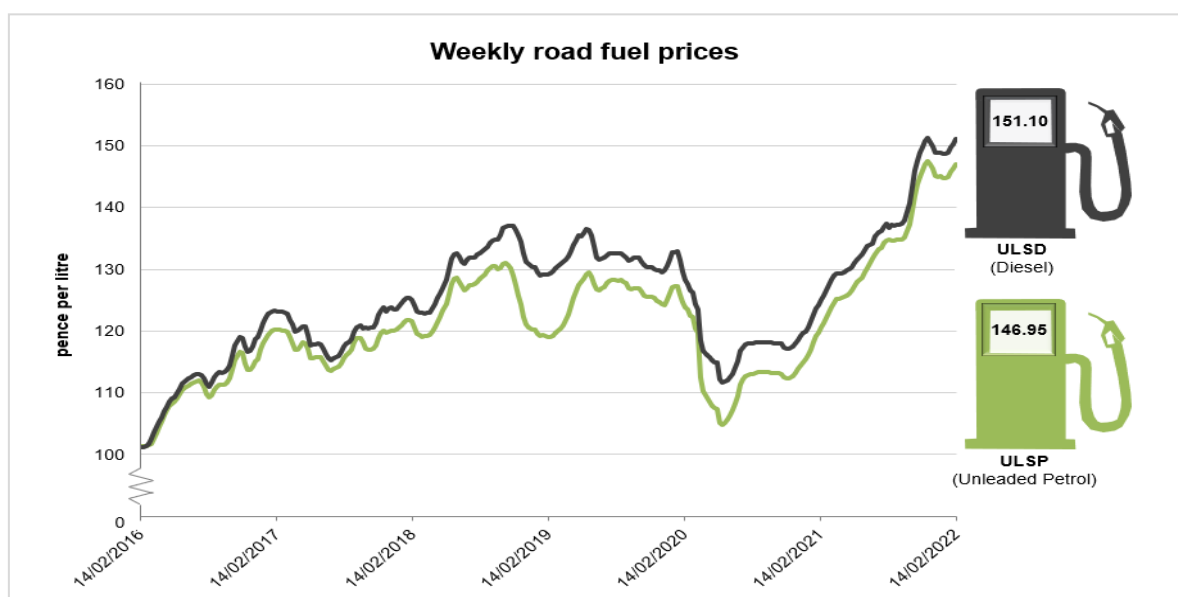
Fuel Prices

B.34 There are six companies (four oil companies and two supermarkets) that feed into the weekly fuel price survey prepared by the government. These companies cover around 65% of the market. The change in fuel price is displayed in **Figure B-13**.

B.35 The price of road fuel is volatile over shorter time periods, with prices regularly rising and falling. The key trends from during the pandemic are:

- At the start of 2020 prices appear to have been on the decline. There was then a significant fall in both Diesel and Unleaded Petrol in early 2020, corresponding with the first national lockdown.
- During the second part of 2020, prices appear to be stable, with prices beginning to rise steadily throughout 2021 in line with global oil market prices.
- There is a steep rise in prices towards the end of 2021, reaching record highs. This corresponds with a sudden rise in post-pandemic energy demand. This has triggered a tax freeze on petrol and diesel for the twelfth year in a row⁴².
- In September 2021 long queues and forecourt closures were witnessed, caused by panic buying throughout the country, sparking a fuel shortage in Britain.

Figure B-13 Weekly Road Fuel Prices



Source: gov.uk

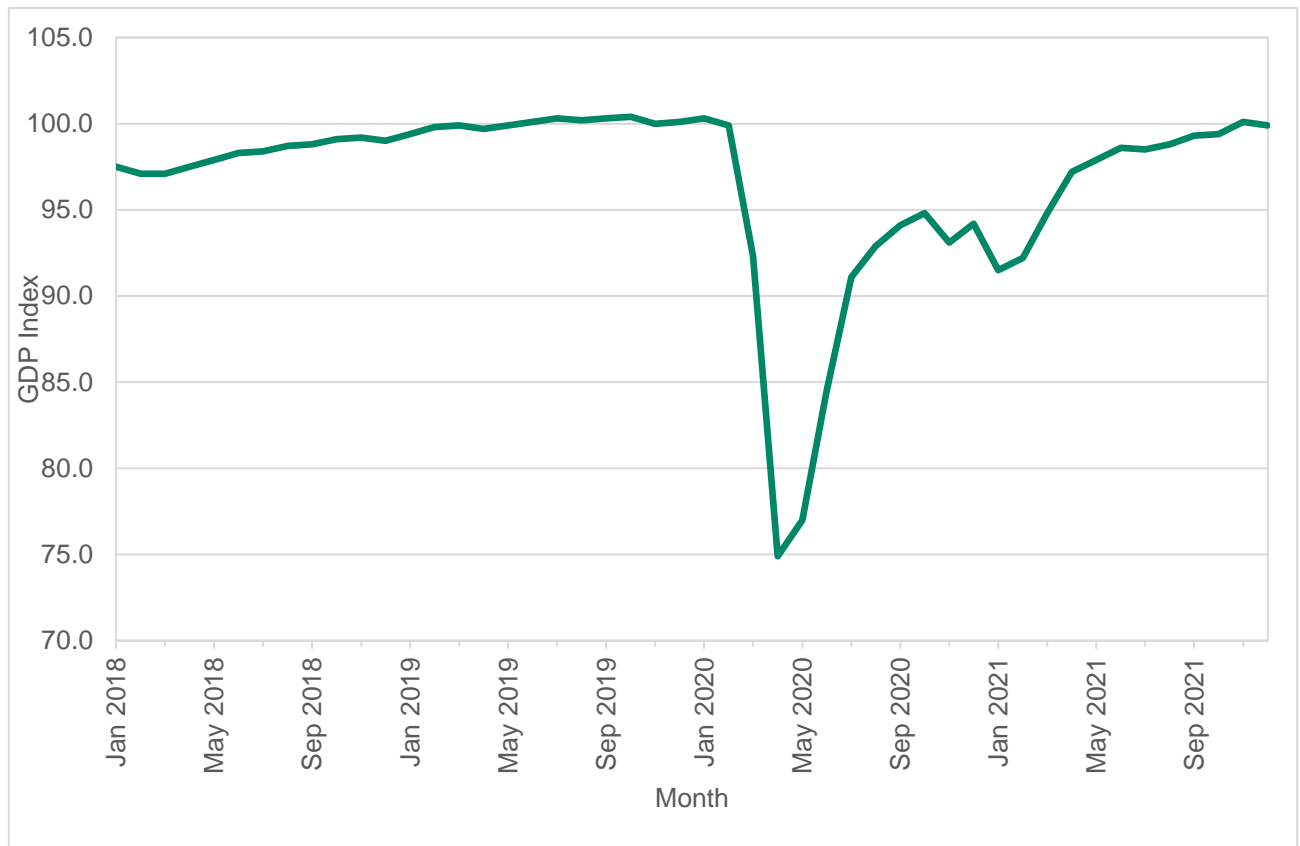
⁴² <https://www.standard.co.uk/news/politics/budget-2021-fuel-duty-rise-axed-petrol-prices-record-highs-b962832.html>

- B.36 It was already likely that the price of fuel would remain unsteady for some time as a consequence of the impact of the pandemic and recent events in Ukraine have brought additional uncertainty to that market.

GDP

- B.37 From bulletins on the ONS data website⁴³ the end of 2021 saw a drop in GDP by 0.2%, to equal the pre pandemic level of February 2020. In December 2021 services and construction are both above pre-pandemic levels, while production remained below. Consumer facing services fell within December, driven by a fall in retail, 8.4% below pre-coronavirus levels, contributing to the GDP fall in December 2021 (see **Figure B-14**).

Figure B-14 GDP in the UK (Index, 2019 = 100)



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy⁴⁴

- B.38 Growth in average total pay (including bonuses) of 4.3% and growth in regular pay (excluding bonuses) of 3.7% among employees was seen in October to December 2021⁴⁵. In real terms (adjusted for inflation), total and regular pay fell for the year by 0.1% and 0.8% respectively.

Imports and Exports

- B.39 **Figure B-15** shows the trends in UK goods imports and exports throughout 2019, 2020, and 2021. After an initial decrease in imports at the beginning of the pandemic, this appears to have recovered. There was another significant decrease at the end of 2020, however imported goods are on the increase back to

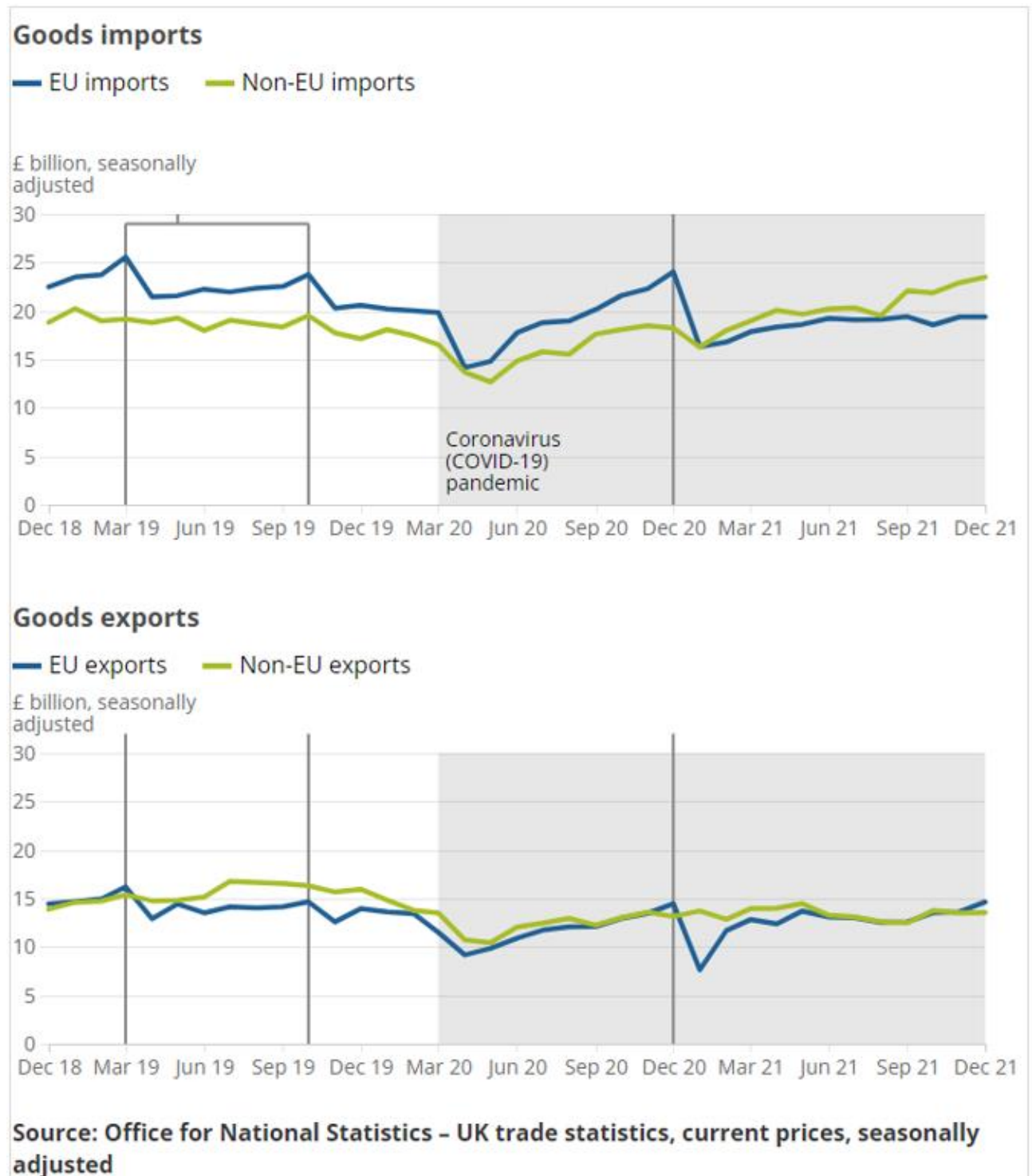
⁴³ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021>

⁴⁴ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021>

⁴⁵ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/averageweeklyearningsingreatbritain/february2022>

pre-pandemic levels. There was less impact on exports, with these remaining steady throughout.

Figure B-15 Import and Exports



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy⁴⁶

Centre for Cities – Cities Outlook

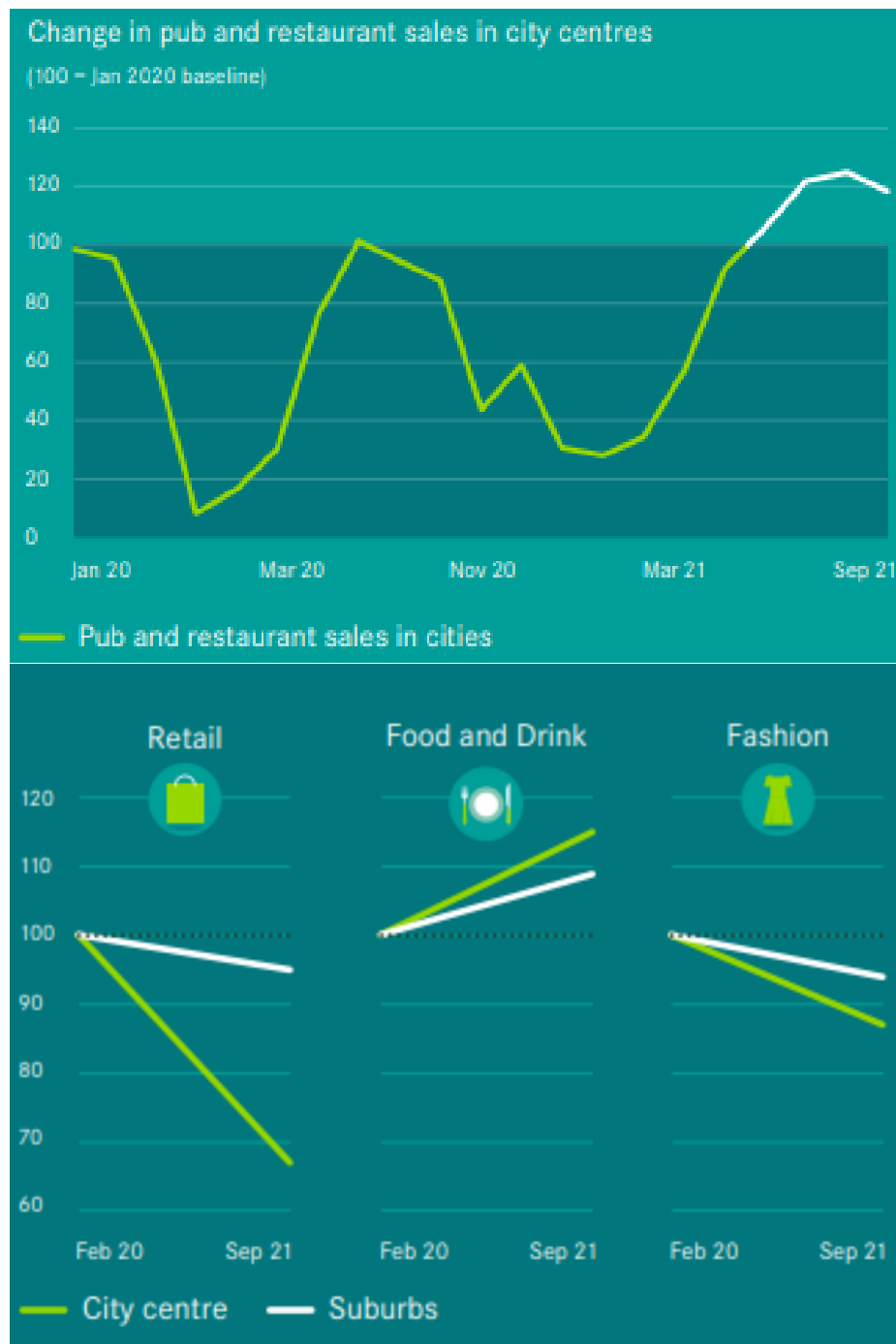
- B.40 Centre for Cities produced the Cities Outlook 2022 report looking in-depth at the state of UK high streets, to get a sense of the short-term impact of the pandemic on Britain's town and city centres, and the long-term consequences and

⁴⁶ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/economicoutputandproductivity/output/articles/ukeconomy/latest/2021-01-25#output>

implications this has for the Government's levelling up agenda. This report showed that there was a quick and considerable shift away from high streets to online shopping during the pandemic. However, in most cities the shift stalled, or slightly fell again once shops reopened.

- B.41 The Cities Outlook report also studies the impacts on pubs and restaurants, stating that the fashion sector was hit harder than pubs and restaurants. **Figure B-16** shows the trend in sales throughout 2020 and 2021. There are clear decreases in sales corresponding to the national lockdowns but in all instances, these soon recover when the sector reopens. This is also reflected in the suburbs, with retail and fashion experiencing a slight decline from Feb 2020 to September 2021 but food and drink on a steady incline.

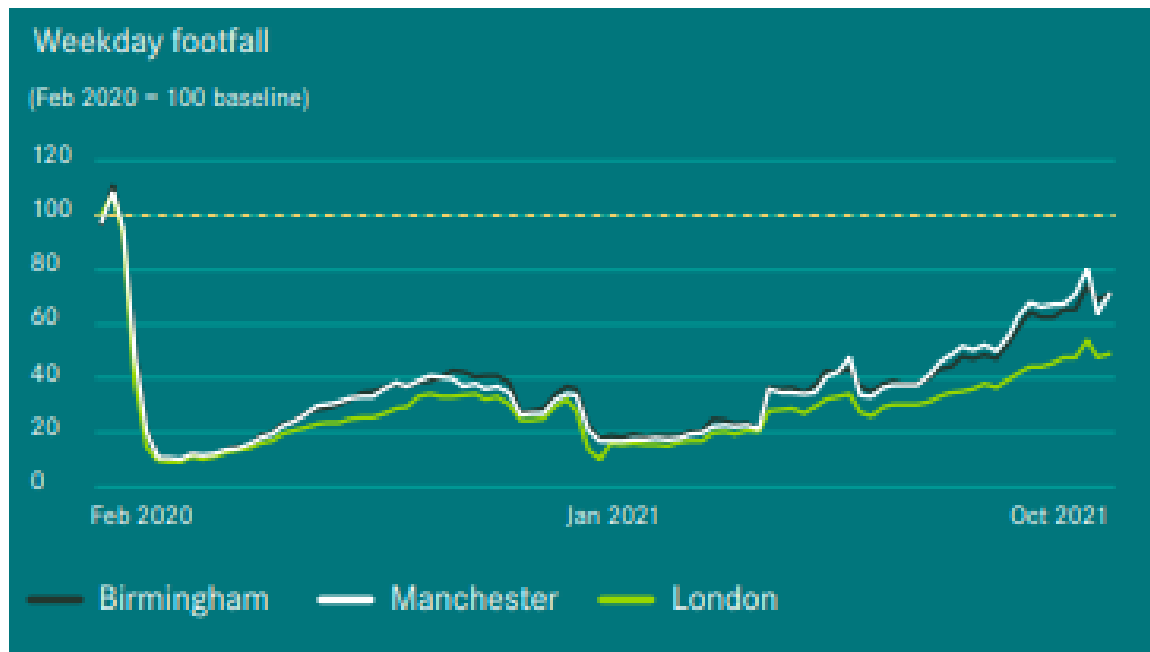
Figure B-16 Change in pub and restaurant sales in City Centres and Suburbs



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy⁴⁷

- B.42 Due to the work from home regulations and, for many, working from home becoming a regular part of the working week, it is feared the reduced footfall in cities will have a lasting effect on retail, hospitality, and transport sectors. **Figure B-17** show the weekday footfall in London, Manchester and Birmingham. Although not yet back to pre-pandemic levels, there is a steady climb in footfall in the major cities with Manchester appearing to recover more quickly than Birmingham, and London taking considerably longer.
- B.43 The more significant impact on London may be related to the impact of COVID-19 on international tourism.

Figure B-17 Weekday footfall



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy

⁴⁷ <https://www.centreforcities.org/>

Greater Manchester's Clean Air Plan to tackle Nitrogen Dioxide Exceedances at the Roadside

Appendix D - Technical Note: Vehicle Sector Review – Coach and Minibus

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

June 2022

1. Introduction

Background

- 1.1 After the initial Outline Business Case (OBC) submission in March 2019, a series of technical notes were published setting out the results of analysis and research carried out to better understand the vehicles in scope for the scheme.
- 1.2 For coaches and minibuses this included, in particular, *Technical Note 4: Analysis of the Coaches Market*, and *Technical Note 18: Minibus Vehicle Research*.¹ Further notes were produced setting out the development of analytical tools, with the latest published summary of that work provided in *T4 Appendix A of the Modelling for Consultation*.²
- 1.3 This evidence formed the basis of the development of the Option for Consultation. From March 2020, it became clear that the COVID-19 pandemic would affect the Greater Manchester Clean Air Plan (GM CAP); and a programme of work was carried out in 2020/2021 to better understand the possible impacts of the COVID-19 pandemic on the GM CAP, published as the *Impacts of Covid Report* in June 2021.³ This evidence, alongside feedback from the Consultation, was used to inform the revised GM CAP as approved by the ten GM local authorities in June/July 2021.
- 1.4 At that time, GM identified several possible risks to the GM CAP, which included concerns about the risk of vehicle price increases and the impact of any further lockdowns in the UK or countries in the supply chain.
- 1.5 The report, which was originally developed in February 2022, draws a series of findings and conclusions to better understand the circumstances affecting Coach and Minibus owners in Spring 2022 and the implications for the GM CAP and surrounding policy framework.
- 1.6 Since Spring 2022, there have been further dramatic changes to the economic context in the UK which are not explicitly addressed in this report but are set out in **Appendix E**. A range of factors associated with the impact from war in Ukraine, increased costs of energy and fuel, changes to Bank of England base rates and forecasts, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis have combined to create a context of increased financial hardship for businesses and families.

Structure of Note

- 1.7 The remaining sections of the report are structured as follows:
 - **Section 2** provides a review of the in-scope vehicles of the current Coach and Minibus sector in GM;
 - **Section 3** reviews the impacts of COVID-19 on the Coach and Minibus sector, with a particular focus on the availability and prices of purchasing new and used coach and minibuses. This section also considers the vulnerability impacts of COVID-19 on the sector; and

¹ All available at <https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/>

² https://assets.ctfassets.net/tlpgbv1k6h2/3AKtd1g0fg5OwQFNzc5FIQ/2b42ae34e93d292a5ec2eb26f7f5e8fb/T4_-_Appendix_A_Behavioural_Response_Cost_Models_and_Demand_Sifting_Tool.pdf

³ GM CAP- Impact of COVID Report. Available at: <https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/>

- **Section 4** provides a summary of the key findings, also presenting details of any key risks or issues facing the sector in responding to the GM CAP.
- 1.8 In addition, **Appendix A** provides a list of data used to inform the report and **Appendix B** reviews the recent changes in travel behaviour within GM through the pandemic up until January 2022.

2. Review of Vehicles in Scope

Overview of Vehicle Sector

- 2.1 A coach is considered to fall within vehicle category M3 of the DfT vehicle classifications, defined as a '*Motor vehicles with at least four wheels designed and constructed for the carriage of passengers*' comprising of more than eight seats and a maximum mass exceeding 5 tonnes, whereas a minibus falls into category M2 by not exceeding 5 tonnes maximum mass⁴ (see **Table 2-1**).

Table 2-1 Categorisation of vehicles with at least four wheels and used for the carriage of passengers

Classification	Description
M1	Vehicles designed and constructed for the carriage of passengers and comprising no more than eight seats in addition to the driver's seat.
M2	Vehicles designed and constructed for the carriage of passengers, comprising more than eight seats in addition to the driver's seat, and having a maximum mass not exceeding 5 tonnes.
M3	Vehicles designed and constructed for the carriage of passengers, comprising more than eight seats in addition to the driver's seat, and having a maximum mass exceeding 5 tonnes.

Source: transportpolicy.net/standard/eu-vehicle-definitions/

Review of In-scope Vehicles

Overview

- 2.2 For context, the proportion of vehicle types in GM, relative to the regional and national averages, are provided in **Table 2-2** based on the latest available registration statistics from the DfT. There will be instances, particularly for commercial usage, where vehicles are based in one location but used in another, but this table provides an overview of the relative size of each fleet.

Table 2-2 Proportion of Vehicle Types Registered by Area

	Cars	Van	HGV	Bus & Coach	Other
GB	85.0%	3.4%	11.3%	1.3%	0.4%
England	85.1%	3.5%	11.3%	1.3%	0.4%
NW	85.7%	2.9%	10.9%	1.5%	0.3%
GM	85.6%	2.1%	11.8%	1.6%	0.4%

Source: Department for Transport., Statistical data set, All vehicles (VEH01), Last updated 13 January 2022

⁴ Definition of Vehicle Categories, Vehicle Certification Agency

Coaches

- 2.3 **Table 2-3** shows the number of coaches serving GM that are GM and non-GM based as of 2019, showing that the GM based fleet is typically more non-compliant than the non-GM based fleet, this may be reflected in the smaller organisations operating in a more local basis, whereas longer distance out of area coaches, are more likely to be operated by larger organisations and to be generally more compliant.

Table 2-3 Number of Coaches Serving GM (2019)

	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
Compliant	233	529	762
Non-Compliant	464	448	912
Total	697	977	1,674

Source: T4 Appendix C, Vehicle Population Estimates

- 2.4 Without intervention there will be a natural turnover of the coach fleet serving GM. Based on a typical assumed lifespan of a coach of up to 20 years, and assuming the same fleet age composition, the coach fleet was projected into the future. This was applied for each year by removing the oldest vehicles and replacing with a new one (whilst keeping the overall age profile consistent). This naturally leads to an increase in Euro 6 (compliant) coaches over time. The coach fleet serving GM, (pre-COVID-19) was therefore projected from 2019 to 2023. These projections are presented in **Table 2-4**.

Table 2-4 Forecast Do Minimum (without CAP) Compliant Coaches 2023

	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
Compliant	386	600	986
Non-Compliant	311	377	688
Total	697	977	1,674

Source: T4 Appendix C

Minibuses

- 2.5 **Table 2-5** shows the number of minibuses serving GM that are GM and non-GM based as of 2019.

Table 2-5 Number of Minibuses Serving GM (2019)

	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
Compliant	130	306	436
Non-Compliant	1,903	805	2,707
Total	2,032	1,111	3,143

Source: T4 Appendix C, Vehicle Population Estimates

- 2.6 The minibus fleet has been projected forward in a similar fashion to the coach fleet as described earlier. A typical lifespan of 20 years has been assumed. These projections are presented in **Table 2-6** and are based on pre-COVID-19 natural fleet turnover assumptions.

Table 2-6 Forecast Do Minimum (without CAP) Compliant Minibuses 2023

	GM Based	Non-GM Based	Total
Compliant	417	413	830
Non-Compliant	1,616	698	2,313
Total	2,032	1,111	3,143

Note: Values above exclude those minibuses that operate as PHVs

3. Review of COVID-19 impacts on the Coach and Minibus vehicle sector

Overview

- 3.1 The Coach and Minibus sector has been reviewed to consider pre-pandemic background characteristics, COVID-19 related impacts on the industries affected by the sector, and a review of the expected vulnerabilities when responding to the GM CAP.
- 3.2 On 17th February 2022, the Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders (SMMT) released an article stating that UK bus and coach registrations had fallen to the lowest recorded level as demand dwindled after the pandemic⁵.

COVID-19 Effects on the Coach sector

Background

- 3.3 The first UK national lockdown in March 2020 had a significant impact on the coach and minibus market, with many coach and minibus operators either having to stop their services altogether or only operate at a significantly reduced capacity.
- 3.4 According to the Confederation of Passenger Transport (CPT), coach tourism operators, on average, require a coach occupancy of 47-53% to breakeven. With the implementation of the 1m physical distancing, depending on vehicle type, social bubbling and additional COVID-19 mitigation factors, coaches were having to operate at a maximum of 35-50% occupancy during the pandemic.⁶
- 3.5 Once the lockdown restrictions began to ease and destinations began to reopen, more coach and minibus operators were then able to begin operating again albeit with restricted passenger numbers and dampened demand as not all sectors could re-open. The ongoing restrictions and guidance, whilst not as restrictive as the national lockdowns, continued to affect road passenger transport, with declining ridership impacting operator confidence and orders for new vehicles.
- 3.6 During this time, key sectors served by the coach and minibus sector, in particular the tourism and hospitality sector, were badly affected by the restrictions in place. In 2021, a recovery in this sector occurred due to ongoing restrictions on international travel resulting in a boom in domestic holidays. However, whilst the sector saw an improvement, the coach and minibus market continued to be negatively impacted by reductions in international travel⁷ and, due to social distancing requirements, weak demand for coach and minibus travel.

⁵ <https://www.smmt.co.uk/2022/02/uk-bus-and-coach-registrations-fall-to-lowest-recorded-level-as-pandemic-dents-ridership/>

⁶ <https://www.cpt-uk.org/media/ijn13w4f/aid-to-trade-document.pdf>

⁷ <https://www.route-one.net/news/difficult-road-ahead-for-incoming-coach-tourism-recovery/>

- 3.7 Schools, colleges and universities have remained open during the pandemic, although government restrictions during the pandemic placed restrictions on face-to-face learning at various points throughout the pandemic. This has impacted the number of people travelling on a daily basis to access education which will have reduced at various points through the pandemic, though as education establishments have remained largely open, the coach and minibuss operators that transport students to educational establishments are less likely to be negatively affected than other sectors.
- 3.8 On 28th November 2021, a report was released by Unite union after a survey of bus driver members. This revealed the bus driver shortages are at far higher levels than previously indicated, with 99% of bus garages experiencing driver shortages and 79% of respondents to the survey recording that vacancies had increased since the pandemic began in March 2020⁸.
- 3.9 There is limited quantifiable data available to analyse the impact of COVID-19 on the coach market and the impacts after the first lockdown, but there are several reports that qualitatively surmise how certain operators have been affected. The remainder of this section discusses the COVID-19 impacts on Regular, Special, and Occasional Coach Services.

Impact of COVID-19 on Regular Coach Services

- 3.10 Regular coach services are defined as all services which provide for the carriage of passengers at specified intervals along specified routes, with passengers being picked up and set down at predetermined stopping points.
- 3.11 Whilst the larger national operators of regular services do not have large numbers of vehicles based within GM (e.g. National Express / Megabus), prior to the pandemic, GM was served by a frequent operation of scheduled long-distance coach services serving a large and varied number of destinations across the UK. Within this context, there are also some franchise operations which operate services on behalf of national operators, such as Selwyns, which is based in GM, and operates services on behalf of National Express.
- 3.12 National Express is one of the largest coach operators in the UK. In August 2021, National Express brought together several existing brands such as Fareham based Lucketts and Woods Coaches of Leicester into National Express Leisure, aimed at providing one place for holidays and leisure travel by coach with operations in Fareham and Birmingham⁹.

⁸ <https://www.unitetheunion.org/news-events/news/2021/november/new-survey-reveals-shocking-shortage-of-bus-drivers/>

⁹ <https://www.nationalexpressgroup.com/media/news-releases/2021/national-express-takes-next-step-into-uk-leisure-travel-market/>

Case Study: National Express

National Express are one of the largest operators in the UK, operating regular services between major cities and key destinations. The company have central depots in Birmingham and London.

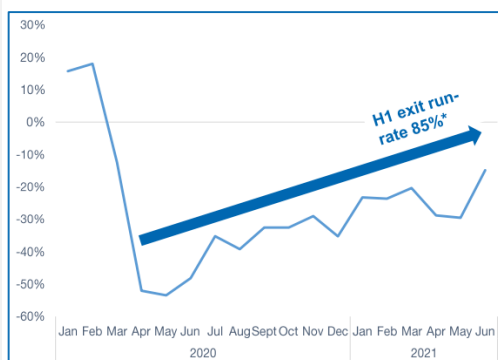
A common aspect of their business model is to franchise services out to private operators, who are then required to buy or lease vehicles as specified by National Express.



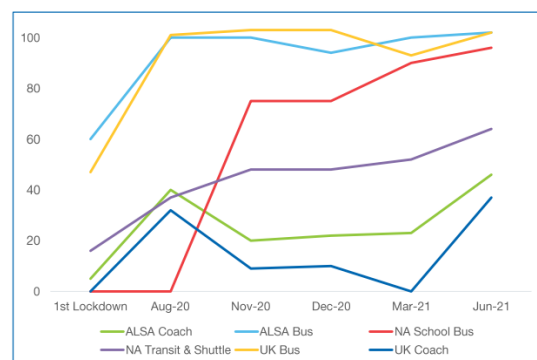
How COVID-19 Affected National Express

- Reported £60m losses for the first half of 2020¹⁰ resulting in a hit to the company share price, trading at £1.59 compared to £4.69 at the start of 2020.
- Although aggregate demand fell by 80% during the spring 2020, revenues were approximately 50% of normal levels by end of 2020, due to pre-existing contracts and support from government and local authorities for services such as school buses.
- Secured cash from Bank of England COVID Financing scheme and the selling of new shares to investors was enough to see it through a slow 2021.
- National Express is currently in the process of a takeover by Stagecoach. The proposal is subject to a number of approvals and is expected to be completed towards the end of 2022.
- June 2021 Q1 figures show a revenue of £172.8m compared to Q1 2020 revenue of £189.9m. The 9% decrease was due to temporary mothballing of coach operations. This was counteracted by a revenue growth in Bus services, operating at 102% for much of the period.
- Profits were operating at a loss of £20m, but this was a much-reduced level to Q2 2020, which reflected the loss in Coach. The decline in revenue was partly mitigated by payroll savings through the use of the Coronavirus Job Retention Scheme (CJRS) and other cost actions¹¹.

Monthly revenue compared to 2019



Service Evolution (% of Pre-Covid levels)



- The above charts show total National Express monthly revenue compared to 2019 and Service Evolution as a percentage of pre-COVID-19 levels, these are for National Express as a total, including ALSA (Spain) and North American divisions along with UK.
- By June 2021 revenue was at 85% of June 2019 level.

¹⁰ <https://www.theguardian.com/business/2020/aug/13/national-express-shares-fall-warns-covid-19-recovery-slow>

¹¹ <https://www.nationalexpressgroup.com/media/i2tdj5xc/national-express-hy-2021-presentation-post-final-tweak-11-aug-2021.pdf>

Impact of COVID-19 on Special Regular Services

School Services

- 3.13 The Home to School (HTS) scheme that was introduced by the Government in August 2020 helped some coach operators to gain extra revenue (to help cover lost revenue from suppressed passenger demand) as a result of the COVID-19 restrictions¹². The scheme gave local authorities extra funding to help procure additional vehicles, including coaches, to accommodate social distancing policies on public transport for the reopening of schools. However, many operators argued that it was not enough support, as only 15% to 20% of coach operators were providing those services, leaving the rest with no extra revenue income to fill the gap¹³.
- 3.14 In December 2021, the Government announced the intention to extend existing Vehicle Accessibility Regulations 2000 exemptions for HTS services to the end of the 2021 to 2022 academic year, and qualified medium-term exemptions for rail replacement (RR) and HTS services that are still not compliant when existing exemptions expire in summer 2022¹⁴. These exemptions will ensure that essential HTS and RR services can continue while requiring operators to become increasingly compliant with existing legal obligations.

Rail Replacement Services

- 3.15 Some operators have been able to adapt to the changing environment by offering rail replacement services as an extra revenue stream. However, this limits many coach operators as vehicles must be Public Service Vehicle Accessibility Regulations (PSVAR) vehicles in order to provide this service. Though it should be noted that the rail network has also been significantly impacted by a large decrease in passenger demand and, as a result, it is expected that there will be limited rail replacements requiring support from coach operators.
- 3.16 Rail demand in January 2022 was at 55% of pre-pandemic levels, as a result of timetable reductions due to staff shortages following the Omicron wave, having previously returned to 70% of pre-pandemic demand¹⁵.
- 3.17 There are some operators during the pandemic that have used rail replacement services as their main source of income. Spencer Graham Coaches of Silloth invested in three PSVAR vehicles and have provided rail replacement services, which has provided the company enough revenue to survive during COVID-19¹⁶. Whilst this example is from an operator from outside of GM, it does provide an indication of how the wider coach market may need to adapt in the future, including coach operators based in GM, although this is unlikely to be enough to make up the difference in lost revenue from the tourism industry.

Impact of COVID-19 on Occasional Coach Services

Tourism Industry Effects on Coach Sector

- 3.18 The tourism industry forms an important part of the coach sector market¹⁷. Coach operators deliver vital footfall to attractions across the UK and carry spectators to

¹² <https://www.ft.com/content/424808f0-c5d8-4b64-a127-c2e802b67d17>

¹³ <https://www.ft.com/content/424808f0-c5d8-4b64-a127-c2e802b67d17>

¹⁴ <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/public-service-vehicles-accessibility-regulations-2000-and-their-application-to-home-to-school-and-rail-replacement-coach-services>

¹⁵ <https://www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-10394121/Demand-trains-plummets-timetables-slashed-Rail-travel-55-pre-pandemic-levels.html>

¹⁶ <https://www.route-one.net/features/covid-19-positive-change-for-the-coach-industry/>

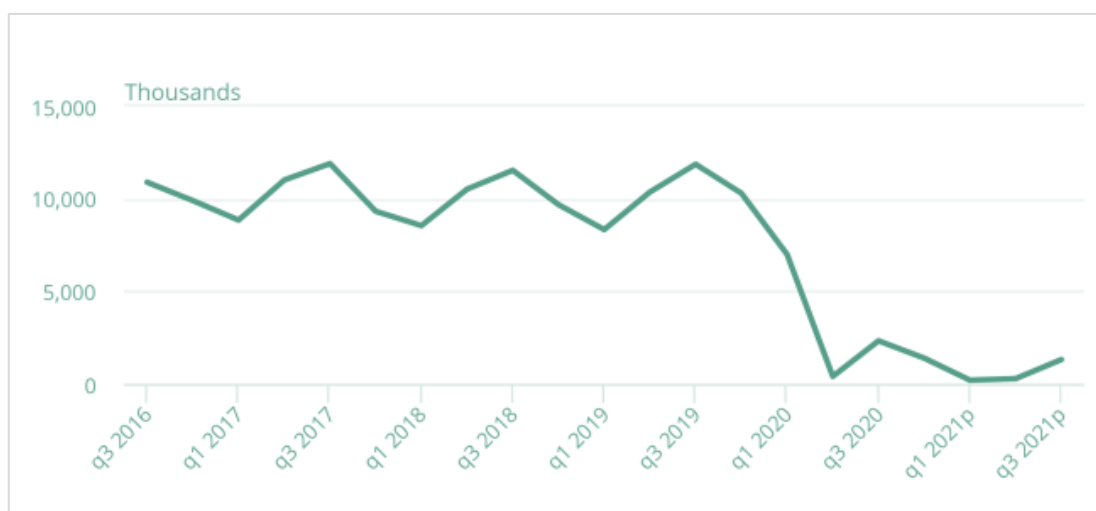
¹⁷ <https://publications.parliament.uk/pa/cm200001/cmselect/cmtrdind/268/01101p11.htm>

concerts, festivals and sporting events, as well as coach tours around the UK. Pre-pandemic, in 2019, coach travel catered for over 23 million tourism visits a year and contributed £14bn to the UK economy¹⁸. Many of the coach companies based within GM will support the tourism sector and will have been significantly impacted by the downturn in this market. Around 80% of the coach industry's income is derived from tourism related activities¹⁹.

General Impact on Tourism

- 3.19 Pre-pandemic, UK residents consistently made more visits abroad than foreign residents made to the UK. As a result, the total amount spent by UK residents during visits abroad was higher than the total brought into the UK by foreign residents visiting²⁰. As international travel restrictions ease into and out of the UK, the emerging trend appears to follow the same path with over 4 times more UK tourists traveling overseas compared to foreign tourists arriving in Quarter 3 (July to September) 2021.
- 3.20 According to the Office for National Statistics (ONS), overseas residents made 1.3 million visits by air to the UK in Q3 2021. This is a decrease of 86% compared with Q3 2019, due to the continued restrictions on international travel and perceptions of international travel (see **Figure 3-1**). Overseas residents spent a total of £1.2 billion on their visits to the UK during this period (which covers the typical summer peak travel period); this is a decrease of 87% on the same quarter in 2019²¹ (see **Figure 3-2**).
- 3.21 COVID-19 restrictions prevented the collection of data at ports, therefore Sea and Eurotunnel data has not been assessed throughout the pandemic. Typically, Sea and Eurotunnel numbers make up 20% of all pre-COVID-19 travel numbers, so this may account for slightly lower numbers. However, analysis of administrative data, shows a 95% drop in passenger numbers when compared with Q3 2019.

Figure 3-1 Visits to the UK by Overseas Residents, 2016 to 2021 (Q1 – Q3 2021, air only)



Source: ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/leisureandtourism

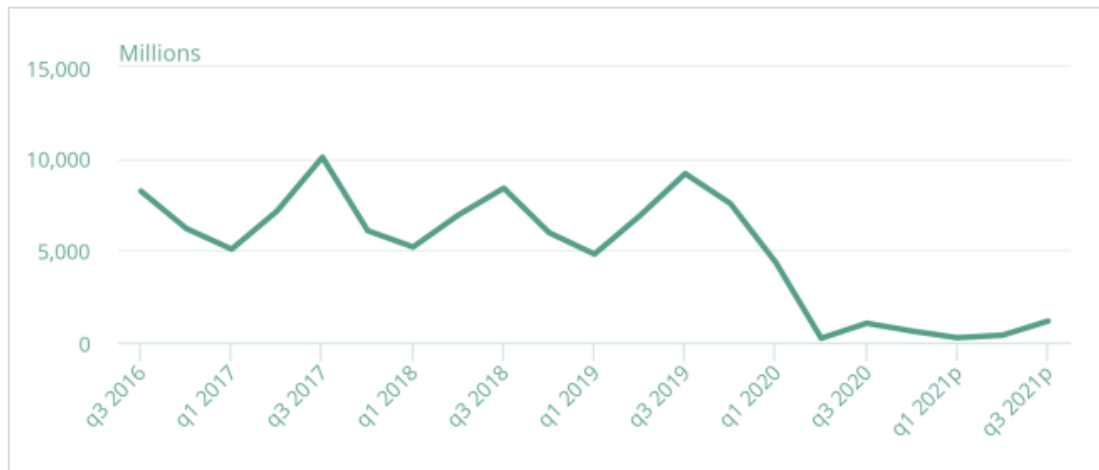
¹⁸ <http://www.movingforwardtogether.uk/covid-19-latest-news/14bn-and-10-000s-of-jobs-at-risk-if-coach-travel-sector-collapses-warns-cpt/>

¹⁹ <https://www.cpt-uk.org/media/ijn13w4f/aid-to-trade-document.pdf>

²⁰ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/leisureandtourism/bulletins/overseastravelandtourism/january2019provisionalresults>

²¹ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/leisureandtourism/bulletins/overseastravelandtourism/julytoseptember2021>

Figure 3-2 Spending in the UK by Overseas Residents, 2016 to 2021 (Q1 – Q3 2021, air only)



Source: ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/leisureandtourism

3.22 Reasons for travel into the UK were recorded as part of the ONS travel and tourism data survey²²; all trips had a significant decline, but holiday visits were still down by 95%. Visiting family and relatives had decreased by 70% and business trips decreased by 90%.

3.23 On 17 November 2021, VisitBritain released its 2022 tourism forecast²³. The key points on inbound international travel are:

- Inbound visits are forecast to increase to 24.0 million, 59% of 2019 levels;
- Spending associated with inbound visits is forecast to be £19.2 billion, 67% of 2019 levels;
- By the end of 2022 the UK is forecast to have recovered to approximately 68% of pre-COVID-19 levels;
- Visits from Europe are forecast to recover sooner than long haul; and
- Spend per visit expected to remain higher than pre-pandemic due to longer average length of stay and higher prices.

3.24 The VisitBritain forecast for 2022 domestic tourism is not currently available, the most recent 2021 forecast, (late 2021), stated that:

- There was expected to be recovery to £56.2 billion in domestic tourism spending in 2021, an increase of 65% on 2020 but still only 61% of the level of spending seen in 2019; and
- There was a revision on the initial numbers stated for 2021 as domestic tourism is recovering slower than expected.

How Have Coach Operators Coped?

3.25 National Express reported a £445m loss in 2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic. However, they are optimistic as, throughout 2021, they have seen a rapid recovery in demand when travel restrictions have been lifted²⁴. They have also been using the down time during the pandemic to reduce costs, diversify contracts and access government loans to ensure the business emerges financially stronger.

²² <https://www.ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/leisureandtourism/bulletins/overseastravelandtourism/julytoseptember2021>

²³ <https://www.visitbritain.org/2022-tourism-forecast>

²⁴ <https://www.theguardian.com/business/2021/mar/18/national-express-reports-445m-loss-for-2020-after-80-drop-in-passengers>

- 3.26 The Birmingham-based group whose markets include UK, North America and Spain, secured £900m of new contracts through a move to win profitable contracts from weaker bus and coach operators that are at the brink of collapse after the pandemic. This could trigger consolidation within the sector²⁵.
- 3.27 Many small travel companies have not recovered from 2020, with financial times stating 76 passenger vehicle groups entering into insolvency within the UK²⁶, although this represents a small overall share of the market.
- 3.28 Notwithstanding any further restrictions, the outlook for 2022 is positive. As an example, Andersons Travel had returned to around 60% of pre-pandemic business by the end of 2021. A degree of this has been due to diversification, for example home-to-school is now a predominant area of work²⁷.
- 3.29 It is hoped that spring / summer 2022 the coach sector will see the postponed 2020 and 2021 bookings, along with new bookings, providing a much-needed boost to coach tourism.

COVID-19 Effect on the Minibus Sector

Background

- 3.30 It is important to note that there is limited data or published articles available to provide direct insight into the effects of COVID-19 on the minibus sector. Therefore, the following information presented considers mainly qualitative anecdotal information on the performance of the minibus sector, in the context of the wider markets they serve.
- 3.31 As stated in *Technical Paper 18*, the minibus sector is made up of several types of operators that will have been affected differently by COVID-19. These are:
- Community Transport;
 - Local Authorities;
 - Local Bus Operators;
 - Coach Operators;
 - Rental / Leasing Companies; and
 - Education Establishments.
- 3.32 Local authorities, community transport and education establishments are unlikely to have been as significantly financially impacted as commercial operators as they do not use their vehicles for commercial reasons. These services are less reliant on passenger income generation. Although with COVID-19 restrictions in place demand for these services will have reduced significantly during the pandemic, it is likely that as restrictions ease and confidence rises these will return to operate largely as normal.
- 3.33 With the closure of schools during the first national lockdown, it is likely that minibus drivers serving daily travel to and from school may have been placed onto the furlough scheme as these services would not have been in operation, though will have likely restarted operation once schools returned in September 2020. These

²⁵ <https://www.ft.com/content/02a27f99-8955-4220-95c4-3e15e9844ad8>

²⁶ <https://www.ft.com/content/02a27f99-8955-4220-95c4-3e15e9844ad8>

²⁷ <https://www.route-one.net/news/difficult-road-ahead-for-incoming-coach-tourism-recovery>

services will have been paused again in January 2021 as schools remain closed for the majority of pupils following another national lockdown, though returned to operation through the remainder of 2021.

- 3.34 In the case of the Ring and Ride service provided by TfGM, the service was completely stopped for just over two months when the first national lockdown occurred but has since restarted, albeit at a reduced service level, since 18th May 2020²⁸ and has continued to serve lower passenger numbers. To support the COVID-19 vaccine roll out in 2021, the Ring & Ride service has been used to support travel to vaccine centres where limited public transport is available.
- 3.35 Local bus operators, coach operators and rental and leasing companies will have been impacted severely due to their minibuses being used to provide an income-generating service. Using the coach sector as an example, minibus operators will likely have placed many of their staff on furlough and taken payment holidays for any vehicles they have used a loan to buy. Also, with the continued impacts on the sector, many drivers of coaches and minibuses are likely to have transferred to other sectors which have been more resilient through the pandemic.
- 3.36 Other minibus groups are likely to be sole operators, owned by individuals, small businesses and have fleets of only a few minibuses. For this sector it is highly likely that the small businesses will have been heavily impacted by COVID-19 and most likely have had to utilise the furlough scheme and payment holidays.

Changes as a Result of COVID-19

- 3.37 There is no direct evidence that could be found to support exactly how minibus owners and operators have been affected by COVID-19.
- 3.38 For local bus operators, coach operators, rental and leasing companies and smaller sole operators, the effects are likely to be greater as companies in these industries rely on their vehicles to generate income.
- 3.39 Similarly, the rental and leasing sector has been impacted by COVID-19. A report from the British Vehicle Rental and Leasing Association (BVRLA) produced in September 2020, states that 94% of their members expect reduced revenues compared to their forecasts pre-COVID-19²⁹. Although the report does not state how heavily affected the revenues will be, it does give an indication on the severity to which the market has been affected.

Will the Coach and Minibus Sector Recover?

- 3.40 There is little to no evidence to indicate exactly how the industry has been affected by COVID-19 and how it will recover. With vehicles used across different industries, there are likely to be differences in the scale of recovery depending on the sector they are in and how heavily impacted it is by COVID-19.
- 3.41 The coach sector has been heavily impacted by COVID-19 and is reliant on the tourism and events-based sector recovering, as well as consumer confidence improving. Whilst there was some recovery through 2021, many large events were cancelled. Also, continued restrictions on international travel, and nervousness in the use of public transport, is likely to result in a slow recovery of the coach sector. This slow recovery, combined with continued uncertainty in the market, could result in

²⁸ <https://www.wigantoday.net/news/uk-news/minibus-services-relaunched-across-greater-manchester-help-vulnerable-residents-2857659>

²⁹ <https://www.bvrla.co.uk/resource/aug-2020-covid19-research-presentation.html>

several coach operators ceasing their operations permanently, leading to fewer vehicles on the road. Many drivers may have switched away from the coach and minibus sector, to other sectors performing more strongly, such as HGV and vans haulage and delivery sectors. This is noted in a recent article with sky news that The Unite union stated that there are more than 4,000 vacancies for bus and coach drivers across the UK and some companies have been forced to cancel services because drivers are not available³⁰.

- 3.42 Local bus operators are likely to have a quicker recovery as they provide a daily service for people to travel to their desired location. Although passenger numbers remain low at present, operators can still provide a level of service albeit at a reduced scale. Passenger numbers on buses have decreased sharply from 80% of pre-pandemic levels to less than 60% since the rise of the Omicron variant and the re-introduction of work-from-home advice in December 2021, leaving firms reliant on recovery grants to run services³¹. It is possible that, as the COVID-19 recovery continues, passenger numbers will begin to increase, but if this increase in patronage will return to pre-pandemic levels is uncertain.
- 3.43 Smaller operators are likely to be the most vulnerable to COVID-19 and may struggle to survive due to their lack of capital. Whilst operators have been able to access the furlough scheme, the sustained restrictions placed on travel that utilise the coach and minibus sector may have placed many businesses in a vulnerable position post pandemic.
- 3.44 The future of the minibus sector is unclear and is difficult to predict due to the sustained reductions in travel by public transport and uncertainty around whether public transport demand will return to pre-pandemic levels. Some sectors such as local authorities, community transport and education establishments will likely be able to survive COVID-19 and most likely return to pre-COVID-19 levels due to the nature of their sector. The local bus operators, coach operators, leasing and rental companies and smaller businesses are in the most precarious positions.

Review of COVID-19 impacts on vehicle sales

Overview

- 3.45 The key changes in the coach and minibus sales market during the pandemic are discussed below.

Vehicle Registrations

- 3.46 Before the pandemic, the UK new bus and coach market was already in decline, with the market falling by 18.8% in 2019, with annual registrations falling for a third consecutive year to 5,874 units, according to figures released by the SMMT³². Whilst there was some growth in Q4, this was driven by minibus registrations, which were up 49.0% to 1,311 units. SMMT suggest that the reasons for this continued decline were due to a combination of weak business confidence, declining passenger numbers and some confusion over clean air zones which has depressed demand³³.

³⁰ <https://news.sky.com/story/theyre-leaving-in-droves-uk-faces-bus-driver-shortage-as-hgv-industry-offers-better-pay-12442971>

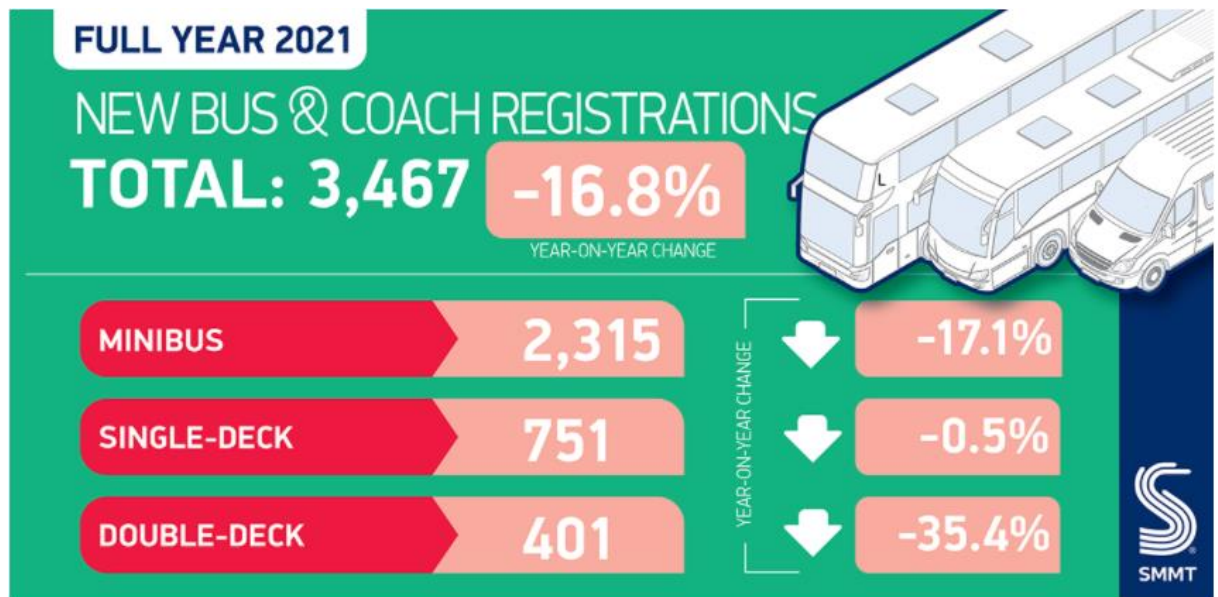
³¹ <https://www.theguardian.com/business/2022/jan/11/bus-services-in-england-face-axe-as-end-to-emergency-covid-funding-looms>

³² <https://www.smmmt.co.uk/2020/02/third-year-of-decline-for-uk-bus-coach-market/>

³³ <https://www.smmmt.co.uk/2020/02/third-year-of-decline-for-uk-bus-coach-market/>

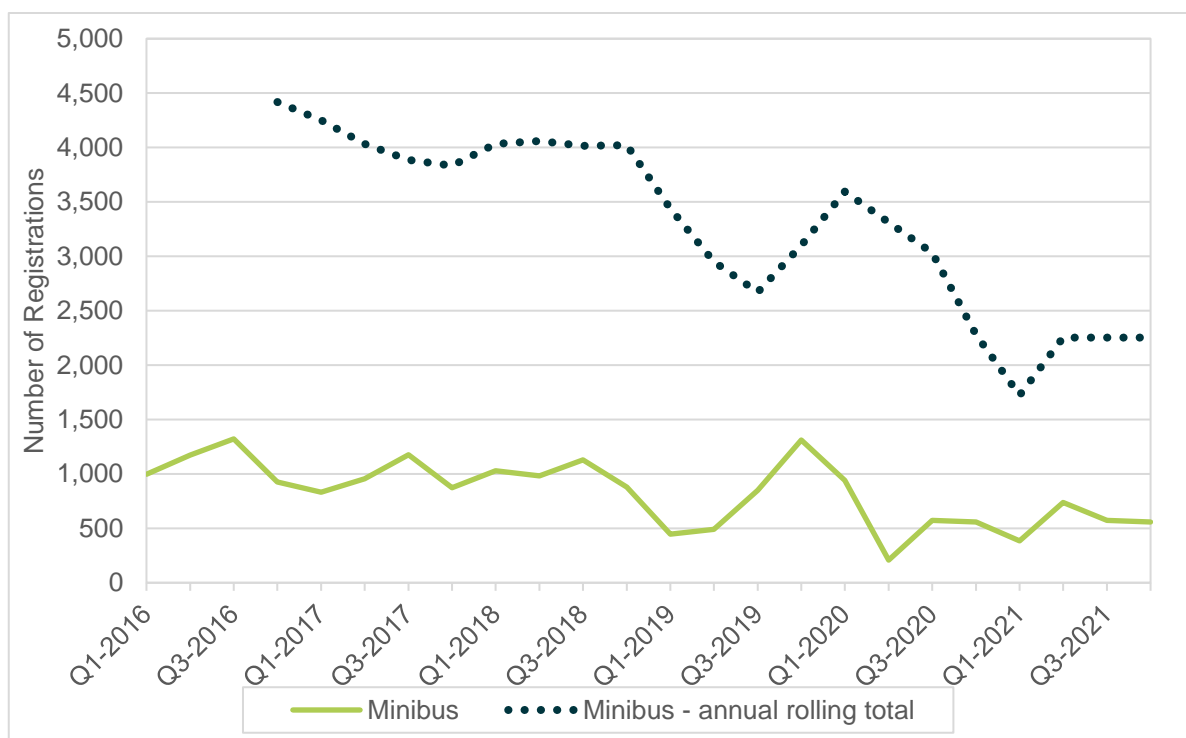
- 3.47 An article released on 17 February 2022 by SMMT³⁴ states that demand for new buses and coaches dropped further in 2021 and was the weakest year since records began in 1996, with a total of 3,467 new registered buses (see **Figure 3-3**).

Figure 3-3 Bus and Coach and Minibus Registrations 2021



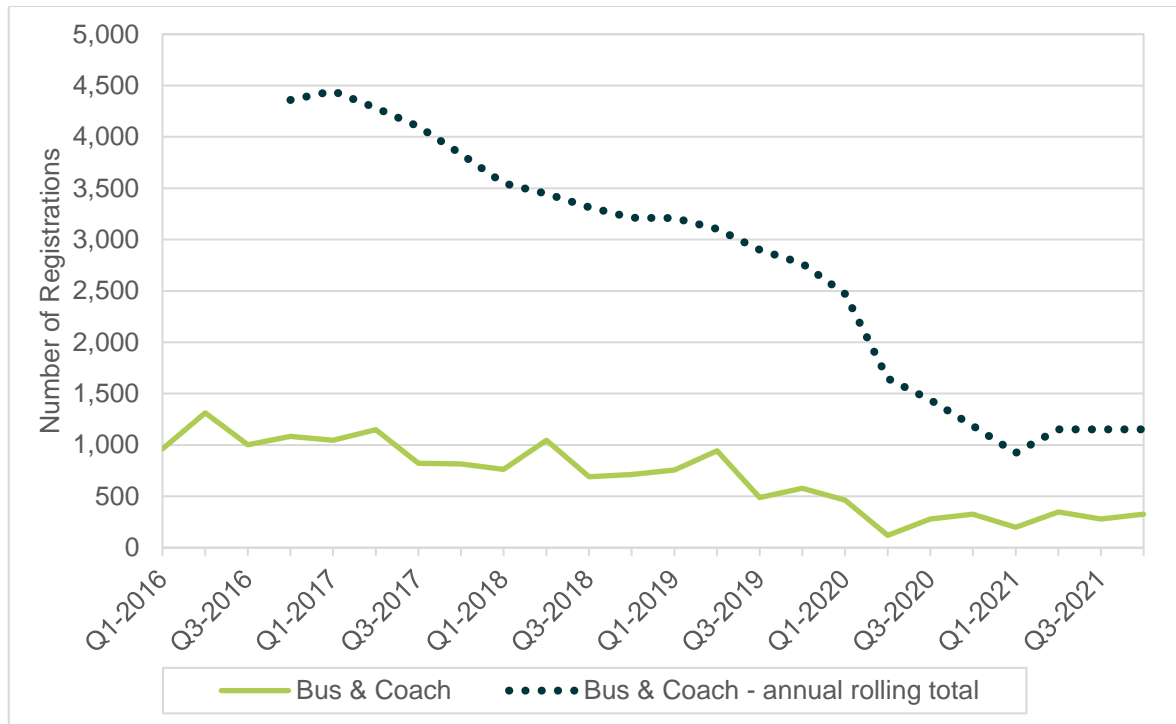
- 3.48 Details of quarterly registrations for minibus, bus and coach for recent years are illustrated in **Figure 3-4** and **Figure 3-5**, based on data held by SMMT.
- 3.49 There was a clear downward trend in both markets prior to the pandemic which was then exacerbated in 2020. There is some early evidence of the position stabilising towards the end of 2021.

Figure 3-4 Trend in Minibus Registrations



³⁴ <https://www.smmt.co.uk/2022/02/uk-bus-and-coach-registrations-fall-to-lowest-recorded-level-as-pandemic-dents-ridership/>

Source: SMMT

Figure 3-5 Trend in Bus & Coach Registrations

Source: SMMT

Vehicle Availability

3.50 There is limited information on the availability of coaches. From a review of the online listings of second-hand coaches available for sale³⁵, there does appear to be a wider range of second-hand vehicles available for purchase.

New Prices – Coach

3.51 The findings show that the cost for new coach vehicles that have between 45 and 60 seats was typically over £250,000, with a median price of approximately £280,000 in 2019 and approximately £225,000 in 2022. Even with the supply chain issues and rising manufacturing costs, it is likely this fall is due to reduced demand.

Table 3-1: Costs of New Coaches

2019 Price	2022 Price
Between £250,000 – £300,000	~ £225,000

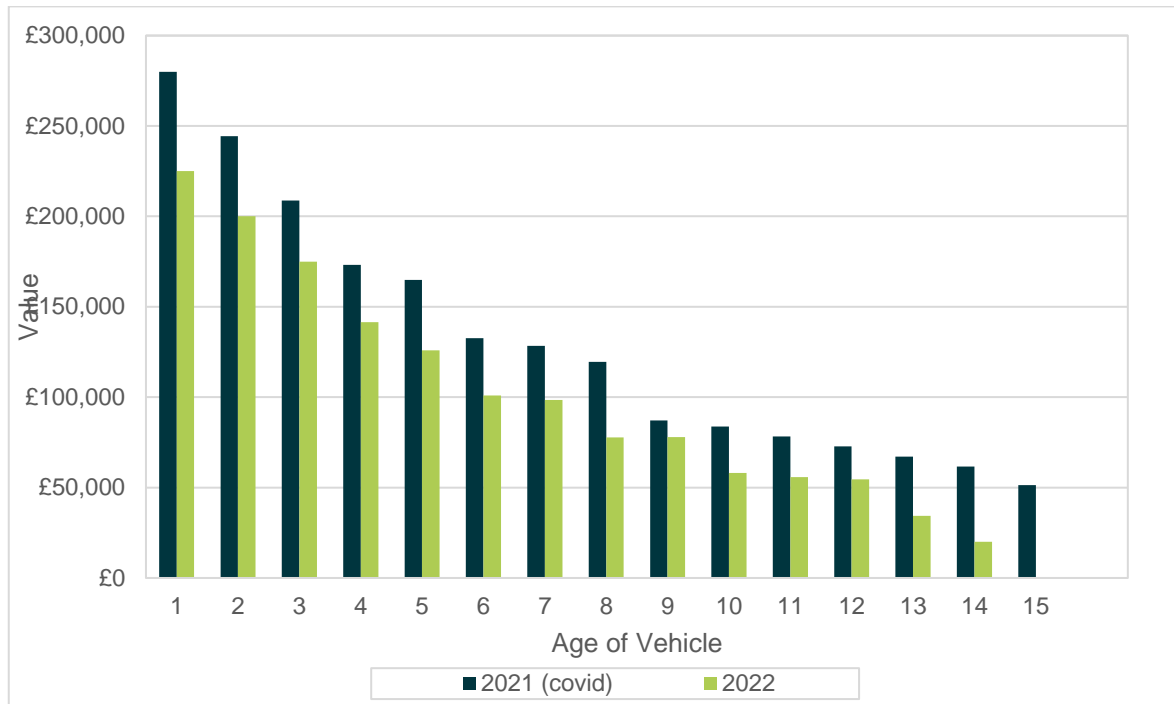
Second-hand Prices – Coach

3.52 An assessment of available second-hand coaches (45 – 60 seats) was undertaken in 2021. Second-hand coach prices also took a fall during 2021 compared to 2019, likely to be because of COVID-19. The assessment was therefore repeated in January 2022, and this shows there has not yet been a recovery in price, instead

³⁵ <https://classifieds.busandcoachbuyer.com/classifieds/coaches/>

falling further. It is noted that this is in contrast to other sectors such as the vans sector. (see **Figure 3-6**).

Figure 3-6 Second-hand Coach Purchase Prices



Source: average prices extracted from search of classifieds.busandcoachbuyer.com undertaken in 2021 and 2022

3.53 **Table 3-2** displays the price comparison for a second-hand compliant coach pre-COVID-19, in Autumn 2021, versus current market prices. Second-hand coaches on the market varied in price depending on age, mileage and condition.

3.54 Second-hand compliant coaches ranged in type and condition. A review in January 2022 of Mercedes-Benz models (the most common on the market and registered in GM) found that prices ranged from £86,000 to £207,000, with the higher end being a 2020 registered vehicle. The average cost of a popular model; the Tourismo, was approximately £168,000 in 2019 compared to £133,000 in 2022. The mid and high-end prices appear to be recovering slightly whilst the lower end vehicles have continued to fall in value.

3.55 This indicates a potential loss of confidence and demand in the market due to COVID-19 as operators take stock of their operations and vehicles. Most operators will likely be holding back renewals of their fleet until the market improves.

Table 3-2: Second Hand Compliant Coach Cost Estimates

Category	Model	2019 Price Range (Pre-COVID-19)	Autumn 2020 (Mid-COVID-19)	2022 Price Range
Lower	Mercedes-Benz (all on market)	£142,000	£115,000	£86,000
Mid	Mercedes-Benz Tourismo	£168,000	£130,000	£133,000

Higher	Mercedes-Benz (all on market)	£180,000	£165,000	£207,000
--------	-------------------------------	----------	----------	----------

Table 3-3: Second Hand Non-Compliant Coach Cost Estimates

Age (years old)	2019 Price Range (Pre-COVID-19)	Autumn 2020 (Mid-COVID-19)	2022 Price Range
15+	~ £20,000	~ £15,000	Less than £20,000
10-15	£42,000 - £80,000	£20,000 - £70,000	£20,000 - £56,000
5-10	£80,000 - £115,000	£45,000 - £85,000	£56,000 - £101,000

3.56 **Table 3-3** shows the same price comparison for second hand non-compliant coaches. The same trend as the compliant coaches is evident. Comparing to the autumn 2020 prices it does appear the newer end of the market has recovered slightly but is not yet back to pre-pandemic levels.

3.57 An alternative, more affordable approach for coach operators to become compliant is to retrofit their vehicles, for those vehicles where retrofit is possible. As stated in *Technical Note 4*, the cost to retrofit would range between £13,000 to £20,000³⁶ and with grants available from the GM CAP of up to £16,000, this could be a viable way for coach operators to achieve compliance for GM based fleet.

3.58 However, only Euro V engines can be retrofitted which would equate to 120 GM coaches as stated in *Technical Note 37*. This would leave 191 non-compliant GM coaches that cannot be retrofitted, thus requiring a more expensive solution.

New Prices – Minibus

3.59 New market prices for minibuses range from between £25,000 and £55,000, with the vehicles over £50,000 being primarily the Mercedes eVito electric vehicles.

3.60 CAP HPI data provided to AECOM in February 2022 allowed for the comparison of new purchase prices for a Ford Transit minibus in summer 2019 compared to January 2022 – the data shows there has been a 7% increase in purchase price.

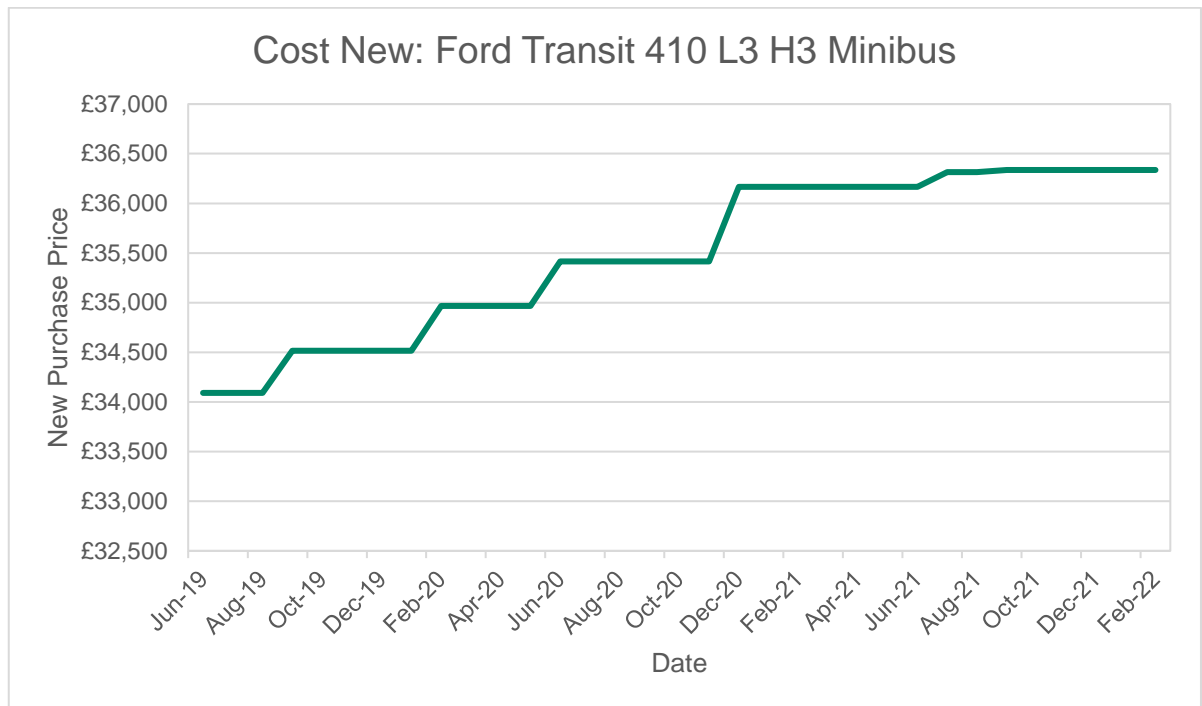
Table 3-4: Estimated Cost of a New Minibus

2019 Typical Price	2022 Typical Price
£34,000	£36,500

Source: CAP HPI data request 2022 – data provided on 15th February 2022.

3.61 The CAP HPI data allows for the trend of new minibus prices to be displayed (see **Figure 3-7**). This shows that since summer 2019, there has been a steady and continued increase in the purchase price of a new Ford Transit minibus. It does appear that the price has remained stable since summer 2021.

³⁶ Note these values were derived prior to the emerging global costs crisis, which may have also impacted retrofit costs.

Figure 3-7 New Minibus Purchase Price (retail condition, excluding VAT)

Source: CAP HPI data request 2022 – data provided on 15th February 2022.

Second-hand Prices – Minibus

3.62 Second-hand minibus prices have been obtained for available compliant and non-compliant vehicles from Auto Trader. This data is compared against market price data collected in 2019 and 2020 and is summarised in **Table 3-5 & Table 3-6**.

Table 3-5: Second Hand Compliant Minibus Cost Estimates

Model	9 – 12 Seats			13 – 15 Seats		
	2019 Price (Pre-COVID-19)	Autumn 2020 (Mid-COVID-19)	2022 Price	2019 Price (Pre-COVID-19)	Autumn 2020 (Mid-COVID-19)	2022 Price
Ford Transit	£12,000	£16,000	£21,000	£20,000	£16,000	£22,000
Mercedes-Benz Sprinter	£29,500	£20,500	n/a	n/a	n/a	£29,000
Average	£21,000	£18,500	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a

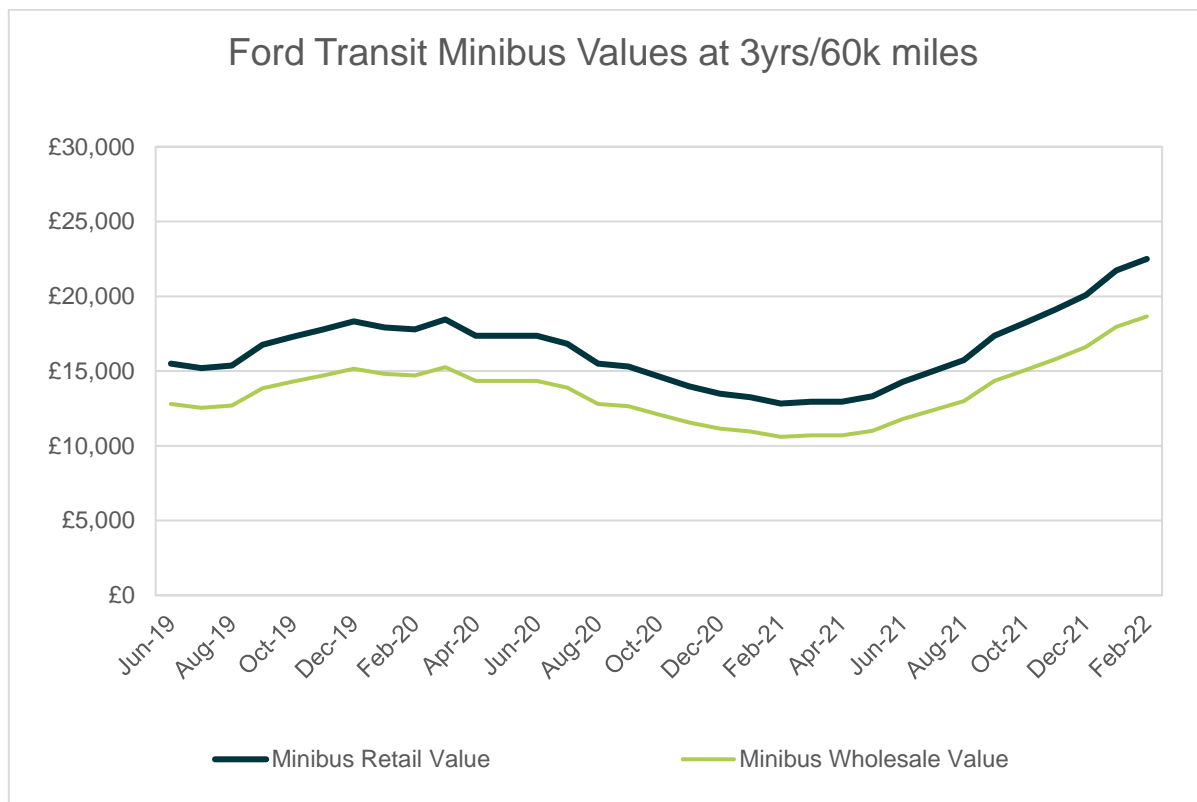
Table 3-6: Second Hand Non-Compliant Minibus Cost Estimates

Model	9 – 12 Seats			13 – 15 Seats		
	2019 Price (Pre-COVID-19)	Autumn 2020 (Mid-COVID-19)	2022 Price	2019 Price (Pre-COVID-19)	Autumn 2020 (Mid-COVID-19)	2022 Price
Ford Transit	£12,000	£9,000	£2,500 – 20,000	£20,000	£8,500	£5,000 – 9,500
Mercedes-Benz Sprinter	£29,500	£12,000	n/a	n/a	n/a	£7,500*
Average	£21,000	£10,000	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a

* Only one vehicle available at time of search

3.63 There was a reduction in price of second-hand compliant minibuses during 2020 and this appears to have recovered with the price of both a smaller and larger minibus now equal to or exceeding pre-pandemic prices. The purchase price of second hand non-compliant vehicle has continued to fall and the average price of a non-compliant minibus is considerably lower now than in both 2019 and 2020.

3.64 From the CAP HPI data **Figure 3-8** shows the trend in the value of second-hand minibuses throughout the pandemic. An initial small rise in value in March 2020 was followed by a significant fall in value throughout the remainder of 2020. The value began to recover in early 2021 and, by the start of 2022, the value of a second-hand Ford minibus is exceeding 2019 pre-pandemic levels.

Figure 3-8 New Minibus Purchase Price (retail condition excluding VAT)

Source: CAP HPI data request 2022 – data provided on 15th February 2022.

Review of Vulnerability in responding to GM CAP

How have Coach Operators Coped?

- 3.65 COVID-19 has had a big impact on the coach and minibus sector. In particular, the coach operators that serve the tourism and events-based sectors have suffered the most due to the tourism industry taking a significant hit during the pandemic. The operators that provide regular services between destinations have also been impacted but have, at least, been able to operate at a reduced capacity. Whilst those that provide transport for students have most likely seen an increase in business through the introduction of the Home to School scheme, if these trends persist or are fundamentally different to the original assumptions made on the GM CAP, this could have a significant impact on the vulnerability of the coach and minibus sector response to the GM CAP.
- 3.66 This section reviews the original vulnerability assessment of the coach and minibus sector undertaken in 2019 and assesses how the COVID-19 pandemic has impacted coach and minibus vulnerability to the GM CAP.
- 3.67 Smaller operators are the most vulnerable due to the small capital they are likely to have in reserve. Larger operators have been able to diversify, with National Express able to raise over £1 billion from stock market offerings.
- 3.68 As shown in **Table 3-7** the coach industry will be impacted differently depending on the service type. Occasional services are likely to be the most heavily impacted due to their reliance on the tourism and events-based industries that have seen continued reductions in visitors and demand. We cannot yet predict when this service type might fully recover, restrictions are being scaled back and demand is increasing as

confidence rises, however the lasting impacts to the tourism and events-based industries are unclear.

- 3.69 Regular services are also likely to be highly impacted but not as significantly as occasional services. Regular services, such as National Express and Megabus, were able to recommence services once the first national lockdown was lifted and were able to operate at reduced capacity. Though during the January 2021 lockdown, both operators had, once again, suspended their services. The reduced capacity on their timetable and number of passengers on each coach will mean that, financially they are still vulnerable, but are more likely to have a faster recovery when restrictions are fully lifted. Recovery is dependent on customer confidence in their ability to provide a safe and hygienic travelling environment. There will also be a dependency on the speed of international recovery.
- 3.70 The special regular services are likely to have experienced the smallest impacts of COVID-19 and, in some cases, even benefit from it. The HTS scheme from central government has given extra funding for Local Authorities to provide extra vehicles to transport students to and from school. This extra funding has meant that more coaches have been used to fulfil this need. Unfortunately, there is no data available to identify how many GM coach operators this has helped.

Table 3-7: COVID-19 effect on Coach Industry by Service Type

Market Segment	Example	Pre COVID-19 – Responding to GM CAP	COVID-19 Impact	Impact on Responding to GM CAP (Post COVID-19)
Special regular services	Regular, scheduled service, not open to all passengers, such as: school services	<p>Medium impact</p> <p>Primarily owned by larger companies that have higher percentage or newer, GM CAP compliant fleet already.</p> <p>For those larger companies with a larger fleet size of non-compliant vehicles, this will result in a significant cost to upgrade.</p>	<p>Likely to have a medium impact.</p> <p>Will have seen a reduced service from reduction in school trips during lockdown.</p> <p>Some operators will have gained more work from the Home to School Scheme, but this would only impact 15% to 20% of the market.</p>	<p>High impact.</p> <p>Market price of new coaches has fallen by over £25,000.</p> <p>Good availability of second-hand compliant vehicles, lower and mid-range have decreased in price, higher end has seen a price increase. The impact from COVID-19 reduced demand.</p>
Regular services	Regular, scheduled service open to all passengers	<p>Medium impact</p> <p>Primarily owned by larger companies that have higher percentage of newer, GM CAP compliant fleet already.</p> <p>For those larger companies with a larger fleet size of non-compliant vehicles, this will result in a significant cost to upgrade</p>	<p>High impact likely.</p> <p>Operating at reduced capacity, both in the number of routes and the number of passengers on board.</p> <p>Susceptible to any possible national or regional lockdown which is likely to affect number of passengers on board.</p> <p>Likely to recover when COVID-19 is under control and numbers can recover to pre-COVID-19 levels.</p>	<p>High impact.</p> <p>Market price of new coaches has fallen by over £25,000.</p> <p>Good availability of second-hand compliant vehicles, lower and mid-range have decreased in price, higher end has seen a price increase. The impact from COVID-19 reduced demand.</p>
Occasional services	<p>Multi-day visit, or tour requested by a customer or offered by a carrier.</p> <p>Excursion or day trip requested by a customer or offered by a carrier.</p> <p>Local excursion or day trip offered to those already on a multi-day visit or tour.</p>	<p>High impact</p> <p>Likely to be smaller companies, older fleets. Significant cost to upgrade vehicles.</p>	<p>Very high impact likely.</p> <p>Relies heavily on tourism and events sector which have seen a massive reduction in tourist numbers and heavy restrictions</p> <p>Will remain at high risk until the tourism and events sectors recover.</p>	<p>Very high impact</p> <p>Price of new and second-hand compliant vehicles have reduced; however, the price of second-hand non-compliant vehicles have reduced further resulting in a larger capital required to upgrade. Significant COVID-19 impacts to demand and operations.</p>

- 3.71 It is possible that larger companies may keep their compliant vehicles for longer than normal, due to the financial losses incurred from COVID-19 and as many of their coaches will not have been used during the first national lockdown and are currently operating at a reduced service therefore vehicles will have lower mileage than normal. This could therefore reduce the availability of second-hand compliant vehicles on the market, leading to a potential supply gap.
- 3.72 Alternatively, if the financial losses are too severe, more coach operators may go into administration, resulting in more compliant (as well as non-compliant) vehicles entering the second-hand market. This will likely drive the price down, potentially making it more affordable to buy compliant vehicles. It is more likely that this could particularly impact smaller companies, who typically operate a higher proportion of non-compliant vehicles and could result in an increase in this type of vehicle for sale, which the larger companies will be less likely to want to buy.
- 3.73 As mentioned previously, in 2019 there were 269 non-GM based coaches serving GM, of which 259 are non-compliant. This figure represents 12% of the total non-compliant vehicles serving GM. Being non-GM these vehicles would not qualify for any funding for an upgrade to a compliant vehicle. The CAZ could discourage these coaches from operating in GM, or if continuing to operate as a non-compliant vehicle they will be liable for the charge, hindering the success of the GM CAP and having a continued detrimental effect on air quality.
- 3.74 A factor that will have an impact on the industry's ability to respond to the GM CAP is how the UK economy responds post COVID-19. Coach operators that are dependent on the tourism and events-based sectors are tied to how long it takes these sectors to fully reopen and recover and whether they can return to pre-pandemic levels.
- 3.75 It is likely that larger operators will survive due to their ability to raise capital to cover the losses as well as their ability to diversify and acquire contracts from small companies.
- 3.76 If smaller operators do go out of business, it is likely that there will be a larger number of vehicles on the second-hand market, and the data shows many smaller operators have non-compliant vehicles.
- 3.77 During consultation undertaken in 2020, many operators noted that the combined impact of the GM CAZ and COVID-19 could force them to close their business. Operators specified that the GM CAZ charge would be 'too significant' in their ability to be able to afford the charge given their current financial situation due to COVID-19 and upgrading to a compliant vehicle would be 'too expensive', especially after COVID-19.

Minibuses Vulnerability Review

- 3.78 Local authorities and education establishments (as long as schools remain open) are both likely to have low impacts. This is due to neither sectors' reliance on customers to operate.
- 3.79 Community transport services are predicted to have a medium impact. Although the industry does rely on customers to operate, they do not operate for a profit so therefore not reliant on demand, and their overheads are likely to be small. It is important to note that community minibuses are exempt from the CAZ so will not affect the overall success of GM CAP.

- 3.80 Local bus operator, using minibuses, are likely to have been highly impacted during the lockdowns due to the large reduction in demand as a result of the restrictions on the movement of people. However, the industry has received help from the government so operators are likely to survive and, as the demand continues to increase, the industry should be able to recover.
- 3.81 Coach operators, using minibuses, are likely to be the most affected by COVID-19 due to the lack of financial support from the government and the reliance on the tourism and events-based sectors. The recovery of this industry will depend on whether they get financial support and the rate at which demand increases and returns to pre-COVID-19 levels.
- 3.82 The leasing and rental industry is also likely to be highly impacted as they have experienced a significant reduction in demand for their services. As tourism continues to return to pre-pandemic levels, these sectors should also recover.
- 3.83 Those classified as being in 'other' are also likely to have felt a high impact. In particular, the smaller operators are unlikely to have the capital to survive the impact of COVID-19 suppressing demand in 2020 and into 2021.

Table 3-8: COVID-19 effect on Minibus Industry by Service Type

Market Segment	Typical Example	Pre COVID-19 – Responding to GM CAP	COVID-19 Impact	Impact on Responding to GM CAP (Post COVID-19)
Local Authorities (13%)	Public sector owned and operated vehicles.	Low impact Public sector owned	Low impact likely. Do not rely on customers to operate so are likely to operate as normal. Those minibuses that provide a service to the community are likely to operate at a reduced service.	Medium impact Price of new minibus has increased by 7% due to vehicle supply issues. There has been an increase in price of second-hand compliant vehicles, however no increase in second-hand non-compliant so current vehicle value reduced.
Community Transport (9%)	Vehicles that are operated for community groups and charities. In this group there can be cross over between charities and local authorities as operators.	Medium impact Significant cost to upgrade if existing vehicles are non-compliant	Medium impact likely. Rely on customers in order to operate and are likely to have reduced demand due the customers they serve being older and at a greater risk of COVID-19 effects, but they are able to operate at reduced capacity.	High impact With the increase in price of compliant vehicles the impact will increase to a high level
Education Establishments (18%)	Institute that owns and operates their own minibus fleet, such as schools, specialist schools, colleges and universities.	Medium impact Cost to upgrade if existing vehicles are non-compliant	Low impact likely. Do not rely on customers to operate and most likely own their own vehicles. Most likely return to pre-COVID activity when safe to do so.	Medium impact Price of new minibus has increased by 7% due to vehicle supply issues. There has been an increase in price of second-hand compliant vehicles, however no increase in

Market Segment	Typical Example	Pre COVID-19 – Responding to GM CAP	COVID-19 Impact	Impact on Responding to GM CAP (Post COVID-19)
		Likely to own low volume of vehicles.		second-hand non-compliant so current vehicle value reduced.
Local Bus Operators (2%)	A local bus operator that offers minibus services in parallel to bus services.	Medium impact Significant cost to upgrade if existing vehicles are non-compliant.	High impact likely. Rely on customers in order to operate and have seen a large reduction in demand and revenue. Have received financial help from the government so are likely to survive.	High impact With the increase in price of compliant vehicles combined with the impact of reduced income due to COVID-19.
Coach Operators (2%)	Coach operators that offer minibus services in parallel to coach services (both commercial and private).	High impact Significant cost to upgrade if existing vehicles are non-compliant.	Very high impact likely. Rely on customers in order to operate and have seen a large reduction in demand. Have not received financial help from the government so face a precarious future.	Very High impact Business already highly impacted by COVID-19, on top of increased prices to upgrade to compliant vehicles
Leasing / Rental companies (10%)	Rental companies that offer a range of vehicles for leasing, which includes a range of minibuses	High impact Significant cost to upgrade if existing vehicles are non-compliant.	High impact likely. Have seen a large reduction in demand. Benefit from government schemes such as the Furlough scheme. Members of BVRLA state they are confident of being able to recover once COVID-19 is over.	Very High impact Business already highly impacted by COVID-19, on top of increased prices to upgrade to compliant vehicles
Other (36%)	Minibuses that are owned by individuals, such as sole traders or individuals for private use.	High impact Significant cost to upgrade if existing vehicles are non-compliant, sole traders or private use, non-commercial.	High impact likely. Sole traders rely on customers to operate. May not have capital to survive reduced demand.	Very High impact Business already highly impacted by COVID-19, on top of increased prices to upgrade to compliant vehicles – may not be business, could be for personal use so may not be eligible.
Taxi and Private Hire Vehicles (10%)	Not assessed within this Evidence Note			

4. Conclusion

Summary

4.1 This note has sought to address the following key considerations:

- A review of the current position of the coach and minibus fleet;
- Report on the impact of COVID-19 in terms of changes to travel behaviour within GM, including changing transport trends and economic trends as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic;
- Specific COVID-19 pandemic impacts on this vehicle type (Coaches and Minibuses); and
- Comment on the extent to which those changes may be considered material to the success of the GM CAP given the vulnerability of the vehicle type (Coaches and Minibuses) to meet GM CAP compliance.

4.2 The most recent national datasets cover bus, coach and minibus combined. They show that this sector accounts for less than 2% of all vehicles and that is consistent locally, regionally and nationally.

4.3 Based on 2019 data, there are 1,700 coaches serving GM with 60% of those being compliant. There are 3,100 minibuses serving GM with 15% of those being compliant.

4.4 We do not have recent observed patronage data for the bus, coach and minibus sectors individually but public transport trip levels generally are between 60% and 75% of pre-pandemic / typical levels with bus performing more strongly than rail / Metrolink.

4.5 Coach operators can be categorised as offering three types of services:

- Special regular services (e.g. school travel provision);
- Regular services; and
- Occasional services.

4.6 Other than school services, which are largely back to normal, the ongoing impact on the coach market is dependent on how soon tourism and general travel returns to 'normal' levels. At the present time, that remains uncertain though there has been a general increase in leisure travel in recent months.

4.7 The impact of the pandemic has generally reduced prices for both new and second-hand coaches due to the reduced demand in the sector.

4.8 Conversely the price of new and second-hand minibuses has increased other than for second-hand non-compliant vehicles.

4.9 There is a wider range of organisations / businesses that use minibuses. Local authority, community transport and education related are all likely to be relatively unaffected as they are less demand dependant. But local bus and coach operators and leasing companies will be subject to the same travel demand uncertainties associated with the bus and coach sector.

Appendix A – List of Documents

This Appendix provides a list of documents and data sources used to inform this report.

Document Title	Date	Description	Relevance to GM CAP
Chapter 1			
Mayor of Greater Manchester writes to Government reiterating call for non-charging Clean Air Zone	May 2022	Announcement, provide background on current status of GM CAP https://www.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/news/mayor-of-greater-manchester-writes-to-government-reiterating-city-region-s-call-for-non-charging-clean-air-plan/	Current Status of GM CAP
GM CAP Technical Documents (various)	various	All available at Technical Documents Clean Air Greater Manchester (cleanairgm.com) https://cleanairgm.com/technical-documents/	Published Technical Reports for GM CAP
Chapter 2			
Definition of Vehicle Categories	Feb 2022	Definition of Vehicle Categories, Vehicle Certification Agency transportpolicy.net/standard/eu-vehicle-definitions/	Definition of Vehicle Categories
UK Coach Fleet Database - Transport Resources International Limited (2019)	2019	Provides information about coach makes and registrations	Coach makes and registrations
DfT (2018) Analysis of DVLA registered vehicle database records (version Q2 2016)	2018	Provides information about minibus registrations in GM	GM Minibus registrations
DfT, Statistical data set	Jan 2022	Provided the proportion of vehicle types registered by area	Vehicle types registered by area
T4 Appendix C, Vehicle Population Estimates	2019	Provided numbers of coaches/minibus serving GM by regions and compliances	Published Technical Reports for GM CAP
Chapter 3			
Online article from the Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders (SMMT) -	Feb 2022	Stating falling demand and registrations of UK bus and coach: https://www.smmt.co.uk/2022/02/uk-bus-and-coach-registrations-fall-to-lowest-recorded-level-as-pandemic-dents-ridership/	Understand impacts of COVID on coach/minibus sector
Confederation of Passenger Transport (CPT) aid-to-trade-document	Various	Providing coach occupancy information https://www.cpt-uk.org/media/ijn13w4f/aid-to-trade-document.pdf	Research

Online article from route-one.net	Aug 2021	Covid impact on coach and minibus sector https://www.route-one.net/news/difficult-road-ahead-for-incoming-coach-tourism-recovery/	Research
“New survey reveals shocking shortage of bus drivers” - Online article from Unite The Union	Nov 2021	This revealed the bus driver shortages https://www.unitetheunion.org/news-events/news/2021/november/new-survey-reveals-shocking-shortage-of-bus-drivers/	Research
“National Express takes next step into UK leisure travel market” - National express	Aug 2021	Impact of COVID-19 on Regular Coach Services: https://www.nationalexpressgroup.com/media/news-releases/2021/national-express-takes-next-step-into-uk-leisure-travel-market/	Research
“National Express shares fall as firm warns Covid-19 recovery will be slow” – The Guardian	Aug 2020	How COVID-19 Affected National Express: https://www.theguardian.com/business/2020/aug/13/national-express-shares-fall-warns-covid-19-recovery-slow	Research
“Half Year Results” – National Express	Jul 2021	How COVID-19 Affected National Express: https://www.nationalexpressgroup.com/media/j2tdj5xc/national-express-hy-2021-presentation-post-final-tweak-11-aug-2021.pdf	Research
“UK coach sector warns of looming disaster without government support” - FT	Sept 2020	The Home to School (HTS) scheme that was introduced by the Government in August 2020 helped some coach operators to gain extra revenue (to help cover lost revenue from suppressed passenger demand) as a result of the COVID-19 restrictions: https://www.ft.com/content/424808f0-c5d8-4b64-a127-c2e802b67d17	Research
Public Service Vehicles Accessibility Regulations 2000 and their application to home-to-school and rail replacement coach services	Dec 2021	The Government announced the intention to extend existing Vehicle Accessibility Regulations 2000 exemptions for HTS services: https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/public-service-vehicles-accessibility-regulations-2000-and-their-application-to-home-to-school-and-rail-replacement-coach-services	Research
Demand for trains plummets after timetables were slashed: Rail travel is 55% of pre-pandemic levels after Omicron wave saw firms axe services to cope with staff shortages	Jan 2022	Rail demand in January 2022 was at 55% of pre-pandemic levels, as a result of timetable reductions due to staff shortages following the Omicron wave, having previously returned to 70% of pre-pandemic demand: https://www.dailymail.co.uk/news/article-10394121/Demand-trains-plummets-timetables-slashed-Rail-travel-55-pre-pandemic-levels.html	Research
COVID-19: Positive change for	Jun 2020	Spencer Graham Coaches of Silloth invested in three PSVAR vehicles and have provided rail replacement	Research

the coach industry?		services, which has provided the company enough revenue to survive during COVID-19 https://www.route-one.net/features/covid-19-positive-change-for-the-coach-industry/	
Memorandum submitted by the Confederation of Passenger Transport	Oct 2000	The tourism industry forms an important part of the coach sector market: https://publications.parliament.uk/pa/cm200001/cmselect/cmtrdind/268/01101p11.htm	Research
£14bn and 10,000s of jobs at risk if coach travel sector collapses warns CPT	Sep 2020	Pre-pandemic, in 2019, coach travel catered for over 23 million tourism visits a year and contributed £14bn to the UK economy https://www.cpt-uk.org/news/14bn-and-10-000s-of-jobs-at-risk-if-coach-travel-sector-collapses-warns-cpt/	Research
Proposition of support that enables the coach to tourism industry to trade out of the Covid-19 crisis		Around 80% of the coach industry's income is derived from tourism related activities https://www.cpt-uk.org/media/ijnl3w4f/aid-to-trade-document.pdf	Research
Overseas travel and tourism: January 2019 provisional results	Jan 2019	The total amount spent by UK residents during visits abroad was higher than the total brought into the UK by foreign residents visiting https://www.ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/leisureandtourism/bulletins/overseastravelandtourism/january2019provisionalresults	Research
Overseas travel and tourism, UK, provisional: July to September 2021	Feb 2022	Overseas residents spent a total of £1.2 billion on their visits to the UK during this period (which covers the typical summer peak travel period); this is a decrease of 87% on the same quarter in 2019 https://www.ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/leisureandtourism/bulletins/overseastravelandtourism/julytoseptember2021	Research
2022 tourism forecast	Nov 2021	VisitBritain released its 2022 tourism forecast https://www.visitbritain.org/2022-tourism-forecast	Research
National Express reports £445m loss for 2020 after 80% drop in passengers	Mar 2021	National Express reported a £445m loss in 2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic. However, they are optimistic as, throughout 2021, they have seen a rapid recovery in demand when travel restrictions have been lifted: https://www.theguardian.com/business/2021/mar/18/national-express-reports-445m-loss-for-2020-after-80-drop-in-passengers	Research
National Express targets smaller rivals struggling in pandemic	Mar 2021	Have Coach Operators Coped pandemic. https://www.ft.com/content/02a27f99-8955-4220-95c4-3e15e9844ad8	Research
'Difficult road ahead' for incoming coach tourism recovery	Aug 2021	Andersons Travel had returned to around 60% of pre-pandemic business by the end of 2021. A degree of this has been due to diversification, for example home-to-school is now a predominant area of work https://www.route-one.net/news/difficult-road-ahead-for-incoming-coach-tourism-recovery	Research
Minibus services relaunched across Greater	May 2020	The Ring and Ride service provided by TfGM was completely stopped for just over two months when the first national lockdown occurred but has since restarted	Research

Manchester to help vulnerable residents		https://www.wigantoday.net/news/uk-news/minibus-services-relaunched-across-greater-manchester-help-vulnerable-residents-2857659	
Aug 2020 Covid19 Research Presentation - UPDATE	Sep 2020	British Vehicle Rental and Leasing Association (BVRLA) states that 94% of their members expect reduced revenues compared to their forecasts pre-COVID-19. https://www.bvrla.co.uk/resource/aug-2020-covid19-research-presentation.html	Research
'They're leaving in droves': UK faces bus driver shortage as HGV industry offers better pay	Oct 2021	The Unite union stated that there are more than 4,000 vacancies for bus and coach drivers across the UK and some companies have been forced to cancel services because drivers are not available https://news.sky.com/story/theyre-leaving-in-droves-uk-faces-bus-driver-shortage-as-hgv-industry-offers-better-pay-12442971	Research
Bus services in England face axe as end to emergency Covid funding looms	Jan 2022	Passenger numbers on buses have decreased sharply from 80% of pre-pandemic levels to less than 60% since the rise of the Omicron variant and the re-introduction of work-from-home advice in December 2021, leaving firms reliant on recovery grants to run services https://www.theguardian.com/business/2022/jan/11/bus-services-in-england-face-axe-as-end-to-emergency-covid-funding-looms	Research
Third year of decline for UK bus & coach market	Feb 2020	The UK new bus and coach market was already in decline, with the market falling by 18.8% in 2019, with annual registrations falling for a third consecutive year to 5,874 units SMMT suggest that the reasons for this continued decline were due to a combination of weak business confidence, declining passenger numbers and some confusion over clean air zones https://www.smmmt.co.uk/2020/02/third-year-of-decline-for-uk-bus-coach-market/	Research
UK bus and coach registrations fall to lowest recorded level as pandemic dents ridership	Feb 2022	Demand for new buses and coaches dropped further in 2021 and was the weakest year since records began in 1996, with a total of 3,467 new registered buses. https://www.smmmt.co.uk/2022/02/uk-bus-and-coach-registrations-fall-to-lowest-recorded-level-as-pandemic-dents-ridership/	Research
Coaches For Sale	Feb 2022	Coach sale info: https://classifieds.busandcoachbuyer.com/classifieds/coaches/	Research
CAP HPI data	Feb 2022	New Minibus Purchase Price (Raw Data not published). Data request 2022 – data provided on 15th February 2022.	Research
Leger Holidays	Feb 2022	Evidence of larger operators with bigger fleets tend to have a higher percentage of compliant fleets https://www.leger.co.uk/content/business-update	Research

Chapter 4			
		(No additional sources in Chapter 4)	
Appendix A			
		(No additional sources in Appendix A)	
Appendix B			
Coronavirus (COVID-19) UK Government Dashboard	Oct 2020	https://coronavirus.data.gov.uk/	Background of Covid Timeline
“Greater Manchester’s COVID-19 Management Plan: how we control outbreaks”	2022	https://greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/coronavirus/COVID-19-management-plan/	Background of Covid Timeline
“Prime Minister announces new local COVID Alert Levels”	Oct 2020	https://www.gov.uk/government/news/prime-minister-announces-new-local-covid-alert-levels	Background of Covid Timeline
TfGM’s C2 Database	various	Traffic flow data was extracted and analysed from TfGM’s C2 Database https://tfgmc2.drakewell.com/multinodemap.asp	Information on local traffic impacts
“Budget 2021: Fuel duty rise axed as petrol prices hit record highs”	Oct 2021	Fuel Prices Increase: https://www.standard.co.uk/news/politics/budget-2021-fuel-duty-rise-axed-petrol-prices-record-highs-b962832.html	Information on Economic Related Impacts
“GDP monthly estimate, UK : December 2021”	Dec 2021	GDP information https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021	Information on Economic Related Impacts
“Average weekly earnings in Great Britain: February 2022”	Dec 2021	Growth in average total pay (including bonuses) of 4.3% and growth in regular pay (excluding bonuses) of 3.7% among employees was seen in October to December 2021 https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/averageweeklyearningsingreatbritain/february2022	Information on Economic Related Impacts
“UK economy latest”	Dec 2022	Information on Goods import and exports https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/economicoutputandproductivity/output/articles/ukeconomylatest/2021-01-25#output	Information on Economic Related Impacts
“Cities Outlook 2022”	Jan 2022	Change in pub and restaurant sales in City Centres and Suburbs. Weekday footfall in Birmingham, Manchester and London https://www.centreforcities.org/wp-content/uploads/2022/01/Cities-Outlook-2022-2.pdf	Information on Economic Related Impacts

Appendix B – Review of COVID Impacts

Overview

- B.1 Travel behaviour and the economy have been impacted by the COVID-19 pandemic and have resulted in changes in the way that people travel and the way businesses operate. In this chapter we will assess some of the key data findings found throughout the period to better understand the levels of impact on transport and travel generally.
- B.2 Chapter 3 focuses on the impacts of COVID-19 on the coach and minibuss sectors.

COVID Timeline

- B.3 In January 2020, COVID-19 first appeared in the UK. By 30th November 2020, there were an estimated total of 1.6 million people testing positive to the virus in the UK with 58,24537 cases resulting in deaths.³⁸
- B.4 As stated within the GMCA COVID-19 Management Plan Executive Summary, GM had more than 16,000 confirmed cases and nearly 2,800 people died during the first four months of the COVID-19 pandemic.³⁹
- B.5 In Summer 2020, North West England was one of the worst affected areas by the pandemic with GM placed under additional restrictions on 31st July 2020. Throughout 2020, GM continued to experience a disproportionate impact to the rest of the UK from these additional restrictions, such as the three-tier system for lockdowns across England. This three-tiered system was first announced by the Government in October 2020 to '*simplify and standardise local rules*'.⁴⁰
- B.6 On 5th November 2020, the Government imposed a second national lockdown with restrictions on continued business activity in England. These restrictions were in place between 5th November and 2nd December 2020, followed by a return to 3 Tier system restrictions.
- B.7 On 19th December 2020 the Government introduced an additional 4th Tier, with lockdown measures beginning in London and the South East, after having identified the Alpha (Kent) variant, coming into effect on 21st December 2020 until a third nationwide lockdown was re-introduced on 6th January 2021.
- B.8 March 2021 saw Step 1 of the Government's roadmap being introduced, with schools reopening and outdoor gatherings being allowed with the proviso of staying local. April 2021 saw Step 2 of the roadmap allowing limited indoor contact, businesses such as hairdressers to reopen and outdoor hospitality. Step 3 came into effect in May 2021, allowing indoor meetings limited to 6 people and 10,000 people for large sport stadiums. Step 4, on 19th July 2021, saw the remaining venues such as nightclubs reopen, and the removal of most other restrictions.

³⁷ UK deaths is based on deaths within 28 days of a positive test and does not include excessive deaths.

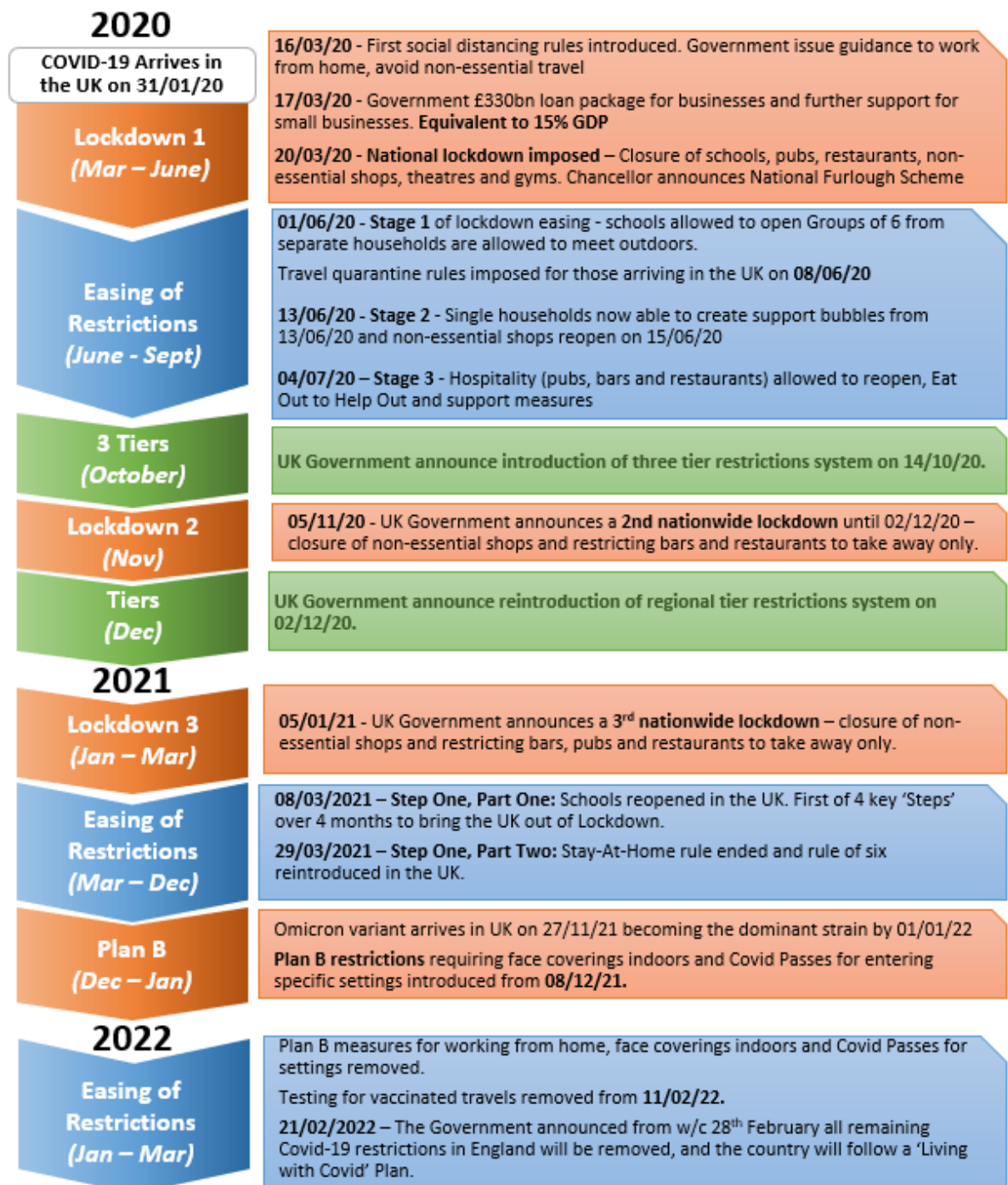
³⁸ Coronavirus (COVID-19) UK Government Dashboard <https://coronavirus.data.gov.uk/> (accessed 01/10/20)

³⁹ COVID-19 Management Plan – Executive Summary (GMCA) <https://greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/coronavirus/COVID-19-management-plan/>

⁴⁰ Prime Minister announces new local Covid Alert Levels - <https://www.gov.uk/government/news/prime-minister-announces-new-local-covid-alert-levels>

- B.9 With the discovery of the Omicron variant, Plan B measures (face coverings indoors and use of Covid Passes at specific settings such as nightclubs), which also recommended working from home where possible, were implemented from 8th December 2021 to 27th January 2022.
- B.10 A summary of the key COVID-19 events and Government responses has been captured in **Figure B-1**.

Figure B-1 COVID-19 Timeline January 2020 to March 2022

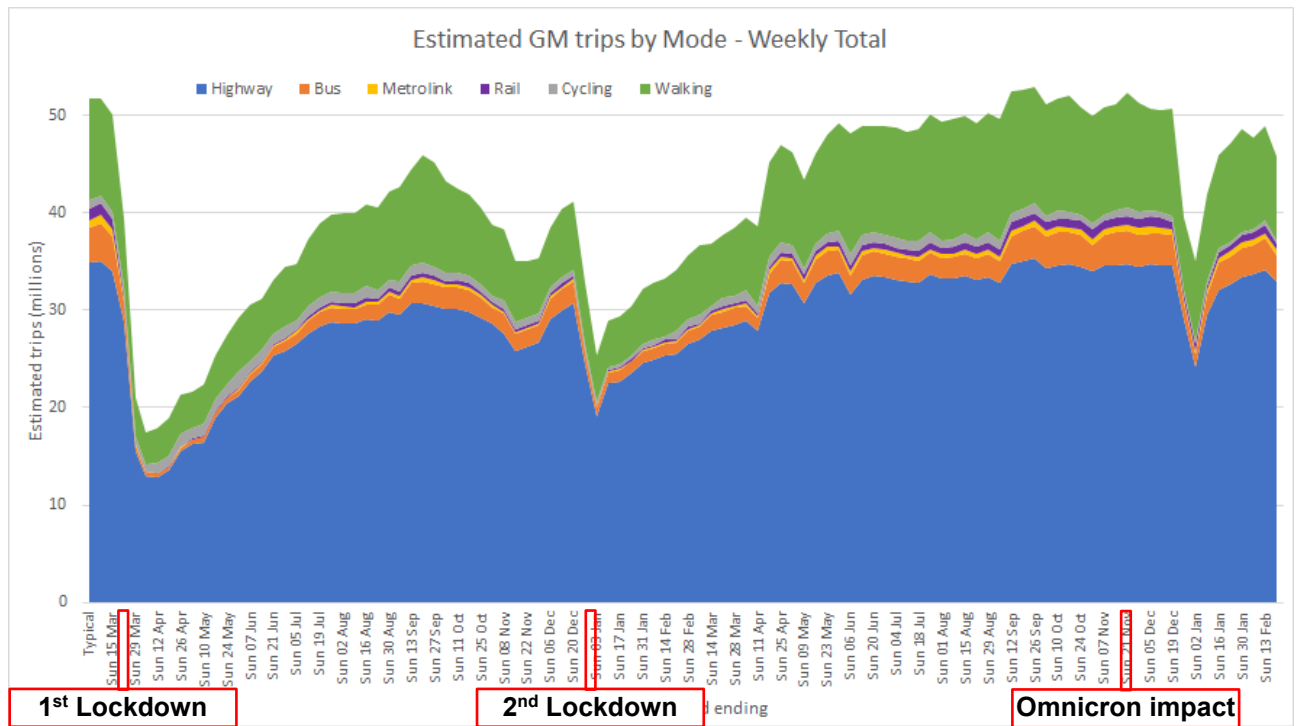


- B.11 The COVID-19 pandemic has had a transformative global impact to health, businesses, the economy, and way we live and interact with one another.

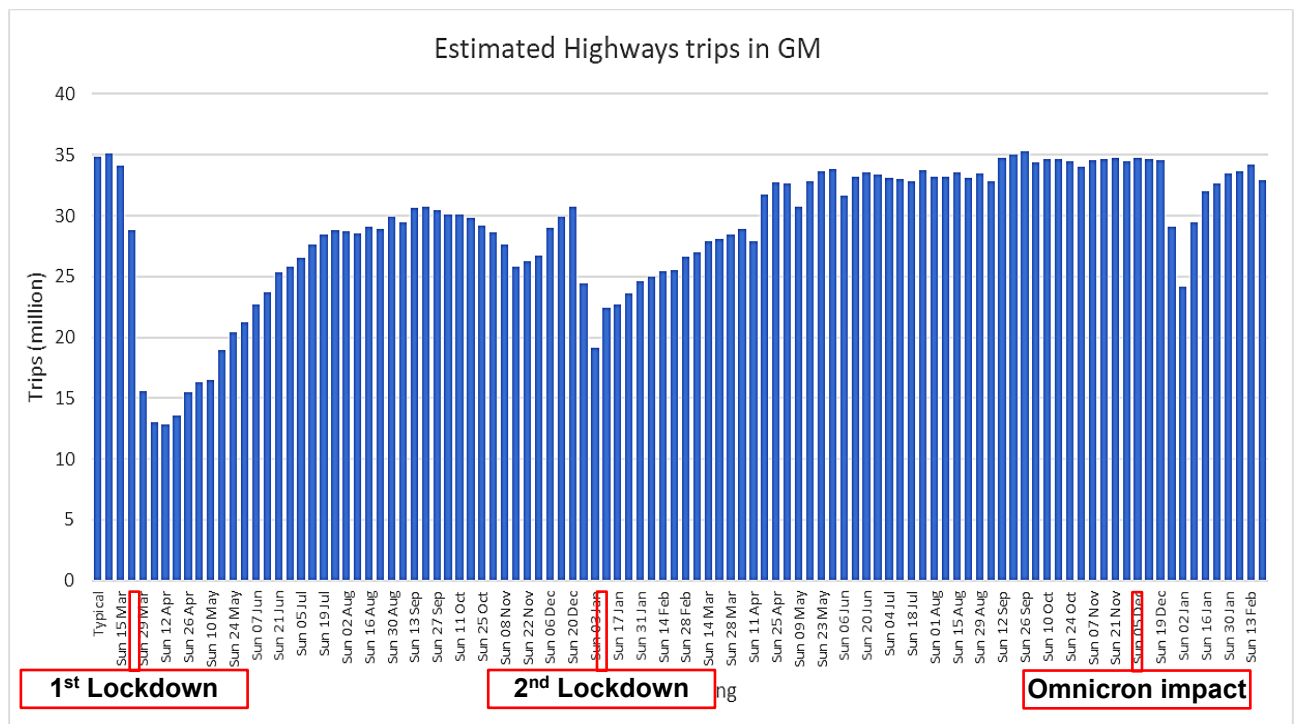
- B.12 At the time of the production of this note in March 2022, the UK appears to be exiting the pandemic. Case numbers are stabilising, death and in-patient numbers remain low, reflecting the positive impact of a successful vaccine programme rollout.
- B.13 However, emerging evidence gathered over the course of 2020 and 2021 has shown that there have been substantial changes to the economy, travel patterns and our behaviours. These changes have been driven by Government policy in the short term, however some of the behaviours adopted during Government lockdowns may continue as restrictions ease. In addition to this, economic impacts following the recent easing of restrictions have resulted in impacts which can be seen locally, nationally and globally within the economy.

COVID-19 Impacts on Travel Behaviour

- B.14 Detailed analysis has been undertaken on the impacts of COVID-19 on travel demand within GM to compare 'pre-pandemic' and 'during pandemic' travel levels within GM.
- B.15 As shown in **Figure B-1**, there are a number of Government interventions which have had an impact on traffic levels (for all modes of transport). These include:
- Government guidance issued on 16th March 2020 to work from home 'where possible';
 - Closure of all UK schools to children, apart from those who have key worker guardians on 20th March 2020;
 - Closure of the hospitality and leisure sector on the 20th March 2020 including pubs, bars, restaurants, gyms, theatres etc.;
 - Re-opening of schools to all children in September 2020 alongside the UK Government encouraging workers to return to the office;
 - Implementation and extension of the Government Tiered restrictions;
 - Return to lockdown conditions on 5th November 2020, 2nd December 2020 and 6th January 2021; and
 - Hotel quarantine for travelers from high-risk countries.
- B.16 Since the beginning of the pandemic, travel patterns across the UK have significantly changed, driven by changing Government guidelines and the perception of transmission risks on certain forms of transport. An overview of the changing trends of travel behaviour by mode in Greater Manchester is provided in **Figure B-2 to Figure B-6**; the data has been provided by TfGM. Three key dates have been flagged in each figure: the first and second national lockdowns plus the emergence of the Omicron variant.

Figure B-2 Overview of travel behaviour – All Modes

Source: TfGM

Figure B-3 Overview of travel behaviour – Highway

Source: TfGM

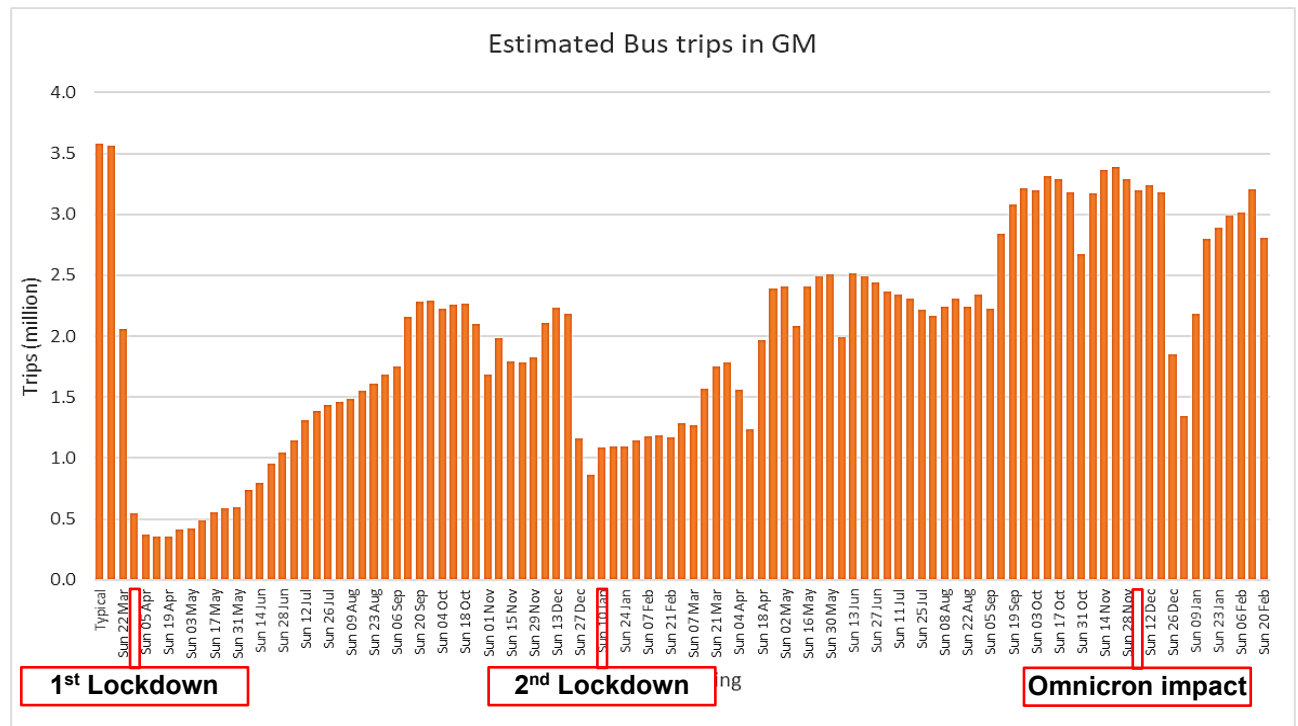
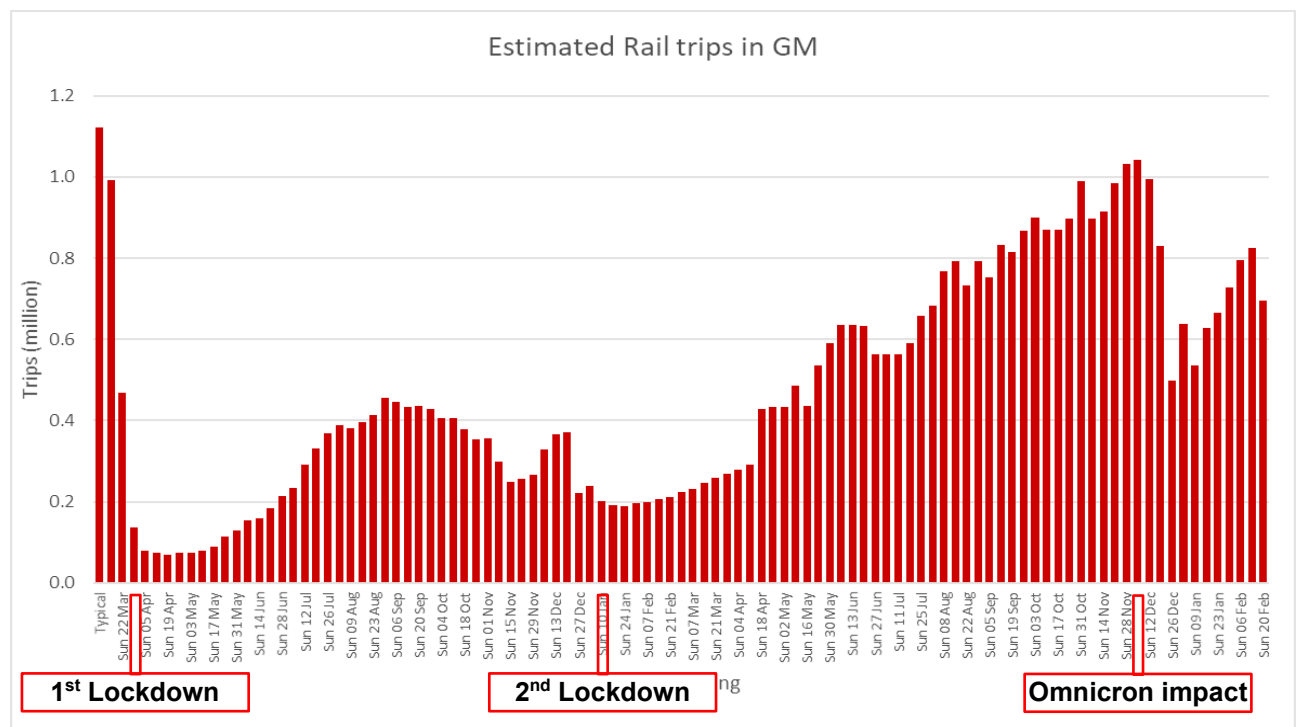
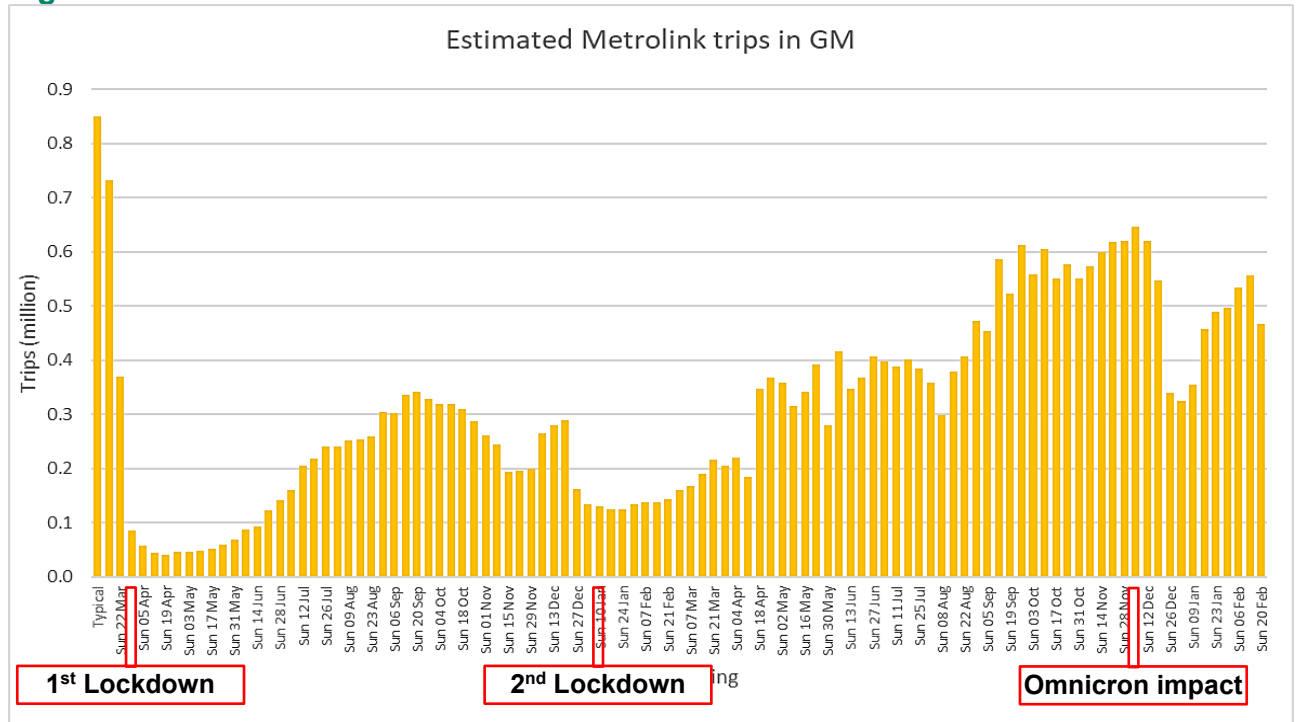
Figure B-4 Overview of travel behaviour – Bus**Figure B-5 Overview of travel behaviour – Rail**

Figure B-6 Overview of travel behaviour – Metrolink

Source: TfGM

- B.17 These figures illustrate that the impact of the pandemic has been pronounced and the extent to which pre-pandemic travel volumes have returned varies by mode. In summary, at the aggregate level across GM:
- Highway trips are close to pre-pandemic levels (approximately 95% of 'typical'); and
 - Public transport trip levels are between 60% and 75% of pre-pandemic / typical levels with bus performing more strongly than rail / Metrolink.

Local Traffic Impacts

- B.18 Further analysis was undertaken regarding traffic flows on the local highway network, in order to understand the changing highway demand levels at various points through the pandemic. This has provided an insight into how the COVID-19 related travel guidance and changing behaviours because of the pandemic have impacted travel across GM.
- B.19 This analysis has considered changing travel levels at a range of locations across Greater Manchester, to understand how traffic flows have changed on the following:
- Roads near to the Regional Centre;
 - Key radial routes;
 - Roads adjacent to local centres within GM; and
 - Roads accessing centres of employment.
- B.20 The analysis has considered several points in time, comparing:
- September 2019 (before the pandemic);

- September 2020 (during the pandemic);
- November 2021 (during pandemic – pre Omicron); and
- January 2022 (most recent, though impacted by Omicron variant).

B.21 Traffic flow data was extracted and analysed from TfGM's C2 Database⁴¹. These have been reviewed and presented for the 2-way hourly link volumes, by hour, at the following locations:

- Manchester Rd (A56) / 15m South of Ashlor St, Bury (ATC);
- Princess Rd (A5103) / 100m North of Bonsall St, Hulme, Manchester (ATC);
- Washway Rd (A56) / 40m North of Hunston Rd, Sale, Trafford (ATC);
- Bury New Rd (A56) / 90m North of Kingswood Rd, Prestwich, Bury (ATC); and
- Centenary Way (A576) / 160m North of Guinness Rd, Trafford Park, Trafford (ATC)

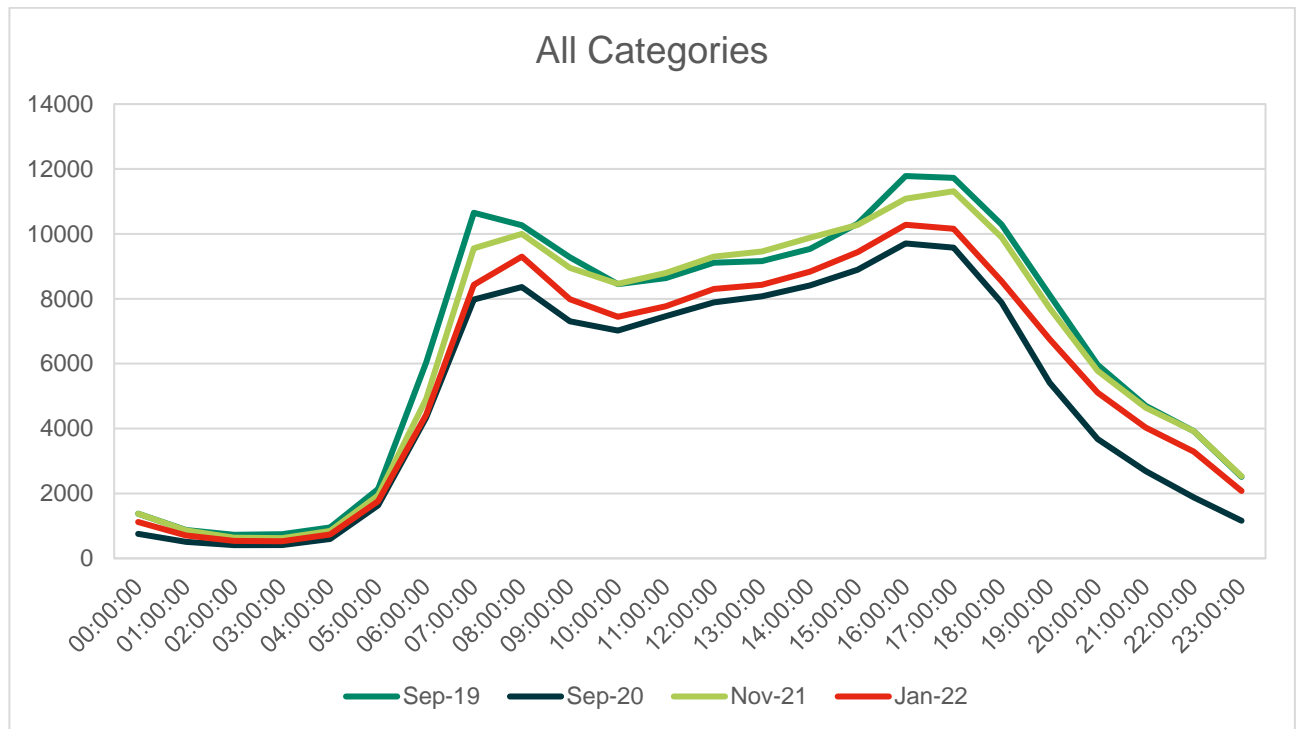
B.22 Using these specific locations around Greater Manchester the traffic behaviours at each location type can be assessed.

General Traffic Conditions

B.23 Averaging the sites identified above (see **Figure B-7**) suggests there has been a change in travel behaviour throughout the pandemic, noting the following key observations:

- The AM and PM peak periods have remained, although there is a dampening down effect on the peaks, with less variation between peak flows and interpeak flows, as the interpeak has continued to perform strongly.
- During late 2021, highway demand was almost back at pre-pandemic levels, there was then a noticeable drop again in demand as a result of the Omicron variant in December 2021.
- There has been some recovery during the peak periods, though they have not yet returned to pre pandemic levels.
- It is also noted that the earlier part of the AM peak is less strong than pre pandemic levels, with the AM peak now occurring 08:00 to 09:00, rather than 07:00 to 08:00 based on the sample of data sites.
- It also appears that the evening traffic (after 19:00) in 2022 is recovering at a slightly faster rate than the daytime traffic flows. This returned to pre-pandemic levels in November 2021 however, there has been a slight drop again in 2022, although it has been less impacted than other times of day. During the 2020 restrictions, the evening economy was significantly restricted by the COVID-19 restrictions in place at the time.

⁴¹ <https://tfgmc2.drakewell.com/multinodemap.asp>

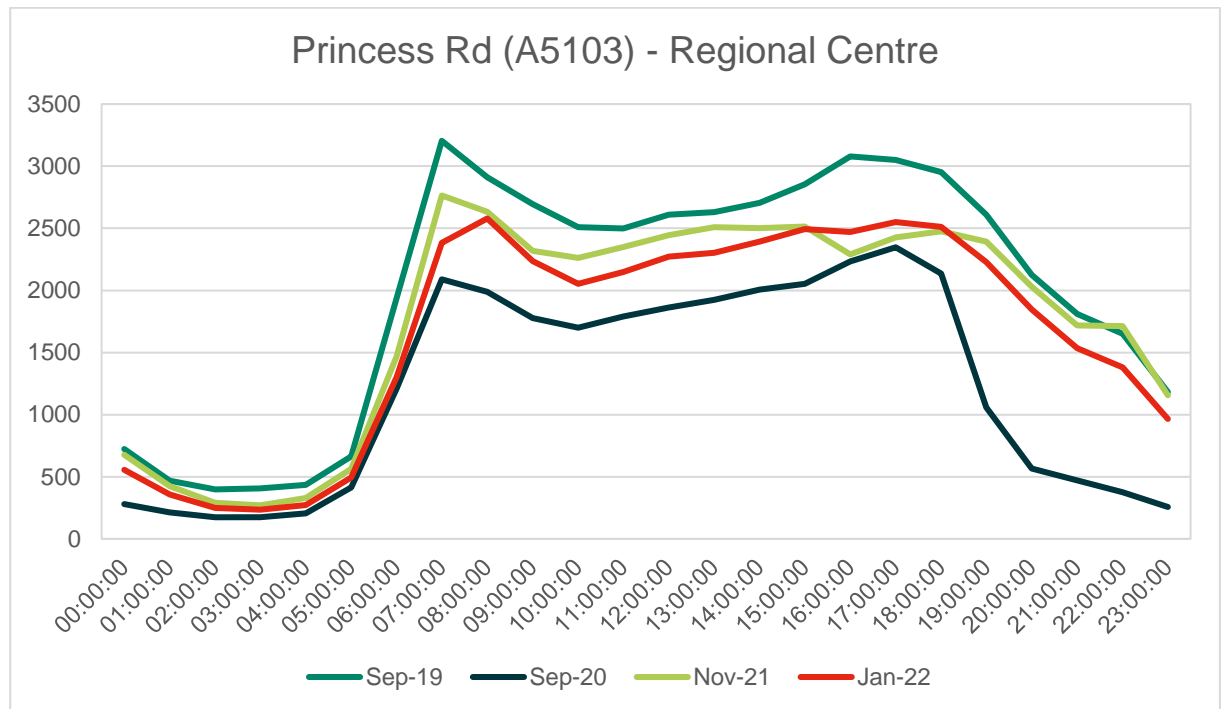
Figure B-7 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (all areas)

Source: TfGM C2 Database

Roads adjacent to the Regional Centre

B.24 Traffic flows adjacent to the Regional Centre have been significantly impacted throughout the pandemic (see **Figure B-8**). The following key trends have been identified:

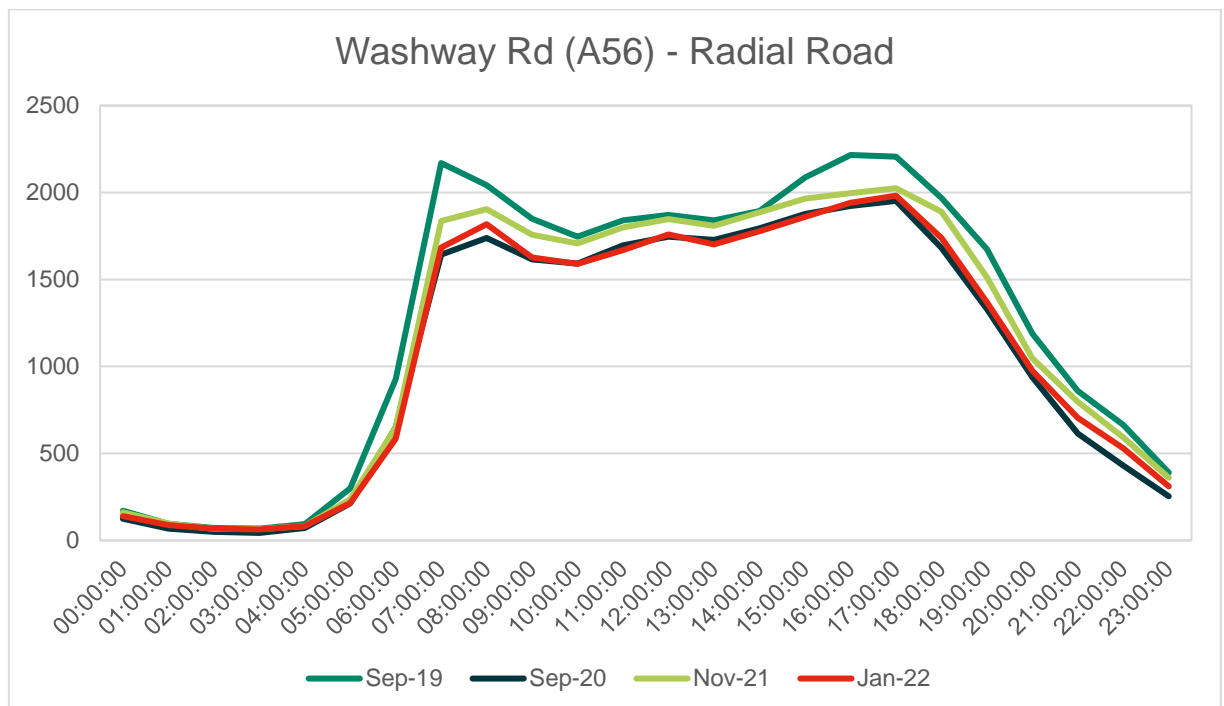
- From the data assessed, the pandemic (and associated restrictions) appears to have had the greatest impact on regional centre flows, with the largest decrease in 2020 and the slowest recovery;
- The recovery of traffic flows in the peaks is still subdued, though traffic flows during the Omicron variant have been higher than in Autumn 2020, unlike what is seen at local centres;
- In 2020, COVID-19 restrictions had a considerable impact on demand for travel relating to the Regional Centre, with heavy restrictions placed on sectors such as leisure, tourism, and the night time economy. By November 2021, the easing of COVID restrictions resulted in a return of travel demand to the Regional Centre, showing considerable recovery at particular times of day, reaching close to 2019 levels. The 2022 travel demand to Mar-22 also showed a strong return of traffic during the evening periods, though the Omicron variant is likely to be keeping these slightly below pre-pandemic levels at present.
- The early part of the AM peak is now much weaker than prior to the pandemic, and the PM peak is less pronounced. In November 2021, traffic flows were slightly reduced from pre pandemic levels, with the PM peak most strongly impacted. In January 2022, the PM peak appears to be starting to recover, with a slightly later AM peak.

Figure B-8 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Regional Centre)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location N of Bonsall St, Hulme

Radial Roads

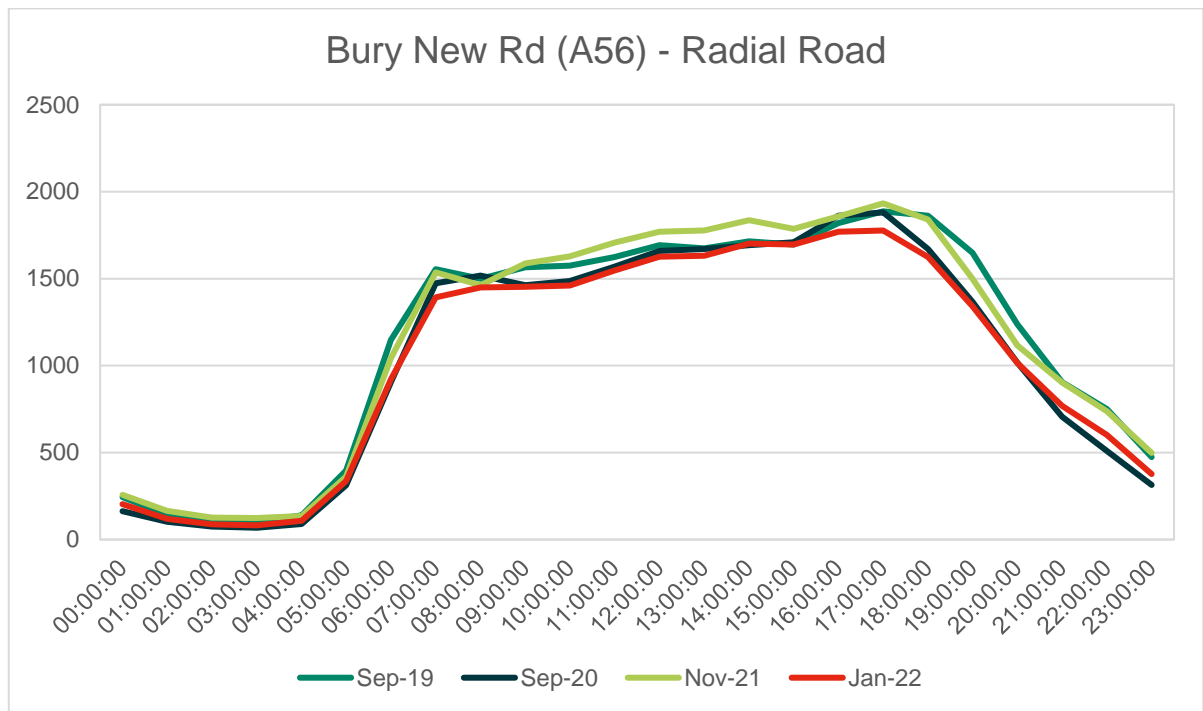
- B.25 On Washway Road in Sale (see **Figure B-9**), its proximity close to the M60, and as a key radial route, has resulted in a high level of traffic demand at various points throughout the pandemic. The site is also close to the Local Centre of Sale. Demand has remained strong at the various points assessed although, as with most other locations, the peak periods are showing slightly lower demand in 2022.

Figure B-9 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Radial Roads Outside M60)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location adjacent to Sale Local Centre

- B.26 Another key radial route north of the Regional Centre is Bury New Road (see **Figure B-10**). This site is also a key radial, though also serves local centres, such as at Prestwich. This location has shown a strong recovery of travel behaviour with travel at certain times of day exceeding pre-pandemic levels, especially during the interpeak, both in autumn 2020, autumn 2021 and currently in 2022. The evening period has, however, shown a slower recovery.

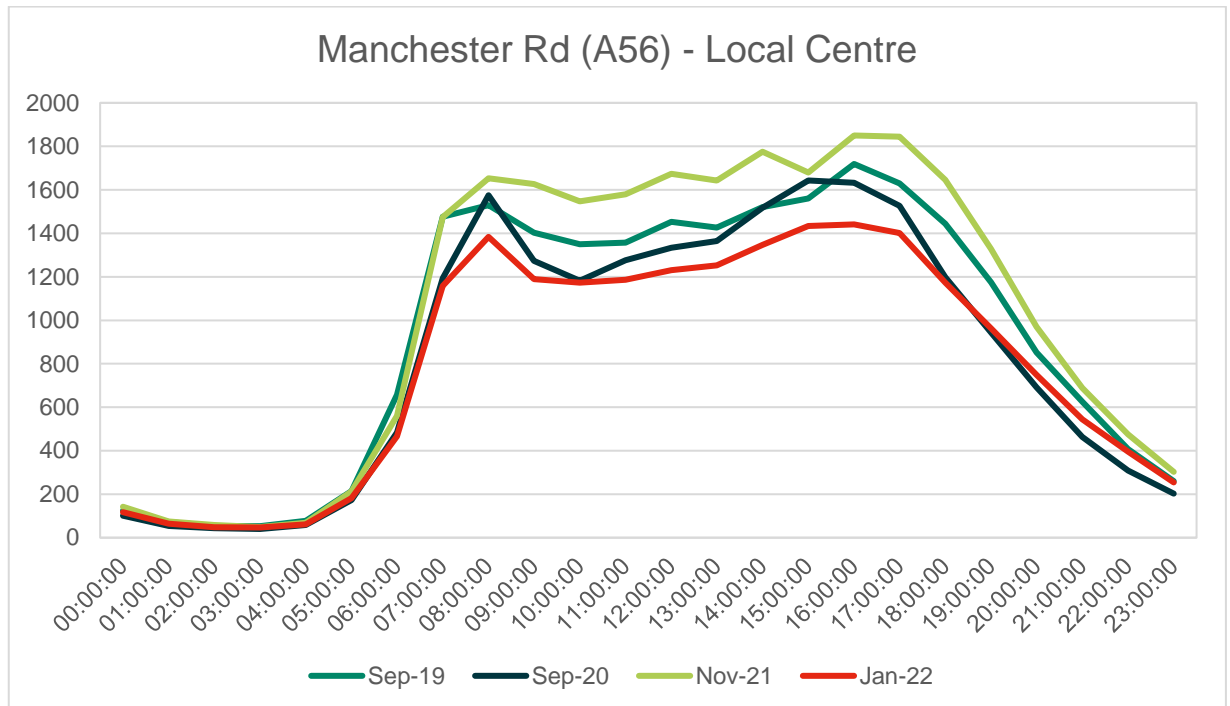
Figure B-10 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Radial Roads Inside M60)



Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location N of Kingswood Rd, Prestwich (Near to M60 J17)

Local Centres

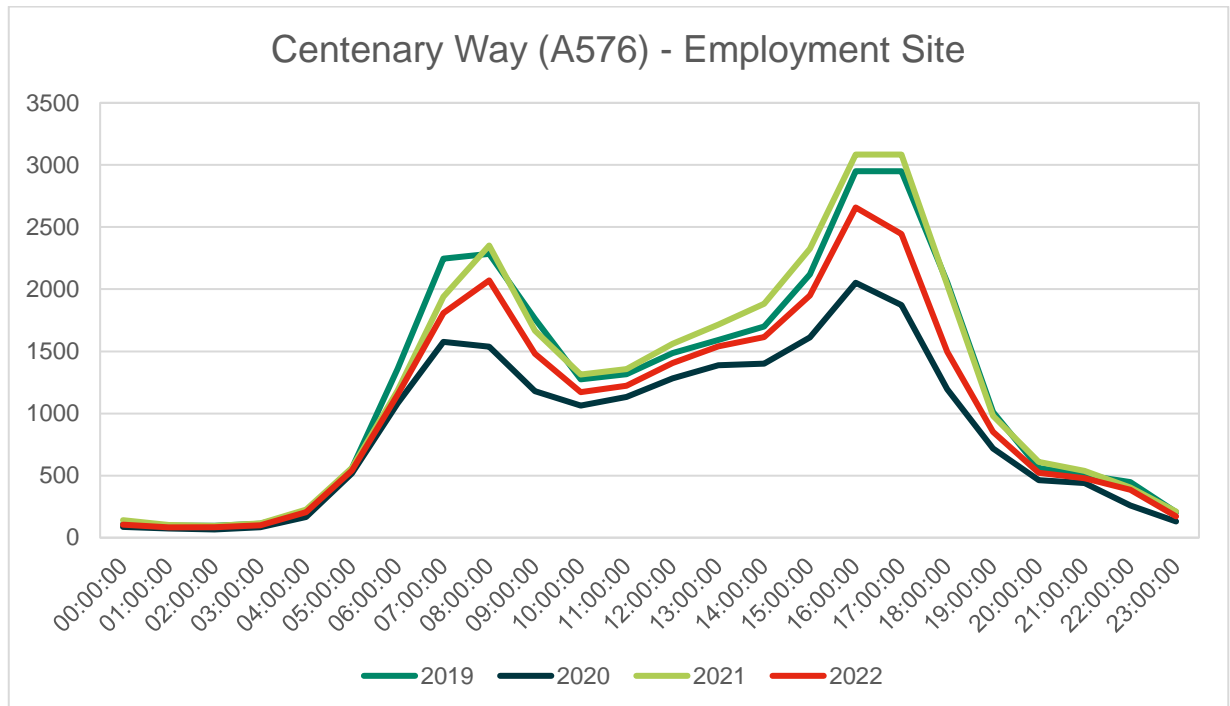
- B.27 Throughout the pandemic, as the UK Government eased travel guidance, travel demand in the vicinity of local centres, have bounced back strongly. **Figure B-11**, shows the A56 Manchester Road near Bury, which experienced a strong bounce back effect in Autumn 2020, when travel restrictions were eased. **Figure B-11** shows the later part of the AM peak and the early part of the PM peak exceeding pre pandemic levels, plus a strong interpeak and was likely an impact of more localised travel.
- B.28 By the end of 2021, demand had exceeded 2019 pre-pandemic levels by a clear margin, however this demand fell significantly in January 2022. The recent 2022 data shows the impacts of restrictions associated with the Omicron variant which has suppressed traffic flows once again.

Figure B-11 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (adjacent to Local Centres)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location S of Ashlor St, Bury

Centres of Employment (Trafford Park)

- B.29 Trafford Park is a major site of employment within Greater Manchester, with traffic flows accessing this employment area changing significantly during the pandemic.
- B.30 During the limited easing of travel restrictions in Autumn 2020, traffic flows to/from Trafford Park remained low, with limited return of higher peak time travel flows. This was possibly due to the higher levels of working from home at the time. The more recent data from November 2021 shows flows higher than pre-pandemic levels. January 2022, though impacted by the Omicron variant, shows a recovery of peak hour travel demand, close to pre pandemic levels, although the early part of the AM peak and the later part of the PM peak show a slightly weaker recovery. Interpeak travel is also similar to pre pandemic levels (See **Figure B-12**).

Figure B-12 Change in traffic flow levels by time of day (Centres of Employment)

Source: TfGM C2 Database – Location Trafford Park, Trafford

Summary

- B.31 The review of local traffic flows at various locations across GM has shown considerable variations in changing travel behaviour by location, when compared to pre-pandemic levels. This is likely to be impacted by changing travel habits, although the recent Omicron variant is likely to be impacting some travel behaviour in the 2022 data, as shown in **Figure B7**, general traffic levels in Autumn 2021 showed overall recovery in traffic flows above pre-pandemic levels.
- B.32 The change in travel behaviour by location since September 2019 is summarised in **Table B-1**.
- B.33 Considering the position in November 2021, when travel patterns were least affected, it is notable that Local Centre traffic flows were higher than previously whilst the Regional Centre flows were still much reduced. For radial routes and employment centres, overall (daily) levels were back to pre-pandemic but with some variation during the day; the morning peak being less pronounced but the interpeak higher.

Table B-1 Traffic flow changes by location type from September 2019 to January 2022

Location Type	Period	Change relative to Sep-19 (Index=100)			
		Sep-19	Sep-20	Nov-21	Jan-22
Regional Centre	AM	100	67	88	81
	IP	100	73	95	88
	PM	100	41	92	85
	Eve	100	26	95	85
	Daily	100	61	88	83
Radial inside M60	AM	100	98	98	93
	IP	100	98	105	96
	PM	100	101	102	96
	Eve	100	80	94	83
	Daily	100	92	101	91
Local Centres	AM	100	103	108	90
	IP	100	96	115	88
	PM	100	94	113	86
	Eve	100	74	110	87
	Daily	100	90	111	86
Employment Centre	AM	100	69	95	86
	IP	100	83	108	94
	PM	100	61	102	79
	Eve	100	74	99	91
	Daily	100	74	102	88

Source: TfGM C2 Database

Economic Related Impacts

Introduction

- B.34 Changes in the economic situation are also likely to have had an influence on travel behaviour. The section below presents the trends for a range of factors impacting the economy, several of which are likely to impact the way people travel and businesses operate.

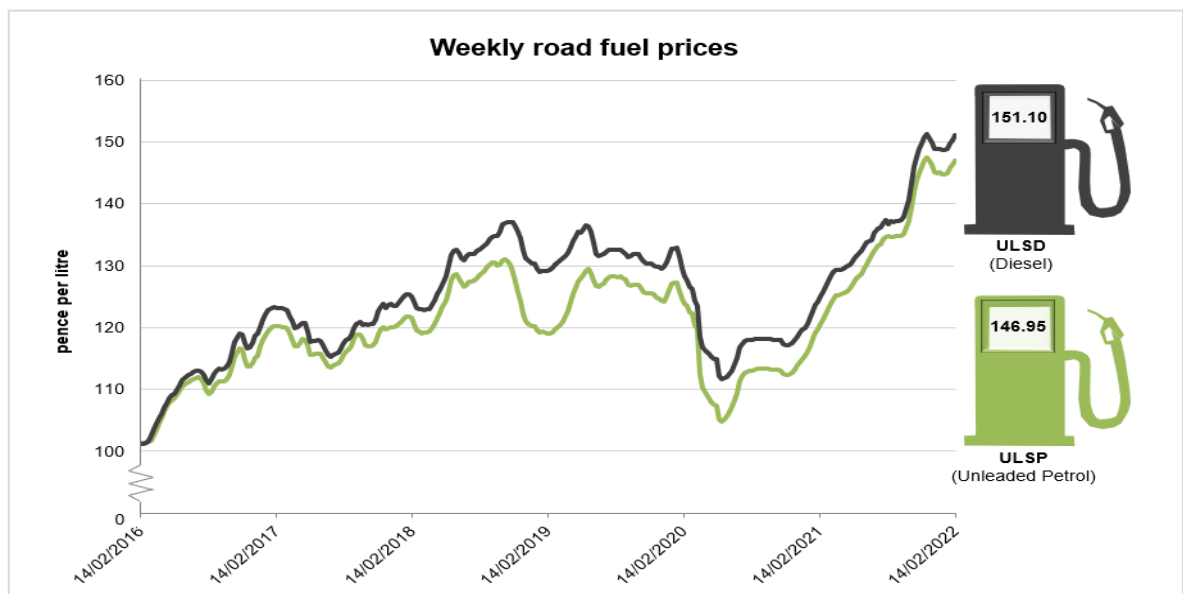
Fuel Prices

- B.35 There are six companies (four oil companies and two supermarkets) that feed into the weekly fuel price survey prepared by the government. These companies cover around 65% of the market. The change in fuel price is displayed in **Figure B-13**.

B.36 The price of road fuel is volatile over shorter time periods, with prices regularly rising and falling. The key trends from during the pandemic are:

- At the start of 2020 prices appear to have been on the decline. There was then a significant fall in both Diesel and Unleaded Petrol in early 2020, corresponding with the first national lockdown.
- During the second part of 2020, prices appear to be stable, with prices beginning to rise steadily throughout 2021 in line with global oil market prices.
- There is a steep rise in prices towards the end of 2021, reaching record highs. This corresponds with a sudden rise in post-pandemic energy demand. This has triggered a tax freeze on petrol and diesel for the twelfth year in a row⁴².
- In September 2021 long queues and forecourt closures were witnessed, caused by panic buying throughout the country, sparking a fuel shortage in Britain.

Figure B-13 Weekly Road Fuel Prices



Source: gov.uk

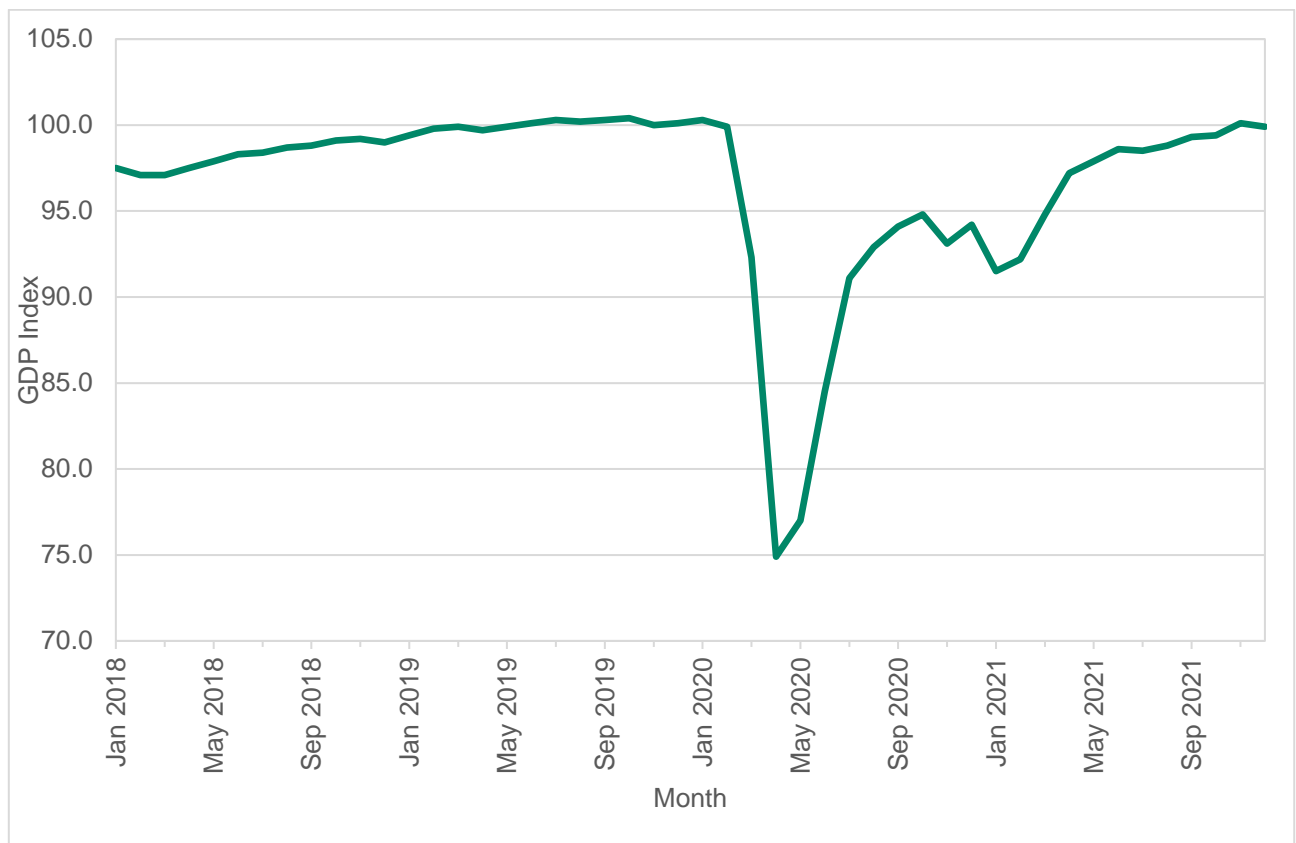
B.37 It was already likely that the price of fuel would remain unsteady for some time as a consequence of the impact of the pandemic and recent events in Ukraine have brought additional uncertainty to that market.

GDP

B.38 From bulletins on the ONS data website⁴³ the end of 2021 saw a drop in GDP by 0.2%, to equal the pre pandemic level of February 2020. In December 2021 services and construction are both above pre-pandemic levels, while production remained below. Consumer facing services fell within December, driven by a fall in retail, 8.4% below pre-coronavirus levels, contributing to the GDP fall in December 2021 (see **Figure B-14**).

⁴² <https://www.standard.co.uk/news/politics/budget-2021-fuel-duty-rise-axed-petrol-prices-record-highs-b962832.html>

⁴³ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021>

Figure B-14 GDP in the UK (Index, 2019 = 100)

Source: ons.gov.uk/economy⁴⁴

- B.39 Growth in average total pay (including bonuses) of 4.3% and growth in regular pay (excluding bonuses) of 3.7% among employees was seen in October to December 2021⁴⁵. In real terms (adjusted for inflation), total and regular pay fell for the year by 0.1% and 0.8% respectively.

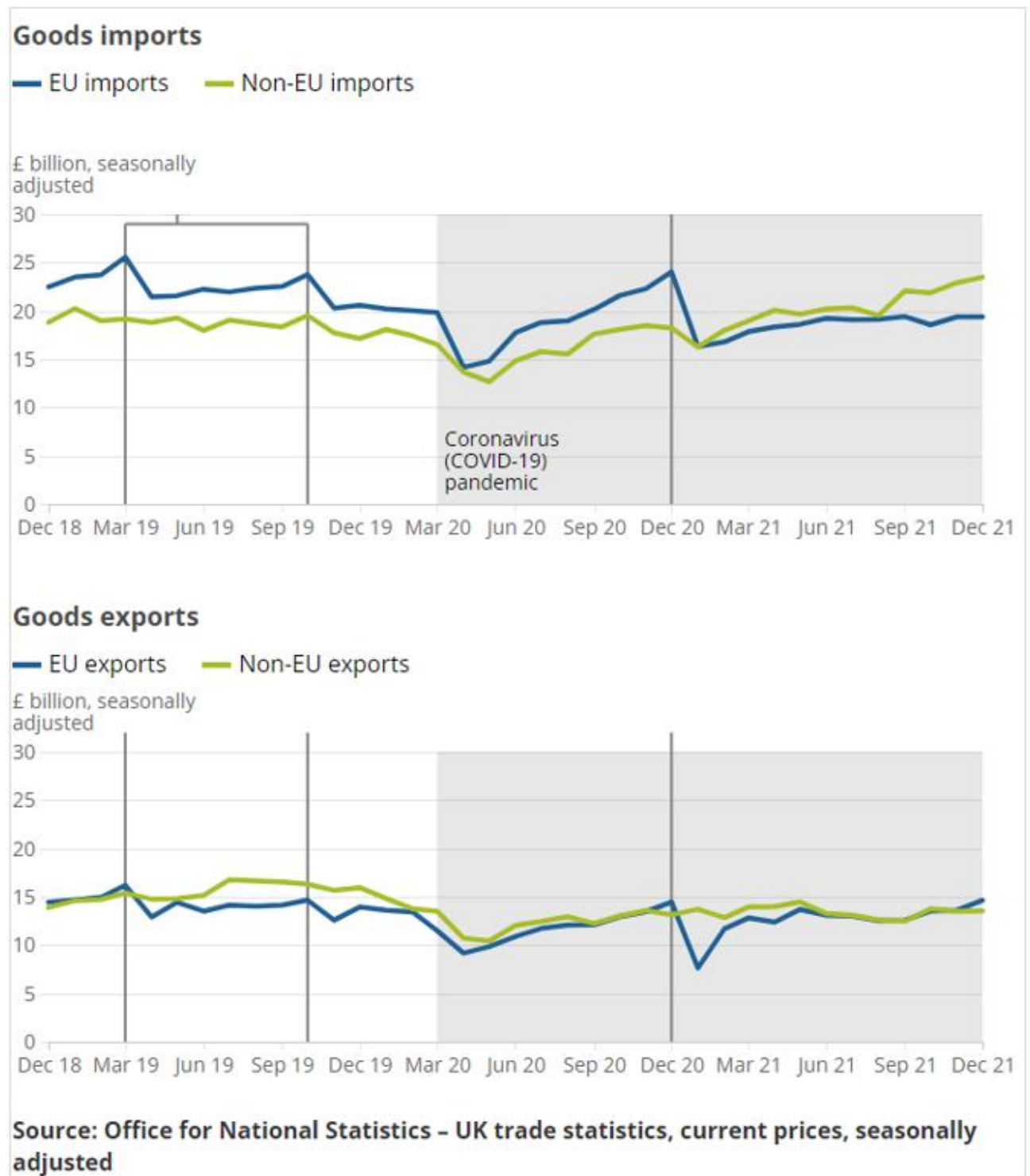
Imports and Exports

- B.40 **Figure B-15** shows the trends in UK goods imports and exports throughout 2019, 2020, and 2021. After an initial decrease in imports at the beginning of the pandemic, this appears to have recovered. There was another significant decrease at the end of 2020, however imported goods are on the increase back to pre-pandemic levels. There was less impact on exports, with these remaining steady throughout.

⁴⁴ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/grossdomesticproductgdp/bulletins/gdpmonthlyestimateuk/december2021>

⁴⁵

<https://www.ons.gov.uk/employmentandlabourmarket/peopleinwork/employmentandemployeetypes/bulletins/averageweeklyearningsingreatbritain/february2022>

Figure B-15 Import and Exports

Source: ons.gov.uk/economy⁴⁶

Centre for Cities – Cities Outlook

- B.41 Centre for Cities produced the Cities Outlook 2022 report looking in-depth at the state of UK high streets, to get a sense of the short-term impact of the pandemic on Britain's town and city centres, and the long-term consequences and implications this has for the Government's levelling up agenda. This report showed that there was a quick and considerable shift away from high streets to online

⁴⁶ <https://www.ons.gov.uk/economy/economicoutputandproductivity/output/articles/ukeconomy/latest/2021-01-25#output>

shopping during the pandemic. However, in most cities the shift stalled, or slightly fell again once shops reopened.

- B.42 The Cities Outlook report also studies the impacts on pubs and restaurants, stating that the fashion sector was hit harder than pubs and restaurants. **Figure B-16** shows the trend in sales throughout 2020 and 2021. There are clear decreases in sales corresponding to the national lockdowns but in all instances, these soon recover when the sector reopens. This is also reflected in the suburbs, with retail and fashion experiencing a slight decline from Feb 2020 to September 2021 but food and drink on a steady incline.

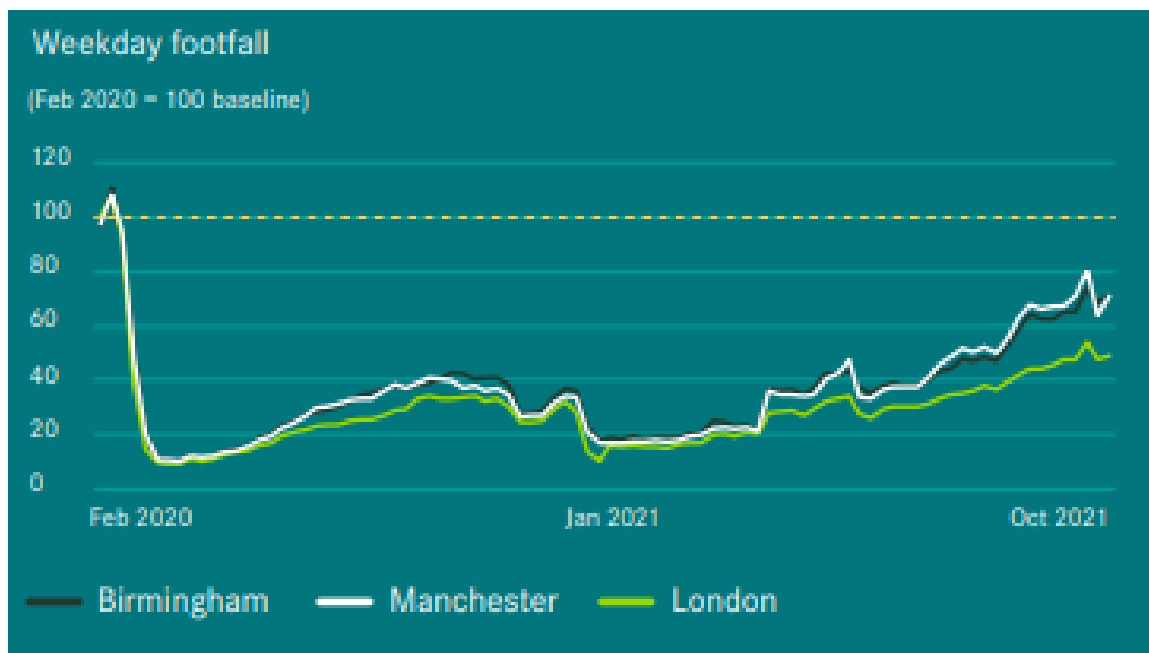
Figure B-16 Change in pub and restaurant sales in City Centres and Suburbs



⁴⁷ <https://www.centreforcities.org/>

- B.43 Due to the work from home regulations and, for many, working from home becoming a regular part of the working week, it is feared the reduced footfall in cities will have a lasting effect on retail, hospitality, and transport sectors. **Figure B-17** show the weekday footfall in London, Manchester and Birmingham. Although not yet back to pre-pandemic levels, there is a steady climb in footfall in the major cities with Manchester appearing to recover more quickly than Birmingham, and London taking considerably longer.
- B.44 The more significant impact on London may be related to the impact of COVID-19 on international tourism.

Figure B-17 Weekday footfall



Source: ons.gov.uk/economy

This page is intentionally left blank

Greater Manchester's Clean Air Plan to tackle Nitrogen Dioxide Exceedances at the Roadside

Appendix E: Changes in economic context since July 2021












Warning: Printed copies of this document are uncontrolled

Version Status:	DRAFT FOR APPROVAL	Prepared by:	Transport for Greater Manchester on behalf of the 10 Local Authorities of Greater Manchester
Authorised by: Date:	Nicola Kane June 2022		

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

Glossary

Term	Definition	Source
Base Rate	Bank of England base interest rate	Interest rates and Bank Rate Bank of England
BoE	Bank of England – UK central bank	What does the Bank of England do? Bank of England
CCI	Consumer Confidence Index - a measure of how people view the state of their personal finances and wider economic prospects	Leading indicators - Consumer confidence index (CCI) - OECD Data
CPI	Consumer Price Index – UK main economic inflationary index.	Consumer Price Indices: A brief guide - Office for National Statistics
CPIH	Consumer Price Index Harmonised - Harmonised Index of Consumer Prices, inclusive of housing cost	Consumer Price Indices: A brief guide - Office for National Statistics
CVL	Creditors Voluntary Liquidation	Liquidation and Insolvency Guidance UK Government
Economic inactivity	People not in employment who have not been seeking work within the last 4 weeks and/or are unable to start work within the next 2 weeks.	Economic inactivity - Office for National Statistics (ons.gov.uk)
Energy Price Cap	Ofgem (UK Energy Regulator) market price cap setting maximum tariff rates for gas and electricity	Check if the energy price cap affects you Ofgem
GDP	Gross Domestic Product - measures the value of goods and services produced in the economy	Gross Domestic Product (GDP) - Office for National Statistics (ons.gov.uk)
GC	Growth Company / Business Growth Hub	GC Business Growth Hub: Resources to support and grow your business GC Business Growth Hub
LTV	Loan-to-value ratio	Understanding LTV ratio Experian
MPC	Bank of England Monetary Policy Committee	Monetary Policy Committee Bank of England
OBR	Office for Budget Responsibility	What we do - Office for Budget Responsibility (obr.uk)
ONS	Office for National Statistics	About us - Office for National Statistics (ons.gov.uk)
OOH	Owner Occupiers Housing Cost	Consumer Price Indices: A brief guide - Office for National Statistics
Ofgem	UK National energy regulator	About us Ofgem
RPI	Retail Price Index	Consumer Price Indices: A brief guide - Office for National Statistics
Semi-conductor	Essential component for manufacture of electronic devices	About Semiconductors SIA Semiconductor Industry Association
SME	Small and Medium sized enterprise	SME definition (europa.eu)

1 Introduction

1.1 This note summarises notable changes in economic context since July 2021. It demonstrates how factors associated with the pandemic, global supply chain challenges, and the cost-of-living crisis have the potential to create additional financial hardship for local businesses and families.

1.2 The evidence is set out as follows:

- National / international drivers (many of which are interconnected).
- Regional (North West) - labour market review.
- GM specific factors.

2 National / international drivers

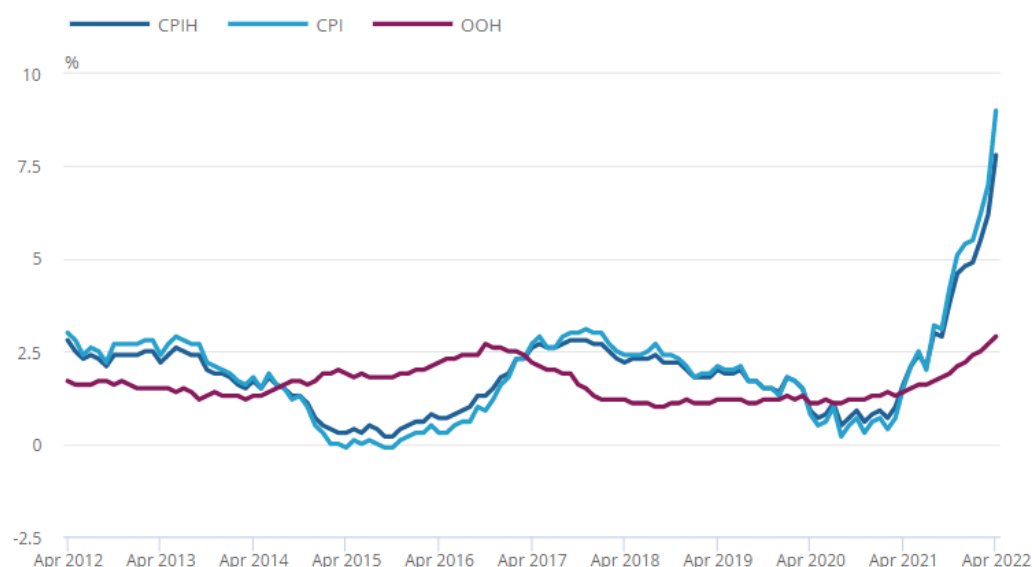
2.1 War in Ukraine (commenced late February and on-going)

2.1.1 *Global inflationary pressures have intensified sharply following Russia's invasion of Ukraine. This has led to a material deterioration in the outlook for world and UK growth. (Source: [Monetary Policy Summary, May 2022 Bank of England](#))*

2.1.2 In the May Report central projection, CPI inflation is expected to rise further over the remainder of the year, to just over 9% in 2022 Q2 and averaging slightly over 10% at its peak in 2022 Q4 (note: July 2021 CPI was 2.0% - Source: [Consumer price inflation, UK: April 2022, ONS](#)). On the 18th May 2022, CPI was announced as 9% in April.

Figure 1: The annual CPIH inflation rate was last higher in April 1991

CPIH, OOH component and CPI 12-month inflation rates for the last 10 years, UK, April 2012 to April 2022



DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

- 2.1.3 Russia is a prominent exporter of energy, producing 17% of the world's natural gas supply and 12% of its oil. (Source: [BP Country Insight - Russia](#))
- 2.1.4 8% of UK oil demand is directly imported from Russia, this is to be phased out by end of 2022, a move which could serve to place extra stress on prices. (Source: [UK to phase out Russian oil imports](#))
- 2.1.5 Both Russia and Ukraine are major agricultural exporters: both keystone producers of grain for direct consumption, milling or animal feeds. Impacts are already significant on key food commodity prices (since the war began there has been a c.30% increase in the price of wheat, and c.20% in the price of maize/corn). (Sources: [FAO of the UN: The importance of Ukraine and the Russian Federation for global agricultural](#) and [Commodity prices, Trading Economics](#))
- 2.2 Increases in the cost of energy
 - 2.2.1 The energy price cap calculated by Ofgem increased by 12% in October 2021 to £1,277 (based on 'typical' levels of dual fuel consumption paid by direct debit), and this has since been followed by the April 2022 price cap increase which resulted in about 18 million households on standard tariffs seeing their annual bill jump from £1,277 to £1,971 (54%) - an average increase of £693 (difference due to rounding).
 - 2.2.2 A further increase to the price cap is expected in October 2022 of c.£700-£850 (OBR forecasts published alongside the Spring Statement assume £830 - Source: [Economic and fiscal outlook, March 2022, OBR](#)) on top of current bills remains a likely 'good case' scenario - one that assumes that won't be significant impact from limiting Russian imports and associated impact on wholesale prices. Nevertheless, UK wholesale gas price remains highly volatile so there is significant uncertainty about exactly what rise can be expected.
 - 2.2.3 Unlike residential households, businesses on commercial energy tariffs are not protected by any price cap and tariff prices have been rising in reaction to the spike in wholesale energy prices around the world.
 - 2.2.4 *"Unfortunately, there will also be a delayed impact from rising energy prices as they feed through into the prices of other goods and services. In this context it is worrying that UK manufacturers' input prices were rising at an annual rate of 18.6 per cent in April, with some of those costs set to feed through into higher prices for consumers."* (Source: [Cap off - understanding the April 2022 inflation increase, Resolution Foundation](#))

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

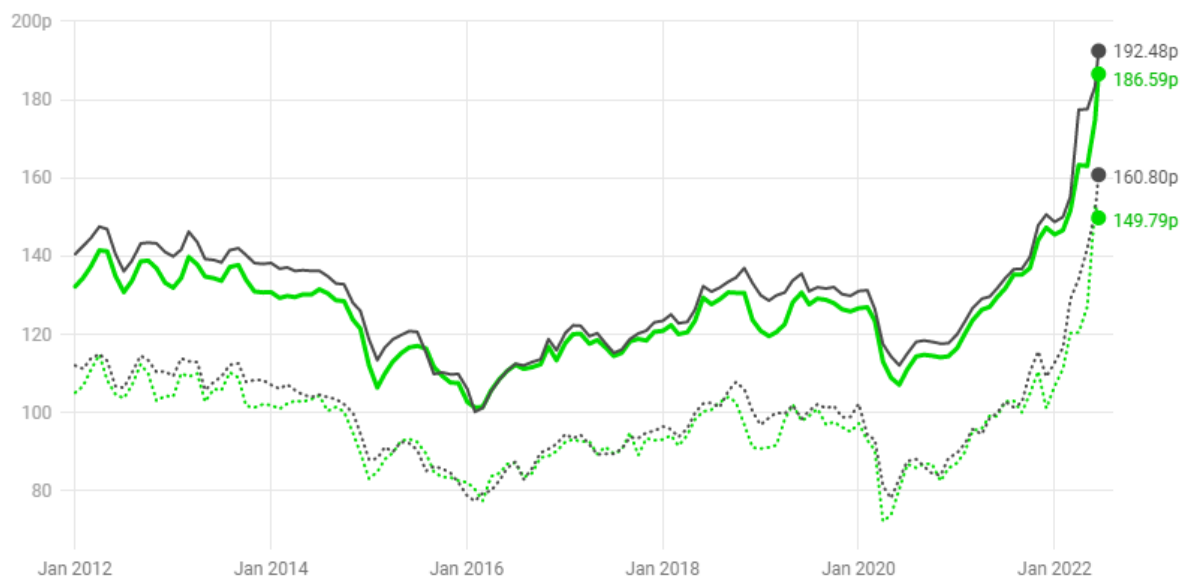
- 2.2.5 With a greater tendency for tight margins and restricted cash flow, small businesses are often less well placed than their large corporate counterparts to swallow increases in business running costs, such as a rise in energy bills. Small businesses are more likely to be forced to pass on their running cost increases to consumers through price hikes, just in order to survive. This has potential to put them at a competitive disadvantage. (Source: [Federation of Small Businesses urges government to tackle cost of living crisis at root](#))

2.3 Increases in the cost of fuel for motorists.

- 2.3.1 In early May the EU announced its intention to withdraw from Russian oil imports by the end of 2022; further threatening to push up fuel prices for motorists and businesses across Europe, who are already facing record high costs to fill up their tanks. In July 2021 pump price (per litre) for unleaded petrol was £1.32, and diesel £1.34 – on 15th June 2022 comparable prices were £1.87 (+42%) for unleaded petrol, and £1.93 (+44%) for diesel. (Source: [RAC Fuel Watch](#) - note dashed lines on the chart below represent wholesale costs)

UK pump and wholesale fuel prices over time

Latest prices in pence per litre for **unleaded petrol** and diesel



Errors and omissions excepted Based on latest available data

Source: [RAC Fuel Watch](#) • [Embed](#)

RAC

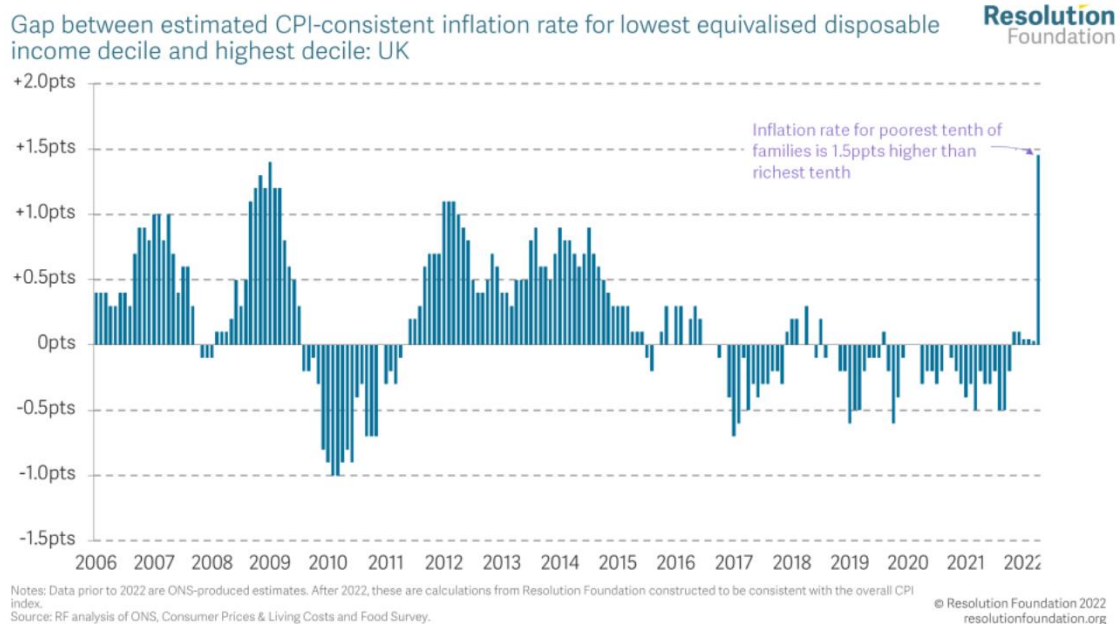
2.4 Increasing cost of food, and other products

- 2.4.1 Like for like grocery price inflation stood at 5.9% in April 2022, its highest level since December 2011. The average household will now be exposed to a potential extra £271 per year. A lot of this is going on non-discretionary, everyday essentials which will prove difficult to cut back on as budgets are squeezed. This is translating to a clear flight to value as shoppers watch their pennies. (Source: [UK shoppers seek out value as grocery inflation hits 11-year high](#), Kantar)

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

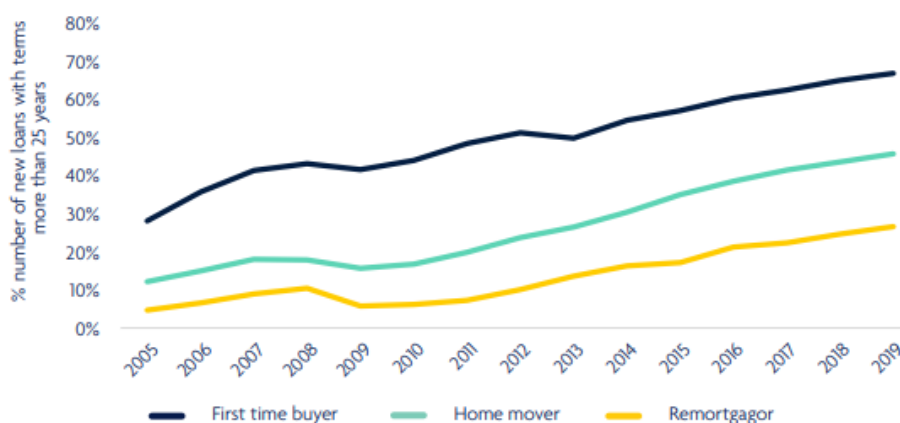
- 2.4.2 The average asking price of a used car in the UK has risen 18% between July 2021 (£14,781) and April 2022 (£17,418). (Source: [AutoTrader Retail Price Index](#))
- 2.4.3 Regulated rail fare increase at highest in 9-years at 3.8%. (Source: [Highest rail fare rise in nine years takes effect - BBC News](#))
- 2.5 On-going global impacts of COVID e.g. lockdown restrictions in the east - notably China, are still affecting supply chains in the west, impacting cost and availability of materials/parts.
- 2.5.1 Shanghai, which is home to the world's largest container port, has been the subject of city-wide lockdown during April 2022 related to the Omicron variant. Global supply chains that were already stretched are being hampered further. (Source: [China lockdowns prompt domestic shortages](#))
- 2.5.2 The global semi-conductor shortage is still impacting consumer products with retailers expected to increase costs. (Source: [Understanding the global chip crisis](#)). Intelligence from the Bank of England's Agency network suggests that shortages of semiconductors have been exacerbated by recent lockdowns in China. Contacts also reported difficulties in obtaining components and other inputs owing to the war in Ukraine, and were seeking alternative suppliers or running down existing stockpiles to support output. (Source: [Monetary policy report, May 2022, BoE](#)).
- 2.6 How the impact of inflation is distributed across society
- 2.6.1 *"Lower income families are more exposed to the rising cost of living, and not just because poorer families have fewer opportunities to cut back spending. The poorest tenth of households (by income) spend three times as much as a share of expenditure on gas and electricity bills as the richest tenth. This means the lowest income tenth of people are facing an inflation rate at least 1.5 percentage points higher than the richest tenth (see chart below). The Bank of England has warned the UK could see double-digit inflation later this year. Poorer households are already living with it."* (Source: [Cap off - understanding the April 2022 inflation increase, Resolution Foundation](#))

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL



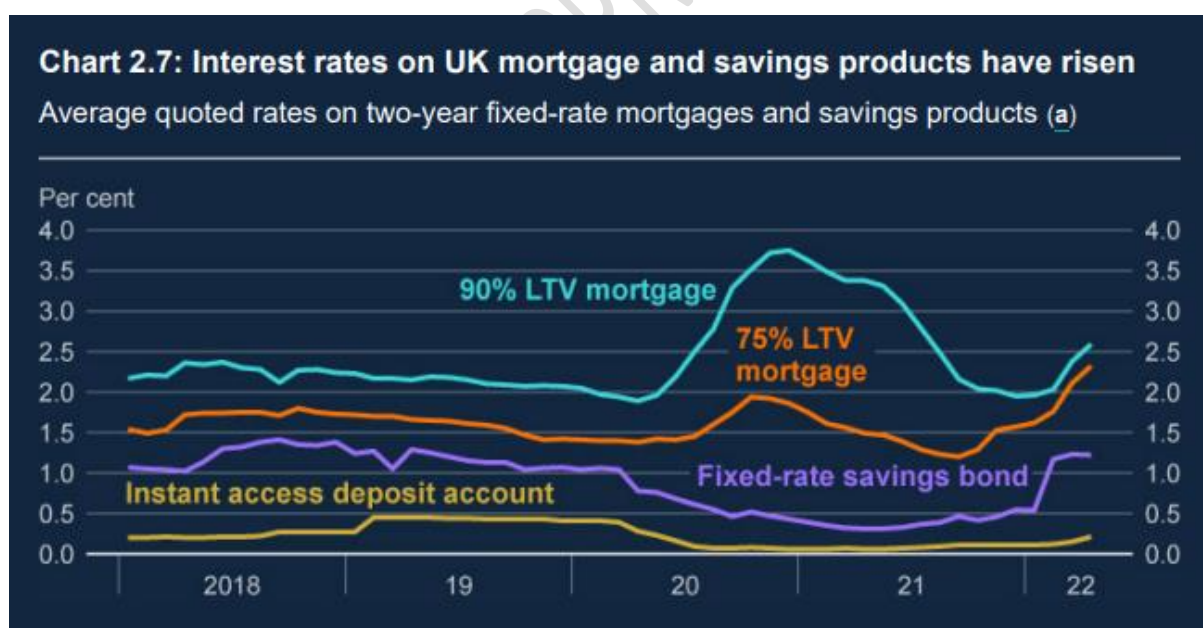
- 2.7 Changes to Bank of England base rate - 0.25% in Jan 2022, risen to 1.25% (16th June) - moving into a phase of more expensive borrowing.
- 2.7.1 *Rates on new lending to SMEs rose by around 110 basis points between January and March this year, and are now slightly above their 2019 levels. While larger firms' ability to access credit is broadly unchanged, credit conditions have tightened slightly for smaller firms since January 2022. (Source: [Monetary policy report, May 2022, BoE](#)).*
- 2.7.2 *'Surveys of business activity have generally remained strong. There have, however, been signs from indicators of retail spending and consumer confidence that the squeeze on real disposable incomes is starting to weigh on the household sector. The level of GDP is expected to be broadly unchanged in Q2.'* (Source: [BoE MPC May 2022 minutes](#))
- 2.7.3 About a third of UK adults have a mortgage. Of those, three-quarters have a fixed mortgage, so will not be immediately affected. The rest - about two million people - will see their monthly repayments rise.
- 2.7.4 The popularity of 5-year fixed deals has increased in recent years, in comparison to shorter 2-year fixes. This change in preference has taken place amidst a backdrop in which mortgage terms have lengthened (in part a response to rising house prices). This points to less flexibility for homeowners to reduce their monthly outgoings should they find themselves exposed to higher interest rates when their fixed product period ends. (Source: [The changing shape of the UK mortgage market - UK Finance](#))

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

Chart 8 - Lengthening mortgage terms

Source: UK Finance - restricted access data

- 2.7.5 “Quoted rates on mortgages have recently increased across all LTVs, reflecting the pass-through of higher risk-free rates. The quoted rate on a 75% LTV mortgage has risen by around 70 basis points since January, while the rate on a 90% LTV mortgage is up by 65 basis points.” (Source: [Monetary policy report, May 2022, BoE](#)).

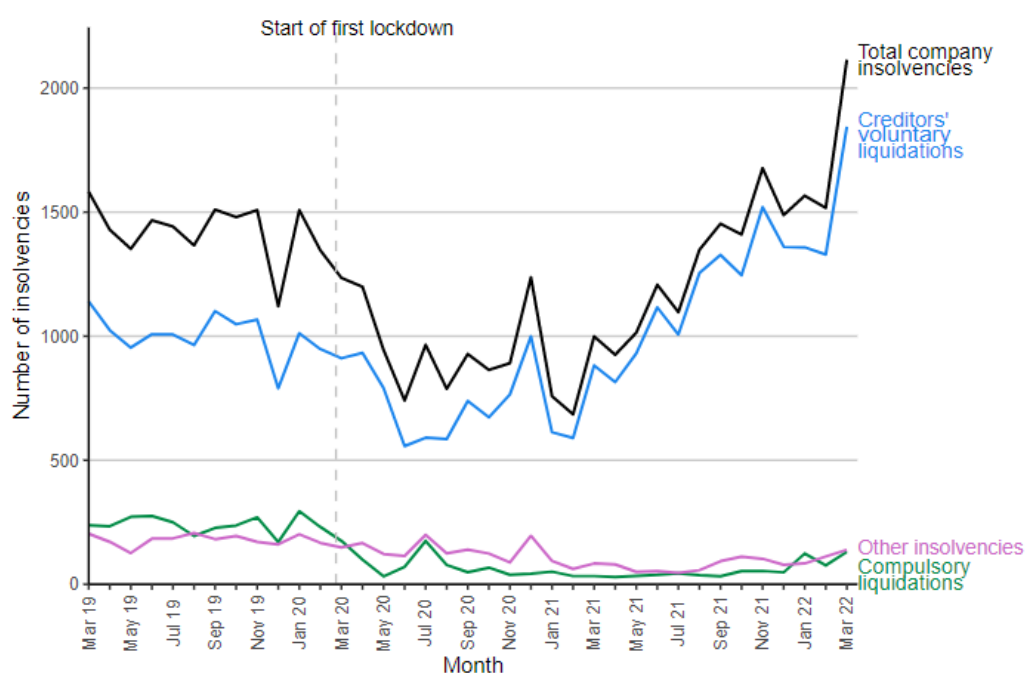


DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

- 2.8 Removal of Government Covid-support schemes, such as furlough, enhanced sick pay, business rates pauses, and the Universal Credit uplift. Also, businesses are starting to have to pay back Covid loans.
- 2.8.1 *“Businesses that were just hanging on before the recent interest rate rises have seen the rise in borrowing costs push them over the edge. Between interest rates and inflation, this is the most difficult period for businesses since the height of the pandemic. This time they are having to manage without government support. UK businesses will be hit by the ‘cost of living crisis’, just as consumers will be.”* Rebecca Dacre, partner at Mazars.
(Source: [Business insolvencies increase amidst spiralling inflation](#))
- 2.8.2 The moratorium winding up petitions prevented creditors from applying to make a business insolvent because of unpaid debts during the Covid crisis, but this ended on 31 March. The end of this protection for struggling businesses will likely result in more insolvencies in the coming months - the number of registered company insolvencies in March 2022 (England and Wales) climbed above pre-pandemic levels. (Source: [Monthly insolvency statistics - March 2022](#))

Figure 1: The number of registered company insolvencies in March 2022 was higher than pre-pandemic levels, driven by a higher number of CVLs.

England and Wales, March 2019 to March 2022, Not seasonally adjusted



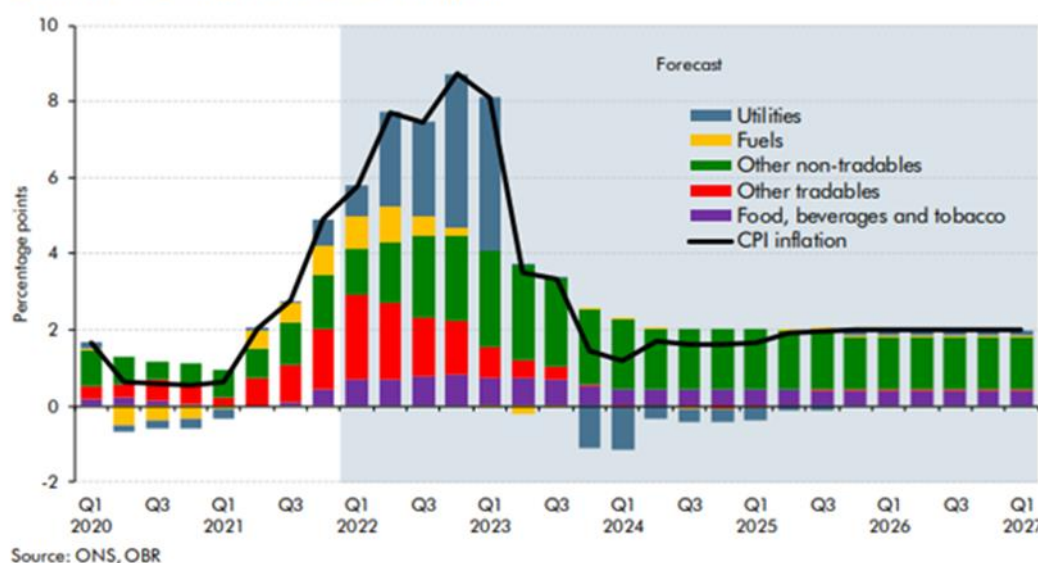
Sources: Insolvency Service (compulsory liquidations only); Companies House (all other insolvency types)

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

2.9 Since July 2021, time has passed for the 'squeeze' on consumer demand to take effect – whilst it is hard to judge exactly when the peak impact on society will be, it is clear that it is still to come.

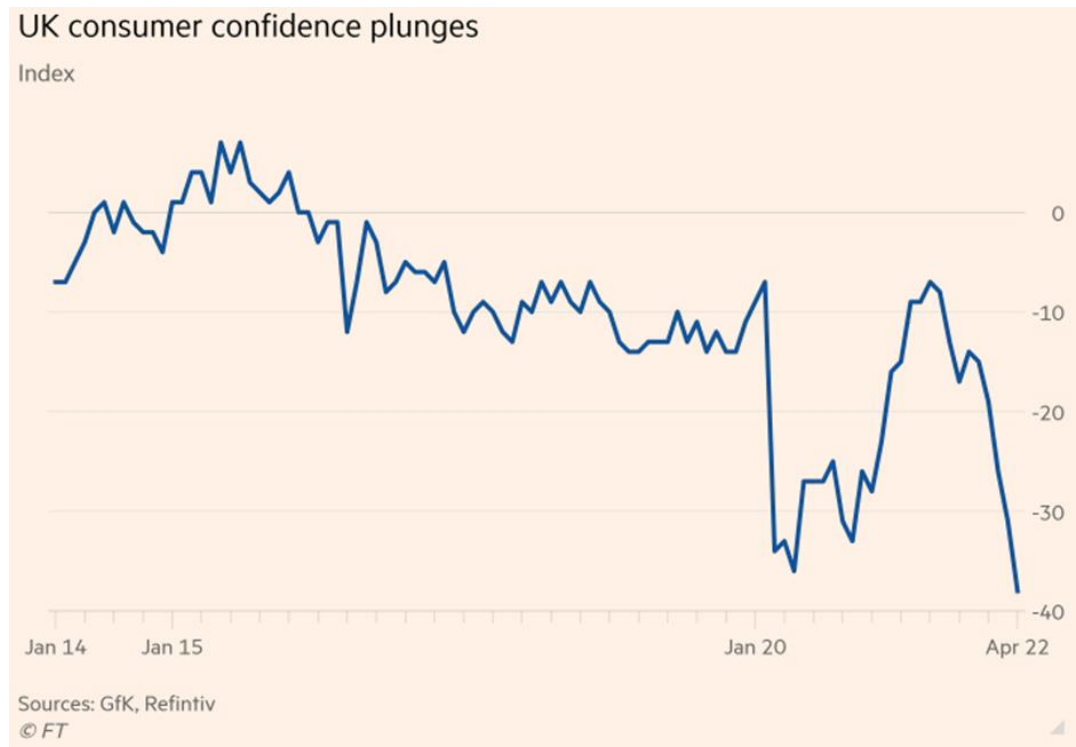
2.9.1 The chart below demonstrates that inflation is expected to peak in Q4 2022 – it is important to note however that since this was published in March 2022, expectations for CPI have been revised upwards for Q4 2022 from the previous 'close to 9%' to 10.25% under a new central forecast for CPI from the Bank of England. Sources: [Economic and fiscal outlook, March 2022, OBR](#) and [Monetary policy report, May 2022, BoE](#))

Chart 2.7: Contributions to CPI inflation



2.9.2 See previous reference to *'There have, however, been signs from indicators of retail spending and consumer confidence that the squeeze on real disposable incomes is starting to weigh on the household sector.'* (Source: [BoE MPC May 2022 minutes](#))

2.9.3 The UK consumer confidence index, a measure of how people view the state of their personal finances and wider economic prospects, crashed seven points to minus 38 in April, its lowest level since 2008 when it was minus 39, according to research company GfK. (Source: [UK consumer confidence plunges - Financial Times](#))



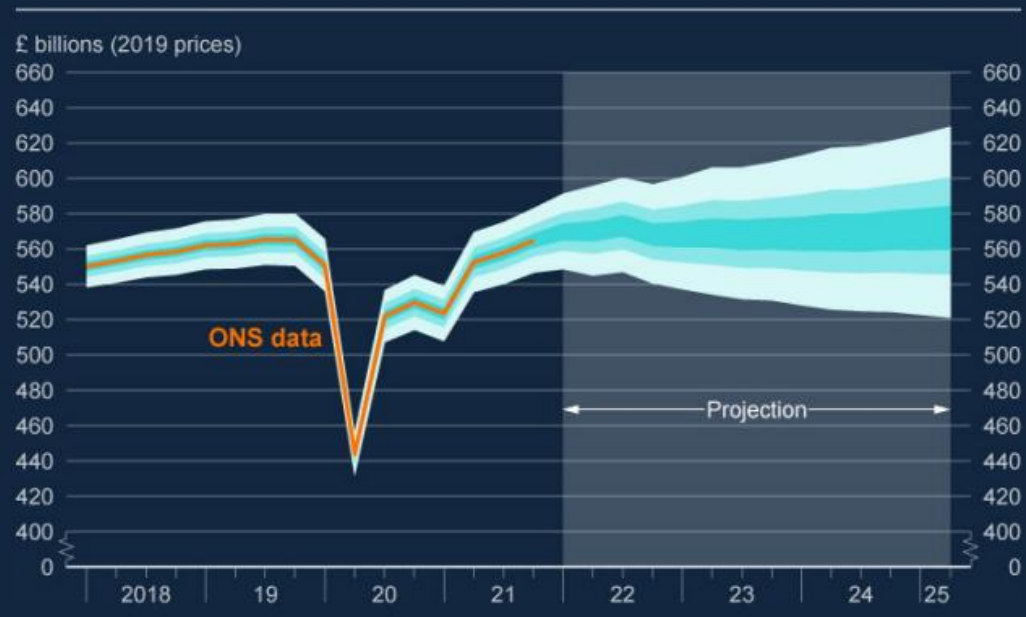
2.10 Revised projections for UK GDP Growth

- 2.10.1 BoE estimates that quarterly UK GDP growth was 0.9% in 2022 Q1. Growth slows sharply over the first half of the projection (see first chart below), reflecting the significant adverse impact of higher global commodity and tradable goods prices on UK demand. GDP is projected to fall in 2022 Q4 (see second chart below), driven largely by the decline in households' real incomes, including that stemming from the projected rise of around 40% in retail gas and electricity prices when the Ofgem price caps are next reset in October. Calendar year GDP growth is broadly flat in 2023. Four-quarter GDP growth picks up to around 0.75% by the end of the projection as the pressures on household incomes ease somewhat, although this is still below pre-pandemic rates. (Source: [Monetary policy report, May 2022, BoE](#)).

Chart 1.1: GDP growth projection based on market interest rate expectations, other policy measures as announced



Chart 1.2: GDP projection based on market interest rate expectations, other policy measures as announced

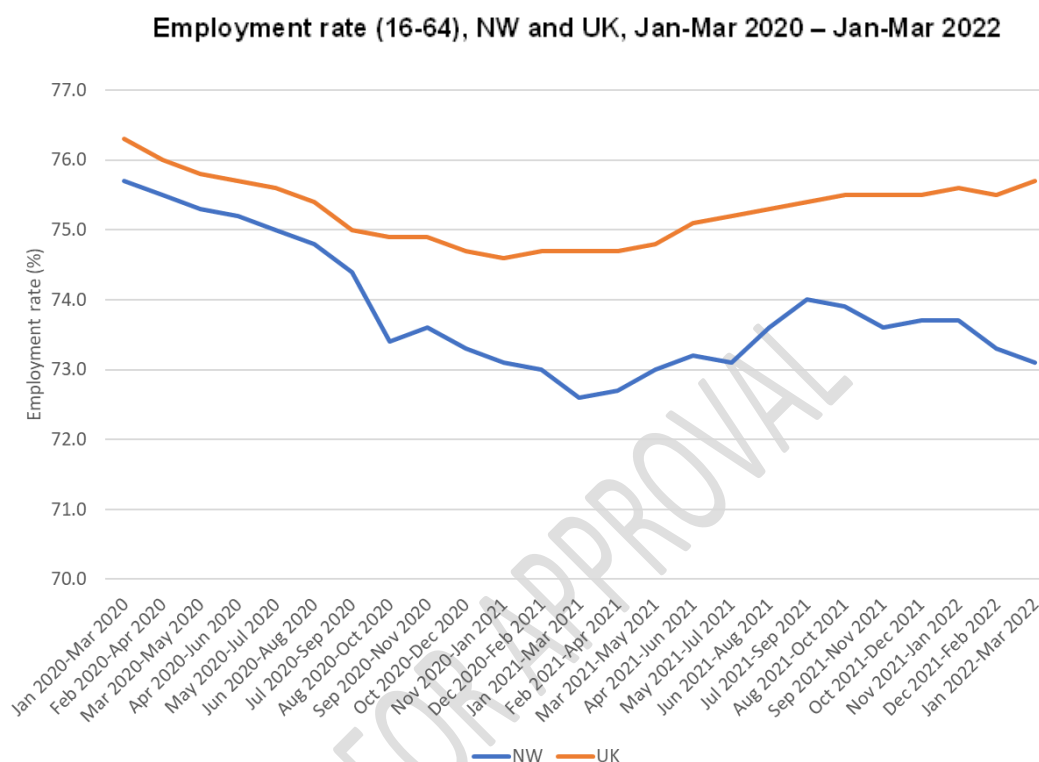


3 Regional (North West) - labour market review

- 3.1 Labour market data released by the Office for National Statistics on 17 May 2022 showed that the employment rate in the North West continued to fall. It was 73.1% in the three months to March 2022. At the start of the pandemic it was 75.7%. The North West has about 130,000 fewer jobs than before the pandemic.

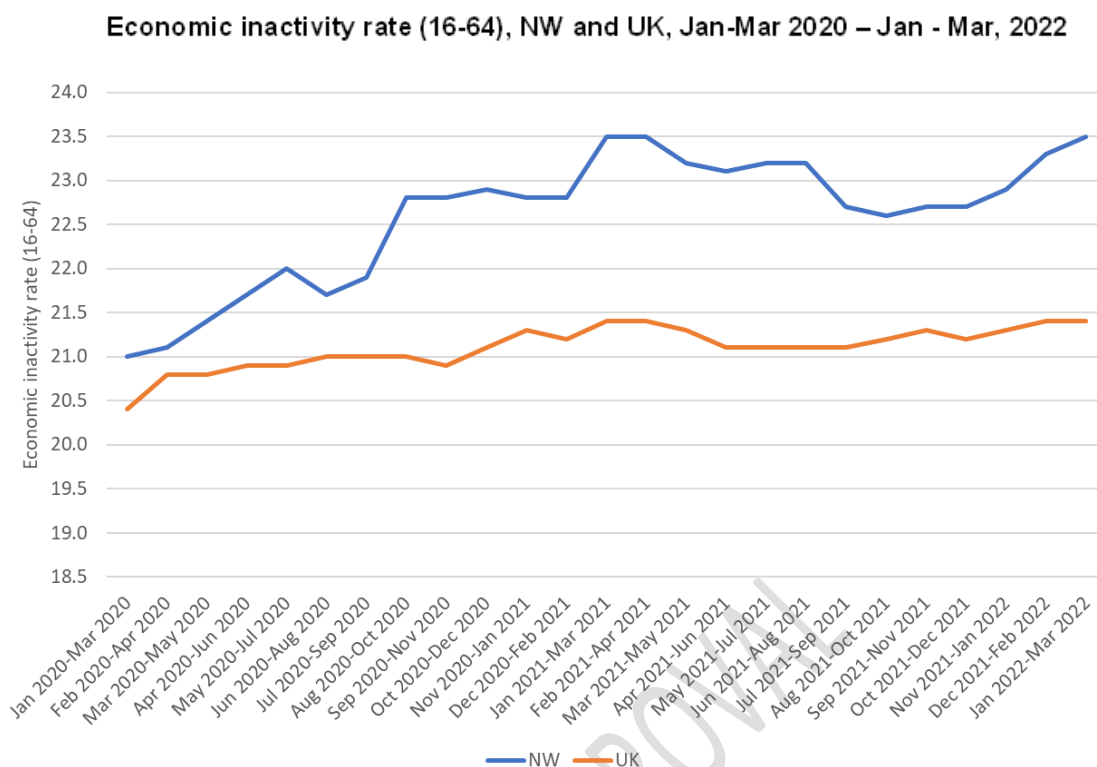
DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

- 3.2 The gap between the jobs performance of the North West and that of the UK was at its widest in two years in the Jan-Mar 2022 data (a gap of 2.6ppts). Nationally, the employment rate for the UK was 75.7% - up from 75.5% in the three months to February. The North West therefore seems to be on a different trajectory from UK patterns. (Source: [Labour market in the regions of the UK: May 2022](#))



- 3.3 An increase in working age economic inactivity has attracted national attention. In the NW of England the Covid-driven rise is more marked than the national average. As well as the inactivity rate returning to a pandemic high of 23.5% in the most recent data the gap with the UK has widened once more (2.1ppts). (Source: [Labour market in the regions of the UK: May 2022](#))

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

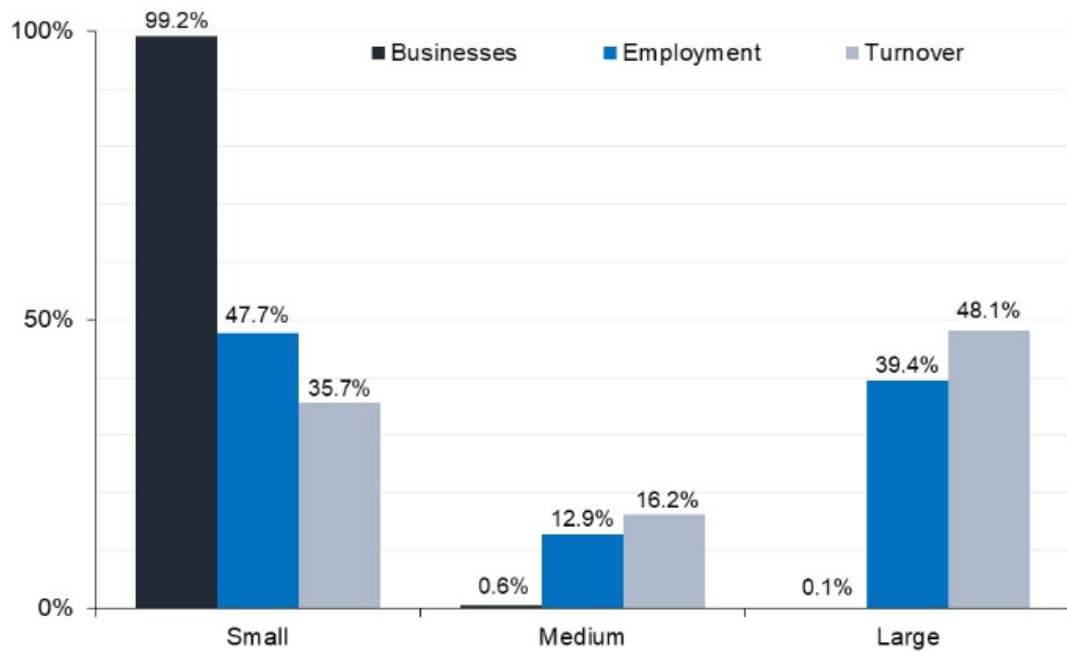


4 GM specific factors

4.1 GM Business composition

- 4.1.1 In 2021 GM had c.107,000 registered businesses – 98% of which had less than 50 employees (defined here as ‘small’). Despite having comparable total and working age populations, GM has an additional c.15,000 ‘small’ businesses in comparison to the West Midlands combined authority area. (Source: [UK Business Counts 2021 - enterprises by industry and employment size band](#))
- 4.1.2 The chart below is based on UK wide data, but it is important for demonstrating the importance of ‘small’ businesses in terms of both employment and turnover. (Source: [Business population estimates for the UK and regions 2021, BEIS](#))

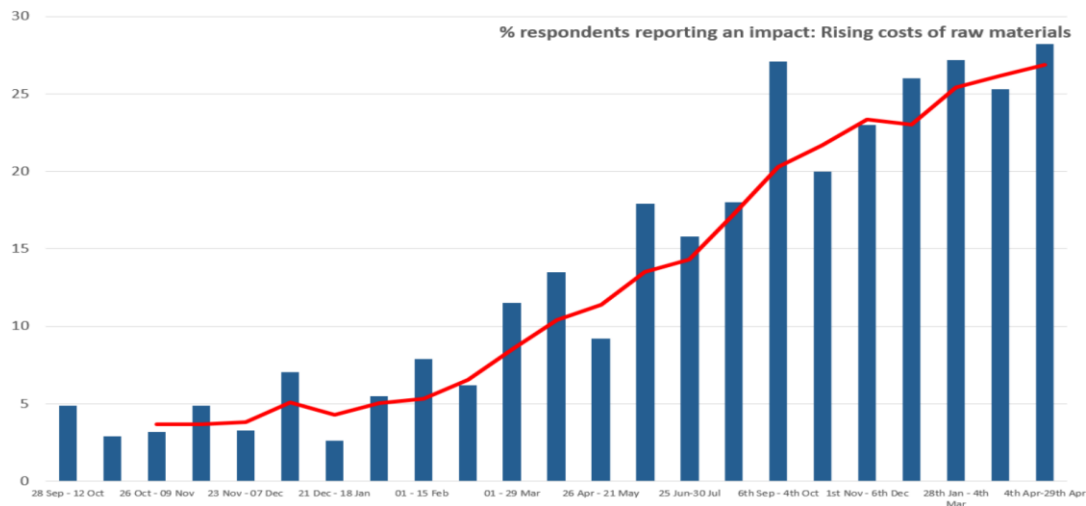
DRAFT FOR APPROVAL



4.2 Outlook for GM Businesses

- 4.2.1 The GC Situation Report May 2022 contains findings based on 246 surveys completed with firms (almost all in Greater Manchester), between the 4th April and 29th April 2022.
- 4.2.2 The GC survey and other national statistics and surveys show that there is heightened concern about input prices and the volatility of supply chains.
- 4.2.3 The stand-out change in the survey results for April is the proportion of firms identifying the pressing challenges of managing overall business finances (43% vs 33% previously). This is mirrored by a four percentage-point rise in businesses reporting insolvency risk / financial stress in other third party risk data (RedFlagAlert).
- 4.2.4 The chart below points to the increasing proportion of GM businesses being impacted by the rising costs of raw materials - April 2022 reported a value of 28% vs. 16% for July 2021 (Source: [Growth Company Business Survey](#))

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL

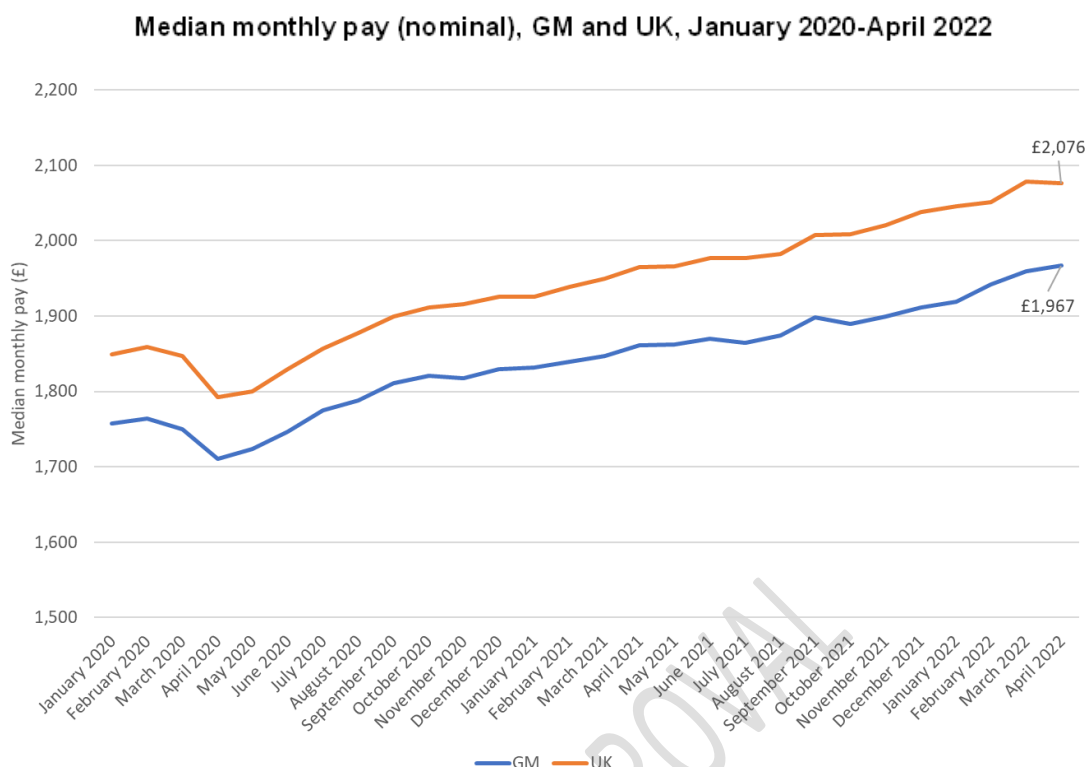


4.2.5 Recruitment remains a key challenge for business, with total vacancies across all sectors having been at high levels over the last year - this is meaning that some firms are finding significant challenges in staffing their operations - Manchester Airport being a key example. The previously noted increase in economic inactivity brought about by the pandemic has likely shrunk the size of the available workforce to GM businesses (in the North West during Jan-March 2022 the working age inactivity rate was 23.5% vs. a national inactivity rate of 21.4% - this is higher than it was at the beginning of 2020. (Source: [Labour market overview, UK: May 2022, ONS](#))

4.3 Wages in Greater Manchester (ONS 'experimental' data)

4.3.1 The chart below indicates that estimated median pay in GM is over £100 a month below the UK median (note: this data is unadjusted for inflation and indicates the trend only). The wage gap was at its widest in January of 2022 (£127 a month). The data suggests that GM nominal median pay has increased since last month, but fallen slightly in the UK. Real terms pay has been falling recently in the midst of cost of living increases. (Source: [Earnings and employment from Pay As You Earn Real Time Information, seasonally adjusted, ONS](#))

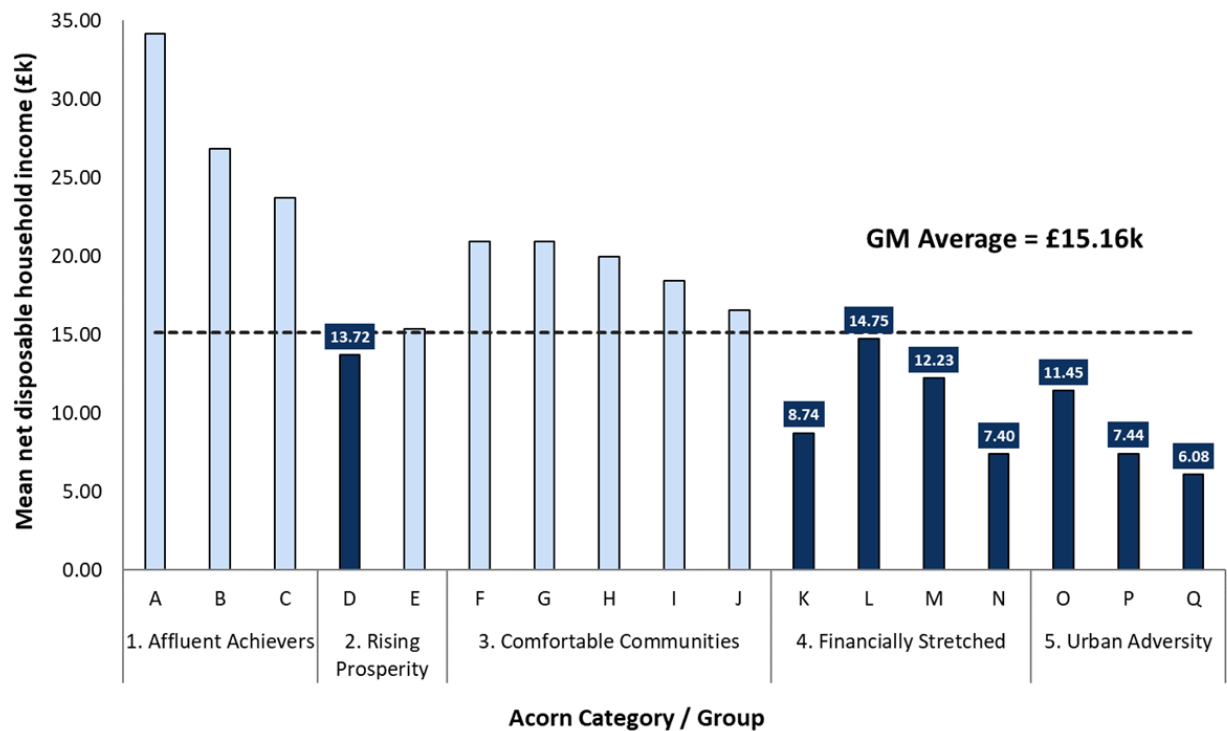
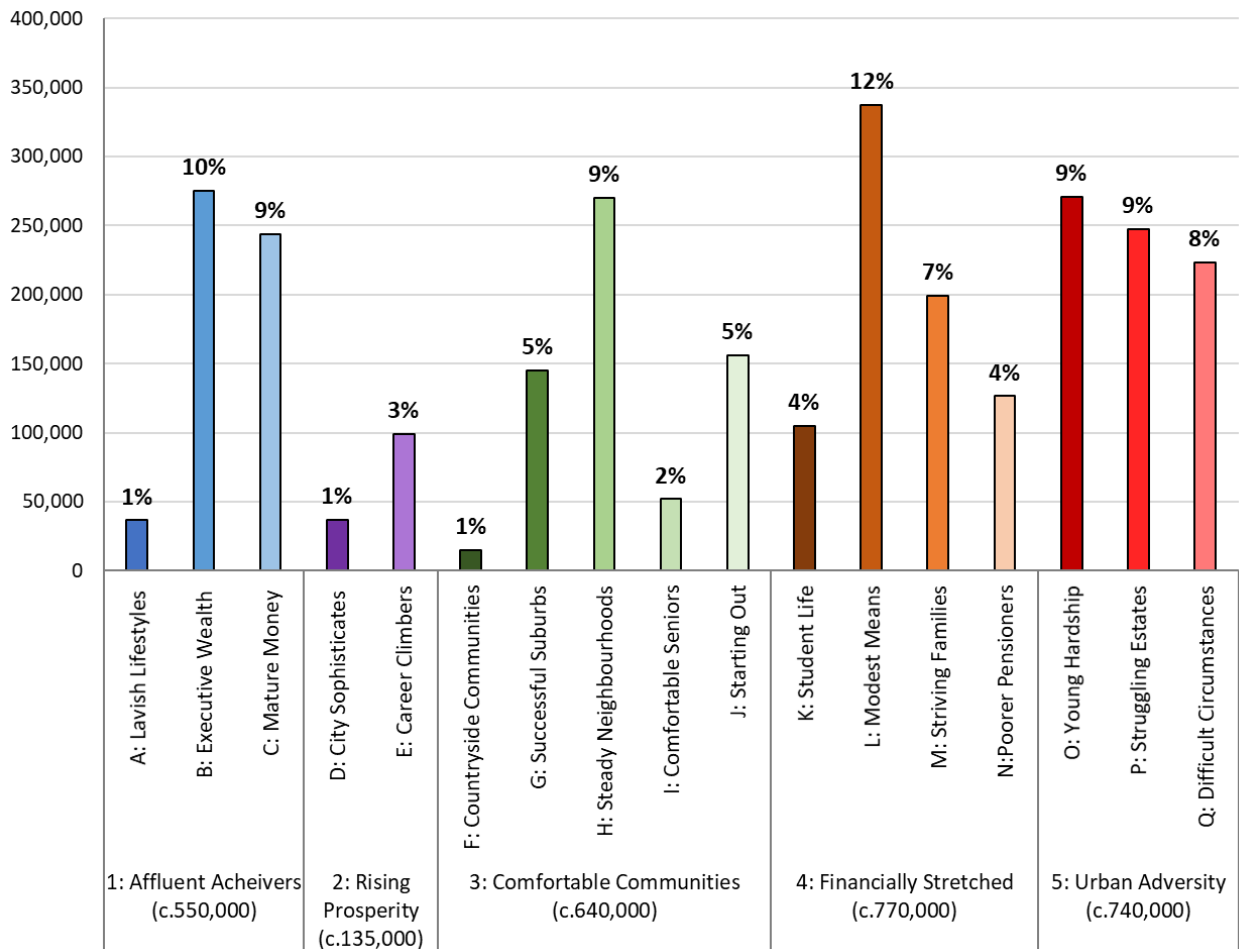
DRAFT FOR APPROVAL



4.4 Understanding the GM residential population

- 4.4.1 53% of the GM resident population is classified as either 'Financially Stretched' or 'Urban Adversity', the corresponding value for the UK is just 40% - this demonstrates the greater vulnerability of the GM population to inflation associated with non-discretionary spend (Source: Acorn 2021. CACI Limited. The applicable copyright notices can be found at <http://www.caci.co.uk/copyrightnotices.pdf>)
- 4.4.2 For 'Financially Stretched' and 'Urban Adversity' households - disposable income is typically well below average, and often below £10k - note: the values shown in the chart below are prior to the full impact of the recent 2022 surge in inflation being felt. This means that those with limited disposable income as of 2021, are now likely to be even more vulnerable to any costs that may be passed onto them as a result of CAP related interventions. It also serves as a reminder that GM businesses that rely on demand from GM residents, could be particularly vulnerable to weakening consumer demand.

DRAFT FOR APPROVAL



(Source: Acorn 2021, Paycheck Disposable Income. CACI Limited. The applicable copyright notices can be found at <http://www.caci.co.uk/copyrightnotices.pdf>)

5 Conclusion

- 5.1 UK inflation reached a 40-year high of 9% during April 2022, up from 2% in July 2021. It is widely accepted that inflation will increase to higher levels still during the remainder of 2022, with evidence already pointing to consumer demand being dampened.
- 5.2 GM is not insulated from the impacts of high inflation, in fact in some respects it is particularly vulnerable - noting its relatively high volume of small businesses, and a higher than average (vs.UK) proportion of residents who typically have below average disposable household incomes.
- 5.3 The Bank of England has already responded by increasing base rate to 1.25% (up from 0.1% in July 2021) - signalling that further rate rises are likely. This in turn will increase the cost of borrowing to both businesses and residents who require finance and are not protected by fixed rates.
- 5.4 Meanwhile the Bank of England's Monetary Policy Report (May 2022) points to an expectation for GDP to fall in Q4 2022, and be 'broadly flat' during 2023.
- 5.5 In summary, any intervention, such as a charging clean air zone, that could see businesses forced to pay additional charges and potentially pass costs on to the consumer, could have severe consequences for those groups who are already struggling to cope with the cost of living crisis.

This page is intentionally left blank

Manchester City Council Report for Information

Report to: Executive – 22 July 2022

Subject: Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032)

Report of: Interim Director of Housing and Residential Growth

Summary

The purpose of this report is to present new Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032) to the Executive. The new Strategy is the product of extensive consultation and stakeholder engagement and sets an ambitious target to increase housing supply and affordable housing growth in particular.

The Strategy brings together themes from the previous Housing Strategy (2015-21) and the Residential Growth Strategy (2015-25) into a single, holistic document.

The draft of Strategy is attached as Appendix 1. It is based around the following four priorities:

- (1) Increase affordable housing supply & build more new homes for all residents
- (2) Work to end homelessness and ensure housing is affordable & accessible to all
- (3) Address inequalities and create neighbourhoods where people want to live
- (4) Address the sustainability & zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing stock

Recommendations

The Executive is recommended to consider and adopt the Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032)

Wards Affected: All

<p>Environmental Impact Assessment - the impact of the issues addressed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city</p>
--

<p>Emissions from Manchester are split almost evenly between transport, industrial & commercial uses, and housing & buildings. Therefore, reducing the carbon footprint of Manchester's existing and new homes will help to make significant progress towards achieving the zero-carbon target for the city.</p>
--

<p>To this end the Housing Strategy sets out 4 ambitions and a further 10 (linked) commitments which set out Manchester's strategy for addressing the sustainability and zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing stock. Specifically, this relates to developing and implementing a long term retrofit plan which will map out each home's journey towards lower energy costs and net zero. It also relates to growing the city's</p>
--

zero carbon housing pipeline in a way that enables us to decouple future housing growth from any associated increase in CO2 emissions.

However, the strategy's zero carbon ambitions will only be achieved by a huge collective effort across the city, which this strategy commits us to catalysing and shaping. The Housing Strategy will also need to work in conjunction with the statutory planning framework (the Local Plan to be consulted on this year) and other related strategic documents (including the Climate Change Frameworks) for the ambitions to be deliverable.

Equality, Diversity and Inclusion - the impact of the issues addressed in this report in meeting our Public Sector Equality Duty and broader equality commitments

The Housing Strategy has been developed with an acknowledgement that housing inequality in Manchester is directly related to the disadvantages suffered by some individuals or groups because of their characteristics and that this remains a significant issue in the city. These disadvantages were comprehensively evidenced in the Marmot Report 'Build Back Fairer in Greater Manchester: Heath Equity and Dignified Lives'

On the basis of this evidence elements of the new Housing Strategy has been drafted to explicitly address housing inequalities suffered by individuals or groups because of their characteristics. Key to this will be using the city's evidence base to ensure that we are building the right homes in the right places to meet the needs of all groups and individuals. However, the strategy also recognises that addressing inequalities and creating neighbourhoods is not just about buildings homes. It is about place-making and working closely with local groups to recognise community heritage will be integral to this. It is also about improving the quality and the management of the homes we already have – particularly in the private rented sector where housing inequality is most acute.

The Housing Strategy will work in conjunction with other strategies to identify the needs of people from protected or disadvantaged groups where these are different from the needs of other people by increasing the supply of suitable accommodation. This includes working with commissioners and trusted providers (utilising the extensive data and evidence they hold) to understand demand. We have also sought to understand the needs of people from protected or disadvantaged groups, where these are different from the needs of other people, via the consultation throughout the development of the Housing Strategy and associated Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy.

An Equality Impact Assessment for the Housing Strategy has been undertaken and can be found in Appendix 3

Manchester Strategy outcomes	Summary of how this report aligns to the OMS/Contribution to the Strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	The Housing Strategy sets out our ambition to ensure that the right scale and mix of housing is delivered across Manchester to meet the needs of our growing population
A highly skilled city: world class and home grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	The Housing Strategy aims to ensure that the right scale and mix of housing is essential to the retention of a highly skilled population
A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities	The Housing Strategy sets out aims to support the delivery of homes across all types and tenures including those designed for our most at risk residents
A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit, work	The Housing Strategy will promote the continued delivery of sustainable neighbourhoods with a focus on active travel as well as the use of low carbon construction methods and retrofitting
A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth	The Housing Strategy will promote residential development on sites close to public transport connections and support infrastructure investment as part of the planning of new neighbourhoods

Full details are in the body of the report, along with any implications for:

- Equal Opportunities Policy
- Risk Management
- Legal Considerations

Financial Consequences – Revenue

There are no direct revenue consequences to the Council arising from this report

Financial Consequences – Capital

There are no direct capital consequences to the Council arising from this report

Contact Officers:

Name: Rebecca Heron
 Position: Strategic Director, Growth & Development
 Telephone: 0161 234 3030
 E-mail: Rebecca.heron@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Alan Caddick
 Position: Interim Director of Housing & Residential Growth
 Telephone: 0161 234 4811
 E-mail: alan.caddick@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Martin Oldfield
Position: Head of Housing Services
Telephone: 0161 234 3561
E-mail: martin.oldfield@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Nick Cole
Position: Strategic Lead – Housing Strategy & Policy
Telephone: 0161 219 6492
E-mail: Nicholas.cole@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection):

The following documents disclose important facts on which the report is based and have been relied upon in preparing the report. Copies of the background documents are available up to 4 years after the date of the meeting. If you would like a copy, please contact one of the contact officers above.

- Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032) - Economy Scrutiny Committee, 23rd June 2022
- Manchester Housing Strategy 2021 - Economy Scrutiny Committee, 24th June 2021
- The Housing Strategy (2016-2021)
- The Residential Growth Strategy (2015-2025)
- Private Rented Sector Strategy (2020-2025)

1.0 Introduction

- 1.1 This report provides an update on the new Manchester Housing Strategy (2022 – 2032). A draft of the strategy is included in Appendix 1. Following feedback and support from the Economy Scrutiny Committee on the 23rd of June 2022, the Executive is asked to consider and adopt the Strategy.

2.0 Background

- 2.1 On the 24th of June 2021 the Economy Scrutiny committee considered a report which set out the proposed approach and associated themes within the Manchester Housing Strategy (2022 – 2032). The report described the process for developing a new Housing Strategy for Manchester and put forward the proposal to integrate themes in the previous Housing Strategy (2016-21) and the existing Residential Growth Strategy (2015-2025) into a single holistic document.
- 2.2 The new Housing Strategy represents the integration of two policy documents which have provided the framework for all housing activity in Manchester up to this point:
- **The Housing Strategy (2016-21)** - set out the city's housing ambitions for the five-year period and formed the basis of the role of housing in the delivery of the Our Manchester Strategy.
 - **The Residential Growth Strategy (2015-2025)** - proposed a set of priorities to support the city's sustained economic growth and ensure that there are affordable priced homes for sale and rent which meet the needs of all residents in the city.
- 2.3 The new strategy has been developed against the backdrop of a growing residential and employment offer which has attracted people into the city from both the UK and overseas and resulted in a huge increase in the city's population with exceptionally high associated demand for housing. The Strategy looks to build on this success and at the same time, respond to significant challenges – not least the UK's departure from the European Union, the Covid-19 pandemic, and the increasing cost-of-living crisis.
- 2.4 The Housing Strategy has been drafted based on the findings of the extensive engagement activity (see below), which captured the views and opinions of key stakeholders in relation to both the housing challenges and opportunities facing the city. This process has been used to establish key priority themes and agree practical ambitions to respond to these challenges.
- 2.5 The development of the Strategy has been overseen by the Strategic Housing Board, a partnership with representatives from MCC and the Manchester Housing Providers (MHPP). This Board, and the partnership it represents, will be integral to the successful delivery and oversight of the Housing Strategy over the next ten years.

3.0 Main issues

- 3.1 The Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032) sets out a long-term vision which considers how best to deliver the city's housing priorities and objectives, building on progress already made, whilst tackling head on the scale and complexity of the challenges ahead. The priorities for the new Housing Strategy have been agreed as follows:
- (1) Increase affordable housing supply & build more new homes for all residents
 - (2) Work to end homelessness and ensure housing is affordable & accessible to all
 - (3) Address inequalities and create neighbourhoods & homes where people want to live
 - (4) Address the sustainability & zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing stock
- 3.2 Sitting underneath each of these priorities are a further sixteen ambitions and a suite of commitments and actions which will enable us to deliver on these priorities. This includes the headline target of delivering 10,000 affordable homes between 2022 and 2032, which represents just under a third of the 36,000 new homes the Strategy commits us to building over the next ten years.
- 3.3 Measures of success have also been identified which will be used to monitor progress. A delivery plan will follow the strategy which will bring all of the above together into a clear blueprint for how we will realise this strategy's vision and fulfil the commitments that have been set out.
- 3.4 It is important to note however that the Housing Strategy is only one element of the full suite of strategies which will deliver on our ambitions. Similarly, this strategy cannot be delivered by the Council working in isolation and success will require working collaboratively with public sector organisations at both the local and national level alongside private sector partners.
- 3.5 Following support from the Economy Scrutiny Committee and considering the above, the Executive are asked to adopt the attached Housing Strategy (Appendix 1).

4.0 Consultation

- 4.1 Since the proposed approach was taken to Scrutiny in June last year, an extensive programme of consultation has been carried out predominately with a range of audiences including members, internal and external partners (see Appendix 2 for the full record of the consultation). Key sessions included:
- 7 Member panel meetings – including 2 focusing specifically on affordability

- Five mini round table events of mixed groups including MCC colleagues, RPs and key partners from the private sector (including property developers and lettings agents)
- Direct engagement with specific representative groups – including the Manchester Disability led People's Access Group (MDPAG) and the Manchester Climate Change Agency
- A range of one-to-one meetings with colleagues across the organisation (e.g., Planning, Work and Skills and Homelessness) and with key partners (e.g., representatives from both Universities)

4.2 Alongside this regular progress updates have been provided to:

- MHPP workstream meetings & the MHPP Forums
- Strategic Housing Board
- Housing Board

4.3 Several common themes featured at all the various consultation events – most notably:

- The Housing Strategy should be ambitious about what we want to achieve including delivering 36,000 new homes by 2032 including 10,000 new affordable homes
- The Housing Strategy should be about building the homes which people want and need
- The Housing Strategy must very clearly state our values and what our intentions are to act upon those values
- The Housing Strategy needs to work with and be aligned to the Council's other Strategies including the Local Plan refresh, the Work & Skills Strategy and the Homelessness Strategy amongst others
- The value of working with our partners internally and externally
- The challenge of meeting a wide range of (in some instances) competing priorities

4.4 A detailed overview of the full consultation programme for the Strategy is available in Appendix 2.

5.0 Next Steps

- 5.1 Once the Housing Strategy has been finalised, a delivery plan will be developed. The actions detailed in the delivery plan will set out a clear blueprint for how we will realise this strategy's vision and fulfil the commitments that have been made. The delivery plan will be reviewed on an ongoing basis and refreshed as per the workstreams that sit under it.
- 5.2 We have also committed to publishing an annual monitoring report (on the housing strategy targets) so that we can be transparent in our reporting over time.

- 5.3 The Strategic Housing Board will oversee the strategy implementation and an annual performance update will be published to report progress on the various objectives set.

6.0 Recommendations

- 6.1 The Executive is asked to consider and adopt the Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032)

Appendix 1 – Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032)

Foreword

We want our residents to live in the homes they want and need. This Housing Strategy explains how we will go about making that happen whilst also considering the role of housing in the context of the Our Manchester Strategy, its contribution to the economic recovery of the city and our ambitions towards zero carbon.

The last two decades has seen Manchester undergo a period of huge growth that has led to significant increases in the city's job market and population. This in turn has resulted in unprecedented demand for housing and new homes and as demand for housing has increased tenure has continued to diversify. There are currently 68,000 social rented homes in the city – the fewest in the last 40 years. Owner occupation has declined to around levels seen in the early 1980s and the private rented sector is now the dominant tenure in Manchester at 39% of all of the city's housing stock.

In response we are building more new properties than at any time since 2008, creating new and diverse neighbourhoods, principally in and around the city centre and the wider conurbation core. However, even more are needed, which is why this strategy sets a target of delivering 36,000 new homes by 2032. Just under a third of these (10,000 over the next ten years) will be affordable - with as many social rented homes as possible - subject to Homes England support.

The increasing cost of living has meant affordability has become even more of a challenge. We have launched the Manchester Living Rent and are committed to understanding how much of the city is affordable to who, so that we can continue to target our resources at those residents who need our support the most.

Looking forward it is important to understand that demand has not only increased but it has diversified and polarised. The Covid-19 pandemic and cost of living crisis has exacerbated longstanding health and housing inequalities in Manchester and disproportionately affected our most at risk residents. At the same time, the UK's departure from the European Union has placed significant pressures on some of the most valuable business sectors (including construction) and at risk communities in the city.

Altogether, this has resulted in a range of housing challenges which must be addressed over the lifetime of this strategy, including:

- Increasing housing supply to meet the needs of our growing population
- Meeting the increasing demand for social & affordable housing
- Addressing rising levels of homelessness across the city
- Diversifying the housing stock & increasing council tax revenues to fund services
- Investing in the Council's housing stock and ensuring it is well managed
- Securing the resources to Level Up & deliver a place-based approach to regeneration
- Protecting & harnessing the economic benefits of our growing construction sector
- Focusing high density development in accessible locations, close to public transport
- Understanding and addressing housing & health inequalities in our communities
- Bringing forward accommodation to enable independence for people in need of care & support
- Addressing fire safety in residential blocks
- Converting former student accommodation to affordable & supported housing
- Delivering low/zero carbon new build housing & retrofitting existing homes

Internally, we need to maximise the impact of the resources available to us by targeting investment and developing new ways to deliver. Fortunately, there are new opportunities linked to the city's Arm's Length Management Organisation (ALMO) coming back in house and the launch of a new housing delivery vehicle – This City. New housing development will also raise much needed revenue through council tax growth.

This strategy sets out our long-term vision to deliver the homes that people want and need. It is built around the following four vision principles:

1. Increase affordable housing supply & build more new homes for all residents
2. Work to end homelessness and ensure housing is affordable & accessible for all
3. Address inequalities & create neighbourhoods where people want to live
4. Address the sustainability & zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing

Whilst this document sets the vision for housing in Manchester and articulates what we need to do to get there, it is only one element of the full suite of strategies which will deliver on our ambitions (see Appendix 1). Similarly, this strategy cannot be delivered by the Council working in isolation and success will require working collaboratively with public sector organisations at both the local and national level alongside private sector partners. An annual monitoring report will be published to chart progress against the various objectives contained within this strategy.

Increase affordable housing supply & build more new homes for all residents

It is estimated that Manchester is undersupplied by a minimum of 500 new homes per annum. This has led to prices and rents increasing across the city, exacerbating affordability issues for many of our residents. As Manchester's population continues to grow, the city must continue to work harder towards meeting exceptionally high demand for housing across all tenures.

Against this backdrop, [this strategy sets a target of delivering 10,000 affordable homes between 2022 and 2032](#) (an average of 1,000 homes p.a. over the lifetime of the strategy). This represents just under a third of the [36,000 new homes we are committed to building in the city over the next ten years](#). This target reflects the key issue facing the city - essentially the continuing need to increase the supply of homes to house our growing population across varying tenures in response to demand.

Affordable delivery is increasing but we are still only building around 500 homes a year. This target therefore represents an ambitious challenge to double the number of affordable homes built every year. Our Manchester-based Registered Providers (RPs) will be fundamental to success and the Council is accordingly committed to helping extend their contribution, so that they are able to both deliver more affordable housing and grow.

We are clear that achieving this target will require more Council land to be made available for affordable housing. It will also mean that we will need to work with private sector partners to deliver a diverse range of homes across all sectors of the market to cater for existing and future residents.

[Out of the 10,000 new affordable homes, 3,000 will be delivered in the city centre](#) and over a third of these will be shared ownership or rent to buy to help first time buyers get a foothold on the ladder. This will be crucial if we are to [increase the number of owner occupiers in Manchester by 15,000 by 2032](#).

We have worked successfully with a range of partners to deliver, and we will continue to do so. This City – the Council's housing delivery vehicle, represents a new and innovative approach. However, there is scope to do more, and we will continue to invite additional investment and bid for Homes England funding in locations where the strength of the market can help support regeneration and new housing growth.

[The strategy seeks to ensure that more than 80% of all homes built by 2032 are on brownfield sites close to public transport](#). This means identifying and assembling larger housing sites able to deliver a mix of housing types and tenures in well-connected locations close to jobs. It also means supporting density in areas where the levelling up of existing communities, including the re-purposing of brownfield land, and some regeneration of existing estates will be required.

Ambitions, actions and measures of success

1. Deliver 36,000 new homes by 2032 including 10,000 affordable homes (c.28% of total delivery)

- We will accelerate activity on large scale, mixed-tenure sites & identify land within our ownership for affordable housing
- We will review opportunities currently programmed for 10 years plus to ensure sites are available to meet our target
- We will work with a range of partners to deliver more affordable homes – including collectively lobbying for grant funding from Homes England.
- We will identify and encourage new entrants into the market to increase supply

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

2. Of the 10,000 new affordable homes by 2032 – 3,000 will be built in the city centre

- We will support Registered Provider partners to deliver new affordable homes at scale in the city centre
- We will encourage new entrants, with a track record of density, into the city centre market

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

3. Increase the number of owner occupiers in Manchester by 15,000 by 2032

- We will promote the delivery of affordable home ownership and first home products in areas where values are restricting options for first time buyers
- We will support the delivery of open market sale homes in areas where demand for home ownership is high

Measure of Success – MCC Council Tax Records

4. Ensure at least 80% of all homes built by 2032 are on brownfield sites close to public transport

- We will identify & assemble large sites capable of supporting density in the core of the conurbation
- We will work with internal & external partners to ensure new supply is supported by appropriate infrastructure, guided by the Local Plan and the Places for Everyone plan

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

Work to end homelessness and ensure housing is affordable & accessible to all

Manchester's recent growth and the accompanying residential investment has helped to regenerate neighbourhoods and diversify the housing offer across the city. We know however that this growth has not benefited everyone, and that some residents have felt excluded. The economic impact of the pandemic, and now the cost-of-living crisis, has continued to intensify this issue.

Taking this into account, [we propose to develop our approach to measuring affordability](#) starting with the introduction of the Manchester Living Rent¹. This will recognise the variations in residents' purchasing power including those earning below average incomes living in various neighbourhoods across the city. Part of our aspiration to deliver 10,000 new affordable homes by 2032, will involve increasing [the supply of appropriate housing for households in Priority Bands 1-3 to reduce the time spent on the Housing Register](#).

Managing the urgent housing needs of at risk groups is a major challenge for Manchester. The Homelessness Strategy will be refreshed next year; however, an essential objective will relate to the urgent need to [increase the supply of appropriate housing for homeless households \(approximately half of whom are single person households in band 1\) to reduce the time spent in Temporary Accommodation](#). As part of the Local Plan process, we will review our ability to provide appropriate housing – particularly one-bedroom properties - for our most at risk residents.

Increasing housing that meets the needs of people with disabilities and those with a wide range of care and support requirements represents a key priority over the next ten years. The upcoming Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy will set out our aspirations around improving care and support at home, accessible design and adaptations, improving our supported housing offer and move on options. Against this backdrop and working in partnership with our [commissioning services and trusted providers, we will increase the supply of high-quality supported housing to meet demand](#).

As part of this plan, we will establish a comprehensive evidence base to better understand supported housing demand in order to meet need. This evidence base, along with improved commissioning practices, will be at the heart of how we deliver accessible and supported housing to meet a wide range of needs.

¹ [Policies and strategies - The Manchester Living Rent | Manchester City Council](#)

Ambitions and measures of success

1. Develop our approach to affordability in light of the increasing cost of living

- We will ensure the new approach responds to the cost-of-living crisis & is fair for all Manchester residents on a range of incomes
- We will support the objectives of the Work & Skills Strategy, alongside the ambition to become a Living Wage City, to raise resident incomes and bridge the affordability gap

Measure of Success – Income Data / Housing Market Indicators

2. Increase the supply of appropriate housing for households in Priority Bands 1-3 to reduce the time spent on the Housing Register

- We will work with delivery partners to ensure the supply of new affordable homes is matched to need from households on the Housing Register
- We will ensure our Allocations Policy gives those most in need the best chance of accessing appropriate housing through Manchester Move
- We will use our evidence base to ensure our planning policies in the Local Plan are aligned to the needs of our residents

Measure of Success – Manchester Housing Register

3. Increase the supply of appropriate housing for homeless households to reduce the time spent in Temporary Accommodation

- We will work with colleagues in the Homelessness Service to provide a joint solution to the challenge of ending homelessness and support the objectives of the Homelessness Strategy
- We will work with delivery partners to ensure supply of new affordable homes is matched to need from households in Temporary Accommodation

Measure of Success – Homelessness Data

4. Work with commissioners & trusted providers to increase the supply of supported housing to meet demand

- We will work partners to develop and deliver the Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy
- We will work with partners to ensure that we have enough accessible homes in the city

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

Address inequalities & create neighbourhoods where people want to live

Housing inequality is directly related to racial, social, income and wealth inequality in Manchester. This is not only fundamentally unjust, but it is also holding the city and elements of its population back. Whilst housing conditions have improved over the past 20 years, we know that examples of poor quality persist – most markedly in the Private Rented Sector (PRS) which houses some of our most at risk residents.

Larger families represent the biggest cohort in Priority Bands on the Housing Register, however larger family housing continues to be severely undersupplied, and many families are directed into unstable tenancies within the private rented sector. To reduce the amount of time these residents spend waiting for a more suitable home, [we aim to deliver 3,000 affordable family houses by 2032 to address overcrowding in areas where average household sizes are highest](#).

In addition to new supply, we are committed to [encouraging and promoting right-sizing across all tenures to release family homes](#). Part of this approach involves providing the right houses at the right time (including an attractive Extra Care accommodation offer) for our older residents which can free up homes for families in overcrowded conditions or temporary accommodation.

Addressing inequalities and creating neighbourhoods is not just about buildings homes. It is about place-making and recognising community heritage is integral to this. For example, the redevelopment of the former Reno nightclub site in Moss Side will be guided by the needs of the current community whilst at the same time celebrating the history and culture of the many black communities who have made Moss Side their home. Similarly, our work with the LGBT Foundation to deliver the UK's first LGBT majority Extra Care scheme will help cement the city's reputation as an inclusive and welcoming city for all.

The Covid-19 pandemic has highlighted again the importance of good quality housing to the health and wellbeing of our residents. Similarly, our work on the Family Poverty Strategy and the Build Back Fairer Marmot Review, highlighted how poor quality and overcrowded housing is harmful to health and widens inequalities for residents. This knowledge and experience will remain critical as the cost-of-living crisis continues to bite. We know that many of the issues of concern are most acute in the private rented sector and, as such, we are committed to supporting the delivery of the PRS Strategy which is [improving the safety, quality and management of PRS homes](#).

Alongside this, we want to encourage responsible landlords - both through the management of new supply or the purchasing of existing properties. This includes [encouraging RPs to purchase and refurbish PRS housing for affordable housing, including former student lets potentially utilising money from the Housing Affordability Fund](#) and other funding opportunities.

The repercussions of the tragic fire at Grenfell Tower in June 2017 are still widely felt with many tenants still living in potentially unsafe blocks. Manchester is an early adopter of the Hackitt Review recommendations, and we will continue to support residents caught up in the crisis. Whilst the recent announcement which forces the industry to provide additional contributions towards the cladding crisis is welcome, the total financial support remains some way off what is needed. With this in mind, we will continue to put pressure on government and developers to resolve all the fire safety issues identified in Manchester buildings.

Ambitions and measures of success

1. Deliver 3,000 affordable family houses by 2032 to address overcrowding in areas where average household sizes are highest

- We will identify land for & prioritise the delivery of larger family housing where pressures are most acute
- We will work with RPs and funders to bring forward viable funding packages to enable the delivery of new affordable larger homes.

Measure of Success – MCC Council Tax Records / MCC Residential Development Tracker

2. Improve the safety, quality & management of private rented sector homes

- We will continue a programme of Selective Licensing to improve the safety, quality and management of the PRS
- We will focus on the housing issues highlighted in our Family Poverty Strategy and the Build Back Fairer Marmot Review (including poor quality and overcrowded homes)
- We will work with campaign groups to put pressure on Government & developers to resolve all fire safety issues in Manchester

Measure of Success – Progress against the PRS Strategy Delivery Plan / Licenses & Compliance Inspections / Remediation of buildings with safety issues

3. Utilising the Housing Affordability Fund to support placemaking & encouraging RPs to purchase and refurbish low quality PRS for affordable housing (incl. former student lets)

- We will generate more funds for affordable housing through the planning system to be distributed through the Housing Affordability Fund
- We will continue to utilise Right to Buy receipts where possible to increase affordable housing delivery

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

4. Encourage & promote right-sizing across all tenures to release family housing

- We will increase the supply of homes attractive to older residents currently under occupying family housing to ensure that there is the right home at the right time when they are ready to move
- We will ensure housing allocations via Manchester Move is making the best use of existing stock

Measure of Success – Manchester Move & MCC Council Tax Records

Address the sustainability & zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing

In 2019 Manchester set a target to become a zero-carbon city by 2038, with a challenging reduction of at least 50% of our direct CO₂ emissions by 2025. Current research being undertaken by the Manchester Climate Change Agency suggests that concerted and new scaled-up action is required for the city to keep on track with its carbon budget targets. Climate change is also likely to commensurately impact those in the most vulnerable parts of the city and therefore a joined-up approach will be required to address its impact on existing inequalities.

To meet this challenge, we must therefore make significant progress towards achieving a net zero carbon housing offer in Manchester during the lifetime of this strategy. This approach must also look to address the inequalities highlighted by the Marmot Review and the need for healthier, warmer and more efficient homes across the city. Whilst we are clear where we need to get to, we must also recognise that there are significant and difficult barriers to getting there.

Given that in 2032 over 85% of the homes we will be living in have already been built, a large-scale retrofitting programme is essential. This will be no small undertaking with the cost of retrofitting estimated at c.£18-25k per property in GM². However, we are well placed to drive forward retrofit locally - both through acting on our own stock and by working closely with and influencing partners. To this end, £260m is required³ to retrofit 10,500 housing association properties over the next 4 years – the first 300 of which have been identified across 5 blocks in North Manchester. *We are committed to accelerating this process and completing the zero-carbon retrofit of at least 1/3rd of the 68,000 homes managed by MHPP partners by 2032, alongside reducing energy use across the estate so that all homes achieve an Energy Performance Certificate (EPC) rating of B or above.*

For the numerous private homeowners and landlords who cannot afford to retrofit their properties, we are working with the Core Cities network to convince government to look at new financing models that help unlock some of these barriers across all tenures in the city.

To bring this activity together we will bring forward a Retrofit Plan for the whole of Manchester. This will be explained within the Housing Strategy Delivery Plan, following consultation with key partners.

Nevertheless, as this strategy makes very clear, the principal housing challenge for the city is undersupply. It is therefore critical that we also find a way to grow the housing offer in a way that separates housing growth from an associated increase in CO₂ emissions. As a starting point, we aim to *increase the proportion of low and zero carbon homes in the affordable pipeline from 20% to 50% by 2025.*

Further to this, a task group of private, public and third sector representatives⁴ have recommended that all new development should be net zero carbon from 2023 and have proposed the adoption of a “Manchester Standard” for consideration in planning policy in the future. This approach will be tested through the overarching Local Plan, consultation and engagement process. *Where regeneration opportunities arise to invest in existing estates, we will lead with zero carbon principles in so far as is possible.* The new homes replacing them will be low or zero carbon, at high density and located close to public transport and jobs.

If we act on the ambitions set out in this chapter, at pace, then we will be able to combat and avoid the worst effects of climate change. More than that however, we will also live in a city full of warm, healthy and cheap to run homes – responding to fuel poverty and the current economic

² <https://democracy.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/documents/s13523/07%20Pathways%20to%20Healthy%20Net%20Zero%20Housing%20GM%20Report.pdf>

³ Pending the outcome of the spending review and the identification of future funding streams

⁴ <https://www.manchesterclimate.com/sites/default/files/Roadmap%20to%20Net%20Zero%20Carbon%20-%20Report.pdf>

crisis. Zero carbon construction and retrofitting of homes will also grow Manchester's green economy and create job opportunities as well as decarbonising the city's housing stock.

Ambitions and measures of success

1. Complete the zero-carbon retrofitting of a minimum of 1/3rd of the 68,000 homes managed by MHPP partners by 2032 & reduce energy use across the estate so that all homes achieve an EPC rating of B or above.

- We will focus on improving the energy efficiency of homes so that tenants have warmer, healthier and cheaper to run homes
- We will utilize new technology as it emerges over the lifetime of the strategy to facilitate retrofitting more easily & cheaply
- We will support initiatives set out in the Work & Skills Strategy to ensure residents develop the skills required help deliver our retrofitting programme.

Measure of Success – MHPP / MCC Facilities Records & EPC Data

2. Develop a Retrofit Plan for Manchester across all tenures

- We will explore the retrofit policy options set out in the GMCA's Pathways to Healthy Net Housing report
- We will link the climate change agenda in with the inequality and health agendas (as directed through the Marmot Plan deep dives) focusing on responding to poor quality housing, fuel poverty and the cost-of-living crisis
- We will lobby for additional funding to accelerate domestic retrofitting, including for private homeowners and landlords, via the UK Climate Change Investment Commission (UKCCIC) and other networks

Measure of success: Retrofitting measures integrated into the Housing Strategy Delivery Plan following consultation with partners

3. Increase the proportion of low and zero carbon homes in the affordable pipeline from 20% to 50% by 2025

- We will adopt an agreed standard to monitor the delivery of low carbon homes as part of Manchester's residential pipeline
- We will explore the opportunities linked to (low carbon) Modern Methods of Construction and unlocking access to increased levels of Homes England funding

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

4. Ensure estate regeneration & placemaking (including demolitions) is directed by zero carbon principles

- We will prioritise retrofitting existing properties where possible
- We will develop an assessment criteria which will inform estate regeneration from a zero-carbon perspective

Measure of Success – Decarbonisation of estates by number / proportion of homes

Summary & Opportunities

There is no doubt that both the demand for homes and how they are delivered is changing across the city. In response, this Housing Strategy represents an evolution in the way we grow the city's housing stock and manage the homes we already have. This approach will go hand in hand with a renewed focus on how we house our at risk residents and support their needs.

The most significant change this strategy represents is the scale of our ambitions around the delivery of affordable homes, and the ways that we build them. This will mean making more innovative use of our land, working with new partners, expanding the ways we can deliver (including via the Council's own vehicle – This City) and identifying new sources of funding.

Whilst delivering 1,000 new affordable homes a year may be a challenge in the early part of the strategy period, through the approach outlined in this strategy we are hoping to increase supply beyond this level in the latter years to meet our target of delivering 10,000 new affordable homes overall by 2032.

Alongside this significant undertaking, this strategy recognises that we are facing new, additional challenges, not least the need to decarbonise housing; address the devastating impact of the pandemic and the increasing cost of living in some of our most disadvantaged neighbourhoods. Nevertheless, there are some sizable opportunities too:

- Large-scale, high-density, multi-tenure sites able to meet the affordable housing target
- Northwards, This City & Affordable Housing Supply
- Affordable home ownership in the city centre through increased shared ownership and rent to buy
- Diversifying the older people's housing offer – including in the city centre
- Understanding and responding to support and care needs at home and in specialist supported housing
- Signature residential developments that reflect the scale of the city's growth ambitions
- Increasing council tax revenues to fund services
- Supporting residents in more appropriate accommodation & reducing service demand
- Placemaking in Victoria North, the Eastern Gateway & beyond
- Creating more construction jobs & boosting resident skills
- Delivering zero carbon new build housing & retrofitting existing homes
- Top tier of international cities for higher education with a housing offer to match

Building upon these opportunities will be the starting point for the delivery plans which will follow this strategy. The delivery plan actions will set out a clear blueprint for how we will realise this strategy's vision and fulfil the commitments that have been set out. It will also recognise that success can only be achieved through working in partnership with registered providers, developers, contractors, the voluntary sector, community groups and other partners and colleagues throughout the city. Progress will be reported on a regular basis and the plan will be reviewed and updated to ensure that it remains relevant.

Appendix 1 - Delivering the Housing Strategy

There are a range of individual plans and strategies that will support, and be supported by, this Housing Strategy:

Our Manchester Strategy – Forward to 2025

Sets out the city's priorities to ensure Manchester can achieve its aim of being in the top-flight of world class cities by 2025 with equality, inclusion and sustainability at its heart

Local Plan

The spatial planning framework for the city, setting out the long-term strategic policies for Manchester's future development. The new Local Plan is due to be published in 2023

Neighbourhood Plans

Plans, created by local communities, which set out policies for the future development of their areas and will be part of the Local Development Framework for their area

Places for Everyone

A long-term plan of nine Greater Manchester districts (Bolton, Bury, Manchester, Oldham, Rochdale, Salford, Tameside, Trafford and Wigan) for jobs, new homes, and sustainable growth. It has been published by the GMCA on behalf of the nine districts.

Manchester Climate Change Framework

The city's high-level strategy for tackling climate change and reducing the city's carbon footprint. It sets out our objectives for Manchester to stay within our carbon budgets.

Powering Recovery: Manchester Economic Recovery & Investment Plan

Sets out Manchester's plans to sustain the economy and its people, and what the city proposes to do in the future in response to the Covid-19 pandemic

Manchester Living Rent

The Manchester Living Rent is an amount of rent that is set at or below the Local Housing Allowance level which in many instances will be cheaper for residents than the standard Government definition of Affordable Housing

Work & Skills Strategy

Aims to develop a work & skills system that meets the needs of all businesses and enables residents from all backgrounds to obtain the skills and attributes employers require

Family Poverty Strategy

Aims for everyone in the city to have the same opportunities and life chances, no matter where they were born or live

Build Back Fairer in Greater Manchester

A collaboration between Greater Manchester and Michael Marmot's Institute of Health Equity that includes bold and ambitious recommendations on how to reduce health inequities and build back fairer from the COVID-19 pandemic for future generations

Homelessness Strategy

Sets out the vision, aims and aspirations shared by the Housing Strategy and partner organisations who work to reduce homelessness in the city

MCC Social Housing Offer

Outlining the principles of Northwards' offer in the context of the social housing white paper, Building Safety Act following re-integration with MCC and alignment with the Our Manchester and Future Shape ambitions

MCC Allocations Policy

The legal document that describes how the Council allocates social homes to people who need them. **Manchester Move** is where residents can find advice on the best housing solutions for their circumstances and where social homes are advertised.

Private Rented Sector Strategy

The city's strategy to improve the condition and management standard of homes in the private rented sector and increase good quality options for lower income residents in the sector

Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy

Commissioners from Adult's Services, Children's Services and Homelessness with the Housing and Residential Growth service and delivery partners are developing this strategy to address 4 key objectives:

- To work collaboratively to meet the need for homes that enable independence
- To better enable care and support at home,
- To better understand & meet the need for good quality, appropriate supported accommodation
- To improve move on from temporary supported housing into good quality independent accommodation

Better Outcomes, Better Lives

Manchester Local Care Organisation's transformation programme for Adult Social Care, which builds on work to integrate health and social care in Manchester, the ASC improvement programme and other transformation initiatives focused on supporting the people of Manchester to achieve better life outcomes

Appendix 2 – Consultation Timetable

Forum	Date	Stage
Manchester Housing Providers' Partnership (MHPP) Strategy Evidence Base	20 th April '21	MCC Strategic Lead took MHPP through the evidence base for the new strategy
Economy Scrutiny	24 th June '21	MCC Strategic Lead took Economy Scrutiny through the evidence base for the new Housing Strategy and requested the committee to discuss and provide comments on the evidence base and the proposed approach to the new strategy
MHPP Forum	1 st July '21	MCC Strategic Lead outlines key objectives.
Policy Panel	12 th July '21	Member's consultation
MHPP Growth & Affordable Homes workstream	14 th July '21	Strategy consultation with MHPP
Policy Panel	16 th July '21	Member's consultation
July Strategic Housing Board (SHB)	20 th July '21	Objectives and key principles and proposals for consultation presented to senior internal & external partners.
MHPP Connecting People workstream	22 nd July '21	Strategy consultation with MHPP
MHPP Zero-carbon group	27 th July '21	Strategy consultation with zero carbon MHPP group
Housing Access Board	17 th August '21	Strategy proposals as key agenda item for consultation
Round Table 1	14 th September '21	Savills, Reside, Your Housing group and Great Places HA.
Round Table 2	20 th September '21	Euan Kellie, JLL, Lawrence Copeland, Rob Elsom.
MHPP Forum	22 nd September '21	MCC Strategic Lead provided an update for discussion and outline next steps/ any further consultation proposals.
Round Table 3	27 th September '21	MCC representatives from Commissioning, Homelessness, Adults and Children Services.
September SHB	28 th September '21	MCC Strategic Lead presented Strategy Update and Emerging Issues. Presentation circulated to membership.
MHPP Growth & Affordable Homes Workstream	29 th September '21	Present Strategy Update and Emerging Issues.
MHPP Zero Carbon Group	7 th October '21	Present changes made since last consultation.
Round Table 4	8 th October '21	MCC representatives from Homelessness Services.

Round Table 5	4 th November '21	Discussion about the new proposed definition of affordability with Registered Provider (RP) CEO's.
Policy Panel: Affordability session	15 th November '21	Presentation and discussion. Response provided to Exec Member for Housing and Employment.
Policy Panel: Affordability session	18 th November '21	Presentation and discussion. Response provided to Exec Member for Housing and Employment.
November SHB	23 rd November '21	MCC Strategic Lead provided updates and presentation on the new local definition of affordability.
Housing Board Consultation	31 st January '22	Housing Strategy Consultation Event for the Housing Board (half day)
March SHB	29 th March '22	Updated on strategy and political timetable.
Policy Panel: Final Draft	16 th May '22	Presentation and discussion with members on the final Housing Strategy draft
Policy Panel: Final Draft	23 rd May '22	Presentation and discussion with members on the final Housing Strategy draft
Briefing for the Leader	6 th June '22	Housing Strategy briefing and discussion with the Leader, Cllr White, Alan and Nick.
Policy Panel: Final Draft	13 th June '22	Presentation and discussion with members on the final Housing Strategy draft
Economy Scrutiny Committee	23 rd June '22	The Committee considered the draft Housing Strategy (2022-2032) and agreed that the final version be taken for consideration by the Executive in July 2022.

Consultation: Zero Carbon

Housing Partners	27 th July '21	MHPP – Zero carbon Group.
Housing Partners	7 th October '21	MHPP – Zero carbon Group.
Climate Change Consultation	13 th February '22	Manchester Climate Change Agency

Consultation: Affordability

Round Table with RP CEO's	4 th November '21	Presentation and discussion
Members Panel meeting	15 th November '21	Chair - Cllr White 13 Members present
Members Panel meeting	18 th November '21	Chair –Cllr White 10 Members present
Strategic Housing Board	23 rd November '21	Presentation and discussion.

Consultation: Disability

Round Table with Manchester Disabled People's Access Group	17 th January '22	Manchester Disabled People's Access Group
--	------------------------------	---

Summary of organisations at Round Table events.

Round Table 1

Jamie Adams	Savills	Property development & Letting agency
Nick Cumberland	Great Places HA	Social Housing Landlord
Rachel Hollins	Your Housing Group	Social Housing Landlord
Anthony Stankard	Reside	Property development & Letting's agency

Round Table 2

Lawrence Copeland	Lawrence Copeland	Property development & Letting's agency
Rob Elsom	Bruntwood	Property development & Letting's agency
Louise Emmott	JLL	Property development & Letting agency
Euan Kellie	Euan Kellie	Property development & Letting's agency
Anne Taylor	Strategic Lead, Neighbourhoods North	MCC

Round Table 3

Sarah Austin	Strategic Lead for Commissioning Directorate for Children and Education
Sean Bleasdale	Commissioning Manager, Homelessness
Mike Petrou	Commissioning Manager, Adults
Nicola Rea	Strategic Lead, Homelessness
Lorna Young	Equalities Specialist, PRI

Round Table 4

Kate Macdonald	Strategic Lead, City Centre Growth & Regeneration
Nicola Rea	Strategic Lead, Homelessness
Jane Davies	Service Manager, Homelessness
Anna Thorogood	Commissioning Manager, Homelessness
Gareth Clarke, Gaynor Howe, Kayte Smyth	Managers within the homelessness services.

Viv Feeney, David Davies, Suzanne Vyse, Laura Stevenson, Joan Todd	
--	--

Round Table 5

David Ashmore	Northwards Housing
Cym D'Souza	Arawak Walton
Matthew Harrison	Great Places
Nick Horne	Wythenshawe Community Housing Group
Nicole Kershaw	One Manchester
Karen Mitchell	Southway Housing
Charlotte Norman	Mosscafe St Vincents

Appendix 3 – Housing Strategy Equality Impact Assessment

Equality Impact Assessment Tool - Introduction

This Equality Impact Assessment tool aims to help you to consider and record how equality issues relate to your policies, projects, services, strategies or functions. It is easy to complete and will help you to understand which communities of identity will be affected by your proposals and how. The tool will help you to:

1. Assess whether a policy, project, service redesign or strategy is relevant to our equality duties and / or different groups in Manchester
2. Identify what the potential impacts of the activity will be for different communities
3. Highlight what actions could be taken to mitigate any negative impacts that you identify

The Equality, Diversity and Inclusion Team – (we give equality advice, guidance and support to all Council Teams)

<u>Role</u>	<u>Contact Details</u>
Equality, Diversity and Inclusion Team Manger	Lorna Young – 07904 679 204 lorna.young@manchester.gov.uk
Equality Specialist	Adiba Sultan - adiba.sultan@manchester.gov.uk
Equality Specialist	Sofia Higgins – 07989 162 966 Sofia.higgins@manchester.gov.uk
Equality Specialist	Sarah Herdan - sarah.herdan@manchester.gov.uk
Armed Forces Specialist	Alfie Hewitt - alfie.hewitt@manchester.gov.uk

Equality Impact Assessment

1. Tell us about your service

My Directorate	Growth & Development
My Service	Housing & Residential Growth
My team / section	Strategic Housing
The name of the function being analysed	Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032)
Who is completing the assessment?	Henry Tomsett / Haydn Brown
Who is the lead manager for the assessment?	Nick Cole

2. Tell us about the activity that you're analysing

Briefly describe the main aims and objectives of your policy, project, service redesign or strategy, including outlining at a high level if it has implications for other areas of the Council's work and priorities.

The Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032) explains the role of housing in the context of the Our Manchester Strategy, it's contribution to the economic recovery of the city and our ambitions towards zero carbon. This strategy sets out our long-term vision to deliver the homes that people want and need. It is built around the following four vision principles:

1. Increase affordable housing supply & build more new homes for all residents
2. Work to end homelessness and ensure housing is affordable & accessible to all
3. Address inequalities & create neighbourhoods where people want to live
4. Address the sustainability & zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing

It is relevant to note that the second principle directly responds to the major challenge of meeting the urgent housing needs of at risk groups in Manchester. The third principle in particular responds to the fact that housing inequality is directly related to the disadvantages suffered by individuals or groups in Manchester because of their characteristics.

Whilst this document sets the vision for housing in Manchester and articulates what we need to do to get there, it is only one element of the full suite of strategies (internal and external) which will deliver on our ambitions. In particular it is important to recognise the role of the forthcoming Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy which will set out our aspirations around improving care and support at home. In doing so it will increase the supply of housing that meets the needs of people with disabilities and those with a wide range of care and support requirements.

Similarly, the document is clear that this strategy cannot be delivered by the Council working in isolation and success will require working collaboratively with public sector organisations at both the local and national level alongside private sector partners.

A delivery plan will follow this strategy. The delivery plan actions will set out a clear blueprint for how we will realise this strategy's vision and fulfil the commitments that have been set out.

TIP: briefly summarise the key points and keep your answer under 500 words.

TIP: try not to duplicate information that's available elsewhere; you can easily use this space to signpost to other sources of background information instead of rewriting them here.

3. Analysing the impact on equality

Will the policy, strategy, project, service redesign being assessed here... (Tick all that apply):

Remove or minimise disadvantages suffered by individuals or groups because of their characteristics	✓
Meet the needs of people from protected or disadvantaged groups where these are different from the needs of other people	✓
Promote diversity and encourage people from protected or disadvantaged groups to participate in activities where they are underrepresented	

Describe how you've reached your conclusion and what evidence it's based on (500 words max).

The Housing Strategy has been developed with an acknowledgement that housing inequality in Manchester is directly related to the disadvantages suffered by some individuals or groups because of their characteristics and that this remains a significant issue in the city. These issues were brought to the fore during the pandemic when analysis at the time showed that Manchester residents in older, poorer quality private rented stock were amongst those at the highest risk of infection. Manchester's lowest income households concentrated in the North and East of the city, particularly those dependent on benefits and / or insecure work are disproportionately represented in this sector. This includes a significant number of our black and ethnic minority residents, some of whom have been amongst the hardest hit.

These disadvantages were comprehensively evidenced in the Marmot Report 'Build Back Fairer in Greater Manchester: Health Equity and Dignified Lives' which summarised that:

- Poor quality and overcrowded housing is harmful to health and widens health inequalities.
- Housing conditions in the PRS had deteriorated before the pandemic.
- Housing costs were increasing before the pandemic.
- Young people and those from ethnic minorities are more likely to rent from the private sector.
- Lockdowns resulted in an increased exposure to unhealthy and overcrowded housing conditions which have added to the stress of living in poor quality housing.
- In the aftermath of the pandemic, it is likely that the quality of some poorly managed private rented sector houses will continue to deteriorate.
- Homelessness is a larger problem than rough sleeping and includes those living in temporary accommodation. There currently is not enough affordable accommodation available for people on the Housing Register.
- Poor quality and unaffordable housing remains a critical health equity issue in Manchester.

On the basis of this evidence elements of the new Housing Strategy has been drafted to explicitly address housing inequalities suffered by individuals or groups because of their characteristics. Key to this will be leveraging the city's evidence base (including data from Manchester Move, Council Tax data, housing market analytics and data and intel on our residents and communities) to ensure that we are building the right homes in the right places to meet the needs of all groups and individuals. However, the strategy also recognises that addressing inequalities and creating neighbourhoods is not just about buildings homes. It is about place-making and working closely with local groups to recognise community heritage will be integral to this. It is also about improving the

quality and the management of the homes we already have – particularly in the private rented sector where housing inequality is most acute.

In addition to this the strategy, along with the accompanying Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy (EIAS), aims to directly meet the needs of people from protected or disadvantaged groups where these are different from the needs of other people by increasing the supply of suitable accommodation. Fundamental to achieving this is understanding the nature and scale of the different needs of our residents so that we can respond to that demand. This process has been begun via both strategies by working with commissioners and trusted providers (utilising the extensive data and evidence they hold) to understand demand. We have also sought to understand the needs of people from protected or disadvantaged groups, where these are different from the needs of other people, via the extensive consultation exercise which has accompanied the development of both documents.

Considering which group/s you have identified the policy, project, strategy or service redesign as being relevant to, complete the table below. Be brief with your answers and only complete them for the group/s relevant to your activity.

<u>1. What is the impact of your proposal on this group?</u>	<u>2. What evidence have you used to reach this assessment?</u>	<u>3. What actions could be taken to address the impacts?</u>

<p><u>Age (older people)</u></p>	<p>The Housing Strategy (and its partner Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy) aim to enable older people to live as independently as possible within their community via care and support at home services, supported, supported housing and appropriate move on accommodation.</p>	<p>Manchester has been working on a long-term of programme of change in Adult Social care focused on maximising independence – Better Outcomes, Better Lives.</p> <p>This has informed the Housing Strategy (and the associated Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy) alongside information from commissioners and trusted partners.</p>	<p>A key action identified in the strategy will be ensuring that we continue to develop our extra care and specialist older peoples housing offer.</p> <p>More broadly than that the strategy commits us to diversifying the older people's housing offer – including in the city centre – so that there is the right home at the right time when people are ready to move.</p>
---	--	--	---

<p><u>Age (children and young people)</u></p>	<p>There are increased risks to the physical and mental health of children which arise from poor housing conditions. This negatively impacts upon the development and educational achievement of our young people.</p> <p>The Housing Strategy seeks to address this issue where it arises in the city.</p>	<p>The negative impacts of poor housing on children and young people are very clearly highlighted and evidenced in a recent study by the Building Research Establishment – “The Cost of Poor Housing in England” (2021).</p> <p>We also know through work on the Family Poverty Strategy and the more recent Build Back Fairer Marmot Review, that poor quality and overcrowded housing is harmful to health and widens inequalities for residents.</p> <p>Larger families represent the biggest cohort in Priority Bands on the Housing Register with many spending significant periods of time waiting for a suitable property.</p> <p>Young people are more likely to rent from the private sector where housing conditions are more likely to be low quality</p> <p>Higher levels of children in care means we need more supported</p>	<p>The Private Rented Sector Strategy seeks to address poor quality management and housing condition in rented properties, predominately in the older terraced stock in the north, east and central areas of the city. It is these locations where the relationship between poor housing and health outcomes is most acute.</p> <p>Selective Licensing and HMO Licensing Schemes are assisting landlords to meet their individual responsibilities to tenants and improve housing conditions</p> <p>One of the key ambitions of the Housing Strategy is to increase the delivery of affordable family houses by over 3,000 by 2032 to meet demand from the housing register and address overcrowding in areas where average household sizes are the highest</p> <p>RP partners have developed both permanent and short term supported housing models for</p>
--	---	--	--

		and move on housing for care leavers.	care leavers – however current commissioning strategies can make bringing forward such housing challenging. Something we will address over the lifetime of the strategy
--	--	---------------------------------------	---

<p><u>Disability</u></p>	<p>Suitable homes for some of our most at risk residents, including those with disabilities, have been in very short supply.</p> <p>This strategy seeks to increase the supply of suitable accommodation to meet demand from disabled residents.</p>	<p>Manchester is working on a long-term of programme of change in Adult Social care focused on maximising independence – Better Outcomes, Better Lives. This has informed the Housing Strategy.</p> <p>We also know from growing numbers of inquiries from residents and Councillors that there are many disabled people living in the private rented sector in poor quality accommodation, unable to either get the adaptations they need to continue living in that property (because landlords refuse them) or move to an alternative suitable accommodation (because there isn't one available)</p>	<p>We will find more housing solutions for disabled households and families who are currently living in inappropriate homes.</p> <p>The Housing Strategy and EIAS commits us to strengthening the development of supported housing options for younger adults and wider move-on and independent living options for those who need our support.</p> <p>We are also committing to remodelling our homecare and adaptations services to overcome some of the barriers disabled people are facing when it comes to continuing to live in their existing homes. There will be a focus on doing things earlier and better.</p>
---------------------------------	--	---	--

<p><u>Race</u></p>	<p>Housing inequality in Manchester is directly related to the disadvantages suffered by some individuals or groups because of their characteristics (including race).</p> <p>This inequality remains a significant issue in the city and something the Housing Strategy seeks to address directly.</p>	<p>Marmot's Build Back Fairer Report for GM highlights how levels of social, environmental and economic inequalities in society are damaging health and wellbeing, how those disadvantages have been exposed and magnified by the COVID-19 pandemic and how closely they are connected to housing inequalities.</p> <p>Ethnic minority residents are more likely to rent from the private sector where housing conditions are more likely to be low quality</p> <p>Black and Asian residents on the Housing Register, generally require larger family housing, which remains severely undersupplied. This is leading to overcrowding and other housing issues for those residents.</p>	<p>Addressing overcrowding and bringing forward housing which better meets the needs of Manchester's diverse communities will be required to meet the identified challenges and address ingrained inequalities, poverty and polarisation in the city. This is one of the priorities of the new Housing Strategy.</p> <p>This includes the ambition to deliver 3,000 affordable family houses by 2032 to address overcrowding in areas where average household sizes are highest.</p> <p>Recognising community heritage and local identity in proposals to improve existing stock and build new homes will be integral to the place-based approach articulated in the forthcoming Housing Strategy. This will include proposals to bring forward a housing scheme celebrating the history and culture of the many communities who have made Moss Side their home on the site of the former</p>
---------------------------	---	--	---

			<p>Reno nightclub, a place where Black people were welcomed at a time when many night clubs unofficially barred Black people</p> <p>Similarly, we also need to improve the safety, quality & management of private rented sector homes – a key ambition of both the Housing Strategy and the Private Rented Sector strategy.</p>
Sex			

<u>Sexual Orientation</u>	The Housing Strategy commits to ensuring that appropriate & accessible housing is available to cement the city's reputation as an inclusive and welcoming city for all including members of the LGBTQ+ community	Following consultation it was identified that older members of the LGBTQ+ community were facing prejudices in existing Extra Care schemes across Manchester	MCC have also worked with the LGBT Foundation and RP partners to develop a Pride in Ageing standard within older people's housing schemes and the building of UK's first an LGBT Majority Extra Care scheme with Anchor Hanover Group, to create safe celebratory spaces for LGBT residents to live. We are in the process of developing a strategic statement of intent in partnership with the LGBT Foundation and MHPP regarding LGBT housing.
<u>Marriage / civil partnership</u>			
<u>Pregnancy / maternity</u>			
Gender Reassignment	The Housing Strategy commits to ensuring that	Following consultation, it was identified that older members of	MCC have also worked with the LGBT Foundation and RP

	<p>appropriate & accessible housing is available to cement the city's reputation as an inclusive and welcoming city for all including members of the LGBTQ+ community</p>	<p>the LGBTQ+ community were facing prejudices in existing Extra Care schemes across Manchester</p>	<p>partners to develop a Pride in Ageing standard within older people's housing schemes and the building of UK's first an LGBT Majority Extra Care scheme with Anchor Hanover Group, to create safe celebratory spaces for LGBT residents to live.</p> <p>We are in the process of developing a strategic statement of intent in partnership with the LGBT Foundation and MHPP regarding LGBT housing.</p>
--	---	---	--

<u>Faith / religion / belief</u>			
Additional / Optional Characteristics			

<p><u>Families living in Poverty</u></p>	<p>The Housing Strategy sets out our priorities aimed at improving the housing options for lower income families and families in Temporary Accommodation</p>	<p>There are too many people living in Temporary Accommodation often for far too long (c.2,800 households incl. 1,900 families).</p> <p>The city is becoming increasingly reliant on private sector dispersed accommodation (which currently houses over 90% of all households in TA) and we are having to accommodate people outside of the city away from family networks due to demand and lack of supply.</p> <p>Similarly, c.40% of households in Priority Need on the Housing Register require 3 or more bedrooms</p> <p>We know through work on the Family Poverty Strategy and the more recent Build Back Fairer Marmot Review, that poor quality and overcrowded housing is harmful to health and widens inequalities for residents.</p>	<p>MCC will work with partners in the Manchester Housing Provider Partnership to ensure that new homes built in the city are designed to meet the needs of families in poverty to reduce the numbers in overcrowded properties, on the Housing Register and in TA</p> <p>This strategy is supported by the recent review of the city's Allocations Scheme - where access for those in greatest need, including people who are living in temporary accommodation, has been improved. Whilst this will not solve the Temporary Accommodation crisis fully, it will enable some people to access accommodation more quickly and offer a greater opportunity and flow through the allocation system.</p>
---	--	---	--

<u>Carers</u>			
---------------	--	--	--

<p><u>Homelessness</u></p>	<p>The level of homelessness in the city is unacceptably high.</p> <p>Accordingly, one of the main vision principles of the Housing Strategy is to 'Work to end Homelessness...'</p>	<p>The number of people presenting as homeless is continuing to increase (over 9,500 presentations in 2020-21 – 60% more than in 2017-18).</p> <p>This is costing the Council c.£15m annually.</p> <p>Evidence from the Manchester Homelessness Partnership highlights the difficulty of finding suitable homes in the private sector – especially larger family properties where competition for limited stock is high.</p>	<p>The strategy commits us to increase the supply of appropriate housing for homeless households to reduce the time spent in Temporary Accommodation</p> <p>MCC will work with partners in the Manchester Housing Provider Partnership to ensure that new homes built in the city are designed to meet the needs of households experiencing the various forms of homelessness</p> <p>This strategy is supported by the recent review of the city's Allocations Scheme - where access for those in greatest need, including people who are living in temporary accommodation, has been improved. Whilst this will not solve the Temporary Accommodation crisis fully, it will enable some people to access accommodation more quickly and offer a greater opportunity and flow through the allocation system.</p>
-----------------------------------	--	--	--

			<p>Innovative solutions led by the city's Housing and Homelessness Services will also be reflected in the forthcoming Homelessness Strategy.</p> <p>The key priorities are likely to focus around increasing prevention, ending rough sleeping and reducing the use of B&B & temporary accommodation through more affordable and appropriate housing solutions linked to Better Outcomes, Better Lives</p>
Ex-Armed Forces	<p>The Armed Forces community should not face disadvantage compared to other citizens in the provision of public and commercial services.</p> <p>Special consideration is appropriate in some cases, especially for those who have given most such as the injured and the bereaved.</p>	<p>MCC is signed up to the Armed Forces Covenant.</p> <p>The purpose of this Covenant is to encourage support for the Armed Forces Community working and residing in Manchester and to recognise and remember the sacrifices made by members of this Armed Forces Community, particularly those who have given the most.</p> <p>This includes in-Service and ex-Service personnel their families and widow(er)s in Manchester</p>	<p>MCC's commitments, as a member of the Covenant, will be upheld as part of the delivery of the Housing Strategy and associated policies.</p>

--	--	--	--

4. Quality Assurance - Equality, Diversity and Inclusion Team

Send your draft EqIA to the EDI Team inbox - equalitiesteam@manchester.gov.uk using **EqIA Advice – Your Service Name.** in the subject line.

EDI Team: Name		Date reviewed:	
-----------------------	--	-----------------------	--

5. Head of Service Approval

Your completed analysis needs to be signed off by your Head of Service.

Name:		Date:	
Job title:		Signature:	

Annex 1 – Actions Log

Use this table to list the actions you have identified to mitigate and adverse risks, detailing who will be responsible for completing these and setting clear timescales for delivery. Your actions will be reviewed at 6 months and 12 months to assess progress.

<u>Actions identified in your EqIA</u>	<u>Responsible officer / team for delivery</u>	<u>Timescale for delivery</u>	<u>Comments</u>

This page is intentionally left blank

Appendix 1 – Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032)

Foreword

We want our residents to live in the homes they want and need. This Housing Strategy explains how we will go about making that happen whilst also considering the role of housing in the context of the Our Manchester Strategy, its contribution to the economic recovery of the city and our ambitions towards zero carbon.

The last two decades has seen Manchester undergo a period of huge growth that has led to significant increases in the city's job market and population. This in turn has resulted in unprecedented demand for housing and new homes and as demand for housing has increased tenure has continued to diversify. There are currently 68,000 social rented homes in the city – the fewest in the last 40 years. Owner occupation has declined to around levels seen in the early 1980s and the private rented sector is now the dominant tenure in Manchester at 39% of all of the city's housing stock.

In response we are building more new properties than at any time since 2008, creating new and diverse neighbourhoods, principally in and around the city centre and the wider conurbation core. However, even more are needed, which is why this strategy sets a target of delivering 36,000 new homes by 2032. Just under a third of these (10,000 over the next ten years) will be affordable - with as many social rented homes as possible - subject to Homes England support.

The increasing cost of living has meant affordability has become even more of a challenge. We have launched the Manchester Living Rent and are committed to understanding how much of the city is affordable to who, so that we can continue to target our resources at those residents who need our support the most.

Looking forward it is important to understand that demand has not only increased but it has diversified and polarised. The Covid-19 pandemic and cost of living crisis has exacerbated longstanding health and housing inequalities in Manchester and disproportionately affected our most at risk residents. At the same time, the UK's departure from the European Union has placed significant pressures on some of the most valuable business sectors (including construction) and at risk communities in the city.

Altogether, this has resulted in a range of housing challenges which must be addressed over the lifetime of this strategy, including:

- Increasing housing supply to meet the needs of our growing population
- Meeting the increasing demand for social & affordable housing
- Addressing rising levels of homelessness across the city
- Diversifying the housing stock & increasing council tax revenues to fund services
- Investing in the Council's housing stock and ensuring it is well managed
- Securing the resources to Level Up & deliver a place-based approach to regeneration

- Protecting & harnessing the economic benefits of our growing construction sector
- Focusing high density development in accessible locations, close to public transport
- Understanding and addressing housing & health inequalities in our communities
- Bringing forward accommodation to enable independence for people in need of care & support
- Addressing fire safety in residential blocks
- Converting former student accommodation to affordable & supported housing
- Delivering low/zero carbon new build housing & retrofitting existing homes

Internally, we need to maximise the impact of the resources available to us by targeting investment and developing new ways to deliver. Fortunately, there are new opportunities linked to the city's Arm's Length Management Organisation (ALMO) coming back in house and the launch of a new housing delivery vehicle – This City. New housing development will also raise much needed revenue through council tax growth.

This strategy sets out our long-term vision to deliver the homes that people want and need. It is built around the following four vision principles:

1. Increase affordable housing supply & build more new homes for all residents
2. Work to end homelessness and ensure housing is affordable & accessible for all
3. Address inequalities & create neighbourhoods where people want to live
4. Address the sustainability & zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing

Whilst this document sets the vision for housing in Manchester and articulates what we need to do to get there, it is only one element of the full suite of strategies which will deliver on our ambitions (see Appendix 1). Similarly, this strategy cannot be delivered by the Council working in isolation and success will require working collaboratively with public sector organisations at both the local and national level alongside private sector partners. An annual monitoring report will be published to chart progress against the various objectives contained within this strategy.

Increase affordable housing supply & build more new homes for all residents

It is estimated that Manchester is undersupplied by a minimum of 500 new homes per annum. This has led to prices and rents increasing across the city, exacerbating affordability issues for many of our residents. As Manchester's population continues to grow, the city must continue to work harder towards meeting exceptionally high demand for housing across all tenures.

Against this backdrop, [this strategy sets a target of delivering 10,000 affordable homes between 2022 and 2032](#) (an average of 1,000 homes p.a. over the lifetime of the strategy). This represents just under a third of the [36,000 new homes we are committed to building in the city over the next ten years](#). This target reflects the key issue facing the city - essentially the continuing need to increase the supply of homes to house our growing population across varying tenures in response to demand.

Affordable delivery is increasing but we are still only building around 500 homes a year. This target therefore represents an ambitious challenge to double the number of affordable homes built every year. Our Manchester-based Registered Providers (RPs) will be fundamental to success and the Council is accordingly committed to helping extend their contribution, so that they are able to both deliver more affordable housing and grow.

We are clear that achieving this target will require more Council land to be made available for affordable housing. It will also mean that we will need to work with private sector partners to deliver a diverse range of homes across all sectors of the market to cater for existing and future residents.

[Out of the 10,000 new affordable homes, 3,000 will be delivered in the city centre](#) and over a third of these will be shared ownership or rent to buy to help first time buyers get a foothold on the ladder. This will be crucial if we are to [increase the number of owner occupiers in Manchester by 15,000 by 2032](#).

We have worked successfully with a range of partners to deliver, and we will continue to do so. This City – the Council's housing delivery vehicle, represents a new and innovative approach. However, there is scope to do more, and we will continue to invite additional investment and bid for Homes England funding in locations where the strength of the market can help support regeneration and new housing growth.

[The strategy seeks to ensure that more than 80% of all homes built by 2032 are on brownfield sites close to public transport](#). This means identifying and assembling larger housing sites able to deliver a mix of housing types and tenures in well-connected locations close to jobs. It also means supporting density in areas where the levelling up of existing communities, including the re-purposing of brownfield land, and some regeneration of existing estates will be required.

Ambitions, actions and measures of success

1. Deliver 36,000 new homes by 2032 including 10,000 affordable homes (c.28% of total delivery)

- We will accelerate activity on large scale, mixed-tenure sites & identify land within our ownership for affordable housing
- We will review opportunities currently programmed for 10 years plus to ensure sites are available to meet our target
- We will work with a range of partners to deliver more affordable homes – including collectively lobbying for grant funding from Homes England.
- We will identify and encourage new entrants into the market to increase supply

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

2. Of the 10,000 new affordable homes by 2032 – 3,000 will be built in the city centre

- We will support Registered Provider partners to deliver new affordable homes at scale in the city centre
- We will encourage new entrants, with a track record of density, into the city centre market

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

3. Increase the number of owner occupiers in Manchester by 15,000 by 2032

- We will promote the delivery of affordable home ownership and first home products in areas where values are restricting options for first time buyers
- We will support the delivery of open market sale homes in areas where demand for home ownership is high

Measure of Success – MCC Council Tax Records

4. Ensure at least 80% of all homes built by 2032 are on brownfield sites close to public transport

- We will identify & assemble large sites capable of supporting density in the core of the conurbation
- We will work with internal & external partners to ensure new supply is supported by appropriate infrastructure, guided by the Local Plan and the Places for Everyone plan

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

Work to end homelessness and ensure housing is affordable & accessible to all

Manchester's recent growth and the accompanying residential investment has helped to regenerate neighbourhoods and diversify the housing offer across the city. We know however that this growth has not benefited everyone, and that some residents have felt excluded. The economic impact of the pandemic, and now the cost-of-living crisis, has continued to intensify this issue.

Taking this into account, [we propose to develop our approach to measuring affordability](#) starting with the introduction of the Manchester Living Rent¹. This will recognise the variations in residents' purchasing power including those earning below average incomes living in various neighbourhoods across the city. Part of our aspiration to deliver 10,000 new affordable homes by 2032, will involve increasing [the supply of appropriate housing for households in Priority Bands 1-3 to reduce the time spent on the Housing Register](#).

Managing the urgent housing needs of at risk groups is a major challenge for Manchester. The Homelessness Strategy will be refreshed next year; however, an essential objective will relate to the urgent need to [increase the supply of appropriate housing for homeless households \(approximately half of whom are single person households in band 1\) to reduce the time spent in Temporary Accommodation](#). As part of the Local Plan process, we will review our ability to provide appropriate housing – particularly one-bedroom properties - for our most at risk residents.

Increasing housing that meets the needs of people with disabilities and those with a wide range of care and support requirements represents a key priority over the next ten years. The upcoming Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy will set out our aspirations around improving care and support at home, accessible design and adaptations, improving our supported housing offer and move on options. Against this backdrop and working in partnership with our [commissioning services and trusted providers](#), we will [increase the supply of high-quality supported housing to meet demand](#).

As part of this plan, we will establish a comprehensive evidence base to better understand supported housing demand in order to meet need. This evidence base, along with improved commissioning practices, will be at the heart of how we deliver accessible and supported housing to meet a wide range of needs.

¹ [Policies and strategies - The Manchester Living Rent | Manchester City Council](#)

Ambitions and measures of success

1. Develop our approach to affordability in light of the increasing cost of living

- We will ensure the new approach responds to the cost-of-living crisis & is fair for all Manchester residents on a range of incomes
- We will support the objectives of the Work & Skills Strategy, alongside the ambition to become a Living Wage City, to raise resident incomes and bridge the affordability gap

Measure of Success – Income Data / Housing Market Indicators

2. Increase the supply of appropriate housing for households in Priority Bands 1-3 to reduce the time spent on the Housing Register

- We will work with delivery partners to ensure the supply of new affordable homes is matched to need from households on the Housing Register
- We will ensure our Allocations Policy gives those most in need the best chance of accessing appropriate housing through Manchester Move
- We will use our evidence base to ensure our planning policies in the Local Plan are aligned to the needs of our residents

Measure of Success – Manchester Housing Register

3. Increase the supply of appropriate housing for homeless households to reduce the time spent in Temporary Accommodation

- We will work with colleagues in the Homelessness Service to provide a joint solution to the challenge of ending homelessness and support the objectives of the Homelessness Strategy
- We will work with delivery partners to ensure supply of new affordable homes is matched to need from households in Temporary Accommodation

Measure of Success – Homelessness Data

4. Work with commissioners & trusted providers to increase the supply of supported housing to meet demand

- We will work partners to develop and deliver the Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy
- We will work with partners to ensure that we have enough accessible homes in the city

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

Address inequalities & create neighbourhoods where people want to live

Housing inequality is directly related to racial, social, income and wealth inequality in Manchester. This is not only fundamentally unjust, but it is also holding the city and elements of its population back. Whilst housing conditions have improved over the past 20 years, we know that examples of poor quality persist – most markedly in the Private Rented Sector (PRS) which houses some of our most at risk residents.

Larger families represent the biggest cohort in Priority Bands on the Housing Register, however larger family housing continues to be severely undersupplied, and many families are directed into unstable tenancies within the private rented sector. To reduce the amount of time these residents spend waiting for a more suitable home, [we aim to deliver 3,000 affordable family houses by 2032 to address overcrowding in areas where average household sizes are highest.](#)

In addition to new supply, we are committed to [encouraging and promoting right-sizing across all tenures to release family homes](#). Part of this approach involves providing the right houses at the right time (including an attractive Extra Care accommodation offer) for our older residents which can free up homes for families in overcrowded conditions or temporary accommodation.

Addressing inequalities and creating neighbourhoods is not just about buildings homes. It is about place-making and recognising community heritage is integral to this. For example, the redevelopment of the former Reno nightclub site in Moss Side will be guided by the needs of the current community whilst at the same time celebrating the history and culture of the many black communities who have made Moss Side their home. Similarly, our work with the LGBT Foundation to deliver the UK's first LGBT majority Extra Care scheme will help cement the city's reputation as an inclusive and welcoming city for all.

The Covid-19 pandemic has highlighted again the importance of good quality housing to the health and wellbeing of our residents. Similarly, our work on the Family Poverty Strategy and the Build Back Fairer Marmot Review, highlighted how poor quality and overcrowded housing is harmful to health and widens inequalities for residents. This knowledge and experience will remain critical as the cost-of-living crisis continues to bite. We know that many of the issues of concern are most acute in the private rented sector and, as such, we are committed to supporting the delivery of the PRS Strategy which is [improving the safety, quality and management of PRS homes](#).

Alongside this, we want to encourage responsible landlords - both through the management of new supply or the purchasing of existing properties. This includes [encouraging RPs to purchase and refurbish PRS housing for affordable housing, including former student lets potentially utilising money from the Housing Affordability Fund](#) and other funding opportunities.

The repercussions of the tragic fire at Grenfell Tower in June 2017 are still widely felt with many tenants still living in potentially unsafe blocks. Manchester is an early adopter of the Hackitt Review recommendations, and we will continue to support residents caught up in the crisis. Whilst the recent announcement which forces the

industry to provide additional contributions towards the cladding crisis is welcome, the total financial support remains some way off what is needed. With this in mind, we will continue to put pressure on government and developers to resolve all the fire safety issues identified in Manchester buildings.

Ambitions and measures of success

1. Deliver 3,000 affordable family houses by 2032 to address overcrowding in areas where average household sizes are highest

- We will identify land for & prioritise the delivery of larger family housing where pressures are most acute
- We will work with RPs and funders to bring forward viable funding packages to enable the delivery of new affordable larger homes.

Measure of Success – MCC Council Tax Records / MCC Residential Development Tracker

2. Improve the safety, quality & management of private rented sector homes

- We will continue a programme of Selective Licensing to improve the safety, quality and management of the PRS
- We will focus on the housing issues highlighted in our Family Poverty Strategy and the Build Back Fairer Marmot Review (including poor quality and overcrowded homes)
- We will work with campaign groups to put pressure on Government & developers to resolve all fire safety issues in Manchester

Measure of Success – Progress against the PRS Strategy Delivery Plan / Licenses & Compliance Inspections / Remediation of buildings with safety issues

3. Utilising the Housing Affordability Fund to support placemaking & encouraging RPs to purchase and refurbish low quality PRS for affordable housing (incl. former student lets)

- We will generate more funds for affordable housing through the planning system to be distributed through the Housing Affordability Fund
- We will continue to utilise Right to Buy receipts where possible to increase affordable housing delivery

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

4. Encourage & promote right-sizing across all tenures to release family housing

- We will increase the supply of homes attractive to older residents currently under occupying family housing to ensure that there is the right home at the right time when they are ready to move
- We will ensure housing allocations via Manchester Move is making the best use of existing stock

Measure of Success – Manchester Move & MCC Council Tax Records

Address the sustainability & zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing

In 2019 Manchester set a target to become a zero-carbon city by 2038, with a challenging reduction of at least 50% of our direct CO₂ emissions by 2025. Current research being undertaken by the Manchester Climate Change Agency suggests that concerted and new scaled-up action is required for the city to keep on track with its carbon budget targets. Climate change is also likely to commensurately impact those in the most vulnerable parts of the city and therefore a joined-up approach will be required to address its impact on existing inequalities.

To meet this challenge, we must therefore make significant progress towards achieving a net zero carbon housing offer in Manchester during the lifetime of this strategy. This approach must also look to addresses the inequalities highlighted by the Marmot Review and the need for healthier, warmer and more efficient homes across the city. Whilst we are clear where we need to get to, we must also recognise that there are significant and difficult barriers to getting there.

Given that in 2032 over 85% of the homes we will be living in have already been built, a large-scale retrofitting programme is essential. This will be no small undertaking with the cost of retrofitting estimated at c.£18-25k per property in GM². However, we are well placed to drive forward retrofit locally - both through acting on our own stock and by working closely with and influencing partners. To this end, £260m is required³ to retrofit 10,500 housing association properties over the next 4 years – the first 300 of which have been identified across 5 blocks in North Manchester. *We are committed to accelerating this process and completing the zero-carbon retrofit of at least 1/3rd of the 68,000 homes managed by MHPP partners by 2032, alongside reducing energy use across the estate so that all homes achieve an Energy Performance Certificate (EPC) rating of B or above.*

For the numerous private homeowners and landlords who cannot afford to retrofit their properties, we are working with the Core Cities network to convince government to look at new financing models that help unlock some of these barriers across all tenures in the city.

To bring this activity together we will bring forward a Retrofit Plan for the whole of Manchester. This will be explained within the Housing Strategy Delivery Plan, following consultation with key partners.

² https://democracy.greatermanchester-ca.gov.uk/documents/s13523/07%20Pathways%20to%20Healthy%20Net%20Zero%20Housing%20GM_Report.pdf

³ Pending the outcome of the spending review and the identification of future funding streams

Nevertheless, as this strategy makes very clear, the principal housing challenge for the city is undersupply. It is therefore critical that we also find a way to grow the housing offer in a way that separates housing growth from an associated increase in CO₂ emissions. As a starting point, we aim to **increase the proportion of low and zero carbon homes in the affordable pipeline from 20% to 50% by 2025**.

Further to this, a task group of private, public and third sector representatives⁴ have recommended that all new development should be net zero carbon from 2023 and have proposed the adoption of a “Manchester Standard” for consideration in planning policy in the future. This approach will be tested through the overarching Local Plan, consultation and engagement process.

Where regeneration opportunities arise to invest in existing estates, we will lead with zero carbon principles in so far as is possible. The new homes replacing them will be low or zero carbon, at high density and located close to public transport and jobs.

If we act on the ambitions set out in this chapter, at pace, then we will be able to combat and avoid the worst effects of climate change. More than that however, we will also live in a city full of warm, healthy and cheap to run homes – responding to fuel poverty and the current economic crisis. Zero carbon construction and retrofitting of homes will also grow Manchester’s green economy and create job opportunities as well as decarbonising the city’s housing stock.

Ambitions and measures of success

1. Complete the zero-carbon retrofitting of a minimum of 1/3rd of the 68,000 homes managed by MHPP partners by 2032 & reduce energy use across the estate so that all homes achieve an EPC rating of B or above.

- We will focus on improving the energy efficiency of homes so that tenants have warmer, healthier and cheaper to run homes
- We will utilize new technology as it emerges over the lifetime of the strategy to facilitate retrofitting more easily & cheaply
- We will support initiatives set out in the Work & Skills Strategy to ensure residents develop the skills required help deliver our retrofitting programme.

Measure of Success – MHPP / MCC Facilities Records & EPC Data

2. Develop a Retrofit Plan for Manchester across all tenures

- We will explore the retrofit policy options set out in the GMCA’s Pathways to Healthy Net Housing report
- We will link the climate change agenda in with the inequality and health agendas (as directed through the Marmot Plan deep dives) focusing on

⁴ <https://www.manchesterclimate.com/sites/default/files/Roadmap%20to%20Net%20Zero%20Carbon%20-%20Report.pdf>

responding to poor quality housing, fuel poverty and the cost-of-living crisis

- We will lobby for additional funding to accelerate domestic retrofitting, including for private homeowners and landlords, via the UK Climate Change Investment Commission (UKCCIC) and other networks

Measure of success: Retrofitting measures integrated into the Housing Strategy Delivery Plan following consultation with partners

3. Increase the proportion of low and zero carbon homes in the affordable pipeline from 20% to 50% by 2025

- We will adopt an agreed standard to monitor the delivery of low carbon homes as part of Manchester's residential pipeline
- We will explore the opportunities linked to (low carbon) Modern Methods of Construction and unlocking access to increased levels of Homes England funding

Measure of Success – MCC Residential Development Tracker

4. Ensure estate regeneration & placemaking (including demolitions) is directed by zero carbon principles

- We will prioritise retrofitting existing properties where possible
- We will develop an assessment criteria which will inform estate regeneration from a zero-carbon perspective

Measure of Success – Decarbonisation of estates by number / proportion of homes

Summary & Opportunities

There is no doubt that both the demand for homes and how they are delivered is changing across the city. In response, this Housing Strategy represents an evolution in the way we grow the city's housing stock and manage the homes we already have. This approach will go hand in hand with a renewed focus on how we house our at risk residents and support their needs.

The most significant change this strategy represents is the scale of our ambitions around the delivery of affordable homes, and the ways that we build them. This will mean making more innovative use of our land, working with new partners, expanding the ways we can deliver (including via the Council's own vehicle – This City) and identifying new sources of funding.

Whilst delivering 1,000 new affordable homes a year may be a challenge in the early part of the strategy period, through the approach outlined in this strategy we are hoping to increase supply beyond this level in the latter years to meet our target of delivering 10,000 new affordable homes overall by 2032.

Alongside this significant undertaking, this strategy recognises that we are facing new, additional challenges, not least the need to decarbonise housing; address the devastating impact of the pandemic and the increasing cost of living in some of our most disadvantaged neighbourhoods. Nevertheless, there are some sizable opportunities too:

- Large-scale, high-density, multi-tenure sites able to meet the affordable housing target
- Northwards, This City & Affordable Housing Supply
- Affordable home ownership in the city centre through increased shared ownership and rent to buy
- Diversifying the older people's housing offer – including in the city centre
- Understanding and responding to support and care needs at home and in specialist supported housing
- Signature residential developments that reflect the scale of the city's growth ambitions
- Increasing council tax revenues to fund services
- Supporting residents in more appropriate accommodation & reducing service demand
- Placemaking in Victoria North, the Eastern Gateway & beyond
- Creating more construction jobs & boosting resident skills
- Delivering zero carbon new build housing & retrofitting existing homes
- Top tier of international cities for higher education with a housing offer to match

Building upon these opportunities will be the starting point for the delivery plans which will follow this strategy. The delivery plan actions will set out a clear blueprint for how we will realise this strategy's vision and fulfil the commitments that have been set out. It will also recognise that success can only be achieved through working in partnership with registered providers, developers, contractors, the voluntary sector, community groups and other partners and colleagues throughout the city. Progress will be reported on a regular basis and the plan will be reviewed and updated to ensure that it remains relevant.

Delivering the Housing Strategy

There are a range of individual plans and strategies that will support, and be supported by, this Housing Strategy:

Our Manchester Strategy – Forward to 2025

Sets out the city's priorities to ensure Manchester can achieve its aim of being in the top-flight of world class cities by 2025 with equality, inclusion and sustainability at its heart

Local Plan

The spatial planning framework for the city, setting out the long-term strategic policies for Manchester's future development. The new Local Plan is due to be published in 2023

Neighbourhood Plans

Plans, created by local communities, which set out policies for the future development of their areas and will be part of the Local Development Framework for their area

Places for Everyone

A long-term plan of nine Greater Manchester districts (Bolton, Bury, Manchester, Oldham, Rochdale, Salford, Tameside, Trafford and Wigan) for jobs, new homes, and sustainable growth. It has been published by the GMCA on behalf of the nine districts.

Manchester Climate Change Framework

The city's high-level strategy for tackling climate change and reducing the city's carbon footprint. It sets out our objectives for Manchester to stay within our carbon budgets.

Powering Recovery: Manchester Economic Recovery & Investment Plan

Sets out Manchester's plans to sustain the economy and its people, and what the city proposes to do in the future in response to the Covid-19 pandemic

Manchester Living Rent

The Manchester Living Rent is an amount of rent that is set at or below the Local Housing Allowance level which in many instances will be cheaper for residents than the standard Government definition of Affordable Housing

Work & Skills Strategy

Aims to develop a work & skills system that meets the needs of all businesses and enables residents from all backgrounds to obtain the skills and attributes employers require

Family Poverty Strategy

Aims for everyone in the city to have the same opportunities and life chances, no matter where they were born or live

Build Back Fairer in Greater Manchester

A collaboration between Greater Manchester and Michael Marmot's Institute of Health Equity that includes bold and ambitious recommendations on how to reduce health inequities and build back fairer from the COVID-19 pandemic for future generations

Homelessness Strategy

Sets out the vision, aims and aspirations shared by the Housing Strategy and partner organisations who work to reduce homelessness in the city

MCC Social Housing Offer

Outlining the principles of Northwards' offer in the context of the social housing white paper, Building Safety Act following re-integration with MCC and alignment with the Our Manchester and Future Shape ambitions

MCC Allocations Policy

The legal document that describes how the Council allocates social homes to people who need them. **Manchester Move** is where residents can find advice on the best housing solutions for their circumstances and where social homes are advertised.

Private Rented Sector Strategy

The city's strategy to improve the condition and management standard of homes in the private rented sector and increase good quality options for lower income residents in the sector

Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy

Commissioners from Adult's Services, Children's Services and Homelessness with the Housing and Residential Growth service and delivery partners are developing this strategy to address 4 key objectives:

- To work collaboratively to meet the need for homes that enable independence
- To better enable care and support at home,
- To better understand & meet the need for good quality, appropriate supported accommodation
- To improve move on from temporary supported housing into good quality independent accommodation

Better Outcomes, Better Lives

Manchester Local Care Organisation's transformation programme for Adult Social Care, which builds on work to integrate health and social care in Manchester, the ASC improvement programme and other transformation initiatives focused on supporting the people of Manchester to achieve better life outcomes

Appendix 2 – Consultation Timetable

Forum	Date	Stage
Manchester Housing Providers' Partnership (MHPP) Strategy Evidence Base	20 th April '21	MCC Strategic Lead took MHPP through the evidence base for the new strategy
Economy Scrutiny	24 th June '21	MCC Strategic Lead took Economy Scrutiny through the evidence base for the new Housing Strategy and requested the committee to discuss and provide comments on the evidence base and the proposed approach to the new strategy
MHPP Forum	1 st July '21	MCC Strategic Lead outlines key objectives.
Policy Panel	12 th July '21	Member's consultation
MHPP Growth & Affordable Homes workstream	14 th July '21	Strategy consultation with MHPP
Policy Panel	16 th July '21	Member's consultation
July Strategic Housing Board (SHB)	20 th July '21	Objectives and key principles and proposals for consultation presented to senior internal & external partners.
MHPP Connecting People workstream	22 nd July '21	Strategy consultation with MHPP
MHPP Zero-carbon group	27 th July '21	Strategy consultation with zero carbon MHPP group
Housing Access Board	17 th August '21	Strategy proposals as key agenda item for consultation
Round Table 1	14 th September '21	Savills, Reside, Your Housing group and Great Places HA.
Round Table 2	20 th September '21	Euan Kellie, JLL, Lawrence Copeland, Rob Elsom.
MHPP Forum	22 nd September '21	MCC Strategic Lead provided an update for discussion and outline next steps/ any further consultation proposals.
Round Table 3	27 th September '21	MCC representatives from Commissioning, Homelessness, Adults and Children Services.
September SHB	28 th September '21	MCC Strategic Lead presented Strategy Update and Emerging Issues. Presentation circulated to membership.
MHPP Growth & Affordable Homes Workstream	29 th September '21	Present Strategy Update and Emerging Issues.
MHPP Zero Carbon Group	7 th October '21	Present changes made since last consultation.

Round Table 4	8 th October '21	MCC representatives from Homelessness Services.
Round Table 5	4 th November '21	Discussion about the new proposed definition of affordability with Registered Provider (RP) CEO's.
Policy Panel: Affordability session	15 th November '21	Presentation and discussion. Response provided to Exec Member for Housing and Employment.
Policy Panel: Affordability session	18 th November '21	Presentation and discussion. Response provided to Exec Member for Housing and Employment.
November SHB	23 rd November '21	MCC Strategic Lead provided updates and presentation on the new local definition of affordability.
Housing Board Consultation	31 st January '22	Housing Strategy Consultation Event for the Housing Board (half day)
March SHB	29 th March '22	Updated on strategy and political timetable.
Policy Panel: Final Draft	16 th May '22	Presentation and discussion with members on the final Housing Strategy draft
Policy Panel: Final Draft	23 rd May '22	Presentation and discussion with members on the final Housing Strategy draft
Briefing for the Leader	6 th June '22	Housing Strategy briefing and discussion with the Leader, Cllr White, Alan and Nick.
Policy Panel: Final Draft	13 th June '22	Presentation and discussion with members on the final Housing Strategy draft
Economy Scrutiny Committee	23 rd June '22	The Committee considered the draft Housing Strategy (2022-2032) and agreed that the final version be taken for consideration by the Executive in July 2022.

Consultation: Zero Carbon

Housing Partners	27 th July '21	MHPP – Zero carbon Group.
Housing Partners	7 th October '21	MHPP – Zero carbon Group.
Climate Change Consultation	13 th February '22	Manchester Climate Change Agency

Consultation: Affordability

Round Table with RP CEO's	4 th November '21	Presentation and discussion
Members Panel meeting	15 th November '21	Chair - Cllr White 13 Members present
Members Panel meeting	18 th November '21	Chair –Cllr White 10 Members present
Strategic Housing Board	23 rd November '21	Presentation and discussion.

Consultation: Disability

Round Table with Manchester Disabled People's Access Group	17 th January '22	Manchester Disabled People's Access Group
--	------------------------------	---

Summary of organisations at Round Table events.

Round Table 1

Jamie Adams	Savills	Property development & Letting agency
Nick Cumberland	Great Places HA	Social Housing Landlord
Rachel Hollins	Your Housing Group	Social Housing Landlord
Anthony Stankard	Reside	Property development & Letting's agency

Round Table 2

Lawrence Copeland	Lawrence Copeland	Property development & Letting's agency
Rob Elsom	Bruntwood	Property development & Letting's agency
Louise Emmott	JLL	Property development & Letting agency
Euan Kellie	Euan Kellie	Property development & Letting's agency
Anne Taylor	Strategic Lead, Neighbourhoods North	MCC

Round Table 3

Sarah Austin	Strategic Lead for Commissioning Directorate for Children and Education
Sean Bleasdale	Commissioning Manager, Homelessness
Mike Petrou	Commissioning Manager, Adults
Nicola Rea	Strategic Lead, Homelessness
Lorna Young	Equalities Specialist, PRI

Round Table 4

Kate Macdonald	Strategic Lead, City Centre Growth & Regeneration
Nicola Rea	Strategic Lead, Homelessness
Jane Davies	Service Manager, Homelessness

Anna Thorogood	Commissioning Manager, Homelessness
Gareth Clarke, Gaynor Howe, Kayte Smyth Viv Feeney, David Davies, Suzanne Vyse, Laura Stevenson, Joan Todd	Managers within the homelessness services.

Round Table 5

David Ashmore	Northwards Housing
Cym D'Souza	Arawak Walton
Matthew Harrison	Great Places
Nick Horne	Wythenshawe Community Housing Group
Nicole Kershaw	One Manchester
Karen Mitchell	Southway Housing
Charlotte Norman	Mosscaire St Vincents

Appendix 3 – Housing Strategy Equality Impact Assessment

Equality Impact Assessment Tool - Introduction

This Equality Impact Assessment tool aims to help you to consider and record how equality issues relate to your policies, projects, services, strategies or functions. It is easy to complete and will help you to understand which communities of identity will be affected by your proposals and how. The tool will help you to:

1. Assess whether a policy, project, service redesign or strategy is relevant to our equality duties and / or different groups in Manchester
2. Identify what the potential impacts of the activity will be for different communities
3. Highlight what actions could be taken to mitigate any negative impacts that you identify

The Equality, Diversity and Inclusion Team – (we give equality advice, guidance and support to all Council Teams)

Role	Contact Details
Equality, Diversity and Inclusion Team Manger	Lorna Young – 07904 679 204 lorna.young@manchester.gov.uk
Equality Specialist	Adiba Sultan - adiba.sultan@manchester.gov.uk
Equality Specialist	Sofia Higgins – 07989 162 966 Sofia.higgins@manchester.gov.uk
Equality Specialist	Sarah Herdan - sarah.herdan@manchester.gov.uk
Armed Forces Specialist	Alfie Hewitt - alfie.hewitt@manchester.gov.uk

Equality Impact Assessment

1. Tell us about your service

My Directorate	Growth & Development
My Service	Housing & Residential Growth
My team / section	Strategic Housing
The name of the function being analysed	Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032)
Who is completing the assessment?	Henry Tomsett / Haydn Brown
Who is the lead manager for the assessment?	Nick Cole

2. Tell us about the activity that you're analysing

Briefly describe the main aims and objectives of your policy, project, service redesign or strategy, including outlining at a high level if it has implications for other areas of the Council's work and priorities.

The Manchester Housing Strategy (2022-2032) explains the role of housing in the context of the Our Manchester Strategy, it's contribution to the economic recovery of the city and our ambitions towards zero carbon. This strategy sets out our long-term vision to deliver the homes that people want and need. It is built around the following four vision principles:

1. Increase affordable housing supply & build more new homes for all residents
2. Work to end homelessness and ensure housing is affordable & accessible to all
3. Address inequalities & create neighbourhoods where people want to live
4. Address the sustainability & zero carbon challenges in new and existing housing

It is relevant to note that the second principle directly responds to the major challenge of meeting the urgent housing needs of at risk groups in Manchester. The third principle in particular responds to the fact that housing inequality is directly related to the disadvantages suffered by individuals or groups in Manchester because of their characteristics.

Whilst this document sets the vision for housing in Manchester and articulates what we need to do to get there, it is only one element of the full suite of strategies (internal and external) which will deliver on our ambitions. In particular it is important to recognise the role of the forthcoming Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy which will set out our aspirations around improving care and support at home. In doing so it will increase the supply of housing that meets the needs of people with disabilities and those with a wide range of care and support requirements.

Similarly, the document is clear that this strategy cannot be delivered by the Council working in isolation and success will require working collaboratively with public sector organisations at both the local and national level alongside private sector partners.

A delivery plan will follow this strategy. The delivery plan actions will set out a clear blueprint for how we will realise this strategy's vision and fulfil the commitments that have been set out.

TIP: briefly summarise the key points and keep your answer under 500 words.

TIP: try not to duplicate information that's available elsewhere; you can easily use this space to signpost to other sources of background information instead of rewriting them here.

3. Analysing the impact on equality

Will the policy, strategy, project, service redesign being assessed here... (Tick all that apply):

Remove or minimise disadvantages suffered by individuals or groups because of their characteristics	✓
Meet the needs of people from protected or disadvantaged groups where these are different from the needs of other people	✓
Promote diversity and encourage people from protected or disadvantaged groups to participate in activities where they are underrepresented	

Describe how you've reached your conclusion and what evidence it's based on (500 words max).

The Housing Strategy has been developed with an acknowledgement that housing inequality in Manchester is directly related to the disadvantages suffered by some individuals or groups because of their characteristics and that this remains a significant issue in the city. These issues were brought to the fore during the pandemic when analysis at the time showed that Manchester residents in older, poorer quality private rented stock were amongst those at the highest risk of infection. Manchester's lowest income households concentrated in the North and East of the city, particularly those dependent on benefits and / or insecure work are disproportionately represented in this sector. This includes a significant number of our black and ethnic minority residents, some of whom have been amongst the hardest hit.

These disadvantages were comprehensively evidenced in the Marmot Report 'Build Back Fairer in Greater Manchester: Health Equity and Dignified Lives' which summarised that:

- Poor quality and overcrowded housing is harmful to health and widens health inequalities.
- Housing conditions in the PRS had deteriorated before the pandemic.
- Housing costs were increasing before the pandemic.
- Young people and those from ethnic minorities are more likely to rent from the private sector.
- Lockdowns resulted in an increased exposure to unhealthy and overcrowded housing conditions which have added to the stress of living in poor quality housing.
- In the aftermath of the pandemic, it is likely that the quality of some poorly managed private rented sector houses will continue to deteriorate.
- Homelessness is a larger problem than rough sleeping and includes those living in temporary accommodation. There currently is not enough affordable accommodation available for people on the Housing Register.
- Poor quality and unaffordable housing remains a critical health equity issue in Manchester.

On the basis of this evidence elements of the new Housing Strategy has been drafted to explicitly address housing inequalities suffered by individuals or groups because of their characteristics. Key to this will be leveraging the city's evidence base (including data from Manchester Move, Council Tax data, housing market analytics and data and intel on our residents and communities) to ensure that we are building the right homes in the right places to meet the needs of all groups and individuals. However, the strategy also recognises that addressing inequalities and creating neighbourhoods is not just about buildings homes. It is about place-making and working closely with local groups to recognise community heritage will be integral to this. It is also about improving the

quality and the management of the homes we already have – particularly in the private rented sector where housing inequality is most acute.

In addition to this the strategy, along with the accompanying Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy (EIAS), aims to directly meet the needs of people from protected or disadvantaged groups where these are different from the needs of other people by increasing the supply of suitable accommodation. Fundamental to achieving this is understanding the nature and scale of the different needs of our residents so that we can respond to that demand. This process has been begun via both strategies by working with commissioners and trusted providers (utilising the extensive data and evidence they hold) to understand demand. We have also sought to understand the needs of people from protected or disadvantaged groups, where these are different from the needs of other people, via the extensive consultation exercise which has accompanied the development of both documents.

Considering which group/s you have identified the policy, project, strategy or service redesign as being relevant to, complete the table below. Be brief with your answers and only complete them for the group/s relevant to your activity.

<u>1. What is the impact of your proposal on this group?</u>	<u>2. What evidence have you used to reach this assessment?</u>	<u>3. What actions could be taken to address the impacts?</u>

<p><u>Age (older people)</u></p>	<p>The Housing Strategy (and its partner Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy) aim to enable older people to live as independently as possible within their community via care and support at home services, supported, supported housing and appropriate move on accommodation.</p>	<p>Manchester has been working on a long-term of programme of change in Adult Social care focused on maximising independence – Better Outcomes, Better Lives.</p> <p>This has informed the Housing Strategy (and the associated Enabling Independence Accommodation Strategy) alongside information from commissioners and trusted partners.</p>	<p>A key action identified in the strategy will be ensuring that we continue to develop our extra care and specialist older peoples housing offer.</p> <p>More broadly than that the strategy commits us to diversifying the older people's housing offer – including in the city centre – so that there is the right home at the right time when people are ready to move.</p>
---	--	--	---

<p><u>Age (children and young people)</u></p>	<p>There are increased risks to the physical and mental health of children which arise from poor housing conditions. This negatively impacts upon the development and educational achievement of our young people.</p> <p>The Housing Strategy seeks to address this issue where it arises in the city.</p>	<p>The negative impacts of poor housing on children and young people are very clearly highlighted and evidenced in a recent study by the Building Research Establishment – “The Cost of Poor Housing in England” (2021).</p> <p>We also know through work on the Family Poverty Strategy and the more recent Build Back Fairer Marmot Review, that poor quality and overcrowded housing is harmful to health and widens inequalities for residents.</p> <p>Larger families represent the biggest cohort in Priority Bands on the Housing Register with many spending significant periods of time waiting for a suitable property.</p> <p>Young people are more likely to rent from the private sector where housing conditions are more likely to be low quality</p> <p>Higher levels of children in care means we need more supported</p>	<p>The Private Rented Sector Strategy seeks to address poor quality management and housing condition in rented properties, predominately in the older terraced stock in the north, east and central areas of the city. It is these locations where the relationship between poor housing and health outcomes is most acute.</p> <p>Selective Licensing and HMO Licensing Schemes are assisting landlords to meet their individual responsibilities to tenants and improve housing conditions</p> <p>One of the key ambitions of the Housing Strategy is to increase the delivery of affordable family houses by over 3,000 by 2032 to meet demand from the housing register and address overcrowding in areas where average household sizes are the highest</p> <p>RP partners have developed both permanent and short term supported housing models for</p>
--	---	--	--

		and move on housing for care leavers.	care leavers – however current commissioning strategies can make bringing forward such housing challenging. Something we will address over the lifetime of the strategy
--	--	---------------------------------------	---

<p><u>Disability</u></p>	<p>Suitable homes for some of our most at risk residents, including those with disabilities, have been in very short supply.</p> <p>This strategy seeks to increase the supply of suitable accommodation to meet demand from disabled residents.</p>	<p>Manchester is working on a long-term of programme of change in Adult Social care focused on maximising independence – Better Outcomes, Better Lives. This has informed the Housing Strategy.</p> <p>We also know from growing numbers of inquiries from residents and Councillors that there are many disabled people living in the private rented sector in poor quality accommodation, unable to either get the adaptations they need to continue living in that property (because landlords refuse them) or move to an alternative suitable accommodation (because there isn't one available)</p>	<p>We will find more housing solutions for disabled households and families who are currently living in inappropriate homes.</p> <p>The Housing Strategy and EIAS commits us to strengthening the development of supported housing options for younger adults and wider move-on and independent living options for those who need our support.</p> <p>We are also committing to remodelling our homecare and adaptations services to overcome some of the barriers disabled people are facing when it comes to continuing to live in their existing homes. There will be a focus on doing things earlier and better.</p>
---------------------------------	--	---	--

<p><u>Race</u></p>	<p>Housing inequality in Manchester is directly related to the disadvantages suffered by some individuals or groups because of their characteristics (including race).</p> <p>This inequality remains a significant issue in the city and something the Housing Strategy seeks to address directly.</p>	<p>Marmot's Build Back Fairer Report for GM highlights how levels of social, environmental and economic inequalities in society are damaging health and wellbeing, how those disadvantages have been exposed and magnified by the COVID-19 pandemic and how closely they are connected to housing inequalities.</p> <p>Ethnic minority residents are more likely to rent from the private sector where housing conditions are more likely to be low quality</p> <p>Black and Asian residents on the Housing Register, generally require larger family housing, which remains severely undersupplied. This is leading to overcrowding and other housing issues for those residents.</p>	<p>Addressing overcrowding and bringing forward housing which better meets the needs of Manchester's diverse communities will be required to meet the identified challenges and address ingrained inequalities, poverty and polarisation in the city. This is one of the priorities of the new Housing Strategy.</p> <p>This includes the ambition to deliver 3,000 affordable family houses by 2032 to address overcrowding in areas where average household sizes are highest.</p> <p>Recognising community heritage and local identity in proposals to improve existing stock and build new homes will be integral to the place-based approach articulated in the forthcoming Housing Strategy. This will include proposals to bring forward a housing scheme celebrating the history and culture of the many communities who have made Moss Side their home on the site of the former</p>
---------------------------	---	--	---

			<p>Reno nightclub, a place where Black people were welcomed at a time when many night clubs unofficially barred Black people</p> <p>Similarly, we also need to improve the safety, quality & management of private rented sector homes – a key ambition of both the Housing Strategy and the Private Rented Sector strategy.</p>
Sex			

<p><u>Sexual Orientation</u></p>	<p>The Housing Strategy commits to ensuring that appropriate & accessible housing is available to cement the city's reputation as an inclusive and welcoming city for all including members of the LGBTQ+ community</p>	<p>Following consultation it was identified that older members of the LGBTQ+ community were facing prejudices in existing Extra Care schemes across Manchester</p>	<p>MCC have also worked with the LGBT Foundation and RP partners to develop a Pride in Ageing standard within older people's housing schemes and the building of UK's first an LGBT Majority Extra Care scheme with Anchor Hanover Group, to create safe celebratory spaces for LGBT residents to live.</p> <p>We are in the process of developing a strategic statement of intent in partnership with the LGBT Foundation and MHPP regarding LGBT housing.</p>
<p><u>Marriage / civil partnership</u></p>			

<u>Pregnancy / maternity</u>			
Gender Reassignment	The Housing Strategy commits to ensuring that appropriate & accessible housing is available to cement the city's reputation as an inclusive and welcoming city for all including members of the LGBTQ+ community	Following consultation, it was identified that older members of the LGBTQ+ community were facing prejudices in existing Extra Care schemes across Manchester	<p>MCC have also worked with the LGBT Foundation and RP partners to develop a Pride in Ageing standard within older people's housing schemes and the building of UK's first an LGBT Majority Extra Care scheme with Anchor Hanover Group, to create safe celebratory spaces for LGBT residents to live.</p> <p>We are in the process of developing a strategic statement of intent in partnership with the LGBT Foundation and MHPP regarding LGBT housing.</p>

<u>Faith / religion / belief</u>			
<u>Additional / Optional Characteristics</u>			

<p><u>Families living in Poverty</u></p>	<p>The Housing Strategy sets out our priorities aimed at improving the housing options for lower income families and families in Temporary Accommodation</p>	<p>There are too many people living in Temporary Accommodation often for far too long (c.2,800 households incl. 1,900 families).</p> <p>The city is becoming increasingly reliant on private sector dispersed accommodation (which currently houses over 90% of all households in TA) and we are having to accommodate people outside of the city away from family networks due to demand and lack of supply.</p> <p>Similarly, c.40% of households in Priority Need on the Housing Register require 3 or more bedrooms</p> <p>We know through work on the Family Poverty Strategy and the more recent Build Back Fairer Marmot Review, that poor quality and overcrowded housing is harmful to health and widens inequalities for residents.</p>	<p>MCC will work with partners in the Manchester Housing Provider Partnership to ensure that new homes built in the city are designed to meet the needs of families in poverty to reduce the numbers in overcrowded properties, on the Housing Register and in TA</p> <p>This strategy is supported by the recent review of the city's Allocations Scheme - where access for those in greatest need, including people who are living in temporary accommodation, has been improved. Whilst this will not solve the Temporary Accommodation crisis fully, it will enable some people to access accommodation more quickly and offer a greater opportunity and flow through the allocation system.</p>
---	--	---	--

<u>Carers</u>			
----------------------	--	--	--

<p><u>Homelessness</u></p>	<p>The level of homelessness in the city is unacceptably high.</p> <p>Accordingly, one of the main vision principles of the Housing Strategy is to 'Work to end Homelessness...'</p>	<p>The number of people presenting as homeless is continuing to increase (over 9,500 presentations in 2020-21 – 60% more than in 2017-18).</p> <p>This is costing the Council c.£15m annually.</p> <p>Evidence from the Manchester Homelessness Partnership highlights the difficulty of finding suitable homes in the private sector – especially larger family properties where competition for limited stock is high.</p>	<p>The strategy commits us to increase the supply of appropriate housing for homeless households to reduce the time spent in Temporary Accommodation</p> <p>MCC will work with partners in the Manchester Housing Provider Partnership to ensure that new homes built in the city are designed to meet the needs of households experiencing the various forms of homelessness</p> <p>This strategy is supported by the recent review of the city's Allocations Scheme - where access for those in greatest need, including people who are living in temporary accommodation, has been improved. Whilst this will not solve the Temporary Accommodation crisis fully, it will enable some people to access accommodation more quickly and offer a greater opportunity and flow through the allocation system.</p>
-----------------------------------	--	--	--

			<p>Innovative solutions led by the city's Housing and Homelessness Services will also be reflected in the forthcoming Homelessness Strategy.</p> <p>The key priorities are likely to focus around increasing prevention, ending rough sleeping and reducing the use of B&B & temporary accommodation through more affordable and appropriate housing solutions linked to Better Outcomes, Better Lives</p>
Ex-Armed Forces	<p>The Armed Forces community should not face disadvantage compared to other citizens in the provision of public and commercial services.</p> <p>Special consideration is appropriate in some cases, especially for those who have given most such as the injured and the bereaved.</p>	<p>MCC is signed up to the Armed Forces Covenant.</p> <p>The purpose of this Covenant is to encourage support for the Armed Forces Community working and residing in Manchester and to recognise and remember the sacrifices made by members of this Armed Forces Community, particularly those who have given the most.</p> <p>This includes in-Service and ex-Service personnel their families and widow(er)s in Manchester</p>	<p>MCC's commitments, as a member of the Covenant, will be upheld as part of the delivery of the Housing Strategy and associated policies.</p>

--	--	--	--

4. Quality Assurance - Equality, Diversity and Inclusion Team

Send your draft EqIA to the EDI Team inbox - equalitiesteam@manchester.gov.uk using **EqIA Advice – Your Service Name.** in the subject line.

EDI Team: Name		Date reviewed:	
-----------------------	--	-----------------------	--

5. Head of Service Approval

Your completed analysis needs to be signed off by your Head of Service.

Name:		Date:	
Job title:		Signature:	

Annex 1 – Actions Log

Use this table to list the actions you have identified to mitigate and adverse risks, detailing who will be responsible for completing these and setting clear timescales for delivery. Your actions will be reviewed at 6 months and 12 months to assess progress.

<u>Actions identified in your EqIA</u>	<u>Responsible officer / team for delivery</u>	<u>Timescale for delivery</u>	<u>Comments</u>

Manchester City Council Report for Resolution

Report to: Economy Scrutiny Committee – 21 July 2022
Executive – 22 July 2022

Subject: HS2 Update and Petition

Report of: Strategic Director of Growth & Development

Summary

This report informs the Executive on the current progress of the High Speed (Crewe – Manchester) Bill (known as ‘HS2 Phase 2b’) in Parliament and outlines the key issues which the Council intend to petition against.

Recommendations

The Economy Scrutiny Committee is recommended to:-

- (1) Consider the report and recommendations and to endorse the recommendations as detailed below

The Executive is recommended to:-

- (1) Note the current progress of the High Speed (Crewe - Manchester) hybrid Bill (“the Bill”), as introduced into 24th January 2022 session of Parliament, as detailed in this report.
- (2) Note the proposed key contents of the City Council’s petition against aspects of the Bill, set out in this report.
- (3) Note that the Department for Transport is bringing forward ‘Additional Provisions’ to amend the Bill, and that it may be necessary for the Council to petition against the Additional Provisions in addition to petitioning against the Bill.
- (4) Note the delegated authority approved by Council on 4 March 2022 to the Strategic Director – Growth & Development, in consultation with the Leader and City Solicitor, to take all the steps required for the Council to submit any petition (including petitions against Additional Provisions) and thereafter to maintain and if considered appropriate authorise the withdrawal of any petition points that have been resolved in respect of the Bill, and to negotiate and/or seek assurances/undertaking/agreements to aspects of the Bill.
- (5) Note that the full petition will be provided to Members following its submission to House of Commons on 4th August 2022.

Wards Affected:

Ardwick, Ancoats & Beswick, Baguley, Burnage, Didsbury East, Didsbury West, Fallowfield, Levenshulme, Northenden, Piccadilly, Rusholme, and Woodhouse Park.

Environmental Impact Assessment - the impact of the issues addressed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city

<p>At the national level, whilst there are likely to be additional carbon emissions in the short-term from the construction of HS2, the project is likely to be less carbon intensive than other non-rail alternative transport schemes that would deliver similar transport outcomes. More crucially, high speed rail can encourage a modal shift away from car use, especially where it creates capacity on the conventional railway, to encourage more shorter-distance trips by rail.</p>

<p>In addition, improvements to rail capacity will enable more freight to be transported using rail, reducing the number of journeys by road, and has the potential to reduce demand for domestic flights. The integration of HS2 and NPR and investment in new rail infrastructure also provides opportunities for decarbonisation of rail, across the North.</p>
--

<p>All these factors are important contributions to acting on the climate change emergency declared by Manchester City Council, helping to reduce carbon emissions in line with policy aspirations to become a zero-carbon city by 2038, supporting the emerging Clean Air Plan for Greater Manchester.</p>

<p>Major investment in both Manchester Piccadilly and Manchester Airport HS2/NPR stations will provide excellent facilities for public transport connections and support the integration of the transport network in Manchester, as part of the wider integration of transport for Greater Manchester and across the North. This would contribute to the city's zero-carbon targets and the planning of sustainable transport infrastructure to support future growth.</p>
--

<p>All new development around Piccadilly under the Strategic Regeneration Framework is expected to be zero-carbon. Similarly, we expect HS2 Ltd to use sustainable materials and methods of construction, which will not impact on the city's zero-carbon targets - the target for the city to be zero-carbon by 2038 at the latest aligns with the current estimated completion dates for HS2 in 2036-2041. We have challenged DfT/HS2 Ltd on these issues are part of our Environmental Statement response.</p>

<p>We are also challenging HS2 Ltd on proposals for highways layouts and levels of car parking in the city centre. The City Centre Transport Strategy includes the ambition to reduce vehicles in the city centre and increase the use of public transport and active travel modes for travelling around, to and from the city centre. If proposals appear to be contradictory to our local policies and targets on climate change, then we will look to petition against those aspects as part of the parliamentary process.</p>

Equality, Diversity and Inclusion - the impact of the issues addressed in this report in meeting our Public Sector Equality Duty and broader equality commitments

The Council welcomes the commitment of HS2 Ltd to consider equality as part of the assessment for the Proposed Scheme. As detailed in our formal response to the parliamentary consultation on HS2's EqlA, the Council feel there are still a number of issues that could be resolved or improved by HS2 Ltd

The Council will seek to ensure, both through the parliamentary process and working with HS2 Ltd, that equality issues are robustly considered by HS2 Ltd throughout the design and implementation of the Proposed Scheme and ensure that any adverse impacts on Protected Characteristics Groups (PCG's) during construction or operation are avoided or mitigated appropriately, where possible

Manchester Strategy outcomes	Summary of how this report aligns to the OMS/Contribution to the Strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	<p>A high-speed line between Manchester, the West Midlands and London, and improved rail connections in the North of England, as proposed by Transport for the North through Northern Powerhouse Rail (NPR) will support business development in the region. The scheme has the potential to provide a catalyst which can attract further investment into Greater Manchester by creating a new gateway into the regional centre and boost the investor confidence in the area.</p> <p>Specifically, the proposals for HS2/NPR stations at Manchester Piccadilly and Manchester Airport provide major opportunities for stimulating economic growth and regeneration in the surrounding areas.</p>
A highly skilled city: world class and home grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	<p>The high-speed rail network serving the city centre and the Airport, regeneration of the Piccadilly area, will enable and further development around the Airport, and thus contribute towards the continuing economic growth of the city, providing additional job opportunities, at a range of skill levels, for residents. As part of the high-speed rail Growth Strategy, a Greater Manchester High Speed Rail Skills Strategy has been developed, to best enable residents to access the opportunities created by both the construction of the High-Speed rail infrastructure and from the additional investment and regeneration arising from it.</p>
A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities	<p>The economic growth brought about by high-speed rail, and the regeneration of the Piccadilly area, will help to provide additional job opportunities for residents, as well as improved connections for our communities to jobs in the city centre and beyond.</p> <p>The area will also provide new leisure opportunities, including new areas of public realm, accessible to all members of the public.</p>

<p>A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit, work</p>	<p>The Manchester Piccadilly Strategic Regeneration Framework (SRF) provides a vision and framework for the regeneration of the Piccadilly area as a key gateway to the city, with a unique sense of place. Providing new, high quality commercial accommodation, new residential accommodation and the public amenities including public realm, retail, and leisure opportunities, will create a desirable location in which to live, work and visit.</p> <p>HS2 will enable the provision of improved public transport, through the capacity released on the classic rail network and, if aligned with Greater Manchester's plans, integration with other transport modes at Manchester Piccadilly and Manchester Airport. This can encourage more public transport journeys and less reliance on cars. Improvements to rail capacity will also enable more freight to be transported using rail, reducing the number of journeys by road.</p> <p>The provision of HS2 and NPR will also support the planned development around Piccadilly and the Airport included within the draft Places for Everyone Framework.</p>
<p>A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth</p>	<p>HS2, together with NPR and the proposed Northern Hub rail schemes, will bring a step change in rail connectivity both across GM and to the rest of the UK. HS2 and NPR will radically enhance north-south and east-west connectivity between the country's major cities, which will increase labour market accessibility, open new markets for trade and stimulate economic growth, as well as better connecting people to job opportunities.</p> <p>The city's plans for Manchester Piccadilly and Manchester Airport Station are to provide world-class transport interchanges that can act as gateways to the city and city region.</p>

Full details are in the body of the report, along with any implications for:

- Equal Opportunities Policy
- Risk Management
- Legal Considerations

Financial Consequences – Revenue

The overall financial and resource implications of reaching agreements and/or petitioning will be the subject of further assessment as matters requiring agreement and associated technical work are better understood. As additional funding requirements become known, resources will be identified and reported for approval in accordance with the Council's financial procedure rules.

Financial Consequences – Capital

None directly from this report.

Legal Considerations

The Council is being supported by Parliamentary Agents through the petition process.

Contact Officers:

Name: Rebecca Heron
Position: Strategic Director - Growth and Development
Telephone: 0161 243 5515
E-mail: Rebecca.Heron@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Pat Bartoli
Position: Director of City Centre Growth & Infrastructure
Telephone: 0161 234 3329
Email: Pat.bartoli@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Fiona Ledden
Position: City Solicitor
Telephone: 0161 234 3087
E-mail: fiona.ledden@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection):

The following documents disclose important facts on which the report is based and have been relied upon in preparing the report. Copies of the background documents are available up to 4 years after the date of the meeting. If you would like a copy, please contact one of the contact officers above.

- Report to Executive 27 June 2018 – Manchester Piccadilly Strategic Regeneration Framework Update 2018
- Manchester Piccadilly Strategic Regeneration Framework 2018
- HS2 Working Draft Environmental Statement 2018, available at: <https://www.gov.uk/government/collections/hs2-phase-2b-working-draft-environmental-statement>

- Report to Economy Scrutiny 7 November 2018 - HS2 Working Draft Environmental Statement (WDES)
- Report to Executive - 12 December 2018 - HS2 Working Draft Environmental Statement (WDES)
- HS2 Phase 2b Working Draft Environmental Statement Consultation Response of the Greater Manchester Combined Authority 2018
- HS2 Phase 2b Working Draft Environmental Statement Consultation Response of Manchester City Council 2018
- HS2 Phase 2b Design Refinement Consultation 2019, available at: <https://www.gov.uk/government/consultations/hs2-phase-2b-design-refinement-consultation>
- Report to Executive – 11 September 2019 – HS2 Phase 2b Design Refinement Consultation 2019
- HS2 Phase 2b Design Refinement Consultation 2020, available at: <https://www.gov.uk/government/consultations/hs2-phase-2b-western-leg-design-refinement-consultation>
- Report to Executive - 9 December 2020 - HS2 Phase 2b Western Leg Design Refinement Consultation Response
- Report to Economic Scrutiny 5 March 2020 - High Speed North (High Speed 2 and Northern Powerhouse Rail) Update
- Report to Economic Scrutiny 10 March 2022 - HS2 Phase 2b Western Leg - Environmental Statement Consultation & hybrid Bill Petitioning Response
- Report to Executive 16 March 2022 - HS2 Phase 2b Western Leg - Environmental Statement Consultation & hybrid Bill Petitioning Response
- HS2 Phase 2b hybrid Bill and related documents: <https://Bills.parliament.uk/Bills/3094>

1.0 Background

- 1.1 High Speed Two (HS2) is the Government's scheme to implement a new high speed north – south railway network, from Manchester to London via Birmingham and Crewe. This is a major national infrastructure proposal that would be progressed over several decades and is being taken forward in a number of phases. 'Phase one' will connect London with Birmingham and the West Midlands. 'Phase 2a' will extend the route from the West Midlands to Crewe. 'Phase 2b' will connect Crewe to Manchester. Phase one received Royal Assent on 23 February 2017 and Phase 2 received Royal Assent on 11 February 2021.
- 1.2 The Bill for HS2 Phase 2b (Crewe – Manchester) was deposited in Parliament by the Department for Transport (DfT) on 24 January 2022.
- 1.3 The Phase 2b Bill would grant the powers and permission for HS2 Ltd to build and operate the railway between Crewe and Manchester.

2.0 HS2 Phase 2b Bill proposals

- 2.1 The Bill for Phase 2b, as currently before Parliament, would secure powers to implement new HS2 stations at Manchester Piccadilly and Manchester Airport, and a railway tunnel from Davenport Green to Ardwick with ventilation shafts at Junction 3A of the M56, Withington Golf Club (Palatine Road), a site near the Christie Hospital (Wilmslow Road), and Fallowfield retail park (Birchfield Road). More specifically the Bill includes powers to:
 - build, maintain and operate HS2;
 - compulsorily acquire interests in the land required;
 - sever the existing Ashton line of the Metrolink to enable the construction of HS2's Piccadilly station;
 - Amend the Metrolink network, including the provision of a turnback at New Islington, new track to serve a Piccadilly Central stop and passive provision at the HS2 Airport station (but not a stop or new track);
 - affect or change rights of way, including the stopping-up or diversion of highways and waterways (permanently or temporarily);
 - modify infrastructure belonging to statutory undertakers (e.g., utility companies);
 - carry out work on listed buildings and demolish buildings in conservation areas;
 - carry out protective works to buildings and third-party infrastructure;
 - make necessary changes to, or disapply, existing legislation to facilitate construction and operation of HS2, including Planning, Highways and Environmental legislation.
 - Introduce bespoke consenting regimes to generally replace disapplied legislation with streamlined processes, associated with Planning, Highways and Environmental issues, amongst others.

3.0 Progress of the Bill in Parliament

3.1 The HS2 Phase 2b Bill has now gone through the following stages:

- High Speed Rail (Crewe – Manchester) Bill deposited to Parliament on 24 January 2022.
- Environmental Statement and Equality Impact Assessment Consultation period closed on 31 March 2022.
- Independent Assessors Report regarding consultations published on 6 June 2022.
- Second Reading of the Bill in the House of Commons on 20 June 2022.
- Additional Provision 1 deposited on 6 July 2022 making amendments to the Bill outside the city on the removal of the Golborne Link (a piece of infrastructure connecting HS2 to the West Coast Mainline south of Wigan).

3.2 Environmental Statement Consultation Response

3.3 Reports were submitted to the March meetings of Economy Scrutiny and Executive outlining the Council's response to the consultation on the Bill's Environmental Statement (ES) and Equality Impact Assessment (EqIA), which was submitted to Parliament on 31 March 2022, following Members' approval.

3.4 An Independent Assessor's Report (IAR) on the outcomes of the consultation was published on 6 June 2022. The purpose of the AIR is to provide Parliament and the wider public with a summary of the matters raised against the environmental topics covered in the ES. The independent assessor's role was not to provide a judgement on the validity or otherwise of comments, or suggest actions to address them, but to summarise the main matters raised where substantial concerns have been expressed.

3.5 The report states a total of 6,391 individual responses were received by the public and stakeholders. 5,829 originated from a campaign organised by the Woodland Trust, with a further 562 responses from other parties. The most commonly raised issues related to matters categorised under the environmental themes of traffic and transport, ecology and biodiversity and community.

3.6 The report directly quoted concerns raised by the Council regarding Air Quality, Construction Impacts, Ecology and Biodiversity, Historic Environment, Traffic and Transport. The report highlighted that the Council, amongst other Greater Manchester stakeholders, including Trafford Council and Manchester Airport Group, support the principle of HS2.

3.7 The report stated that Cheshire West and Chester Council, Trafford Council, Manchester City Council, Greater Manchester Combined Authority and Manchester Airport Group, all expressed disappointment at the level of engagement and lack of responses from HS2 Ltd to their concerns and comments on previous consultations and previous environmental information

provided. Several community groups also commented regarding a perceived lack of engagement by HS2 Ltd.

3.8 Second Reading and Select Committee Process

- 3.9 The House of Commons passed the Second Reading of the Bill on 20 June, meaning the Select Committee stage (i.e., petitioning stage) of the parliamentary process has now formally commenced, with a deadline for any petitions to be returned by no later than 5pm on 4 August 2022. In order to be heard by the Select Committee, a petitioner must be considered to be 'directly and specially' affected by the proposals in the Bill (The Council is included in this category).
- 3.10 Second Reading is an important milestone for the proposed scheme, as from this point forward, the principle of the Bill is established meaning petitions cannot challenge the "principle" of the proposed scheme (e.g., the need for the scheme, or the provision of the line or stations in the stated location), but only the detail of the proposed scheme.
- 3.11 On 6 July 2022, HS2 Ltd. deposited an Additional Provision (AP) setting out a number of changes to the Bill. There is a further deadline to petition against this AP (9 August 2022), but none of the changes included in the AP are within the city, so it is not yet clear that the Council will need to submit a further petition. HS2 Ltd. have indicated that a second AP will be deposited, making changes within Trafford and the city. The Council may need to petition against that AP. If the Council succeeds in persuading HS2 Ltd. or the Select Committee that changes should be made to the Bill, then further APs may be deposited to implement them.
- 3.12 Petitions against the Bill and any Additional Provisions will all be heard by the same Select Committee.
- 3.13 During the Committee stage, HS2 Ltd would usually seek to negotiate with petitioners and attempt to satisfy their issues, in order to avoid them appearing before the Select Committee. Where a petitioner cannot reach an agreement with HS2 Ltd, the Select Committee will ultimately decide if HS2 Ltd are required to satisfy a petitioner's requests.
- 3.14 The Select Committee is expected to commence hearing petitioners in early autumn 2022, and the Committee stage is likely to last until the end of 2023. Following this period, the Bill will be further debated in the House of Commons and then the House of Lords, until agreement is reached in both houses. There will also be a Select Committee for the House of Lords, but that Select Committee cannot make changes that extend the scope of the Bill.

4.0 Key Petition Issues

- 4.1 As explained above, any petition against the proposed scheme must be submitted to Parliament on or before 4th August 2022, in order to be considered and heard by the Select Committee. As reported previously, the

Council will submit a petition by this deadline, in line with the approval granted at Full Council on 4 March 2022. The petition needs to be comprehensive as the Select Committee will only consider issues if they are set out in the petition.

- 4.2 The reports to Economy Scrutiny and Executive in March described the issues of concern likely to be included in the Council's petition, and also noted that, due to the size and complexity of the Bill further issues may be identified which may need to be included in the final petition.
- 4.3 This report recaps and updates on the issues set out in the March reports and highlights additional points which have been identified or where there have been changes identified since then, including elements which were also raised within the Council's response to the Environmental Statement. A copy of the full petition will be provided to Members once the submission has been made.
- 4.4 As reported previously, Manchester is continuing to work closely with Greater Manchester (GM) Partners in preparing their respective petitions, as well as with neighbouring authorities, such as Cheshire East on issues of joint concern (e.g., highways impact around Manchester Airport). The Council's petition will be aligned with those of other GM partners, whilst emphasising and highlighting issues of particular concern for the city.
- 4.5 Representation has been made to the Secretary of State for Transport by the CA and GM partners, including the Council, setting out their shared concerns and issues with some of the content of the Bill.
- 4.6 **Manchester Piccadilly Station**
- 4.7 It is imperative that the station to be created at Manchester Piccadilly is a world class, fully integrated transport hub which can actively maximise economic growth and facilitate the regeneration of the eastern side of the city centre.
- 4.8 The surface terminus station proposed for Manchester Piccadilly within the Bill does not deliver the right solution to provide the required level of reliability and resilience to effectively support the wider High-Speed network. Furthermore, it significantly impacts on the delivery of the place-making and economic growth agenda set out in the approved Piccadilly SRF and the GM HS2 / NPR Growth Strategy. The Bill proposes a 'bolt on' of NPR onto the HS2 scheme, as opposed to taking a holistic view of how to best deliver a fully integrated HS2 and NPR solution, considering long term capacity, reliability, connectivity, and future proofing.
- 4.9 In addition, the provision of a NPR route towards Leeds, included within the Integrated Rail Plan, suggest that a significant amount of surface infrastructure will be needed in the Ardwick area to enable the NPR trains to use a surface station. This infrastructure will cause blight and severance to the surrounding communities, as well as leading to a loss of a significant amount of

developable land, impeding future economic growth and provision of jobs. Such infrastructure would not be needed with an underground station.

- 4.10 The Council's petition will object to the planned surface station proposed for Piccadilly Station and will request a fully integrated underground station solution.

4.11 Gateway House

- 4.12 The Bill does not include a commitment to remove Gateway House on Station Approach, and the supporting Environmental Statement envisages Gateway House being retained. Retaining Gateway House fails to provide an attractive and fit for purpose entrance sequence for the station and gateway into the city centre, that will meet anticipated increased pedestrian capacity and facilitate the regeneration set out in the Manchester Piccadilly SRF. This failure will create congestion, pressure on the station entrance, an unappealing and low-quality arrival experience, and lack of connection to the rest of the city centre and the Piccadilly SRF area.

- 4.13 We will, therefore, request that the Bill be amended to include the acquisition and demolition of Gateway House and an undertaking provided that the final design of Manchester Piccadilly will include an integrated station and station approach, that delivers a high-quality gateway which is in accordance with the strategic vision for Manchester.

4.14 Piccadilly Highways Works

- 4.15 The Bill's proposals of a gyratory junction layout at Pin Mill Brow are too expansive and does not consider local transport and environment, zero carbon and clean air policies, which look to reduce car trips into the city centre, or of the station's city centre location. The junction also takes a considerable amount of land in the SRF area, resulting in a loss of vital development land, and creating a poor local environment. The proposed gyratory will, therefore, result in significant adverse impacts on the regeneration proposals within the city centre. They also fail to provide adequate cycling and walking access.

- 4.16 The Council is also concerned about the quality of traffic modelling that has been undertaken by HS2 Ltd to inform the highway design that is proposed, impacting traffic flows across the city centre.

- 4.17 The Council's petition will, therefore, request that DfT replaces the Bill gyratory design with an alternative which takes up a much smaller land area and so better integrates with the Piccadilly SRF and is more closely aligned to policies aimed at reducing journeys into the city centre by private car, as well as being less of a barrier to pedestrians and cyclist.

4.18 Parking & Multi Modal Interchange at Piccadilly Station

- 4.19 The Bill includes two multi storey car parks with a total capacity of approximately 2,000 parking spaces, situated on the proposed Boulevard

included in the Piccadilly SRF. The amount and location of car parking proposed at Manchester Piccadilly is unacceptable to the Council and needs to be appropriate to its city centre location, next to a major transport hub, and in the context of the Piccadilly SRF and wider national and local environmental policies to reduce general traffic and over-reliance on private cars.

- 4.20 Placing two large car parks, comprising over 2,000 spaces in this location will result both in the loss of prime development land, and also detract from the environment, attractiveness, and purpose of the Boulevard, as a key pedestrian-dominated public realm connection and prime business address, as well as unnecessarily encouraging car trips.
- 4.21 The Council's petition will request that parking numbers are considerably reduced (ideally providing spaces for essential rail operation uses and accessible parking only); that parking is moved to a different location; and that HS2 Ltd work with the Council and other GM partners to find an acceptable solution which promotes a positive move to public transport and other sustainable transport modes.
- 4.22 We will also be requesting that HS2 Ltd work collaboratively with Council and GM Partners to provide a "multi modal interchange" adjacent to the HS2 station, providing a bus/coach facility, that can enable easy switching between bus, heavy rail and Metrolink transport.
- 4.23 **Network Rail Maintenance Ramp**
- 4.24 The Bill proposes the relocation of the current ramp used by Network Rail to access the viaduct at Piccadilly Station for maintenance and catering. The Council have significant concerns about the proposed vehicle route to the new access ramp, as set out in the Bill, which routes vehicles through an area of the Mayfield development. This area is not suitable for road vehicles and significantly compromises the development by routing heavy duty traffic through the area. The proposals will detract from the ability to secure and retain business in the area, and consequently the ability to deliver the growth and jobs outcomes.
- 4.25 The Council's petition will request that HS2 work with the Council, the Mayfield Partnership and TfGM to develop an alternative, locally acceptable route for the Network Rail ramp, that minimises adverse impacts on one of the city's most significant growth and regeneration areas.
- 4.26 **Relocation of North Block Services**
- 4.27 To construct the new HS2 station, it is necessary to demolish and relocate an office block which is situated next to Gateway House, "North Block". The proposal within the Bill is to build a replacement facility over the Network Rail "relay room", which is due to be moved/removed by c.2045. The Council are concerned that this proposal may prevent the removal of the relay room, to facilitate the future development of an eastern entrance to the station, which would provide a more effective route into the station complex from the east,

allowing better integration with the existing station access bridge. The current proposed access arrangements are unacceptable in terms of wayfinding, customer experience and walking distances.

- 4.28 The Council's petition will request that HS2 Ltd work with the Council and TfGM to develop a design for a relocated North Block building that safeguards the construction of an Eastern access at future date, and provide a legible, attractive and efficient route from the East.
- 4.29 **Metrolink at Manchester Piccadilly**
- 4.30 The Bill includes a new sub surface Metrolink Piccadilly stop, "future proofing" a proposed Piccadilly Central stop (within the Piccadilly SRF area), a concourse shared between transport modes and other supporting infrastructure. The Council are in full support of the relocation and enhancement of the Metrolink stop at Piccadilly and the provision of a new Manchester Central stop. However, we are concerned that the current proposals do not fully integrate Metrolink with the high-speed and classic rail services or provide adequate future-proofing.
- 4.31 The Bill only provides "passive provision" for future construction of the Piccadilly Central stop. We believe that the Bill should provide the powers to enable the full delivery of Piccadilly Central. We also require a commitment that HS2 Ltd will open the new Metrolink Piccadilly stop prior to the opening of the HS2 station. These actions are needed to ensure connections from the SRF and Mayfield areas, and the rest of the city, are provided from the opening of the high speed station.
- 4.32 The Council is also concerned that the bus replacement service to be provided during the construction of new Metrolink infrastructure is inadequate, will impact on congestion and air quality, and will not meet the needs of the travelling public.
- 4.33 HS2 Ltd will be requested to revise their proposals to address these concerns.
- 4.34 The Bill proposals include the full closure of the Ashton Line for a period of approximately 2 years, with a replacement bus service. This level of disruption is totally unacceptable to The Council and GM partners and will significantly impact on communities and businesses in East Manchester, as well as events at the Etihad Campus and Coop Live Arena. The provision of a new Metrolink depot at new depot at Ashton Moss could enable the Ashton line to remain open throughout the construction of HS2.
- 4.35 The Council opposes the location of the tram turnback at New Islington as it impacts on the adjacent "Electric Park" development at Pollard Street, resulting in potential delays to the project and loss of jobs. We believe that the turnback facility should instead be located at the Velopark tram stop, which would both avoid the impact on Pollard Street and provide the potential opportunity for additional future services to be run to serve the Etihad Campus and Coop Live Arena.

- 4.36 The Council's petition will request that the turnback is located at Velopark, rather than New Islington, and that a new depot is provided at Ashton Moss to enable the Ashton Line to remain open during HS2's construction and minimise disruption to Metrolink services and passengers.
- 4.37 **Ardwick NPR Viaduct**
- 4.38 As part of the Bill, HS2 are providing passive provision for NPR connections to Leeds in the Ardwick area. HS2 are proposing to build an embankment and a box structure over the HS2 cutting to achieve this. There is a section of viaduct that connects the two pieces of infrastructure that HS2 Ltd are not proposing to build as part of the HS2 scheme, but which instead will be constructed as part of the NPR scheme to Leeds, after the construction of HS2 is completed. This will mean unnecessary and prolonged disruption and blight in this area of Ardwick, as well as being more costly. In addition, by proposing the NPR connections in the location, and with the alignment that they have, also consequently fixed the route of NPR itself – given the limited ability to change the gradient or curve of a high speed line. This means that additional viaducts will be needed in the Ardwick area to construct NPR.
- 4.39 The Council will petition to request that this missing piece of infrastructure should be included within the Bill scheme and that blight in Ardwick is minimised.
- 4.40 **Issues with the Manchester Tunnel: Ventilation Shafts & South Tunnel Portal**
- 4.41 The proposal in the Bill to locate a ventilation shaft immediately adjacent to Birchfields Primary School, on part of the Fallowfield Retail Park is unacceptable. It will have a significant impact on both the primary school and the nearby MEA Central Academy School, particularly during construction; it would remove local retail facilities; and cause job losses through the impacts on the retail park. It will also remove the 'Park & Stride' scheme for the school, which helps to improve children's safety. The Council have previously suggested 4 alternative locations for the ventilation shaft in the immediate area, which we do not believe have been adequately considered by HS2 Ltd. The Council's petition will request that the Bill be amended to relocate this ventilation shaft to another location, as previously suggested, preferably at the site of the University of Manchester Armitage Sports Centre.
- 4.42 The proposal to locate a ventilation shaft and associated headhouse at Palatine Road, on Withington Golf Club, is a major concern for the Council. The location is within a flood zone and the Council are concerned that flooding could cause safety issues both during construction and operation of the railway. The Council's petition will seek to ensure that HS2 Ltd properly mitigates these issues.
- 4.43 The proposal to locate a ventilation shaft and associated headhouse at Chancellors Lane/Wilmslow Road, which is currently used for car parking by

the Christie Hospital (known as 'Car Park D'), is a concern for the Council. The location is in close proximity to residential properties and would also displace car parking spaces for the hospital. The Council will seek, through its petition, to ensure HS2 Ltd address these concerns robustly through appropriate mitigation of construction impacts and impacts on the hospital's operation (both in terms of car parking loss and environmental effects on hospital users including patients).

- 4.44 The final designs of the ventilation shafts and headhouses need to respond sensitively to the local environment; and fully mitigate any impact on residents and business during constructions. The Council will seek to gain appropriate undertakings and assurances on these design matters from HS2 Ltd
- 4.45 In the Bill, the HS2/NPR Airport station forecourt would be raised by approximately 5m above the level previously proposed in the 2018 Working Draft Environmental Statement, i.e., a change from 'deep cutting' to 'shallow cutting'. There is concern that residents in the Newall Green area of Manchester will be impacted by the raised alignment as this community sits just above the tunnel portal entrance, with potential for a greater impact from the noise of HS2 trains entering and leaving the tunnel, as well as its proximity to the construction site. The Council's petition will request that HS2 Ltd give an undertaking to fully mitigate these impacts, including further engagement to agree the mitigation for noise impacts near the tunnel portal.
- 4.46 **Manchester Airport Station**
- 4.47 Manchester Airport plays a pivotal role in providing access to international markets from the North of England and is central to delivering the levelling up agenda and post COVID-19 economic recovery. HS2, NPR and Metrolink connectivity at Manchester Airport will require fully integrated station solutions. The design of the HS2 Airport Station also needs to be fully integrated with local development plans and existing planning policies, including Places for Everyone, ensuring proper connections to the surrounding development areas included within this plan.
- 4.48 **Metrolink at Manchester Airport**
- 4.49 The Bill proposals sever TfGM's existing Metrolink powers to operate and maintain a Metrolink route that connects to the HS2/NPR Manchester Airport Station. The Bill includes provision for an isolated Metrolink stop above the high-speed station without providing the necessary replacement powers to connect to the wider network. This is a totally inadequate and unacceptable approach which needs to be rectified through the Bill process.
- 4.50 Furthermore, the Bill proposes access to Manchester Airport from the HS2 station by a shuttle bus. These shuttle buses will add congestion to an already congested highway network. This does not align with local policy.
- 4.51 The Council's petition requests that the Bill is amended to include sufficient powers for the construction, operation, and maintenance of a Metrolink route

that connects to the Airport high speed station. These powers should also be sufficient to enable TfGM to construct a turnout immediately to the west of the high-speed station for its proposed tram-train extension to the southwest.

- 4.52 A further issue is caused by the shallow cut station design, which has resulted in the Metrolink tram stop and approach viaducts being similarly raised to a significant height above existing ground level, leading to an increase in construction cost, embodied carbon, and environmental impacts. The petition further specifies that any increase in costs to the Metrolink scheme and mitigation will be covered by the DfT.
- 4.53 Highways Issues at Manchester Airport**
- 4.54 The Council and GM Partners do not believe the proposed highway access between the HS2 Airport station and Junction 6 of the M56 will accommodate future demand relating to the Strategic Road Network as a result of HS2, NPR and committed local developments, or that HS2 Ltd. have carried out appropriate traffic modelling to determine the full level of demand.
- 4.55 It is evident that significant changes are needed to the highway works in this location, and that this needs to be planned in a holistic, rather than piecemeal way to avoid prolonged disruption and a sub-optimum outcome that will not be the best use of public money. The Council's petition will request that HS2 Ltd work collaboratively with The Council, GM Partners and National Highways to deliver a holistic solution to the cumulative highway impacts in the Airport area.
- 4.56 The proposed highways scheme also fails to provide adequate cycling facilities, in line with current standards. We will request that the proposals are redesigned to include cycling facilities in accordance with current best practice.
- 4.57 The Council is further concerned about the fact that the local highway network will be used by a high number of HGVs per day during construction. This will have significant adverse impacts on the Airport, the local economy, residents, the highway network, and the environment. HS2 Ltd will be requested to work with The Council to design and deliver appropriate mitigation where significant impacts are predicted.
- 4.58 The Council and GM partners have previously requested that HS2 Ltd consider options to use rail to move a proportion of materials required to construct the Airport station and tunnel portal, to reduce the level of road-based construction traffic. The Council's petition will request that a conveyor/ railhead system is used to dispose of construction spoil and transport materials to site, and that a full environmental appraisal of the impacts is carried out. This assessment should consider the impact on residents and maximises the legacy opportunities from the temporary rail links needed for the construction material.

4.59 Further information will also be requested on how vehicle parking numbers have been determined, to ensure the right level of provision at the Airport Station, which also considers the impact on congestion and zero-carbon policies, and policies to encourage travel by public transport and active modes.

4.60 **Route Wide Issues**

4.61 Many of the direct and indirect impacts of the proposed scheme will affect multiple locations. Where an issue affects multiple locations, or even the entire route, these are generally referred to as 'route wide effects'.

4.62 **Environmental Impacts**

4.63 Each environmental effect of the proposed scheme often overlaps with many other specific environmental topics, such as air quality, health and traffic and transport and the Council will seek to ensure that these multifaceted and complex environmental effects and issues are holistically considered and robustly dealt with by HS2 Ltd, through the petitioning process. Notwithstanding this overarching approach, the detail of some of the specific environmental topics are highlighted below.

4.64 **Air Quality**

4.65 The construction and operation of the railway will have significant air quality impacts in Manchester at several locations along the route. The construction impacts, including HGV movements, are of particular concern to the Council and these impacts will directly affect the health of our residents, communities and potentially unduly impact vulnerable groups. The Council will seek to exhaust all options and possibilities to avoid, or mitigate, these adverse impacts. For example, we will be seeking that HS2 Ltd maximise the movement of construction spoil by rail to reduce HGV movements in communities.

4.66 **Community**

4.67 The current proposed scheme will impact or demolish at least 79 Commercial, 19 Residential and 35 other types of properties in Manchester including a number of important community services and buildings between Ardwick and Piccadilly. The Council would seek to ensure that HS2 Ltd directly engage and work positively with residents and businesses affected. Where community assets and services are adversely affected, the Council will seek direct compensation or mitigation for affected local communities.

4.68 Further, The Council is concerned that HS2 Ltd and its contractors may not effectively and sufficiently engage and communicate with local residents, communities and business throughout detailed development stages and construction of the proposed scheme. It is vital that those affected by the proposed scheme are directly and meaningfully engaged by HS2 Ltd and its

contractors. Through the petitioning process, we will seek appropriate undertakings and assurances from HS2 Ltd to ensure this.

4.69 Ecology & Biodiversity

- 4.70 The Council has strong concerns regarding the route wide and local adverse impacts of the proposed scheme on ecology and biodiversity. We believe that HS2 Ltd have not sufficiently assessed the impacts of the proposed scheme at this stage and, therefore, the Council cannot accept that the limited mitigations proposed in the Environmental Statement are sufficient. HS2 Ltd have identified adverse impacts on several green and blue assets, including wildlife, in Manchester. The Council will seek to ensure proper and full assessments are undertaken and appropriate mitigations, mutually agreed with the Council, are fully implemented by HS2 Ltd.

4.71 Historic Environment

- 4.72 The Council has concerns regarding the impacts of the proposed scheme on several designated heritage assets, including Piccadilly Station (which is Grade II listed), and non-designated heritage assets in the wider Piccadilly & Ardwick areas. We will seek appropriate undertakings & assurances to ensure these impacts are properly understood and mitigated, where possible.

4.73 Health

- 4.74 As highlighted above, the proposed scheme would demolish facilities, including recreational facilities affecting the ability to participate in specific physical activity, and health services which would adversely impact local communities. The Council will request appropriate mitigation measures to compensate the loss of these services to the local communities affected, through petitioning.
- 4.75 As previously noted, the construction of the proposed scheme will have impacts on air quality during construction, and thereby health of local communities in Manchester. The Council will seek through its petition to ensure these impacts are avoided or mitigated, where possible.

4.76 Major Accidents & Natural Disasters

- 4.77 Due to the significant scale of the proposed scheme, there is a significant risk of major accidents occurring both during construction and operation, and the Council will seek assurances that HS2 Ltd assessments and mitigation measures for such risks are robust and in place before the main construction works commence in Manchester.

4.78 Socio Economic

- 4.79 The proposed scheme will inevitably mean that some existing businesses are displaced, and this may result in some businesses ceasing to exist. The

Council will request that HS2 Ltd actively assist affected businesses to relocate in Manchester and minimise their disruption.

- 4.80 HS2 Ltd will employ significant numbers of people, either directly or indirectly, during construction. The Council is concerned that not enough local labour would be employed, which would increase the adverse effects of other environmental issues, such as air quality. We will seek to ensure that HS2 Ltd commit to local employment initiatives.

4.81 **Sound Noise & Vibration**

- 4.82 The construction and operation of the proposed scheme would cause significant impacts to residents and communities in Manchester. Impacts have been identified by HS2 Ltd at certain locations/premises, but the Council are concerned that HS2 Ltd may not have identified all adverse impacts or, where impacts are expected, proposed appropriate mitigation measures. Specific impacts have been identified at residential premises along the route and potential vibration impacts at locations like the Christie Hospital need to be better understood.

- 4.83 The Council will seek to ensure the design of the proposed scheme seeks to avoid or minimise these impacts, alongside appropriate mitigation, where possible, through its petition.

4.84 **Traffic & Transport**

- 4.85 The Council is concerned that there would be significant route wide highways impacts identified during construction and operation of the railway, which would adversely impact residential neighbourhoods, communities and businesses. There are a number of layers to traffic and transport issues, which overlap with other environmental areas, such as air quality and health, and the Council will seek to ensure a holistic approach. Through the petitioning process, the Council will look to gain undertakings & assurances from HS2 Ltd to ensure proper mitigation and management of these issues throughout Manchester.

- 4.86 The Council have strong concerns regarding the impacts of the proposed scheme on delivering the GM 2040 transport strategy, which aims to shift modes of travel towards active modes and contribute to achieving our climate change targets. The construction and operation impact of the railway will also cause disruption for public transport modes including Metrolink and bus services. The Council will request undertakings and assurances from HS2 Ltd to ensure adverse impacts are appropriately mitigated and that the Council can deliver its local policies regarding transport, where possible.

4.87 **Water Resources and Flood Risk**

- 4.88 The proposed scheme will interact, or cross, a number of water courses in Manchester. The Council is strongly concerned, as stated above, about the impact of flooding on the proposed Palatine Road vent shaft, which is located

in a flood zone. We will seek to ensure any proposals appropriately consider and mitigate the potential adverse effects of flooding.

4.89 Other Petitioning Issues

4.90 Design of the proposed scheme

4.91 Due to the nature of the Parliamentary process, almost all detailed design of the physical infrastructure, such as the Stations, Viaducts and Headhouses are developed after the parliamentary process (after Royal Assent). While mechanisms would exist in the legislation for the Council to have limited control over the design of these features through the Bill, we will seek to ensure that HS2 Ltd give appropriate undertakings and assurances regarding the quality of these designs and involve the Council at an early stage in the approval process, to ensure a high quality scheme is developed and implemented in Manchester.

4.92 Utilities

4.93 The Council has strong concerns regarding the impact of identified utilities works in Manchester (which are likely to commence a number of years before the main works). The works are likely to cause disruption to residents, communities, businesses and highways. The Council will look to secure undertakings and assurances from HS2 Ltd to ensure these impacts are avoided or minimised through appropriate mitigation, where possible.

4.94 Permanent & Temporary Land Take

4.95 The implementation of the railway will require several substantial construction compounds throughout Manchester, focused on surface level infrastructure such as Piccadilly Station, tunnel portals and the vent shafts. Much of this land will not be required after construction and the Council will seek to ensure that land is returned expeditiously for redevelopment to ensure regeneration opportunities are not unduly delayed.

4.96 Golborne Link

4.97 The Golborne link is a piece of rail infrastructure that connects HS2 north of Crewe to the West Coast Mainline south of Wigan at Golborne. The construction of the Golborne link would free up capacity for additional local rail and freight services, as well as providing additional high speed connections to the North and Scotland.

4.98 During the 2nd reading of the Bill the government instructed the removal of the Golborne link from the Bill, and the AP covering its removal has now been made (see para xx). The Select Committee are not to hear petitions requesting that it be re-instated. The Additional Provision will amend the Bill with additional assessments and plans and the Council will have the opportunity to respond to a Supplementary Environment Statement (SES) consultation, on the impact of removing the Link.

- 4.99 The government are currently commissioning a piece of work to look at Golborne link alternatives, which was a recommendation from the Union Connectivity review. We will continue to lobby government for a connection, which provides equivalent local capacity benefits as the Golborne Link.

4.100 Impact on the West Coast Main Line (WCML)

- 4.101 The Bill documents refer to over 60 potential weekend closures on different parts of the existing WCML during the construction of the HS2 Crewe-Manchester line. We believe that this will cause unacceptable disruption to passengers (over a 9 year period), especially given the trend for increased leisure rail travel following the Covid-19 pandemic. The Council's petition will seek further information on this and request that alternative options are looked at to minimise the disruption on rail passengers.
- 4.102 It is anticipated that the removal of the Golborne link will significantly reduce the amount of weekend closures identified in the Bill, as the majority of these closures were related to the Golborne link connecting North of Crewe and South of Wigan. We will examine the information in the SES which accompanies the Additional Provision and respond accordingly.

5.0 Next Steps

- 5.1 The Council will complete the petition and submit it to the House of Commons by the deadline of 4th August. We will work with GM Partners to ensure that the Council's petition aligns with those of our partner organisations.
- 5.2 The Council is reviewing the first Additional Provision to identify whether it should also submit a petition on that.
- 5.3 Following submission, we will prepare to appear before the Select Committee to represent and protect the interests of the Council, our residents, communities and businesses, and ensure the best scheme for the city, the North of England and the UK.
- 5.4 We expect that HS2 Ltd will look to negotiate with us during the petitioning process, and we will seek satisfactory agreements, undertakings and assurances with them to remedy our concerns and issues regarding the proposed scheme.

6.0 Recommendations

- 6.1 The Economy Scrutiny Committee is recommended to:-

- (1) Consider the report and recommendations and to endorse the recommendations as detailed below

- 6.2 The Executive is recommended to:-

- (1) Note the current progress of the High Speed (Crewe - Manchester) hybrid Bill ("the Bill"), as introduced into 24th January 2022 session of Parliament, as detailed in this report.
- (2) Note the proposed key contents of the City Council's petition against aspects of the Bill, set out in this report.
- (3) Note that the Department for Transport is bringing forward 'Additional Provisions' to amend the Bill, and that it may be necessary for the Council to petition against the Additional Provisions in addition to petitioning against the Bill.
- (4) Note the delegated authority approved by Council on 4 March 2022 to the Strategic Director – Growth & Development, in consultation with the Leader and City Solicitor, to take all the steps required for the Council to submit any petition (including petitions against Additional Provisions) and thereafter to maintain and if considered appropriate authorise the withdrawal of any petition points that have been resolved in respect of the Bill, and to negotiate and/or seek assurances/undertaking/agreements to aspects of the Bill.
- (5) Note that the full petition will be provided to Members following its submission to House of Commons on 4th August 2022.

This page is intentionally left blank

Manchester City Council Report for Resolution

Report to: Executive – 22 July 2022

Subject: Community Development in Manchester

Report of: Director of Public Health

Summary

Good community development approaches are essential to involving local residents and communities in the development and the delivery of Manchester's Building Back Fairer action plan. The service that provides community development workers, is currently commissioned from an external provider, until 31 December 2022. The provider has been notified that the contract will not be renewed past this date. From 1 January 2023, it is proposed that community development service is brought in house and provided by MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate. This report explains the context and rationale for the proposal and provides information on the current and proposed delivery of community development in Manchester.

Recommendations

The Executive is recommended to:

1. Approve the Key Decision regarding the delivery of a Community Development service within the MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate when the current contract with GMMH for the Buzz Health and Wellbeing service ends on 31 December 2022.
 2. Agree that the current funding for the community development element of the Buzz service (£1 million in total, including staffing costs of £850k) will fund the community development service in the MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate.
 3. Agree that GMMH staff currently delivering the Buzz Neighbourhood Health and Wellbeing (community development) function, who are eligible for TUPE, will transfer from GMMH to the MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate to form part of the new community development service, from 1 January 2023.
-

Wards Affected: All

Environmental Impact Assessment - the impact of the issues addressed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city

<i>No impact</i>

Equality, Diversity and Inclusion - the impact of the issues addressed in this report in meeting our Public Sector Equality Duty and broader equality commitments

An EqIA will be taken as part of the development of the new approach with a view to strengthening the equalities and inclusion approach and improving outcomes for different protected or disadvantaged groups.

Manchester Strategy outcomes	Summary of how this report aligns to the OMS/Contribution to the Strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	<i>The approach will contribute to the delivery of Building Back Fairer in Manchester which is strongly aligned with the Manchester Strategy outcomes</i>
A highly skilled city: world class and home grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	<i>As above</i>
A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities	<i>As above</i>
A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit, work	<i>As above</i>
A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth	<i>As above</i>

Full details are in the body of the report, along with any implications for:

- Equal Opportunities Policy
- Risk Management
- Legal Considerations

Financial Consequences – Revenue

N/A

Financial Consequences – Capital

N/A

Contact Officers:

Name: David Regan
 Position: Director of Public Health
 E-mail: david.regan@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Cordelle Ofori
 Position: Assistant Director in Public Health

E-mail: cordelle.ofori@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection): None

1.0 Introduction

- 1.1 Manchester City Council (MCC) currently has a contract with Greater Manchester Mental Health (GMMH) Foundation Trust, to deliver the Buzz neighbourhood health and wellbeing service (the service has two elements - community development and knowledge and information). The contract with GMMH will expire on 31 December 2022.
- 1.2 A proposal to develop and deliver a community development service within the MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate to support the delivery of Manchester's Marmot Tackling Health Inequalities Action Plan (Building Back Fairer) was approved by Senior Management Team (SMT) on 31 May 2022. A Key Decision report was supported by SMT on 28 June 2022, and further comments were noted, which are addressed in this report.
- 1.3 This report will provide the Executive with further information on the context for the changes to community development in support of Building Back Fairer in Manchester, including Population Health Covid Recovery workstreams, to inform the request to approve the Key Decision.

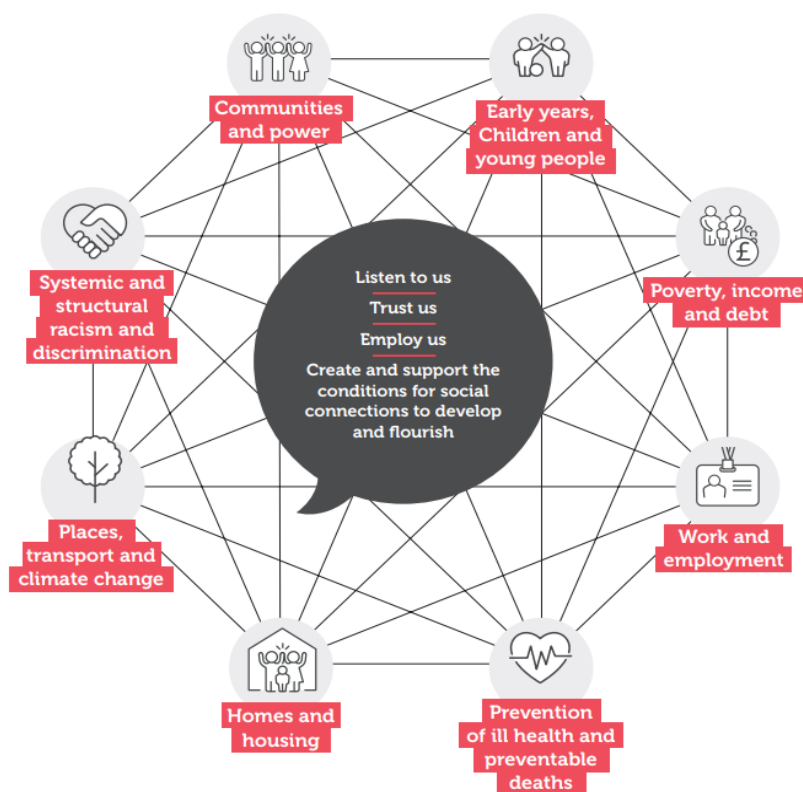
2.0 Manchester's Marmot Tackling Health Inequalities Action Plan – Building Back Fairer

- 2.1 In June 2021 the UCL Institute of Health Equity (IHE) - the leading global institute on health inequalities led by Professor Sir Michael Marmot - published 'Build Back Fairer in Greater Manchester: Health Equity and Dignified Lives'. This report, commissioned by the Greater Manchester Health and Social Care Partnership, provides a framework for how Greater Manchester can permanently reduce health inequalities in the aftermath of the pandemic, with a focus on the social determinants of health: the conditions in which people are born, grow, live, work and age.
- 2.2 For many years the health of people in Manchester has generally been worse than the England average across a range of outcome measures, with noticeable differences between the more and the less deprived areas within the city. A worsening of health outcomes in Manchester was starting to become apparent in the years prior to the start of the Coronavirus (COVID-19) pandemic in 2020 - improvements in all-cause mortality had stalled and had returned to the levels seen 10 years previously. The Covid-19 pandemic has had the effect of accelerating and strengthening pre-existing inequalities and trends. Interventions that support individuals can only mitigate to a certain extent – action to address the root causes of health inequalities within society and communities will have a greater effect overall.
- 2.3 Building Back Fairer – Tackling Health Inequalities in Manchester 2022-27 describes the actions that the city will take to reduce inequalities, with a focus on the social determinants of health. It has been produced by Manchester's Marmot Health Inequalities Task Group along with insights from trusted organisations that represent or work with people with lived experience of health inequalities, who tend to be marginalised or seldom heard. Engagement of the workforce and services across the social determinants of health, and

ongoing community and resident involvement will be critical to developing the detail and successful delivery of the plan.

The plan has been endorsed by the Health and Wellbeing Board and progress on delivery of actions will come back to a future meeting of the Executive, but the themes are summarised in the framework below.

Figure 1: Manchester's Framework for Building Back Fairer



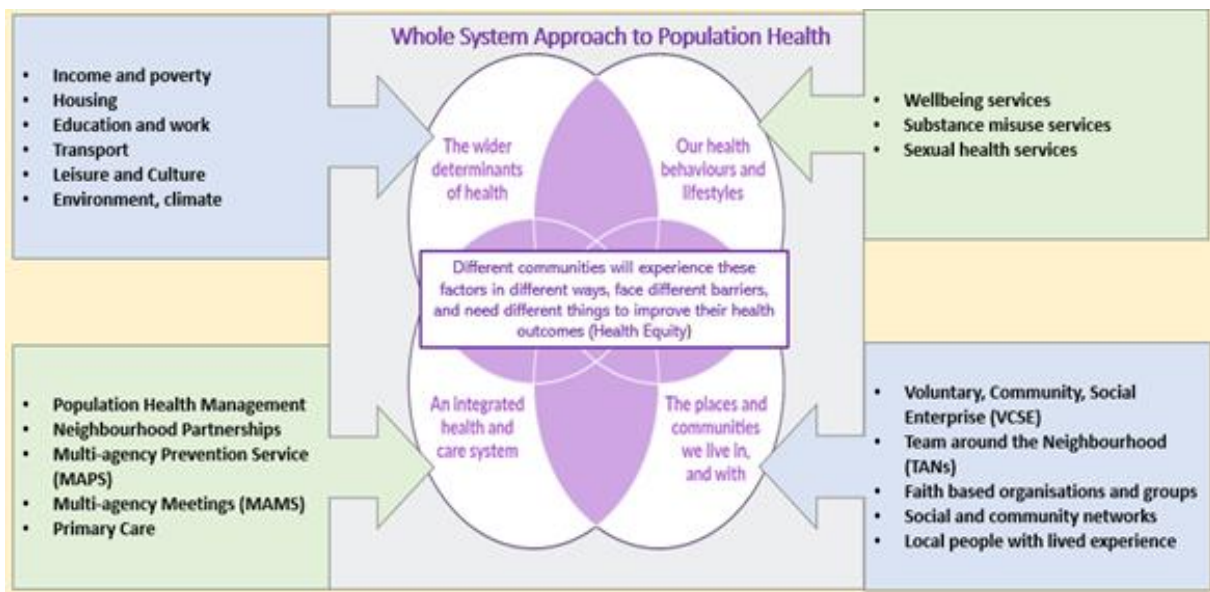
- 2.4 Manchester's action plan can only make a real difference if we work with local people to find solutions - and then help to make them happen. The 'listening exercise', conducted with trusted organisations working with people with lived experience of health inequalities, reconfirmed the importance of supporting relationships, and networks between communities and organisations within neighbourhoods. A clear message from this exercise was for the City Council to create and support the conditions for social connections to develop and flourish. There is a strong evidence base suggesting that 'community-led initiatives' improve health outcomes and reduce health inequalities by supporting "bottom-up" solutions to local challenges by building community power, control and resilience through enabling communities, especially in low-income areas, to develop their own solutions to the challenges and issues that are important to them.

3.0 Population Health and Covid recovery

3.1 Population health system

- 3.1.1 In order to improve our population's health and wellbeing and reduce health inequalities, a whole system approach is required, at a range of levels. Figure

2, adapted from the King's Fund, outlines a framework for this collaborative approach, with various organisations within the system fulfilling different roles.
Figure 2: Manchester Population Health System (adapted from King's Fund)

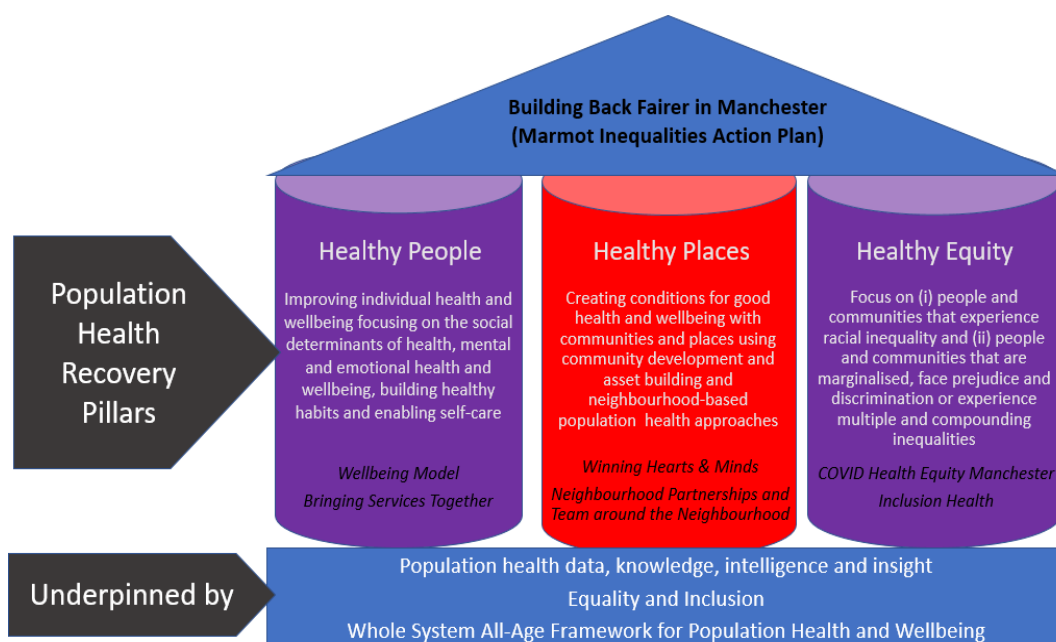


3.2 Population Health Covid recovery

3.2.1 Manchester's Population Health Covid Recovery framework has been developed to provide a structure and focus for population health and wellbeing activity (see Figure 3 below). This takes into account existing Population Health Team workstreams, and the learning from the impact of the Covid-19 pandemic, particularly in terms of health inequalities.

3.2.2 In addition to the system-wide action to improve health and reduce health inequality, particular focus is needed to ensure that individuals are supported to maintain good health and wellbeing (Healthy People pillar), and that communities are supported to create the local conditions for health and wellbeing to thrive (Healthy Places pillar). The Health Equity pillar addresses the additional support that is needed for particular communities and groups to enable them to engage and benefit from these approaches. Within each pillar, there are 'flagship' work programmes within Population Health and the wider health and care system, where delivery is already taking place and being developed and integrated.

Figure 3: Population Health Covid Recovery Framework



3.3 Manchester's Wellbeing Model

- 3.3.1 This was developed prior to the Covid-19 pandemic, in order to give a framework for whole-population activity to improve individuals' health and wellbeing, and was originally intended to launch in 2021. The rationale for the Wellbeing Model is that different individuals need different types and levels of support to improve and maintain good health and wellbeing and prevent ill health (physical or mental). The focus is on prevention – targeting the people who are not yet in need of health and care service support, but who are at greater risk of needing this in the future due to their social circumstances.

Figure 4: Manchester's Wellbeing Model



Level 1: The current population of Manchester is approximately 550,000 (Census 2021). Within this population, a majority are able to maintain good health and wellbeing for themselves and people they care for without additional support. In order to do so, they do need access to good quality,

trusted, relevant and culturally appropriate information about how to live a healthy lifestyle and access groups and networks that can support this locally. This is delivered through national, GM and local campaigns and information resources, and through local service directories e.g. Help and Support Manchester.

Level 2: Within local neighbourhoods and communities, support networks and groups have an important role in sharing information, and tailoring this to meet particular needs and engage with different communities. Access to this sort of informal support is not evenly distributed across the city, so additional focus is needed to develop this for some communities of place, identity or experience. This is delivered through the city's Voluntary, Community and Social Enterprise (VCSE) and faith sectors, and existing programmes such as the work of Neighbourhood teams, Covid Health Equity Manchester CHATS programme (Community Health Advice, Talk & Support), and the community development element of the current Buzz service (Neighbourhood Health and Wellbeing Development Workers).

Levels 3&4: Some people need additional support to address the social issues that are impacting on their health and wellbeing, and change unhealthy behaviours, in order to prevent the development of health conditions or social care needs. In 2018, there were an estimated 470,000 people in Manchester with multiple unhealthy behaviours, many of whom may benefit from support to address these, and the number of people needing support for other mental wellbeing and social issues is likely to be greater and have increased as a result of the pandemic and other current issues e.g. cost of living crisis. This support is delivered through the Be Well service, which offers social prescribing and health coaching support at different levels depending on the needs of the individual. Anyone can be supported by Be Well, including people referred from primary care, integrated health and care services, social care contact centre, and other community and VCSE services. Some Be Well Social Prescribing Link Workers work specifically within Primary Care Networks. Other population health services deliver more specialist support e.g. smoking cessation and substance misuse treatment.

Level 5: A smaller group of people already have more complex and multiple challenges than can be addressed through the Be Well service. There are an estimated <6,000 people who are not eligible for statutory service support but need additional support to address a combination of mental health, substance misuse, homelessness and other issues.

This support is being delivered in some neighbourhoods through the Integrated Care System Multi-Agency Prevention Service (MAPS) 'Early Help for Adults' pilots, and also through Focused Care Workers based in some primary care practices. The Better Outcomes Better Lives programme also targets this cohort.

3.4 Other roles that contribute to population health and wellbeing

- 3.4.1 Manchester Local Care Organisation also employs workers whose roles are different to those listed above, and which support the population health and wellbeing system by connecting health and care services with communities.

- Health Development Coordinators: working as part of Integrated Neighbourhood Teams (INTs). These roles support population health management and connect health and care services with communities, and other sectors to improve health outcomes at neighbourhood population level.
- Care Navigators: working as part of INTs and MAPS, these roles support individuals who are already in need of health and care services, to ensure they can access and engage with these services, and to connect them into additional community support where needed.

4.0 Community development service changes: rationale and intended outcomes

- 4.1 Community development **brings people in a community together to take action on what is important to them**. This might be with communities of place, or communities of shared identity or shared experience. Good quality community development forms the basis of the “communities and power” theme of Manchester’s Building Back Fairer action plan and will also be critical to the success of the entire plan. This will be achieved by helping communities to organise, and to identify the issues they want to address or the opportunities they want to explore. The intention is that community groups will be supported to use their skills and experiences and make the most of local assets to bring about positive changes and improve community life. A good community development approach also challenges the way some people, groups and communities are excluded and oppressed by the ways society and structures are organised, enabling strong communities to be at the heart of decision making.
- 4.2 Buzz health and wellbeing service has been provided by Manchester’s mental health trust since 2013, when it was transferred out from the Council. The service was later redesigned and re-launched in April 2019 to have more of a community development approach and to no longer provide one to one support which has been provided in Manchester by Big Life’s Be Well service since 2017.
- 4.3 Community development' type activity also happens through other avenues across Manchester City Council, with a good part of this work happening through Neighbourhood Teams. However, given the focus on health inequality, we know that we need to do more in this space. Aside from wellbeing improvements, the expectation is that this approach will also have other benefits in terms of less reliance on public services.
- 4.4 Although a lot of good work is already happening, many of our current approaches, while well intentioned, still focus on providing some form of service to a community, providing them with information/signposting, or supporting a community to set up a service based on a need we have identified. More could be done to focus on equity, strengthen the focus on what is important to communities and enabling them to take action, and facilitating this way of working across all the social determinants of health.

4.5 The 'new' community development approach will sit within MCC's Neighbourhoods Directorate and link with current activities to enable and embed a resource that releases the capacity of the whole system to deliver the Building Back Fairer action plan. This proposal seeks to strengthen and add value to the work already happening to support a community development approach that is appropriate for Manchester and build capacity to deliver the action plan with local communities. It builds on the knowledge and experience of the buzz Neighborhood Health and Wellbeing Service, whilst recognizing the civic leadership role of the council and the new place-based leadership arrangements under the Integrated Care System. It will also:

- Be offered by local people that look and sound like the communities they work in and with,
- Align with all of the Manchester Marmot themes, not just 'communities and power'
- Add value to the work of the VCSE sector
- Be flexible according to needs of communities of place/ identity/ experience

The community development approach will strengthen Level 2 of the Wellbeing Model (see 3.3 above) in a way that builds community power, control and resilience by enabling communities to develop their own solutions to the challenges and issues that are important to them.

5.0 Community development service changes

5.1 The current Buzz service has two functions:

- A team of Neighbourhood Health and Wellbeing workers who work at neighbourhood level with residents and community groups to run events, develop new groups or activities that help improve residents' health and wellbeing and to increase the involvement of local people in improving their health and wellbeing.
- The Knowledge Service which provides access to library, information and health promotion resources for people working or volunteering in the health and social care sector in Manchester.

5.2 The current contract for the Buzz service, between MCC and GMMH, will expire on 31 December 2022, and will not be renewed. The proposal to develop and deliver a community development service within the MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate, by bringing the community development (neighbourhood health and wellbeing) service currently provided by Buzz in house, was approved by SMT on 31 May 2022.

5.3 A 'task and finish' group has been established to support the design and implementation of the new approach. All relevant stakeholders, including key staff from Population Health, the Neighbourhoods Directorate, Performance Research and Intelligence, the Manchester Local Care Organisation, Human Resources and Legal Services, VCSE sector and buzz staff will be consulted,

and formal processes undertaken. The Senior Responsible Officers will be the Assistant Director of Population Health and the Head of Neighbourhoods.

6.0 Recommendations

6.1 The Executive is recommended to:

1. Approve the Key Decision regarding the delivery of a Community Development service within the MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate when the current contract with GMMH for the Buzz Health and Wellbeing service ends on 31 December 2022.
2. Agree that the current funding for the community development element of the Buzz service (£1 million in total, including staffing costs of £850k) will fund the community development service in the MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate.
3. Agree that GMMH staff currently delivering the Buzz Neighbourhood Health and Wellbeing (community development) function, who are eligible for TUPE, will transfer from GMMH to the MCC Neighbourhoods Directorate to form part of the new community development service, from 1 January 2023.

This page is intentionally left blank

**Manchester City Council
Report for Resolution**

Report to: Executive – 22 July 2022

Subject: Disposal of Land at Greenwood Road and Gladeside Road, Woodhouse Park, Wythenshawe, M22 9QB

Report of: Strategic Director (Growth and Development)

Summary

This report seeks approval to grant a new, overriding development lease to Wythenshawe Community Housing Group of land at Greenwood Road and Gladeside Road, Woodhouse Park, Wythenshawe to facilitate the delivery of a social tenure housing scheme supported by Homes England funding.

The development will comprise a new residential scheme of 40 apartments all of which are to be a social rent tenure. The scheme will be low carbon and sustainable, employing technologies such as heat pumps and solar panels (more comment below).

The proposed lease is for a term of 990 years at a premium of £310,000 which is less than the best consideration that could reasonably be obtained on the basis of an unrestricted disposal.

Recommendations

The Executive is recommended to:

- (1) Approve the basis of the land transaction as set out in Section 3 of this report at less than best consideration
 - (2) Authorise the Strategic Director for Growth and Development to finalise the terms of the transaction as set out in this report.
 - (3) Authorise the City Solicitor to enter into and complete all documents and agreements necessary to give effect to the recommendations.
-

Wards Affected – Woodhouse Park

Environmental Impact Assessment - the impact of the decisions proposed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city

The development will be low carbon and highly sustainable using up to date energy efficiency measures in the fabric and construction. Sustainable features will include air source heat pumps, solar/photovoltaic panels, LED lighting, controlled lighting in communal areas and a thermal envelope which goes beyond the requirements of Approved Document L.

Additionally, a travel plan will be in place alongside electric vehicle charging points and 100% cycle provision. The development will balance car parking provision with active travel and will encourage public transport use.

Our Manchester Strategy outcomes	Contribution to the strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	The redevelopment of the site for much needed affordable homes will make a significant contribution to supporting a diverse and distinctive economy. The provision of new homes at the site would also support the growing population in an area identified for residential development.
A highly skilled city: world class and home-grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	Jobs would be created during the construction process. The provision of new homes at the site would support the growing population in the area. The site is also well-connected to the City Centre, Wythenshawe town centre, Manchester Airport and their associated job opportunities.
A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities	The provision of high quality, sustainable homes of a social rent tenure is crucial in supporting a growing and diverse population. These 40x social rent homes will make a significant contribution to MCC's wider targets around affordable housing.
A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit, work	The proposed scheme is of a high quality, in an established residential location with appropriate amenity and transport links to the City Centre, Wythenshawe town centre and Airport. As set out above, low carbon and sustainability will be built into the scheme both in terms of the construction and later operation.

A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth	The scheme is well-connected in terms of public transport, with bus and tram links to the City Centre, Wythenshawe Town Centre and Manchester Airport. A travel plan will be in place encouraging use of public transport. The scheme will have a bike space per flat and there will be electric vehicle charging provision.
---	--

Full details are in the body of the report, along with any implications for

- Equal Opportunities Policy
- Risk Management
- Legal Considerations

Financial Consequences – Revenue

There is presently a nominal ground rent receipt from the existing long leasehold interest. This income (£243 per annum) will be lost but is considered insignificant.

Financial Consequences – Capital

The grant of a new, overriding development lease to WCHG will facilitate major third-party capital investment into a site which has stood vacant for some time and may remain vacant without this lease being granted. WCHG will develop a scheme of 40x apartments all of which will be for social rent. The agreed premium is reflective of the tenure restriction. A sale of the site on the open market would likely yield a higher capital receipt however, the social rent tenure would not be delivered.

Despite the sale being at less than the best consideration which might be achieved in the open market, a premium of £310,000 will be received together with an overage provision in the circumstances where a tenant exercises their Right to Acquire or similar rights in the future should that be the case.

The total reduction in sales price is £125,000. We consider this an acceptable compromise and a good result given MCC will be securing 40x new homes, all for social rent.

Contact Officers:

Name: Joe Martin
Position: Senior Development Surveyor
Telephone: 0781 555 0161
E-mail: joe.martin@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Mike Robertson
Position: Principal Development Surveyor
Telephone: 07747 488 286
E-mail: mike.robertson@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection):

The following documents disclose important facts on which the report is based and have been relied upon in preparing the report. Copies of the background documents are available up to 4 years after the date of the meeting. If you would like a copy please contact one of the contact officers above.

- Site plan

1.0 Introduction

- 1.1 This report seeks approval to grant a new, overriding development lease to Wythenshawe Community Housing Group (WCHG) of land at Greenwood Road and Gladeside Road, Woodhouse Park, Wythenshawe to facilitate the delivery of a social tenure housing scheme supported by Homes England funding.
- 1.2 The development will comprise a new residential scheme which will be of low carbon design and construction.
- 1.3 All 40 homes will be for social rent.
- 1.4 The proposed lease is for a term of 990 years at a premium of £310,000 which is less than the best consideration that can reasonably be obtained on the basis of an unrestricted disposal. A disposal at this level will safeguard the site to ensure the provision affordable homes of a social rent tenure.

2.0 Background

- 2.1 The subject property is a brownfield site, previously having comprised a public house. This has been demolished and the site is cleared. The remainder of a long leasehold interest remains on the site with 32 years unexpired and with a restriction to use as a public house only. WCHG are acquiring this leasehold interest after which MCC will grant a new, overriding lease to facilitate the proposed development in exchange for the premium payment.
- 2.2 The site has been vacant for some years and has planning for the proposed scheme of 40 apartments.

3.0 The Proposed Lease

- 3.1 Terms have provisionally been agreed with WCHG to grant a new overriding lease of the site on the basis of a lease premium of £310,000.
- 3.2 The Council will grant a 990-year development lease containing specific development milestones to ensure the scheme is brought forward and completed within agreed timescales. The user clause within the lease will be restricted to social rent tenure and the completed development will be retained and managed by WCHG.
- 3.3 The lease will further allow for MCC to recoup a small amount of capital in scenarios where subtenants trigger their Right to Acquire or equivalent future alternative should that be the case. In such a scenario, MCC would receive the higher of a fixed capital receipt (£3,125) or 2.02% of the sale price.

4.0 Valuation Issues

- 4.1 The site has been independently valued by the Manchester office of Colliers International as at April 2022 who have provided the following Valuation advice:

- 4.2 Colliers' report states that a higher value would be achievable were the site sold to a private developer for open market sales. This is to be expected as returns are necessarily lower for social rent stock than open market stock. The difference is not as stark as we might expect due to the social rent valuation accounting for Homes England grant funding which bridges the gap to some extent.
- 4.3 As there is an existing lease in place, marriage valuations have been undertaken using the figures arrived at in the independent valuation. The result is a premium payable of £310,000 for the lease if restricted to social rent tenure only, or £435,000 if there is no restriction on tenure (assumed open market sales).
- 4.4 As set out above, a premium of £310,000 has been agreed with WCHG, as they will be delivering a social rent product and the lease will include restrictions to this tenure only. This represents a discount to best consideration which might be achieved in an unrestricted disposal (considered to be £435,000) of £125,000, or £3,125 per apartment.
- 4.5 A reduction of £125,000 is considered to represent excellent value for money given MCC will be securing 40x new homes, all for social rent. This is a significant contribution to MCC's wider ambitions to deliver 20% of new homes as affordable (this scheme being 100% social rent).

5.0 Contributing to a Zero-Carbon City

- 5.1 The development will be low carbon and sustainable using up to date energy efficiency measures in the fabric and construction. Sustainable features will include air source heat pumps, solar/photovoltaic panels, LED lighting, controlled lighting in communal areas and a thermal envelope which goes beyond the requirements of Approved Document L.
- 5.2 Additionally, a travel plan will be in place alongside electric vehicle charging points and 100% cycle provision. The development will balance car parking provision with active travel and encourage public transport use.

6.0 Contributing to the Our Manchester Strategy

(a) A thriving and sustainable city

- 6.1 The redevelopment of the site for much needed social homes will make a significant contribution to supporting a diverse and distinctive economy. The provision of new homes at the site would also support the growing population in an area identified for residential development.
- 6.2 Data provided to MCC by WCHG demonstrates that they are experiencing exceptional demand for both 1-bed and 2-bed properties in this location. The provision of 40x homes for social rent will go some way to meeting this demand.

(b) A highly skilled city

- 6.2 Jobs would be created during the construction process. The provision of new homes at the site would support the growing population in an area identified for residential development. The site is also well-connected in to the City Centre, Wythenshawe town centre, Manchester Airport and their associated job opportunities.

(c) A progressive and equitable city

- 6.3 The provision of high quality, sustainable homes of a social rent tenure is crucial in supporting a growing and diverse population. These 40x social rent homes will make a significant contribution to MCC's wider targets around affordable housing.

(d) A liveable and low carbon city

- 6.4 The proposed scheme is of a high quality, in an established residential location with appropriate amenity and transport links to the City Centre, Wythenshawe Town Centre and Airport. As set out above, sustainability will be built into the scheme both in terms of the construction and later operation.

(e) A connected city

- 6.5 The scheme is well-connected in terms of public transport, with bus and tram links to the City Centre, Wythenshawe town centre and Manchester Airport. A travel plan will be in place encouraging use of public transport. The scheme will have a bike space per flat and there will be electric vehicle charging provision.

7. Key Policies and Considerations

(a) Equal Opportunities

- 7.1 The properties within the development will be available to all people regardless of their age, race, religion, gender or other characteristics.

(b) Risk Management

- 7.2 The lease to be granted to WCHG is for a long period but it will contain a number of covenants and restrictions ensuring that the Council will have control over the property's future use etc and a right for the Council to forfeit the lease if the covenants are not observed and performed.

(c) Legal Considerations

- 7.3 The General Consents under s25 of the Local Government Act 1988 (Local Authority assistance for privately let Housing) 2010 and in particular Consent A, allows a Local Authority (LA) to provide a Registered Provider (RP) with financial assistance or a gratuitous benefit consisting of the disposal to the RP of land for the development of housing accommodation. This consent is subject to conditions which include the following:

- Completion of the disposal is by transfer of freehold or grant of a lease of 99 years or more;
- Any housing should be completed within 3 years of completion of the disposal, but provision can be made for this date to varied in the event of circumstances beyond the RPs control;
- The terms of the disposal provide that any housing accommodation to be developed shall be (1) let by the RP as social housing or on a shared ownership lease; or (2) used as a hostel; or (3) occupied by those receiving support from a local social services authority; and
- The LA are not under any agreement or other arrangement which entitles them to manage the accommodation developed on the land; and
- The aggregate value of the financial assistance provided for this disposal and any financial assistance provided for previously in the same financial year under this consent does not exceed £10 million. This must be certified by an appropriate officer which could be the chief executive, chief financial officer, or a qualified Valuer.

7.4 It is not clear how the land is currently held, however no further consent of the Secretary of State to a disposal under the above consent is required by virtue of section 123(2) of the Local Government Act 1972 or sections 32(2) or 43 (1) of the Housing Act 1985 both of which provide that an LA cannot dispose of land for a consideration less than the best that can be reasonably obtained. without the specific consent of the Secretary of State.

7.5 Provided the above conditions are met specific consent will not be required for the proposed disposal at an undervalue.

8. Concluding Remarks

8.1 This is a brownfield site, having previously comprised a public house and ancillary areas.

8.2 The proposed grant of a new, overriding development lease to WCHG represents a discount to best consideration which might be achieved in an open market, unrestricted disposal. However, a disposal at this level safeguards the future of the site insofar as there will be a restriction on tenure to social rent only and the site will be developed by a trusted partner and Registered Provider.

8.3 The agreement to the proposed level of lease premium at £310,000 is on the basis that the social rent tenure is maintained so that the site will continue to offer social rent units in the future. Where subtenants trigger their Right to Acquire, MCC will received an overage payment.

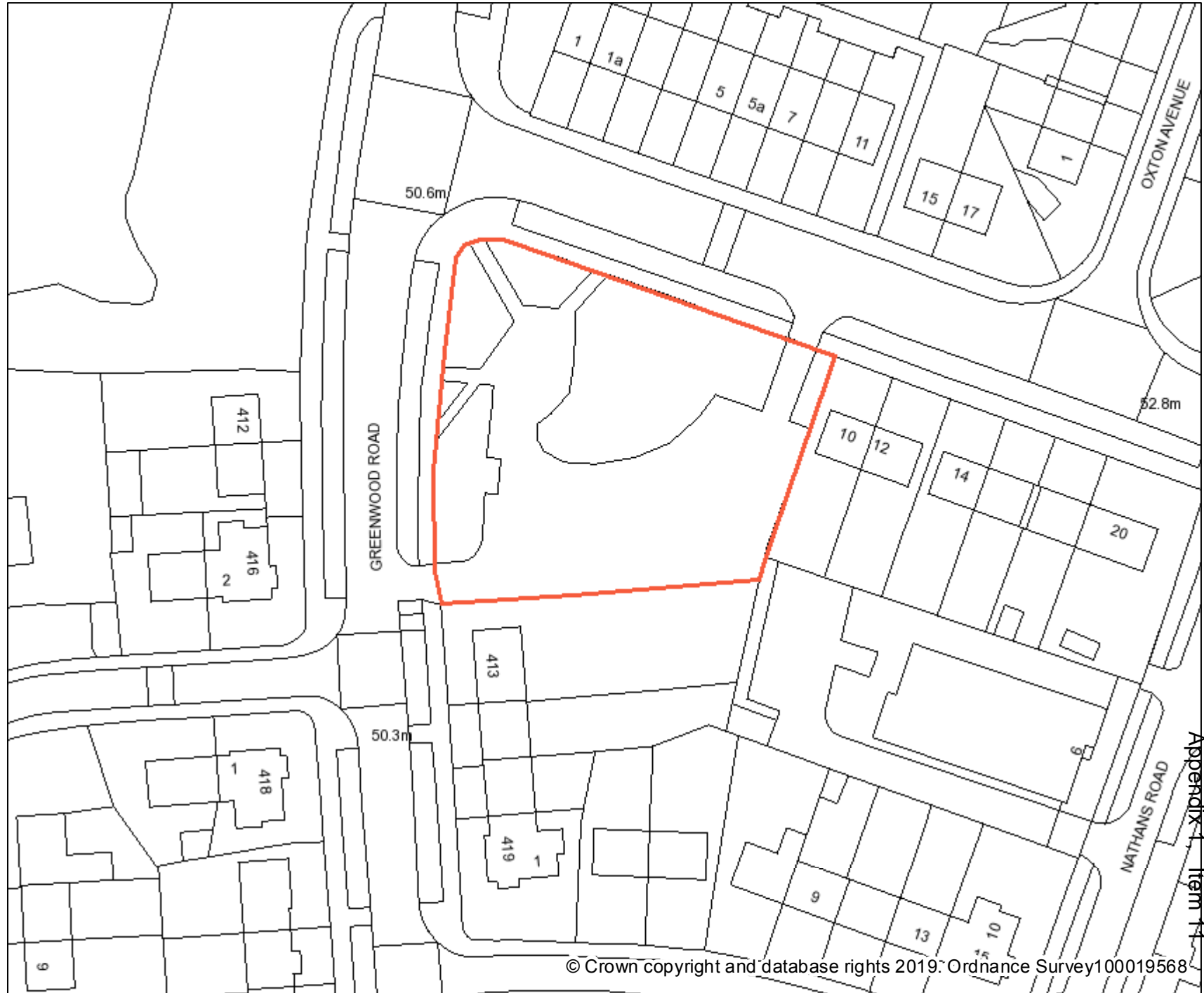
8.4 The development will provide 40x social rent units, a significant contribution to MCC affordable homes targets.

8.5 The total reduction in sales price is £125,000. We consider this an acceptable compromise and a good result given MCC will be securing 40x new homes, all for social rent.

ArcGIS Web Map



Date: 30/03/2022
Scale: 1:711



This page is intentionally left blank

Manchester City Council Report for Resolution

Report to:	Children and Young People's Scrutiny Committee - 20 July 2022 Executive – 22 July 2022
Subject:	Review of Home to School Travel support including draft policies and developing a new approach to improve service delivery
Report of:	Director of Education and Head of Access and Sufficiency

Summary

This report sets out the proposal to adopt two Home to school travel support policies. These proposals would apply to all applicants for pupils starting at reception in primary schools and year 7 at secondary schools in September 2023. It will also apply to young people entering post 16 or post 19 provision in years 12 and 14. All children and young people will have an Education Health and Care Plan (EHCP) to be eligible for support.

This paper recommends the approval of the Home to School travel support policies and that the new policies are to be applied to applicants applying in reception, Year 7 and years 13/14 during 2023/24 school year and subsequent year groups of pupils as they enter each phase. It is further recommended that any new applicants applying during the 22/23 academic year from the point the policy is determined are also assessed under the new policies.

Applications for travel support for pupils in remaining year groups will not be affected.

The reports also describe the current Home to School transport service (HTST) and outlines a service improvement programme which will support the successful implementation of the revised policies.

Recommendations

The Children and Young People Scrutiny Committee is recommended to: -

- (1) Consider this report and comment on the policies proposed and the phased implementation of the new policies
- (2) Consider the work to date on the wider service improvement programme

The Executive is recommended to: -

- (1) Consider the recommendations of the Children and Young People Scrutiny Committee.
- (2) Agree in principle the following documents appended to this report, and to authorise the Director of Education to consult on the proposed implementation of them:
 - a) Home to School Travel support policy for 5–16-year-olds

- b) Home to School Travel support policy for post 16
- c) Home to School Travel support summary document
- (3) Authorise the Director of Education to consider any responses received to the consultation and to agree to the implementation of the proposed policies appended to this report if she considers it appropriate to do so.
- (4) Consider the work to date on the wider service improvement programme and agree to progress the identified areas of improvement.

Wards Affected: All

Environmental Impact Assessment - the impact of the issues addressed in this report on achieving the zero-carbon target for the city

Promoting more efficient ways to travel to school will reduce carbon emissions
Maximising the capacity on existing buses and promoting alternative travel solutions such as walking/cycling will contribute to a reduction in carbon emissions and support healthy lives.

Equality, Diversity and Inclusion - the impact of the issues addressed in this report in meeting our Public Sector Equality Duty and broader equality commitments

An Equality Impact Assessment will be completed as the programmed of work is progressed.

Manchester Strategy outcomes	Summary of how this report aligns to the OMS/Contribution to the Strategy
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	The ongoing growth of the City's education sector will continue to create opportunities for employment in schools and those businesses which are involved in the supply of good and transport services.
A highly skilled city: world class and home grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	A sufficiency of high quality education provision which is easily accessible to families will provide future generations with the skills and behaviours to benefit from the City's economic success.
A thriving and sustainable city: supporting a diverse and distinctive economy that creates jobs and opportunities	The ongoing growth of the City's education sector will continue to create opportunities for employment in schools and those businesses which are involved in the supply of good and transport services.

A highly skilled city: world class and home grown talent sustaining the city's economic success	A sufficiency of high quality education provision which is easily accessible to families will provide future generations with the skills and behaviours to benefit from the City's economic success.
A progressive and equitable city: making a positive contribution by unlocking the potential of our communities	Schools are environments in which the diversity and talent of Manchester's children and young people is celebrated. Pupils are supported and encouraged to achieve their aspirations and maximise their potential
A liveable and low carbon city: a destination of choice to live, visit, work	Investment in modern, energy efficient and high quality transport solutions which are easily accessible and in the right place drives reductions in travel times and carbon across the estate of schools.
A connected city: world class infrastructure and connectivity to drive growth	Investment in existing and new transport initiatives will enhance the City's attractiveness to potential residents and contribute to the development of high quality neighbourhoods.

Full details are in the body of the report, along with any implications for:

- Equal Opportunities Policy
- Risk Management
- Legal Considerations

Financial Consequences – Revenue

For Home to School Transport the gross budget 2022/23 is £9.7m. Making up this total are two distinct elements:

The cost of school transport (including Post 16 transport to FE Colleges), there are approximately 1,600 children with Education Health Care Plans aged between 5 and 25 years who access travel support through the Home to School Transport service. The vast majority of these children and young people, 1487, receive a transport solution that is either a shared bus or individual taxi arrangement to attend over 120 different schools either within or outside of Manchester.

The running costs of the Transport team.

The current budget is currently overspent mainly due to a big increase in demand for transport and provider price increases. The expectation is that the number of routes and children accessing the service will increase in the Autumn term. Operator availability and increases in the price of fuel has also significantly added to current funding pressures.

It is anticipated that by promoting inclusive opportunities to enable children and young people to travel to and from school or college independently or using family-based approaches like those used by other children and young people wherever possible, taking account of their age and needs will enable the service to achieve efficient use of public resources, delivering better outcomes and providing better value for money. Furthermore, a new approach to commissioning transport and

improved use of ICT to plan routes and most efficient use of transport will also provide a more efficient and better value service. The financial impact of the policy review will be monitored during implementation of the review.

Financial Consequences – Capital

None.

Contact Officers:

Name: Amanda Corcoran
Position: Director of Education
E-mail: amanda.corcoran@manchester.gov.uk

Name: Michelle Devine
Position: Head of Access and Sufficiency
E-mail: michelle.devine@manchester.gov.uk

Background documents (available for public inspection):

The following documents disclose important facts on which the report is based and have been relied upon in preparing the report. Copies of the background documents are available up to 4 years after the date of the meeting. If you would like a copy please contact one of the contact officers above.

1.0 Introduction

- 1.1 This report proposes new Home to School Travel Support policies for application to pupils in Reception to Year 11 and for pupils transitioning into post 16 or post 19 provision from the 2023/24 school year. The proposed policies will apply to subsequent year groups of pupils as they enter each transition phase and to any new applicants for transport support.
- 1.2 It includes definitions of key terms to enable the application of the agreed eligibility and the range of transport support offered by the Local Authority. It also provides details of the arrangements for appeal against a decision regarding the provision of home to school travel support.
- 1.3 Home to School Transport for children who do not have an EHCP is not covered by this report. Children and young people who live in other local authority areas but attend a Manchester school should apply for travel support to their home local authority.
- 1.4 The current Home to School Travel policies will be applied to all other current eligible children until they reach a key transition point (enter Reception/year 7 or post 16/19)
- 1.5 This report also describes the Home to School Transport service which is responsible for the implementation and delivery of the transport policies. The report outlines a wider programme of improvement works for this service.

2.0 Background

- 2.1 Manchester's population has continued to grow from our 2011 census figure of 503,000, and our forecasts for population growth are estimating that by the mid-2020s the city of Manchester will have a population of circa 644,000. This population growth is driven by the continued, and forecasted continuation, of economic growth. It is within this context that ensuring travel solutions that are efficient and accessible to families will remain a critical component of the Council's work in improving outcomes for Manchester residents and delivering the ambitions outlined in our Manchester strategy, forward to 2025.
- 2.2 Nationally, the actual numbers and proportion of pupils with an EHCP have increased with the overall percentage now at 4.0% of the whole school population. Within the Manchester school population, the January 2022 census showed that 4.7% of the school population have an Education, Health and Care plan (EHCP) (4,350 pupils). In Manchester the number of pupils attending special schools is growing and now stands at 2.2% of the total school population.
- 2.3 Section 508A of the Education Act places a general duty on local authorities to promote the use of sustainable travel and transport. The duty applies to children and young people of compulsory school age who travel to receive education or training in a local authority's area. The duty relates to journeys to and from institutions where education or training is delivered.

2.4 In order to comply with home to school transport duties local authorities must:

- Promote the use of sustainable travel and transport
- Make transport arrangements for all eligible children

2.5 In Manchester this duty is discharged through the Home to School Transport service, which sits within the Access and Sufficiency portfolio in Education Services. Further details on the role of this service area are provided later in this report.

2.6 Currently there are approx. 1600 children with EHCPs aged between 5 and 25 years who access travel support through the Home to School Transport (HTST) service. The vast majority of these children and young people, 1487, receive a transport solution that is either a shared bus or individual taxi arrangement to attend over 120 different schools either within or outside of Manchester. There is only a small proportion of families who receive a personal budget or parental expenses to fund the family to take their children to school. The HTST service also holds a funding agreement with the Endeavor Federation of special schools for children with social emotional and mental health needs, who organise their own transport solutions for children attending their sites. The total expenditure on all of these travel solutions is approx. £8million per annum.

2.7 Currently the service also organises and delivers the transport for adult daycare setting and transport which is approx. 100 adults across 30 routes to the 3 daycare centres in Manchester.

3.0 Main issues

3.1 Manchester's Transport policy for children and young people with special educational needs (SEND) was last updated in 2015 when both the statutory transport guidance and SEND reforms took place. The policy incorporated the arrangements for all children and young people aged 5 to 25 years with an EHCP. Since this review the service has encountered challenges with meeting the demands of a growing EHCP population and the availability of local specialist provision when assessing applications for travel support. This has resulted in large numbers of children being transported to school on shared minibuses or individual taxi arrangements. The application and assessment process have not promoted the use of more sustainable travel solutions and have not supported enough young people to travel independently. Both families and schools have found difficulties with the application of the policy and the travel solutions available to eligible children.

4.0 Details of the proposed policies

4.1 The proposal is to separate the current policy into a 5-16 years and a post 16 policy. This complies with current guidance and best practice. It also allows for the polies to be clearer and easier for families to reference. The eligibility

criteria to be used in the policies is set out in appendix A and B. One of the main changes in both policies is the removal of a blanket criteria considering the distance between a child's home and their school. The proposed policies will look at the needs of the whole family and their ability to support their child or young person to travel to education.

4.2 Both policies are based on the following principles:

- A commitment to ensuring children and young people can fulfil their potential and that all children and young people with significant special educational needs or disability should lead lives that are as independent and as free from restriction as possible;
- Promoting inclusive opportunities to enable children and young people to travel to and from school or college independently or using family based approaches similar to those used by other children and young people wherever possible, taking account of their age and needs;
- Promoting sustainable, safe, healthy and appropriate travel solutions by working in partnership with parents/carers to support them with their legal responsibility to make sure their children attend school;
- A commitment to equality of opportunity and the celebration of diversity and an opposition to all forms of discrimination; and
- Efficient use of public resources, delivering better outcomes and providing better value for money.

4.3 Feedback from young people through different forums and through the recent OFSTED inspection has been consistent. Young people with SEND want to learn to travel independently and where possible travel to school or college in the same way as their peers. Young people express frustration that they do not learn these skills while at school and are therefore not confident about using public transport. They also often raise issues with us about accessibility and attitudes when using public transport which also undermines their confidence. Work to address wider access to travel training will be included in both policies and work to ensure that young people with SEND have a better experience of public transport when they are trained has been discussed with TFGM and work is underway to look at this. Young people have asked for example, whether the City Council will promote the use and recognition of the sunflower lanyard which is a discrete means of young people letting people know they have additional needs.

4.4 Consequently, the policies will introduce a number of new travel solutions to support this principle. The aim is for children and young people with SEND to be able to walk or cycle to school and to travel independently using our public transport to attend education provision. Travel by minibus or taxi will remain an option where families require this transport support.

4.5 The following factors will be considered when assessing transport entitlement for children aged 5 to 16 years:

- the age of the pupil;
- the distance of the pupil from school to home;

- whether the walking route is appropriate for the pupil;
- the SEND of the pupil;
- whether the pupil has physical, medical or a social communication difficulty that would prevent them from using public transport, even if accompanied by an adult;
- whether suitable and accessible public transport is available;
- whether the pupil may be vulnerable and at risk of danger if they use public or other transport;
- whether the pupil would be a danger to drivers, other passengers or the vehicle if using public or other transport;
- the efficient utilisation of resources;
- any other individual circumstance.

4.6 In assessing eligibility for students entering post-16 education and training for travel assistance, particular attention will be paid to the following criteria:

- Whether the student is currently in receipt of any funding from the 16 to 19 Bursary Fund and to what value.
- The location of the sixth form unit or college the student would like to attend. If this is not a local provision, the council would need to know that the course being taken is not available locally.
- Whether the sixth form unit is an extension to the school previously attended by the student and named in their EHCP.
- The distance from the student's home to their education or training establishment and the journey time.
- Whether the young person has SEND and/or mobility difficulties which would impede their access to their educational placement, either independently or otherwise, for example, a wheelchair user.
- Whether the young person has SEND which would make it unsafe for them to travel independently.
- Whether the public transport journey to the nearest suitable placement is too complex for the young person to be expected to travel independently.

4.7 These are not exhaustive lists. They are not presented in any particular order and are for guidance only. Satisfaction of one or more of the criteria does not automatically entitle a pupil with SEND to transport assistance. The fact that a pupil has an EHCP or attends a special school does not automatically entitle him or her to transport assistance.

4.8 The following points provide further clarification on the travel solutions available within the proposed policies:

1. Bicycle - A one off payment may be made when a child or young person, who is eligible for support under the Council's policy, would like to use or uses a bicycle to travel to school. This solution can also include a programme of independent travel training to ensure the young person is able to safely cycle to and from school if required.

2. Walking Bus - The Council is keen to reduce the number of vehicle journeys in and around the City, especially at peak times and reduce traffic movements in close proximity to schools. A child/young person may be allocated a space on a walking bus scheme. These involve several children/young people walking to and from school under the guidance and support of a Passenger Assistant.
 3. Travel Pass - This is a free pass for use on public transport. This may also be provided for a parent/carers or another travel buddy to support the child/young person to access education.
 4. Personal Travel Budget (PTB) – Support for meeting the costs associated with ensuring support to access education may be provided through a Personal Travel Budget. This includes a variety of flexible support options such as: access to funds for parent/carers to enable them to drop earlier and collect later, paying for a family member, mileage and use of a befriending service. Family based travel solutions could also be supported by a Personal Travel Budget.
 5. Supported public transport - It may be possible for a child or young person to travel on public transport if the child/young person has some assistance. Where parents/carers are unable to accompany their son/daughter, the Council may provide a Passenger Assistant, befriending service and/or a travel buddy.
 6. Manchester Travel Training Partnership - The Council has a responsibility to promote appropriate independence skills. All young people will be supported and encouraged to travel independently to and from school, when it is assessed as reasonable for them to do so. Where a young person is offered independent travel training the process will begin with an initial assessment of their skills and abilities. The training provided will be targeted to individual need and development. It is expected that where independent travel training is offered as a travel solution, a young person will take up this training.
 7. Driving Lessons - The offer of funded driving lessons where the young people is the correct age and this is the most cost-efficient option. Students can drive a car when they are 16 if they have, or have applied for, the enhanced rate of the mobility component of Personal Independence Payment (PIP).
 8. Travel Vehicles – In circumstances where no other solution is appropriate the Council may provide a vehicle to transfer a child and young person to and from school. Vehicles and drivers are provided by a suitably qualified, registered, commercial provider working to contractual standards set by the Council. All drivers will have an enhanced Disclosure and Barring Service certificate.
- 4.9 It is proposed to implement the new policies on a phased basis, starting with children who will enter key transition points for the beginning of the 2023

academic year. It is also proposed that any new applicants applying for transport for the first time, once the proposed policies are determined, are also considered under the new arrangements. All other children will continue to be considered under the current policy until they reach a transition point or no longer require transport support. Both policies will be subject to formal public consultation which will be held for 28 days from the beginning of the new school year in September.

5.0 Wider service Improvement

- 5.1 The Home to school transport service (HTST) is responsible for implementing Manchester's existing home to school travel policy and also manages the school crossing patrol service. The service was reviewed February 2020 following a redesign of the back-office staff where a new staffing structure was introduced, and back-office processes were redefined. There was no change to the roles or responsibilities of passenger assistants during this review and there continues to be 257 passenger assistants supporting children on their journeys to education.
- 5.2 In March 2020 just as the new back-office team was established, the country went into its first Covid 19 lockdown and this had a significant impact on the way we intended the new team to work. The service continued to provide an operational service throughout the pandemic but continues to have issues with the ability to arrange cover when dealing with sickness, shielding, and isolating staff. This has been particularly challenging due to age profile of this workforce and the challenges of them working in a confined space and not able to maintain social distancing etc particularly at times when infection rates in the City have been high within the school population. This has resulted in buses being stood down because of high numbers of staff shortages at times and difficulties with accessing cover for these absences. The pandemic has significantly impacted on the experience of parents/carers accessing this service.
- 5.3 More recently the service has encountered further issues with some contractors who are now struggling to recruit drivers and maintain sustainable transport companies due to the rises in fuel and cost of living increases. This is having a direct impact on children and their families and there have been instances where buses have been stood down and the Local Authority have been unable to support children to attend school due to being unable to identify replacement transport.
- 5.4 Manchester does not have an in house fleet and all vehicles are commissioned through an external framework. This framework is managed through the Children's Service commissioning team and the last full tender exercise was in 2017. There are approx. 500 providers on this framework which includes both mini buses and taxis. The providers also employ the drivers of the vehicles.
- 5.5 As an immediate mitigation to the loss of any further routes the service will conduct a review of current active routes and ensure that vehicles are being

fully utilised and where possible allocate children to current routes. The Childrens Services commissioning team will hold discussions with current operators to review their capacity to provide additional journeys in September and also review what support would be required from the Local Authority to ensure the journeys can continue into the next academic year.

- 5.6 As such it has been agreed that further work on the future operating model of this area is required and that there is a need to work in partnership with families and schools to ensure the service is meeting the needs of its users. The scope of this review should also include the roles of passenger assistants, the use of technology to improve service delivery, the operating model of transport operators and the future requirements of adult day care services. The service has commissioned support from an organisation with a track record of working with organisations through the design and implementation of change to coordinate this work and to ensure both the policy and revised operating model are fully coproduced and are delivered by the start of the 2023 academic year.

- 5.7 The key areas to be reviewed are:

- Communication and Engagement Review: how the service interacts with families and schools. Look at how to improve communication and provide regular updates on transport applications and solutions in a more efficient and effective way.
- Further design and implementation of changes to the operating model: Review the current service structure including the roles and responsibilities of staff. Design and implement a fit for purpose structure.
- Immediate route optimisation: Review current transport arrangements and ensure all routes are being fully optimised
- Prioritisation of reviews & consideration of alternative transport options
- Soft market testing and re-procurement: Support to stimulate the market ahead of the next full tender exercise
- Digital/ Technical assessment and implementation: Procure and implement ICT software solutions across the service area to ensure an efficient and effective delivery model.
- Design, consult and implement new strategy for passenger assistants: Review the roles and responsibilities of passenger assistants and design a future operating model

- 5.8 In response to several challenges which have arisen throughout the pandemic and more recently as well as issues raised, by service users and Ofsted following the Local Area's inspection of special educational and disability in November 2021, the service has already initiated a complete review of its policy and delivery model. Over the next 12months new policies will be gradually implemented and a programme of improvements works will be progressed to enhance the service experience of families and children.

6.0 Recommendations

- 6.1 The Children and Young People Scrutiny Committee is recommended to: -

- Consider this report and comment on the policies proposed and the phased implementation of the new policies
- Consider the work to date on the wider service improvement programme

6.2 The Executive is recommended to: -

1. Consider the recommendations of the Children and Young People Scrutiny Committee.
2. Agree in principle the following documents appended to this report, and to authorise the Director of Education to consult on the proposed implementation of them:
 - a) Home to School Travel support policy for 5–16-year-olds
 - b) Home to School Travel support policy for post 16
 - c) Home to School Travel support summary document
3. Authorise the Director of Education to consider any responses received to the consultation and to agree to the implementation of the proposed policies appended to this report if she considers it appropriate to do so.
4. Consider the work to date on the wider service improvement programme and agree to progress the identified areas of improvement.

Appendices

- Appendix 1 – Proposed Home to School Travel support policy for 5-16 year olds
- Appendix 2 – Proposed Home to School Travel support policy for post 16
- Appendix 3 – Proposed Home to School Travel support summary document

Policy on: Travel Support to Access Education

For children and young people with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities (SEND)

Statutory school age pupils 5 to 16
(Reception to Year 11)



**MANCHESTER
CITY COUNCIL**

Policy on: Travel Support to Access Education

For children and young people with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities(SEND)

Table of Contents

Travel Support to Access Education for children and young people aged 5-16 with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities (SEND)	4
1.0 Introduction	4
2.0 Principles	6
Part A	7
3.0 Legislation and Responsibilities	7
3.1 Parent/Carers Responsibilities	7
3.2 Council Responsibilities	7
4.0 Eligibility for a home to school travel solution	10
4.1 Parental preference for a school	10
4.2 Travel Support Requirements	10
4.3 Disability Living Allowance (DLA) for children	14
4.4 Travel support for children and young people with SEND from Low Income Families	14
5.0 Travel Solutions	14
5.1 Travel Solutions outlined	14
5.2 Types of travel solutions provided	16
Part B	19
Application, Review and Appeals processes	19
Application Process	19
Review process	19
Changes in Circumstances	19
8.1 Changes in circumstances include:	20
9.0 Health and Safety	20
Appeals Process	20

The Appeals Process has two stages:	20
11.1 Stage 1 – Appeal of the original decision	20
Stage 2	21
Corporate Complaints Team	21
Local Government Ombudsmen	22

DRAFT

Travel Support to Access Education for children and young people aged 5-16 with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities (SEND)

1.0 Introduction

This policy outlines the travel support available for children and young people with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities (SEND) to access education.

This policy is for children and young people of statutory school aged 5 to 16 (Reception to Year 11). There is a separate policy for children of statutory school age and for young people aged 16-25 with separate provisions for those aged 19-25.

This policy is set out in two parts as follows:

Part A - Travel support to access education for children and young people aged 5 to 16; and

Part B - Application, Review and Appeals processes.

The Council's approach to disability, has at its heart a focus on the person and their family, looking at all aspects of an individual and their family's situation. Through this approach, the Council's vision is that disabled citizens should have the same life opportunities and achieve the same outcomes, across key areas such as: education, choice and control, health, employment, housing and inclusive communities, as those which are available for the wider population.

This policy on Travel Support to Access Education aims to support the achievement of these outcomes through supporting children and young people with Special Educational Needs or Disability (SEND) to access education based upon the needs of the child or young person and their family. The aim of this policy is wherever possible to work with the family and young person to develop a travel solution enabling the child or young person to access education in the same way that members of their peer group who do not have a special educational need or disability would access their education. This includes travelling independently for young people and family based travel solutions for younger children, regularly developing solutions with the [Manchester Travel Training Partnership](#). The desired outcome of this approach is to actively encourage children and young people's independence, which can result in them developing a skill for life and will help to develop their confidence and social skills as well as increase their future options for continuing education/training and employment.

The majority of Manchester children and young people with special educational needs or a disability including those with an Education Health and Care plan (EHC plan) do not receive or require travel support from the Council in order to access education. An EHC plan is for children and young people aged up to 25 who need more support than is available through special educational needs support. EHC plans identify educational, health and social needs and set out the additional support to meet those needs.

Wherever possible, it is expected that parent/carers of children and young people with SEN or a disability make arrangements for their child to attend school in the same way as for parents/carers of children and young people who do not have SEND. This

approach, including independent travel where appropriate, is an important factor in developing the children and young people's independence, social and life skills; providing a travel support framework to enable as many parents/carers to do this as possible is a key part of this policy.

In this policy parent/carer is taken to mean the adult responsible for the child/young person and can refer to the adult who has parental responsibility, guardianship or care of the child.

Specifically, this policy relates to children and young people with SEND, which will usually mean those with an EHC Plan but may in exceptional circumstances, apply to those who are undergoing assessment for an EHC plan. It requires that eligibility for such pupils should be assessed on an individual basis to identify the pupil's individual transport requirements. The Council's general policy on travel to and from mainstream schools and other education establishments is available separately. Please see the Schools Admissions Travel Policy.

This policy applies to children and young people who are resident within the City of Manchester and children and young people in the care of Manchester City Council. The policy defines home to school transport as between a pupil's main home address and their school. A pupil's main home address is the place where they are habitually and normally resident. Where pupils have more than one address, home to school transport will be based on the residence where the pupil habitually resides or where the pupil resides for majority of the school week.

Transport assistance can only be provided on the basis of assessed need, rather than parental preference. Other family circumstances, such as parents and carers attending work or looking after other children, cannot be considered when determining eligibility.

All parents and carers requiring transport assistance for their child should submit an application for transport assistance. Only on receipt of an application will be transport assistance be considered.

Only where a pupil is assessed as meeting the eligibility criteria set out in this policy, will they be entitled to assistance with transport between home and school. Manchester City Council will assess and consider home to school transport on the basis of the most efficient and cost-effective use of the Council resources.

The policy has been developed in consultation with parents, carers and young people and is based on the statutory requirements placed on councils in the Education Act 1996, and the guidance in [Home to School Travel and Transport: Statutory Guidance for Local Authorities \(Department for Education, 2014\)](#), as well as the [Special Educational Needs and Disability Code of Practice: 0 to 25 years, Statutory guidance for organisations which work with and support children \(Department for Education, 2015\)](#). It takes account of the [Local Offer](#).

2.0 Principles

Manchester City Council's policy on Travel Support to Access Education is based on providing parents/carers with a travel solution which will be founded on the following principles.

- It is committed to ensuring children and young people can fulfil their potential. The aim of this policy is that all children and young people with significant special educational needs or disability should lead lives that are as independent and as free from restriction as possible;
- Promoting inclusive opportunities to enable children and young people to travel to and from school or college independently or using family based approaches similar to those used by other children and young people wherever possible, taking account of their age and needs;
- Promoting sustainable, safe, healthy and appropriate travel solutions by working in partnership with parents/carers to support them with their legal responsibility to make sure their children attend school;
- A commitment to equality of opportunity and the celebration of diversity and an opposition to all forms of discrimination; and
- Efficient use of public resources, delivering better outcomes and providing better value for money.

Part A

Travel support to access education for children and young people of statutory school aged 5 to 16 (Reception to Year 11)

This policy is for children and young people of statutory school age to the age of 16 with SEND. This policy supports children and young people with Education Health and Care Plans (EHC plans) to access school at the start of the school day and return home at the end of the school day, each week day during school terms.

This policy applies only to home to school travel arrangements. It does not, for example, relate to transport to sports facilities, work experience or work placements, medical, dental or hospital appointments, visits to other schools or locations (including school trips), collection from school due to illness or exclusion, parental attendance at meetings, travel to or from extended hours school clubs or exams.

3.0 Legislation and Responsibilities

3.1 Parent/Carers Responsibilities

- 3.1.1. It is the legal responsibility of parents/carers to ensure their compulsory school aged children are registered at a school and attend regularly, or to make suitable arrangements for home education. However, in certain circumstances a Council has a duty to provide travel support to access education to facilitate this attendance.
- 3.1.2. Parents/carers are responsible for their child's safety whilst travelling to and from school. Where the Council has provided a travel solution to support a child to access education, parents/carers remain responsible for their child's safety before and after these arrangements take place.
- 3.1.3. A child becomes of compulsory school age when he/she reaches the age of five and must start school in the term following his/her fifth birthday. In England, a young person's leaving age depends on when the young person was born. A young person must stay in some form of education or training until their 18th birthday. A young person's options are:
 - full-time education – e.g. at a school or college; or
 - an apprenticeship or traineeship; or
 - part-time education or training - as well as being employed, self-employed or volunteering for 20 hours or more a week; or
 - an establishment funded directly by the Education Skills Funding Agency; or
 - learning providers delivering accredited programmes of learning which lead to positive outcomes and are funded by the Council: for example, colleges, charities and private learning providers.

3.2 Council Responsibilities

- 3.1.1. In certain circumstances the Council has a statutory duty to provide a suitable

travel solution to facilitate a child/young person's attendance at school. This document sets out Manchester City Council's policy on Travel Support to Access Education. It describes how the Council fulfils its duties and exercises its discretionary powers as required under the Education Act 1996.

- 3.1.2. Young people with SEND who are over the age of 16 and under 25 but continuing in education/training are considered in a separate policy.
- 3.1.3. Under section 508B of the Education Act 1996, the Council has a duty to ensure that a suitable travel solution is made for an eligible child/young person. This will be carried out, where necessary, to facilitate the child and young person's attendance at a relevant 'qualifying school'. The nearest qualifying school is taken to mean the nearest suitable qualifying school with places available that provides education appropriate to the age, ability and aptitude of the child/young person and any special educational needs that the child/young person may have. For a child/young person with SEND, the school named on their EHC Plan will be their qualifying school, or it is the nearest of two or more schools named.
- 3.1.4. The Act applies to all children and young people who permanently live in Manchester and attend a qualifying school named in their EHC plan.
- 3.1.5. The Council is also required to make transport arrangements for all pupils who cannot reasonably be expected to walk to their nearest qualifying school (accompanied as necessary) because the nature of the route is deemed inappropriate, or because of mobility difficulties or because of the pupil's associated health and safety issues related to their SEND.
- 3.1.6. Councils do not have a duty to provide or arrange free transport for children who have not yet reached statutory school age. However, transport assistance applications will be considered for children below statutory school age in exceptional circumstances and it is expected that such children will have an education, health and care plan.
- 3.1.7. This policy reflects national legislation. Eligibility for a place at a school does not bring with it an entitlement for travel support to access education. The policy on Travel Support to Access Education could change before a child/young person completes their time at school. Admission choices should not be made on the assumption that the same set of eligibility criteria will apply throughout a child/young person's education.
- 3.1.8. Consideration of any future transport needs will form part of the young person's transition into adulthood plan. In line with the national policy, all young people in year 11 (aged 15 to 16), moving from compulsory schooling to post-16 education, must reapply and be reassessed. If your child is in Year 11, you will need to reapply for transport, and applications for transport will be assessed against the 16 to 19 Transport Policy available [here](#) [MCC to insert hyperlink], or upon request to 0161 219 6400. The travel solution will be reviewed on a regular basis in order to ensure the support offered continues to meet the needs of the child/young person. Whenever possible, travel solutions will be reviewed alongside EHC plan annual reviews and at key transition points in a child or young person's education.

- 3.1.9. It should also be noted that a change in circumstances may mean it no longer meets the eligibility criteria and the travel solution could be withdrawn. The Council will decide when the withdrawal of a travel solution takes place and will take into account the term and year of education and the impact on the child/young person. Changes in circumstances include:
- A change in home address;
 - A move from one school to another;
 - A change in medical and physical conditions; or
 - A move into Council care.
- 3.1.1. Travel arrangements will be regularly reviewed and this is of particular importance for pupils who are in Year 7 and above, who will be beginning their final phase of compulsory education and who may not receive any further transport assistance or a more independence-focused transport assistance offer after they leave school to attend their choice of further education placement or employment. Based on the outcome of reviews, the Council will make any changes necessary to transport arrangements which are the result of a pupil's changing needs. For example, a pupil may no longer require a passenger assistant or may be ready to start independent travel training.
- 3.1.2. The provision of transport assistance will also be reviewed to reflect any changes in government policy or legislation.

4.0 Eligibility for a home to school travel solution

4.1 Parental preference for a school

- 4.1.1. The nearest qualifying school is one that the Council deems to be suitable for the age, ability, aptitude and ability of the pupil and any SEND they may have.
- 4.1.2. Parents and carers may express a preference for any maintained school or any form of academy or free school they wish their child to attend. If a parent or carer does express a preference for their child to attend a school further away than the nearest qualifying school, then the Council reserve the right to refuse transport assistance to that school.
- 4.1.3. Only where a pupil is assessed as meeting the eligibility criteria set out in this policy, will they be entitled to assistance with transport between home and school.
- 4.1.4. Any travelling arrangements or expenses will be the responsibility of parents/carers if there is a nearer qualifying school. It is the parents'/carers' responsibility to ensure their child gets to and from school safely to the nearest qualifying school.

4.2 Travel Support Requirements

- 4.1.1. When assessing entitlement for transport assistance for pupils with SEND, the Council's Home to School Transport Team will consider the individual needs of each child. This may include taking professional advice from educational psychologists, medical officers and teachers and consulting with parents and carers before arriving at a final decision. Consideration will also be given to the pupil's physical and medical requirements including any disabilities they may have. Assessment may include face-to-face contact with the pupil. The findings and decision will be recorded on a transport assessment form.
- 4.1.2. In determining whether a pupil cannot reasonably be expected to walk between home and school, the service will consider if the child has mobility or health and safety problems associated with their SEN or disability, whether the pupil could reasonably be expected to walk if accompanied and, if so, whether the pupil's parent or carer can reasonably be expected to accompany their child. The general expectation is that a child will be accompanied by a parent or carer, unless there is good reason why it is not reasonable to expect the parent to do so.
- 4.1.3. The following factors will be considered when assessing transport entitlement:
 - the age of the pupil;
 - the distance of the pupil from school to home;
 - whether the walking route is appropriate for the pupil;
 - the SEND of the pupil;
 - whether the pupil has physical, medical or a social communication difficulty that would prevent them from using public transport, even if accompanied by an adult;
 - whether suitable and accessible public transport is available;
 - whether the pupil may be vulnerable and at risk of danger if they use public or other transport;

- whether the pupil would be a danger to drivers, other passengers or the vehicle if using public or other transport;
 - the efficient utilisation of resources; and
 - any other individual circumstance.
- 4.2.4 This is not an exhaustive list. It is not presented in any particular order and is for guidance only. Satisfaction of one or more of the criteria does not automatically entitle a pupil with SEND to transport assistance. The fact that a pupil has an EHC Plan or attends a special school does not automatically entitle him or her to transport assistance.
- 4.2.5 Eligibility for transport assistance is related to the pupil's needs. Assessment may take into account the need for transport assistance due to some family circumstances. This will primarily be if a pupil has other siblings attending schools not local to the SEN provision offered to them, or is offered SEN provision at a school which is not their local provision. These factors will be considered when determining eligibility for home to school travel assistance and deciding on the type of transport to be provided. Other family circumstances, such as parents and carers attending work or looking after other children, would not normally be considered when determining eligibility.
- 4.2.6 The Special Educational Needs and Disability Code of Practice states that transport should be recorded in an EHC Plan only in exceptional cases, where the child or young person has particular transport needs.
- 4.2.7 Pupils who are not eligible for transport assistance but have short-term difficulties (for example, a short-term illness or health difficulty) may be eligible for transport assistance to and from school during the period of the short-term difficulties. Detail on the support provided by the Council in relation to these short-term difficulties is set out below:
- 4.2.7.1 **Pupils receiving bus transport provision:** where a pupil receives home to school transport from a minibus and cannot get to and from a collection point (for example, due to a broken leg or other short-term illness) temporary assistance may be offered as replacement for this service. Although the child's SEND has not changed, temporary physical or medical constraints make it difficult for the child to access the service.
- 4.2.7.2 **Pupils who have temporarily changed address:** transport assistance may not be provided where a pupil who usually receives assistance moves to a different address in the short-term if the changed address results in additional transport costs. The parent or carer will be expected to pay any additional costs associated with the short-term move, or make their own transport arrangements.
- 4.2.7.3 **Parents with a disability or illness:** where a parent with a disability or illness has difficulty in getting their child to and from school, additional support may be provided by adult social care services within the Council.
- 4.2.7.4 **Parents with authorised mileage allowances:** temporary assistance may be provided in those instances where parents or carers in receipt

of authorised mileage allowances cannot transport their child to and from school due to a short-term illness.

- 4.2.7.5 **Respite and foster care:** While providing transport to and from respite and foster care is not a statutory duty, the Council recognises that respite care provides valuable and necessary support to parents and carers. Applications for transport from a respite care placement to the pupil's school will therefore be considered. It is the responsibility of the parents or carers to notify the Home to School Transport Team of the dates of respite at least 10 days in advance to allow sufficient time to plan the transport. However, requests for support to and from Short Break or Residential Care should be directed to Social Care within the Council's Children and Family Service 0161 219 6400.
- 4.2.7.6 **Re-housed children:** If a family has moved to an address within a different council area, the responsibility for the child's EHC Plan and their home to school transport transfers to the Council area in which they are residing. This is because the family have become ordinarily resident in the new area. This is the case regardless of which council is paying the family's housing costs and regardless of whether the family intend to move back to Manchester in the future.
- 4.2.7.7 **Dual and link placements, inclusion and pupil referral units:** Dual placements are where a pupil attends more than one school, or where a school arranges a college link placement for a pupil. Dual placements may require additional transport assistance, such as transport at earlier or later times, or during the school day. Schools are responsible for arranging and paying for the cost of such transport. Where a pupil is on roll at one school, but visits another school or college for inclusion or link purposes, the school where the pupil is usually based will be responsible for arranging and paying for transport. These arrangements also apply to alternative education arranged by the pupil's school. If a pupil is on roll at a pupil referral unit as their sole placement, then eligibility for transport to the pupil referral unit will be considered on the same basis as eligibility for transport to any other school.
- 4.2.7.8 **Residential schools:** Pupils attending termly boarding school placements funded by the Council for a standard 38-week academic year (and who are eligible for transport assistance) will be provided with transport assistance between home and school for the start and end of each term period (generally half-termly). This equates to 12 one-way journeys (four journeys a term). Pupils attending weekly boarding school placements funded by the Council will be provided with weekly transport. Transport for pupils in 52-week residential school placements funded by the Council will be agreed on an individual basis.
- 4.2.7.9 Transport assistance for any pupils attending termly boarding school placements will not exceed the 12 one-way journeys. If the school is closed on a weekly or fortnightly basis, this must be reflected in the fees being paid by the Council for the school placement and, accordingly, transport will be provided to coincide with school closure.

- 4.2.7.10 Transport assistance will not be provided to parents, carers or family members who wish to visit residential schools for any reason. Any arrangements of this nature will need to be agreed directly with the school. In exceptional cases, parents or carers may be provided with transport assistance to school a maximum of once per year to attend their child's annual review.
- 4.2.7.11 Parents or carers who wish to accompany their child on the first day at school will be expected to make their own transport arrangements. Where a school stipulates that a parent or carer should attend on the first day, private transport must be arranged.

DRAFT

4.3 Disability Living Allowance (DLA) for children

- 4.3.1 The parents of some children/young people may be in receipt of the higher rate mobility component (HRMC) of the Disability Living Allowance (DLA). This is the gateway to the Motability scheme that supplies vehicles, adapted or unadapted, in return for the DLA, usually on contract hire terms. If a child or young person is the HRMC recipient and the family obtain a vehicle through the Motability scheme, then the vehicle is supposed to be used for the benefit of the disabled child/young person. When determining whether or not to provide travel assistance, MCC may take account of a Motability car where this has been provided for the benefit of the child/young person. Similarly MCC will take account of the HRMC of the DLA where this has been provided for the child but has not been used to obtain a vehicle. If the parent/carer does not drive, two people can be nominated to drive the car instead. It may also be possible to lease a scooter or powered wheelchair.
- 4.3.2 The Department for Education has confirmed in Parliament that being in receipt of the HRMC of the DLA does not necessarily confer eligibility for free travel assistance but neither does it preclude it if the child is an eligible child.
- 4.3.3 Should a child/young person be eligible for travel support from the Council, if a parent/carer chooses to use their own car, then they may apply for a Personal Travel Budget (PTB) from the Council and this may be agreed to should it offer a best value solution.

4.4 Travel support for children and young people with SEND from Low Income Families

- 4.4.1 The defined eligibility criteria apply to all children and young people. However, where the families of children and young people of statutory school age with SEND are entitled to free school meals, and/ or in receipt of their maximum Working Tax Credit (WTC), this will be taken into consideration in the development of a suitable travel solution.
- 4.4.2 Where a parent/carer is in receipt of WTC, a copy of the awards notice, showing the maximum level will need to be provided. Families providing proof of low income will be assessed at the point of application and annually thereafter.

5.0 Travel Solutions

5.1 Travel Solutions outlined

- 5.1.1 This section outlines the travel solutions which may be provided for children and young people who meet the eligibility criteria and are 16 or under. Specifically, this section of the policy relates to children and young people who have an EHC Plan and are attending the nearest suitable qualifying school identified in their EHC plan.

- 5.1.2 If the Council agrees to provide a travel solution to access education it will be provided in a safe and cost-effective manner, taking account of the child and young person's specific needs and having regard to the best use of the Council's resources.
- 5.1.3 An initial assessment of the child and young person's eligibility for travel support to access education will be made by a Travel Officer from the Council. It is very important that parents/carers participate in this assessment to ensure the full details of their child's circumstances are clear so the right level of support can be determined. Cases are considered on an individual basis and medical or other professional evidence may be required before support is agreed.
- 5.1.4 The Council reserves the right to assess the whole family according to their circumstances, in order to offer the most cost effective travel support, using a variety of solutions. The travel solution will be child/young person centred and inclusive of their needs in order to develop independence and confidence.
- 5.1.5 Taxi or minibus travel support to access education will be provided only where there is no feasible alternative.
- 5.1.6 A travel solution will only be provided for the normal start and end of the school day and will not include early finish times where schools close early for the end of the half term / term.
- 5.1.7 The Council is also committed to reducing traffic congestion, improving road safety and reducing the environmental impact of vehicle journeys by promoting alternative forms of travel, such as walking, cycling and use of integrated public transport. The Council works closely with schools to develop School Travel Plans that help to achieve this aim wherever possible. In the provision of travel support to access education, the Council will consider support options for eligible children/young people that lead to reducing the number and length of vehicle journeys.
- 5.1.8 Where a travel solution is put in place and either the child and young person fails to utilise the facility or their school attendance falls to 85% or below, travel support may be withdrawn. In some cases a recharge for the service may be passed onto the parent/carers where there has been persistent failure to notify the Home to School Transport Team of non-attendance. Until attendance meets the desired requirements, travel support will remain withdrawn. We understand that some children and young people with SEND can be exceptionally unwell and in these cases once the Home to School Service Transport Team is notified of this, a service will only be temporarily withdrawn and will be reinstated once the individual is well enough to return to Education.

5.2 Types of travel solutions provided

5.2.1 The nature and mode of travel support will be determined by the Council and will be one that is consistent with the Council's duty to secure Value for Money and the needs of the child.

5.2.1.1 **Bicycle** - A one off payment may be made when a child or young person, who is eligible for support under the Council's policy, would like to use or uses a bicycle to travel to school. This solution can also include a programme of independent travel training to ensure the young person is able to safely cycle to and from school if required.

5.2.1.2 **Walking Bus** - The Council is keen to reduce the number of vehicle journeys in and around the City, especially at peak times and reduce traffic movements in close proximity to schools. A child/young person may be allocated a space on a walking bus scheme. These involve several children/young people walking to and from school under the guidance and support of a Passenger Assistant.

5.2.1.3 **Travel Pass** - This is a free pass for use on public transport. This may also be provided for a parent/carer or another travel buddy to support the child/young person to access education.

5.2.1.4 **Personal Travel Budget (PTB)** – Support for meeting the costs associated with ensuring support to access education may be provided through a Personal Travel Budget. This includes a variety of flexible support options such as: access to funds for parent/carers to enable them to drop earlier and collect later, paying for a family member, mileage and use of a befriending service. Family based travel solutions could also be supported by a Personal Travel Budget.

5.2.1.5 **Supported public transport** - It may be possible for a child or young person to travel on public transport if the child/young person has some assistance. Where parents/carers are unable to accompany their son/daughter, the Council may provide a Passenger Assistant, befriending service and/or a travel buddy.

5.2.1.6 **Manchester Travel Training Partnership** - The Council has a responsibility to promote appropriate independence skills. All young people will be supported and encouraged to travel independently to and from school, when it is assessed as reasonable for them to do so. Where a young person is offered independent travel training the process will begin with an initial assessment of their skills and abilities. The training provided will be targeted to individual need and development. It is expected that where independent travel training is offered as a travel solution, a young person will take up this training. Further information on this Partnership can be found through clicking this link here: [Manchester Travel Training Partnership](http://ManchesterTravelTrainingPartnership.org) or go to www.mttp-travel-training.org.

5.2.1.6.1 As part of the review process, young people in Year 8 onwards identified as being suitable, will be expected to attend

a full week taster session. An assessment will be completed to ascertain a young person's suitability.

5.2.1.6.2 Top-up training will be available to support children and young people with transition when moving schools.

5.2.1.7 **Driving Lessons** - The offer of funded driving lessons where the young people is the correct age and this is the most cost-efficient option. Students can drive a car when they are 16 if they have, or have applied for, the enhanced rate of the mobility component of Personal Independence Payment (PIP).

5.2.1.8 **Travel Vehicles** - In exceptional circumstances the Council may provide a vehicle to transfer a child and young person to and from school. Vehicles and drivers are provided by a suitably qualified, registered, commercial provider working to contractual standards set by the Council. All drivers will have an enhanced Disclosure and Barring Service certificate. This could include:

5.2.1.8.1 **Multiple Pick up Vehicles** Whenever possible, children and young people will travel together in mini-buses. These will be specially adapted to meet the needs of those children and young people travelling on them. Each route will be planned on the basis of school start and finish times and the shortest possible route for all children and young people travelling on a particular vehicle. A multiple pick up vehicle may include a Passenger Assistant to support passengers from point of handover to drop off destination. The Passenger Assistant is responsible for the safe handover over to a responsible adult. Passenger Assistants will all have an enhanced Disclosure and Barring Service certificate. Children and young people will be picked up and dropped off at a convenient location, within a reasonable distance from their home, in many cases from recognised bus stops. A home pick up and drop off will only be made where it is deemed essential due to the child and young person's significant needs. Pupils must expect to travel to and from school with other pupils unless there are exceptional circumstances where it would not be reasonable to expect a pupil to do so and increasingly, they may be asked to travel to a designated collection point.

5.2.1.8.2 **Taxis and private hire vehicles**

5.2.1.8.2.1 Under very exceptional circumstances, the Council may support children and young people to access education in separate taxis or private hire vehicles based on the assessed needs of the child or young person. A Passenger Assistant will not always be necessary. Where a Passenger Assistant is not deployed, a passenger must travel in the rear of the vehicle. There is an expectation parent/carers will support their child

into the rear of the vehicle. Parents/carers can act as a Passenger Assistant for their child in a taxi or a private hire vehicle.

- 5.2.1.8.2.2 Availability of transport is not guaranteed. For example, a case may arise where a young person is non-ambulant, but has not been allocated a crash-tested buggy or wheelchair for use on transport. Transport crews are not permitted to lift pupils onto or off transport. Parents, carers and schools are also not permitted to lift pupils onto or off transport as a situation may arise (such as a mechanical fault to the vehicle) which may require the transport crews to lift the pupil during a journey. In these circumstances, parental mileage reimbursement may be given as an alternative.
- 5.2.1.8.2.3 Closed-circuit television (CCTV) with audio recording or global positioning systems (GPS) may be used on vehicles. The CCTV footage will not be shared or circulated with anyone outside the Council, but, along with GPS, can help to improve the speed and accuracy of incident resolution, and also supports transport crew training.
- 5.2.1.8.3 Passenger assistants will be provided on some transport routes. The provision or non- provision of a passenger assistant on a route is based on several factors, including:
- the age of the pupil
 - the distance between home and school
 - information provided on the transport assessment form
 - the SEND of the pupil
 - the number of other pupils travelling on this route
- 5.2.1.8.4 There is no minimum or maximum age that determines whether a passenger assistant will be automatically provided and the Council will consider age in conjunction with all the factors listed above to make its decision.
- 5.2.1.8.5 Provision of a passenger assistant at any one time does not guarantee that this will be an ongoing arrangement nor can the Council guarantee consistency of provision. The requirement will be re-assessed in the pupil's annual review, periodically during the year, and in the event of any change in circumstances.
- 5.2.1.8.6 Provision of vehicles may be cancelled at short notice in the case of a vehicle needing to be stood down due to unforeseen and unprecedented circumstances. If this is the case, parents will be contacted as soon as possible, and alternative arrangements will be discussed.

Part B

Application, Review and Appeals processes

Application Process

6.1.1 The parent/carer or young person must make a formal application for travel support to access education before any assistance is considered. Each application will be processed as quickly as possible in chronological date order of receipt. The Council may request the provision of written evidence from education specialists and/or medical experts.

6.1.2

It remains the legal responsibility of the parent/carer to ensure that their compulsory school aged child attends school regularly.

6.1.3 In most cases, travel support to access education will be co-ordinated by the Council's Home to School Transport Team. In some cases this responsibility may lie with specific named schools and/or colleges. Therefore, parents/carers and young people should check the local arrangements at their child and young person's school or college before making an application for travel support to the Council.

Once this form has been completed it should be returned to:

Home to School Transport Team
Access & Sufficiency
Directorate for Children's Services
Manchester City Council
P.O. Box 532
Town Hall
Manchester
M60 2LA

Email to: hometoschool@manchester.gov.uk

Review process

As stated previously in this policy, whenever possible, travel solutions will be reviewed alongside EHC plan annual reviews and at key transition points in a child or young person's education in order to ensure the support offered continues to meet the needs of the child/young person.

Changes in Circumstances

It is the parent's/carer's/young person's responsibility to inform the Council of any changes in their circumstances. A change in circumstances may mean a previously declined application may be accepted and the parent/carer/young person is able to reapply. In addition, a change in circumstances for an existing travel solution may mean it no longer meets the eligibility criteria and the travel solution could be withdrawn. The Council will decide when the withdrawal of a travel solution takes place and will take into account the term and year of education and the impact on the

child/young person.

8.1 Changes in circumstances include:

- A change in home address
- A move from one school to another
- Transition from primary to secondary school and transition from secondary school to college
- A change in medical and physical conditions
- A move into Council care

9.0 Health and Safety

- 9.1 Whilst every effort is made to come up with a travel solution to meet the needs of a child/young person there will be circumstances when the travel solution will need to be reviewed as it is not working. Whilst acknowledging the impact of their SEND on the behaviour of some children and young people, where a child/young person's conduct compromises the safety of anyone travelling with them, the Council reserves the right to suspend or withdraw the travel solution.
- 9.2 There is an expectation that the parent/carer and/or the child/young person signs a Code of Conduct. The Home to School Transport Team reserves the right to withdraw the offer of a travel solution if the child/young person or parent/carer refuses to sign the Code of Conduct.
- 9.3 Parents/carers will be expected to ensure their child's and young person's continued attendance at school when a travel solution is withdrawn.

Appeals Process

If an application for travel support to access education is **not** approved by the Council, a letter will be sent to the parent/carer/young person.

If the parent/carer/young person disagrees with the travel solution offered or the decision not to approve the application, there is a right of appeal.

Appeals should be made within 20 working days of the decision being received by the parent/carer/young person. The appeal should be made in writing, setting out the exact nature and grounds of the appeal. The appeal should include the details of personal and or family circumstances the parent/carer/young person believes should be considered. The parent/carer/young person can appeal against the travel solution offered, the child/young person's eligibility, and/or the safety of the route.

The Appeals Process has two stages:

11.1 Stage 1 – Appeal of the original decision

The A senior officer in the service will consider the appeal. The Appeals Form is available from the Council's Customer Service Centre 0161 219 6400, by writing to:

Home to School Transport Team
Access & Sufficiency
Directorate for Children's Services
Manchester City Council

P.O. Box 532
Town Hall
Manchester
M60 2LA

Email to: hometoschool@manchester.gov.uk

The parent/carer/young person will receive confirmation the appeal is being considered. Further evidence may be requested to support the appeal and consultation with Education officers and professional bodies may be required. A decision and notification will be made within 20 working days from receipt of the appeals form.

The notification will include the nature of the decision reached, how the appeal was conducted and information about other agencies and departments that were consulted as part of the appeal process. An overview will be given of the factors that were considered, the rationale for the decision reached and information of how to proceed to Stage 2.

- 11.1.3 If the parent/carer/young person remains dissatisfied with the outcome, they should notify the Council in writing within 20 working days of receiving the appeal decision. If the parent/carer wishes the matter to be considered further, the parent/carer/young person should request the matter proceeds to Stage 2.

Stage 2

- 11.2.1 If the parent/carer/young person is dissatisfied with the outcome of the appeal at Stage 1 the appeal moves to Stage 2. The appeal will be heard independently by a minimum of two Reviewing Officers who are independent from the Home to School Transport Team. Parents will have the option to attend the appeal if requested.
- 11.2.2 A Stage Two appeal will consider the evidence gathered and the reasons for the decision being made at Stage 1. A decision will be made within 40 working days. The parent/carer/young person will be notified 5 working days after the decision for the Stage 2 appeal. In some cases a meeting with the parent/carer/young person may be necessary.
- 11.2.3 The notification to the parent/carer/young person will include the nature of the decision reached, how the appeal was conducted, information about other agencies/departments that were consulted as part of the appeal process and what factors were considered and the rationale for the decision reached.
- 11.2.4 During the appeal stages, travel support to access education will not be provided or a change to an existing travel solution will not be instigated. A Stage 2 decision is final.

Corporate Complaints Team

If the parent/carer/young person is dissatisfied with the way in which the appeals procedure has been managed they have the right to make a formal complaint to the Corporate Complaints Team.

This is not an additional stage to the appeals process. Corporate Complaints Team
Manchester City Council, PO Box 532 Town Hall, Manchester,

M60 2LA

Email: csfeedback@manchester.gov.uk

Telephone: 0161 234 3012

Local Government Ombudsmen

- 13.1 A complaint to the Local Government Ombudsmen can be made by the parent/carer/young person only if there has been a failure to comply with the procedural rules or there has been maladministration of the policy.

Telephone: 0300 061 0614. Alternatively, you can write to:

The Local Government Ombudsman PO Box 4771

Coventry CV4 0EH Fax: 024 7682 0001

You can also text 'call back' to 0762 481 1595.

DRAFT

Post 16 Policy on: Travel Support to Access Education & Training

For young people with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities (SEND) aged 16 to 25 in education and training



**MANCHESTER
CITY COUNCIL**

Policy on: Travel Support to Access Education

For children and young people with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities(SEND)

Contents

1.0	Introduction	4
2.0	Principles	6
3.0	Contributions towards the travel of young people with SEND aged 16 to 19 years	7
4.0	Concessionary travel support	7
4.1	Transport for Greater Manchester (TfGM)	7
4.2	Stagecoach	8
4.3	Travel Support from education and training providers	8
5.0	Legislation and Responsibilities	8
5.1	Parent/Carer and Young People's Responsibilities	8
5.2	Council Responsibilities	8
6.0	Eligibility Criteria	9
7.0	Local Authority travel support for students with SEND aged 19 to 25 years	11
8.0	Legislation and Responsibilities	11
8.1	Parent/Carer and Young People's Responsibilities	11
8.2	Council Responsibilities	12
9.0	Eligibility Criteria	12
10.0	Travel Solutions – for both 16-19 and 19-25	13
11.0	Types of travel solutions provided	13
Part B		16
12.0	Application, Review and Appeals processes for both 16-19 and 19-25.	16
12.1	Application Process	16
12.2	Application Overview	16
12.3	The application process is dealt with in four stages	17

12.3.1 Stage 1	17
12.3.2 Stage 2 – Receipt of the application	17
12.3.3 Stage 3 – Risk Assessment of child/young person’s travel requirements	17
12.3.4 Stage 4 – Deciding on a travel solution	17
13.0 Review process	18
14.0 Changes in Circumstances	18
15.0 Health and Safety	18
16.0 Appeals Process	19
17.0 The Appeals Process has two stages:	19
17.1 Stage 1 – Appeal of the original decision	19
17.2 Stage 2	20
18.0 Corporate Complaints Team	20
19.0 Local Government Ombudsmen	21

Post 16 Travel Support for young people with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities to Access Education & Training

1.0 Introduction

This policy applies to young people who are resident within the City of Manchester who are above statutory school age and aged over 16 but under 25. It specifically relates to young people with SEND who are unable to travel to and from education and/or training independently at the start and end of the school and college day.

Councils must encourage, enable and assist young people with learning difficulties or disabilities to participate in education and training, up to the age of 25 years.

The Council's approach to disability, to encompass all disabled adults and children living in Manchester has at its heart a focus on the person and their family, looking at all aspects of an individual and their family's situation. Through this approach, the Council's vision is that disabled citizens should have the same life opportunities and achieve the same outcomes, across key areas such as: education, choice and control, health, employment, housing and inclusive communities, as those which are available for the wider population.

The Post-16 Transport Policy Statement is focused on a needs-led approach in which the individual requirements of each young person are assessed to inform the appropriate form of travel support for them. This involves a move away from an approach of standard provision to young people, in favour of a policy which recognises that young people aged 16 and over are, in many cases, more capable of achieving independent travel than pupils of statutory school age.

This policy statement, for ease of use, separates the support which can be offered to post-16 students into two categories, as the duties on the council to provide transport differ in these areas:

- **Post-16** includes students of sixth-form age and those with learning difficulties or disabilities up to the age of 19 (in the academic year in which they turn 19 years of age) or students aged over 19 completing programmes of learning that started before they turned 19 years of age.
- **Post-19** includes students aged 19 to 25 (inclusive) starting from the academic year after they turn 19 years of age.

This policy statement specifies the support that Manchester City Council ("The Council") considers necessary to facilitate the attendance of post-16 students receiving education or training.

The Council has a discretionary power to provide travel support to those over statutory school age. A travel solution for attending their designated/qualifying school/college which provides the desired courses will reflect individual needs. The desired outcome of this approach is to actively encourage young people to travel as independently as possible and to develop confidence and vital travel and social skills to support options

for continuing education, training and employment thereafter. This is line with the SEND Code of Practice (2015) which states that 'providers should enable children and young people to have the information and skills they need to help them gain independence and prepare for adult life'.

All young people in Year 11 receiving special educational needs and disabilities (SEND) travel assistance must reapply for travel support for their post-16 education or training.

Education or training refers to learning or training at a school, further education institution, a council maintained or assisted institution providing higher or further education, an establishment funded directly by the Education Skills Funding Agency, learning providers delivering accredited programmes of learning which lead to positive outcomes and are funded by the council: for example, colleges, charities and private learning providers.

This policy applies to children and young people who are resident within the City of Manchester and children and young people in the care of Manchester City Council. The majority of Manchester young people with special educational needs or a disability including those with an Education Health and Care plan (EHC plan) do not receive or require travel support from the Council in order to access education.

Wherever possible, it is expected that parent/carers of young people with SEN or a disability make arrangements for their child to attend education in the same way as for parents/carers of children and young people who do not have SEND. This approach, including independent travel where appropriate, is an important factor in developing the children and young people's independence, social and life skills; providing a travel support framework to enable as many parents/carers to do this as possible is a key part of this policy.

The policy has been developed in consultation with parents, carers and young people and is based on the statutory requirements placed on councils in the Education Act 1996, and the guidance in [Home to School Travel and Transport: Statutory Guidance for Local Authorities \(Department for Education, 2014\)](#), the guidance in [Post16 Transport and Travel Support to Education and Training: Statutory Guidance for Local Authorities](#) as well as the [Special Educational Needs and Disability Code of Practice: 0 to 25 years, Statutory guidance for organisations which work with and support children \(Department for Education, 2015\)](#). It takes account of the [Local Offer](#).

2.0 Principles

Manchester City Council's post-16 policy on Travel Support to Access Education & Training is based on providing parents/carers with a travel solution which will be founded on the following principles.

- It is committed to ensuring young people can fulfil their potential. The aim of this policy is that all young people with significant special educational needs or disability should lead lives that are as independent and as free from restriction as possible;
- Promoting inclusive opportunities to enable young people to travel to and from their place of education independently or using family based approaches similar to those used by other young people wherever possible, taking account of their age and needs;
- Promoting sustainable, safe, healthy and appropriate travel solutions by working in partnership with parents/carers to support them with their legal responsibility to make sure their children attend school;
- A commitment to equality of opportunity and the celebration of diversity and an opposition to all forms of discrimination; and
- Efficient use of public resources, delivering better outcomes and providing better value for money.

3.0 Contributions towards the travel of young people with SEND aged 16 to 19 years

- 3.1 Councils are expected to target support to those young people, and their families, who need it most, particularly those with a low income. The statutory guidance confirms that councils may ask students themselves (if over 18 years old) and/or their parents/carers for a financial contribution to transport costs. In exercising their discretion councils should:
- ensure that any contribution is affordable for students and their parents
 - ensure that there are arrangements in place to support those families on low income
 - take into account the likely duration of learning and ensure that transport policies do not adversely impact particular groups, for example: as young people with SEND are more likely to remain in education or training for longer than their peers, any contribution sought from these families would need to allow for the fact they may have to contribute for a longer period.
- 3.2 The financial contribution will be dependent on the distance from the young person's home address to their place of education. For families on low incomes, in receipt of the maximum working tax credit, a reduced financial contribution will apply. This will be calculated based on all the circumstances and on a case-by-case basis.
- 3.3 If a young person's contribution has been agreed and, for whatever reason, they do not complete that programme of study, any refund for transport will be applied at the end of the academic term in which they leave that provision. The same will apply if the young person is subject to an extended period of non-attendance due to ill health; however, day- to-day non-attendance would not be subject to a refund. A refund will only be agreed in the event that the young person leaves the provision or an extended period of non- attendance due to ill health.

4.0 Concessionary travel support

4.1 Transport for Greater Manchester (TfGM)

- 4.1.1 Concessionary fares are available to students from Transport for Greater Manchester (TfGM). This includes the Scholars Permit which if you're aged between 16 to 19, you can pay for young person fares on buses, trams and trains in Greater Manchester for travel to your place of education. There is also a [Travel Voucher Scheme](#) for those who are unable to use ordinary buses and who have serious walking difficulties or are registered blind. These vouchers can be used to buy discounted travel in taxis, private hire vehicles and community transport schemes like [Ring & Ride](#). There may also from time to time be other schemes offering discounted fares. Full details of all available options can be found at their website [here](#).

4.2 Stagecoach

- 4.2.1 Stagecoach Manchester offer a concessionary scheme to students which can save up to 50% on unlimited bus and tram travel. Full details can be found at their website [here](#).

4.3 Travel Support from education and training providers

- 4.3.1 Students may be able to access some funding towards transport costs directly from individual education and training providers from the 16 to 19 Bursary Fund. The 16 to 19 Bursary Fund provides financial support to help young people overcome specific barriers to participation so they can remain in education. Each learning provider has some discretionary funding that can be used for this purpose, subject to their own criteria.
- 4.3.2 You have to apply directly to your school, college or training provider for a bursary. For advice speak to student support services, your tutor or go to: www.direct.gov/16-19bursary
- 4.3.3 Manchester Adult Education Service (MAES) provides transport for young people with a learning difficulty and/or disability who meet their transport assessment criteria. Telephone: 0161 234 5000, Email: adult-education@manchester.gov.uk

5.0 Legislation and Responsibilities

5.1 Parent/Carer and Young People's Responsibilities

A young person must stay in some form of education or training until their 18th birthday if they were born on or after 1 September 2004.

Options are:

- full-time education - e.g. at a school or college
- an apprenticeship or traineeship
- part-time education or training - as well as being employed, self-employed or volunteering for 20 hours or more a week
- an establishment funded directly by the Education Skills Funding Agency
- learning providers delivering accredited programmes of learning which lead to positive outcomes and are funded by the council: for example, colleges, charities and private learning providers.

A young person can leave their place of education on the last Friday in June as long as they will be 18 by the end of that year's summer holidays.

There is an expectation parents/carers will actively promote and support their young person to access and attend education and training.

5.2 Council Responsibilities

- 5.2.1 Section 509 AB(1) of the Education Act 1996 imposes a requirement that the Council should set out the extent to which the arrangements specified in the

EHC plan can facilitate the attendance at schools and colleges of young people with learning difficulties and/or disabilities.

- 5.2.2 The 16-18 transport duty relates to young people of sixth form age with learning difficulties and/or disabilities aged up to 19.
- 5.2.3 The Council also has a duty under the Education and Skills Act 2008 to encourage, enable and assist the participation of young people with learning difficulties and/or disabilities up to the age of 25 in education and training.
- 5.2.4 The Children and Families Act 2014 replaces the Statement of SEN and Learning Difficulty Assessments (LDAs) for those over the age of 16 with Education, Health and Care (EHC) plans. Under the Act, the Council may continue to maintain an EHC plan for young people over 19 if a young person requires additional time, in comparison to the majority of others of the same age who do not have SEN, to complete his or her education or training. Councils may continue to provide special educational provision until the end of the academic year in which the young person turns 25.
- 5.2.5 Arrangements cannot be limited to those young people who had been assessed as having particular transport needs prior to the age of 16. The Children and Families Act 2014 also places a duty on councils to publish a Local Offer setting out their services for children and young people with special educational needs and disabilities, and this must include information on the arrangements for travel to and from post-16 institutions.
- 5.2.6 The statutory guidance from the Department for Education on post-16 transport and travel support to education and training settings (January 2019) states that the transport needs of young people with SEND must be reassessed when a young person moves from compulsory schooling to post-16 education, even if the young person is remaining at the same educational setting.

6.0 Eligibility Criteria

- 6.1 In line with statutory guidance, all young people in Year 11 (aged 15 to 16), moving from compulsory schooling to post-16 education, must reapply and be reassessed. The council will exercise its discretion to provide travel assistance for students aged 16 to 19 with SEND where it considers that travel assistance is necessary to enable the young person to reasonably access the education or training provision specified in their EHC Plan. As young people with SEND approach adulthood, where appropriate, transport assistance will be provided to support independence.
- 6.2 In assessing eligibility for students entering post-16 education and training for travel assistance, particular attention will be paid to the following criteria:
 - Whether the student is currently in receipt of any funding from the 16 to 19 Bursary Fund and to what value.
 - The location of the sixth form unit or college the student would like to attend. If this is not a local provision, the council would need to know that the course being taken is not available locally.

- Whether the sixth form unit is an extension to the school previously attended by the student and named in their EHC Plan.
- The distance from the student's home to their education or training establishment and the journey time.
- Whether the young person has SEND and/or mobility difficulties which would impede their access to their educational placement, either independently or otherwise, for example, a wheelchair user.
- Whether the young person has SEND which would make it unsafe for them to travel independently.
- Whether the public transport journey to the nearest suitable placement is too complex for the young person to be expected to travel independently.

- 6.3 If the Council agrees to provide a travel solution to access education it will be provided in a safe and cost effective manner, taking account of the young person's specific needs and having regard to the best use of the Council's resources.
- 6.4 An initial assessment of the young person's eligibility for travel support to access education will be made by a Travel Officer from the Council. It is very important that parents/carers participate in this assessment to ensure the full details of their child's circumstances are clear so the right level of support can be determined. Cases are considered on an individual basis and medical or other professional evidence may be required before support is agreed.
- 6.5 The Council reserves the right to assess the whole family according to their circumstances, in order to offer the most cost effective travel support, using a variety of solutions. The travel solution will be young person-centred and inclusive of their needs in order to develop independence and confidence.
- 6.6 Taxi or minibus travel support to access education will be provided only where there is no feasible alternative.
- 6.7 A travel solution will only be provided for the normal start and end of the educational institution day and will not include early finish times where educational institutions close early for the end of the half term / term.
- 6.8 The Council is also committed to reducing traffic congestion, improving road safety and reducing the environmental impact of vehicle journeys by promoting alternative forms of travel, such as walking, cycling and use of integrated public transport. The Council works closely with post-16 education providers to develop Travel Plans that help to achieve this aim wherever possible. In the provision of travel support to access education, the Council will consider support options for eligible young people that lead to reducing the number and length of vehicle journeys.
- 6.9 Where a travel solution is put in place and either the young person fails to utilise the facility or their attendance falls to 85% or below, travel support may be withdrawn. In some cases a recharge for the service may be passed onto the parent/carer where there has been persistent failure to notify the Home to School Transport Team of non-attendance. Until attendance meets the desired requirements, travel support will remain withdrawn. We understand that some young people with SEND can be exceptionally unwell and in these cases once

the Home to School Transport Team is notified of this, a service will only be temporarily withdrawn and will be reinstated once the individual is well enough to return to Education.

7.0 Council travel support for students with SEND aged 19 to 25 years

7.1 For the purposes of this transport policy statement, 19 years refers to the end of the academic year in which the student turns 19 years of age.

7.2 This part of the transport policy statement deals with the provision of transport assistance for adults aged 19 to 25 years with an EHC Plan who live in the City of Manchester and are in education or training at a qualifying educational establishment at:

- a school (including an academy school);
- a further education institution (including a sixth-form college);
- a council maintained or assisted institution providing higher or further education;
- an establishment funded directly by the Education Funding Agency, such as an independent specialist provider for students with learning difficulties and/or disabilities; or
- a learning provider that is funded by the council to deliver accredited programmes of learning which lead to positive outcomes; this could include a college, charity or private learning provider.

7.3 The SEN Code of Practice states that 'providers should enable children and young people to have the information and skills they need to help them gain independence and prepare for adult life'. This means preparing young people and young adults, wherever possible, for independent living, employment and for being as healthy as possible in their adult lives.

7.4 The post-19 travel assistance policy will have a needs-led approach in which the individual needs of each adult are assessed to inform the appropriate form of travel support. It moves away from an approach of blanket and standard provision in favour of a policy which recognises that young people and young adults are, in many cases, more capable of achieving independent travel than pupils of statutory school age.

8.0 Legislation and Responsibilities

8.1 Parent/Carer and Young People's Responsibilities

8.1.1 Adults will need to be aged 19 to 25 years with an EHC Plan who live in the City of Manchester and are in education or training at a qualifying educational establishment at:

- a school (including an academy school);
- a further education institution (including a sixth-form college);
- a council maintained or assisted institution providing higher or further

education;

- an establishment funded directly by the Education Funding Agency, such as an independent specialist provider for students with learning difficulties and/or disabilities; or
- a learning provider that is funded by the council to deliver accredited programmes of learning which lead to positive outcomes; this could include a college, charity or private learning provider.

- 8.1.2 Additionally, if an apprenticeship is named in a young person's EHC Plan, transport arrangements to support young people with an EHC Plan to travel independently to their place of employment will be considered on the same basis as a student attending a school or college placement.

8.2 Council Responsibilities

- 8.2.1 The council will provide travel assistance for people who meet the eligible criteria for support. Reference to 'adults' in this policy statement is a reference to both 'adults' and 'relevant young adults' as defined in Section 508F of the Education Act 1996.

- 8.2.2 In accordance with Section 508F of the Education Act 1996 (and subsequent amendments) the council will make transport arrangements it considers necessary to facilitate the attendance of young people and young adults aged between 19 and 25 years with an EHC Plan, where the council had secured the provision of education or training. This applies to:

- Adults (those who are aged 19 or over) for the purpose of facilitating their attendance at council maintained or assisted further or higher education institutions or institutions within the further education sector; and
- Adults aged under 25 with an EHC Plan for the purpose of facilitating their attendance at institutions where they are receiving education or training outside the further and higher education sectors. For those young adults, the councils' duty only applies where it has secured the provision of education or training at that institution and the provision of boarding accommodation in connection with that education or training.

9.0 Eligibility Criteria

- 9.1 The assessment of eligibility of an adult aged between 19 and 25 with an EHC Plan for transport assistance will consider the suitability and feasibility of different transport options and will take into account:

- The availability of existing transport
- The person's physical mobility
- The person's ability to travel independently
- Access to a Motability vehicle and whether it is reasonable to use it to travel to the relevant location
- Availability and willingness of family and carers to assist with transport
- Any factors that may pose an unreasonable demand or risk to health and safety when travelling

- 9.2 When assessing eligibility, the applicant or their parent or carer must provide evidence why it is necessary for the council and not the student to make travel

arrangements. To assess this, it is necessary for the council to know the following:

- What other arrangements have been considered or tried and why they are not suitable.
- If there is a family member or carer who is willing and able to transport the student and if not, why they would be unable to do so.
- When assessing an adult's need for travel assistance under the Care Act, the council will take into consideration DLA or PIP benefits where people receive the mobility component, a vehicle provided by the Motability Scheme and bus pass or other form of travel concessions. It is reasonable for the council to consider that by having these benefits a person's needs are in some way already being met. Vehicles provided by the Motability Scheme are done so in order for people receiving support to maintain their independence, including when this vehicle is being driven by a nominated driver, such as a family member.
- Motability vehicles are provided on the understanding that the car is used by, or for the benefit of, the disabled person. Motability vehicles can be insured by up to three people who can help support the person by driving for them. Not giving the person the benefit of the car because it is being used by someone else, is considered misuse by the Motability Scheme and can put the lease at risk. It is clear that a vehicle from the Motability Scheme is to be used for the benefit of the person for whom it is provided. Where a nominated driver is willing and able to use the car to take an eligible young person to an educational setting, the council may offer a mileage allowance in the form of a direct payment.
- Any other circumstances that should be taken into account; the council will consider any recent supporting evidence that is provided.

9.3 A post-19 student's work or childcare commitments would not normally be considered as a reason for travel assistance to be provided.

9.4 Each request will be assessed on a case-by-case basis, considering the law, council policy and any supporting information provided.

10.0 Travel Solutions – for both 16-19 and 19-25

10.1 Where the council agrees to provide travel assistance to a young person or adult aged between 16 and 25 the following travel solutions will be considered. The nature and mode of travel support will be determined by the Council and will be one that is consistent with the council's duty to secure value for money and the needs of the young person. The council may ask for a contribution as per 3.1

11.0 Types of travel solutions provided

- a. **Bicycle** - A one off payment may be made when a young person, who is eligible for support under the Council's policy, would like to use or uses a bicycle to travel to their place of education. This solution can also include a programme of independent travel training to ensure the young person is able to safely cycle to and from school/college if required.
- b. **Walking Bus** - The Council is keen to reduce the number of vehicle journeys

in and around the City, especially at peak times and reduce traffic movements in close proximity to schools. A young person may be allocated a space on a walking bus scheme. These involve several young people walking to and from school/college under the guidance and support of a Passenger Assistant.

- c. **Travel pass** - This is a free pass for use on public transport. This may also be provided for a parent/carer or another travel buddy to support the young person to access education.
- d. **Personal Travel Budget (PTB)** – Support for meeting the costs associated with ensuring support to access education may be provided through a Personal Travel Budget. This includes a variety of flexible support options such as: access to funds for parent/carers to enable them to drop earlier and collect later, paying for a family member, mileage and use of a befriending service. Family based travel solutions could also be supported by a Personal Travel Budget.
- e. **Supported public transport** - It may be possible for a young person to travel on public transport if the young person has some assistance. Where parents/carers are unable to accompany their son/daughter, the Council may provide a Passenger Assistant, befriending service and/or a travel buddy.
- f. **Manchester Travel Training Partnership** - The Council has a responsibility to promote appropriate independence skills. All young people will be supported and encouraged to travel independently to and from their place of education, when it is assessed as reasonable for them to do so. Where a young person is offered independent travel training the process will begin with an initial assessment of their skills and abilities. The training provided will be targeted to individual need and development. It is expected that where independent travel training is offered as a travel solution, a young person will take up this training. Further information on this Partnership can be found through clicking this link here: [Manchester Travel Training Partnership](http://www.mttp-travel-training.org) or go to www.mttp-travel-training.org.

Top-up training will be available to support young people with transition when moving educational institutes.
- g. **Driving Lessons** - The offer of funded driving lessons where the young person is the correct age and this is the most cost-efficient option. Students can drive a car when they are 16 if they have, or have applied for, the enhanced rate of the mobility component of Personal Independence Payment (PIP).
- h. **Travel Vehicles** - In exceptional circumstances the Council may provide a vehicle to transfer a young person to and from school/college. Vehicles and drivers are provided by a suitably qualified, registered, commercial provider working to contractual standards set by the Council. All drivers will all have an enhanced Disclosure and Barring Service certificate.

This could include:

Multiple pick up vehicles - Whenever possible, young people will travel together

in mini-buses. These will be specially adapted to meet the needs of those young people travelling on them. Each route will be planned on the basis of school/college start and finish times and the shortest possible route for all young people travelling on a particular vehicle. A multiple pick up vehicle may include a Passenger Assistant to support passengers from point of handover to drop off destination. The Passenger Assistant is responsible for the safe handover over to a responsible adult. Passenger Assistants will all have an enhanced Disclosure and Barring Service certificate.

Young people will be picked up and dropped off at a convenient location, within a reasonable distance from their home, in many cases from recognised bus stops. A home pick up and drop off will only be made where it is deemed essential due to the young person's significant needs.

Pupils must expect to travel to and from their place of education with other pupils unless there are exceptional circumstances where it would not be reasonable to expect a pupil to do so and increasingly they may be asked to travel to a designated collection point.

In exceptional circumstances, where there are surplus places on a multi pick-up vehicle, it may be possible for parent/carers to purchase a seat for a young person with SEND who has not met eligibility criteria. The cost will not be in excess of the cost of an annual travel pass. This would be subject to availability and/or change, as needs for eligible passengers take priority. A notice period, where possible, would be given, if the surplus place is no longer available.

Taxis and private hire vehicles - Under very exceptional circumstances, the Council may support young people to access education in separate taxis or private hire vehicles based on the assessed needs of the young person. A Passenger Assistant will not always be necessary. Where a Passenger Assistant is not deployed, a passenger must travel in the rear of the vehicle. There is an expectation that parents/carers will support their child into the rear of the vehicle. Parents/carers can act as a Passenger Assistant for their child in a taxi or a private hire vehicle.

Availability of transport is not guaranteed. For example, a case may arise where a young person is non-ambulant, but has not been allocated a crash-tested buggy or wheelchair for use on transport. Transport crews are not permitted to lift pupils onto or off transport. Parents, carers and schools are also not permitted to lift pupils onto or off transport as a situation may arise (such as a mechanical fault to the vehicle) which may require the transport crews to lift the pupil during a journey. In these circumstances, parental mileage reimbursement may be given as an alternative.

Closed-circuit television (CCTV) with audio recording or global positioning systems (GPS) may be used on vehicles. The CCTV footage will not be shared or circulated with anyone outside the Council, but, along with GPS, can help to improve the speed and accuracy of incident resolution, and also supports transport crew training.

Passenger assistants will be provided on some transport routes. The provision or non-provision of a passenger assistant on a route is based on several factors,

including:

- the age of the pupil
- the distance between home and school/college
- information provided on the transport assessment form
- the SEND of the pupil
- the number of other pupils travelling on this route

There is no minimum or maximum age that determines whether a passenger assistant will be automatically provided and the Council will consider age in conjunction with all the factors listed above to make its decision.

Provision of a passenger assistant at any one time does not guarantee that this will be an ongoing arrangement nor can the Council guarantee consistency of provision. The requirement will be re-assessed in the pupil's annual review, periodically during the year, and in the event of any change in circumstances.

Part B

Application, Review and Appeals processes

Application Process

- 6.1.1 The parent/carer or young person must make a formal application for travel support to access education before any assistance is considered. Each application will be processed as quickly as possible in chronological date order of receipt. The Council may request the provision of written evidence from education specialists and/or medical experts.
- 6.1.2 It remains the legal responsibility of the parent/carer to ensure that their compulsory school aged child attends school regularly.
- 6.1.3 In most cases, travel support to access education will be co-ordinated by the Council's Home to School Transport Team. In some cases this responsibility may lie with specific named schools and/or colleges. Therefore, parents/carers and young people should check the local arrangements at their child and young person's school or college before making an application for travel support to the Council.

Once this form has been completed it should be returned to:

Home to School Transport Team
Access & Sufficiency
Directorate for Children's Services
Manchester City Council
P.O. Box 532
Town Hall
Manchester
M60 2LA

Email to: hometoschool@manchester.gov.uk

Review process

As stated previously in this policy, whenever possible, travel solutions will be reviewed alongside EHC plan annual reviews and at key transition points in a child or young person's education in order to ensure the support offered continues to meet the needs of the child/young person.

Changes in Circumstances

It is the parent's/carer's/young person's responsibility to inform the Council of any changes in their circumstances. A change in circumstances may mean a previously declined application may be accepted and the parent/carer/young person is able to reapply. In addition, a change in circumstances for an existing travel solution may mean it no longer meets the eligibility criteria and the travel solution could be withdrawn. The Council will decide when the withdrawal of a travel solution takes place and will take into account the term and year of education and the impact on the child/young person.

8.1 Changes in circumstances include:

- A change in home address
- A move from one school to another
- Transition from primary to secondary school and transition from secondary school to college
- A change in medical and physical conditions
- A move into Council care

9.0 Health and Safety

- 9.1 Whilst every effort is made to come up with a travel solution to meet the needs of a child/young person there will be circumstances when the travel solution will need to be reviewed as it is not working. Whilst acknowledging the impact of their SEND on the behaviour of some children and young people, where a child/young person's conduct compromises the safety of anyone travelling with them, the Council reserves the right to suspend or withdraw the travel solution.
- 9.2 There is an expectation that the parent/carer and/or the child/young person signs a Code of Conduct. The Home to School Transport Team reserves the right to withdraw the offer of a travel solution if the child/young person or parent/carer refuses to sign the Code of Conduct.
- 9.3 Parents/carers will be expected to ensure their child's and young person's continued attendance at school when a travel solution is withdrawn.

Appeals Process

If an application for travel support to access education is **not** approved by the Council, a letter will be sent to the parent/carer/young person.

If the parent/carer/young person disagrees with the travel solution offered or the

decision not to approve the application, there is a right of appeal.

Appeals should be made within 20 working days of the decision being received by the parent/carer/young person. The appeal should be made in writing, setting out the exact nature and grounds of the appeal. The appeal should include the details of personal and or family circumstances the parent/carer/young person believes should be considered. The parent/carer/young person can appeal against the travel solution offered, the child/young person's eligibility, and/or the safety of the route.

The Appeals Process has two stages:

11.1 Stage 1 – Appeal of the original decision

The A senior officer in the service will consider the appeal. The Appeals Form is available from the Council's Customer Service Centre 0161 219 6400, by writing to:

Home to School Transport Team
Access & Sufficiency
Directorate for Children's Services
Manchester City Council
P.O. Box 532
Town Hall
Manchester
M60 2LA

Email to: hometoschool@manchester.gov.uk

The parent/carer/young person will receive confirmation the appeal is being considered. Further evidence may be requested to support the appeal and consultation with Education officers and professional bodies may be required. A decision and notification will be made within 20 working days from receipt of the appeals form.

The notification will include the nature of the decision reached, how the appeal was conducted and information about other agencies and departments that were consulted as part of the appeal process. An overview will be given of the factors that were considered, the rationale for the decision reached and information of how to proceed to Stage 2.

11.1.3 If the parent/carer/young person remains dissatisfied with the outcome, they should notify the Council in writing within 20 working days of receiving the appeal decision. If the parent/carer wishes the matter to be considered further, the parent/carer/young person should request the matter proceeds to Stage 2.

Stage 2

11.2.1 If the parent/carer/young person is dissatisfied with the outcome of the appeal at Stage 1 the appeal moves to Stage 2. The appeal will be heard independently by a minimum of two Reviewing Officers who are independent from the Home to

School Transport Team. Parents will have the option to attend the appeal if requested.

- 11.2.2 A Stage Two appeal will consider the evidence gathered and the reasons for the decision being made at Stage 1. A decision will be made within 40 working days. The parent/carer/young person will be notified 5 working days after the decision for the Stage 2 appeal. In some cases a meeting with the parent/carer/young person may be necessary.
- 11.2.3 The notification to the parent/carer/young person will include the nature of the decision reached, how the appeal was conducted, information about other agencies/departments that were consulted as part of the appeal process and what factors were considered and the rationale for the decision reached.
- 11.2.4 During the appeal stages, travel support to access education will not be provided or a change to an existing travel solution will not be instigated. A Stage 2 decision is final.

Corporate Complaints Team

If the parent/carer/young person is dissatisfied with the way in which the appeals procedure has been managed they have the right to make a formal complaint to the Corporate Complaints Team.

This is not an additional stage to the appeals process. Corporate Complaints

Team

Manchester City Council, PO Box 532 Town Hall, Manchester,
M60 2LA

Email: csfeedback@manchester.gov.uk

Telephone: 0161 234 3012

Local Government Ombudsmen

- 13.1 A complaint to the Local Government Ombudsmen can be made by the parent/carer/young person only if there has been a failure to comply with the procedural rules or there has been maladministration of the policy.

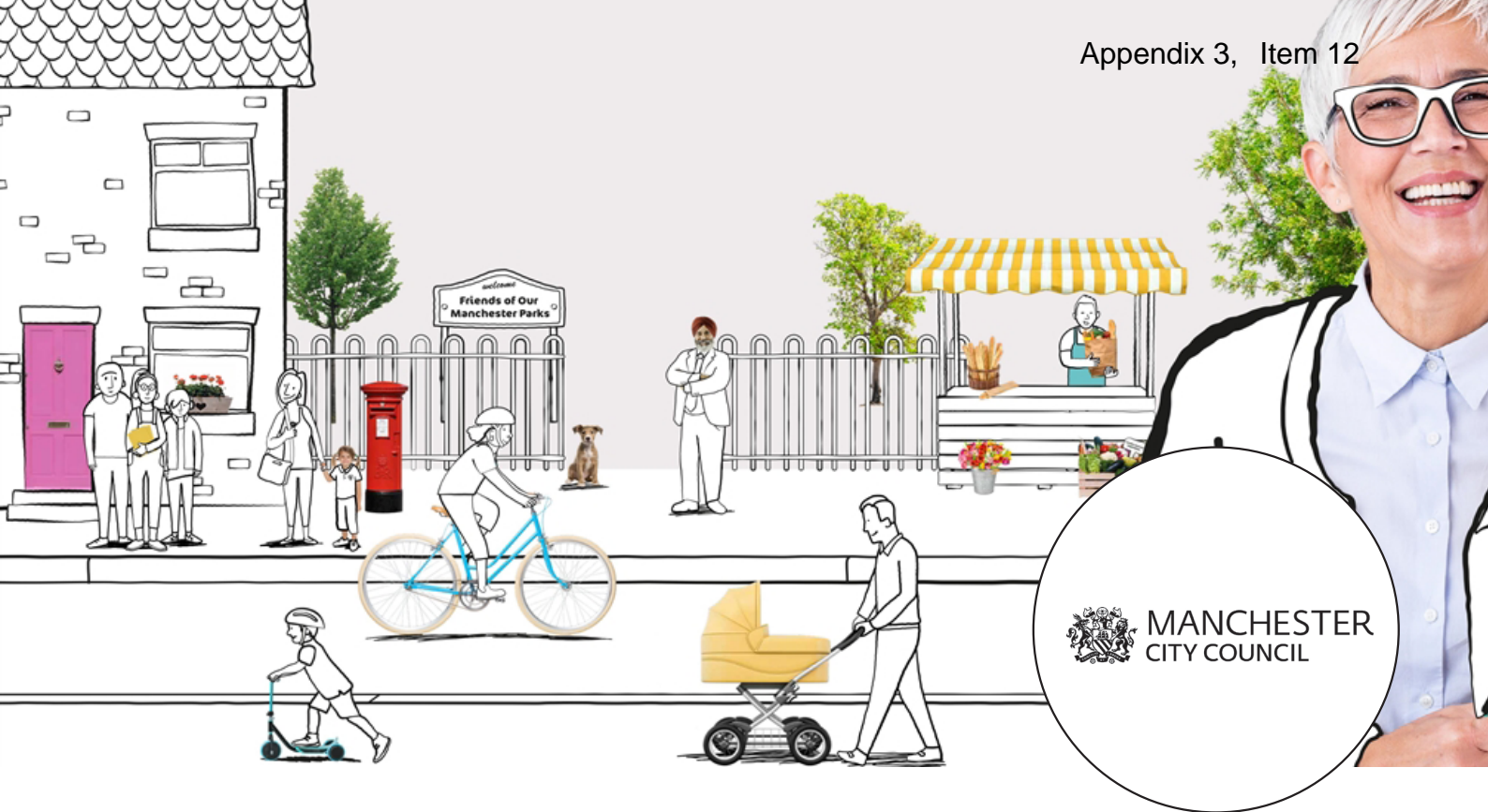
Telephone: 0300 061 0614. Alternatively, you can write to:

The Local Government Ombudsman PO Box 4771

Coventry CV4 0EH Fax: 024 7682 0001

You can also text 'call back' to 0762 481 1595.

This page is intentionally left blank



Help with travel for children and young people with Special Educational Needs and Disabilities (SEND) to access education or training.

Overview

This policy explains how we can support children and young people with SEND to get to school or college up to the age of 25.

The aim of this policy is, wherever possible, to work with the family and young person to develop a travel solution enabling the child or young person to access education in the same way that members of their peer group who do not have a special educational need or disability would access their education.

Wherever possible, it is expected that parent/carers of children and young people with SEND make arrangements for their child to attend school or college in the same way as for parents/carers of children and young people who do not have SEND.

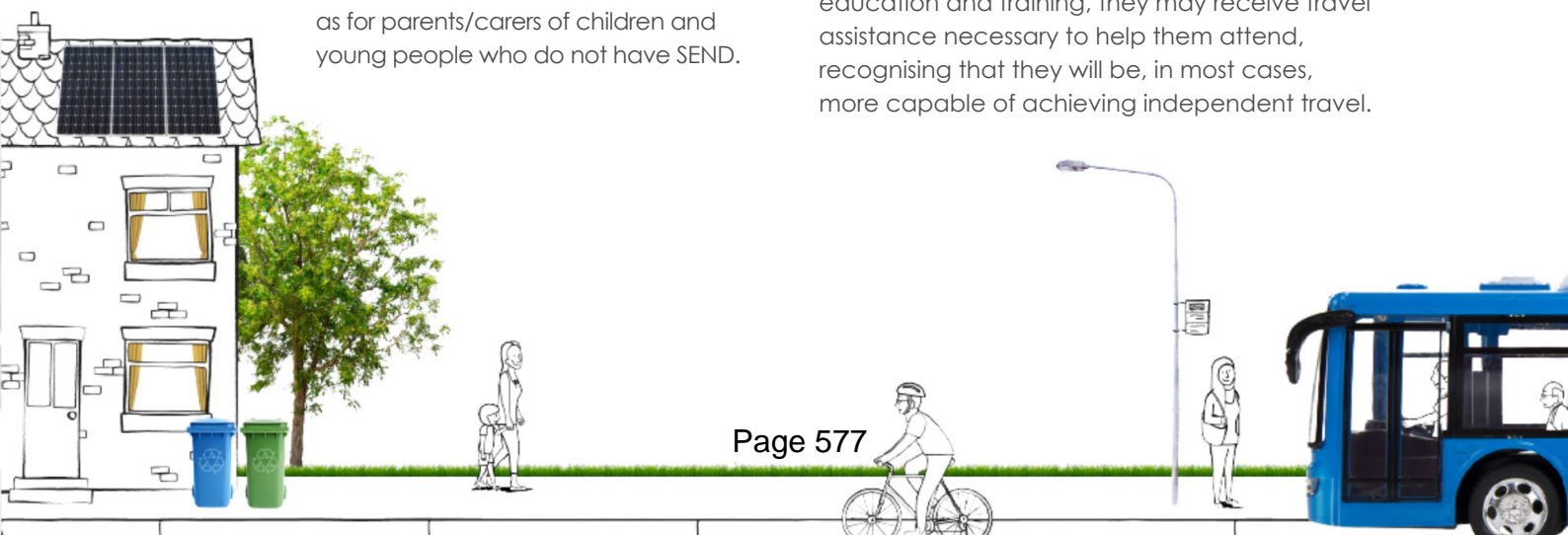
Eligibility

Eligibility will be assessed on a case-by-case basis.

If a child or young person is at school from reception to Year 11 they will be eligible if they cannot walk to school, even with help from parents/carers.

When the child or young person moves into post-16 education parents/carers must reapply, and the child/young person will then be reassessed. The child/young person will be eligible if their needs are such that they cannot reasonably access education or training.

When a young person is aged 19 to 25, and has an Education and Health Care Plan and is accessing education and training, they may receive travel assistance necessary to help them attend, recognising that they will be, in most cases, more capable of achieving independent travel.



Type of Travel Solution

The Council has a duty to promote the use of sustainable travel and transport. Therefore the following are examples of travel solutions which may be offered:

- Travel Pass to allow for travel on Manchester's buses, trains and trams
- The option of a personal transport budget
- Independent travel training
- Walking bus scheme
- A one off payment to purchase a bicycle
- Buddying service to support children and young people on public transport
- In some cases Manchester may provide a vehicle to help transport the child or young person
- We will decide if a passenger assistant is required to support the child/young person when travelling

Changes to arrangements

We review our transport arrangements regularly to ensure best value for money is achieved. Sometimes we will need to make changes to the travel solution provided.



How to apply

The fact that a child or young person has an Education and Health Care Plan or attends a special school does not automatically entitle them to transport assistance.

Parents/Carers will need to:



fill in an
application form



call us on
0161 219 6400



Or email us
hometoschool@manchester.gov.uk

Following receiving the application, we will review this in line with our policy, before informing parents/carers of the outcome.



**MANCHESTER
CITY COUNCIL**